invensys
Eurotherm

2700

User Manual

2704 Process Controller

HA026933/7
Nov 2012

© 2012 Eurotherm Limited

All rights are strictly reserved. No part of this document may be reproduced, modified, or transmitted in any form by any means, nor may it be stored in a retrieval system other than for the purpose to act as an aid in operating the equipment to which the document relates, without the prior, written permission of Eurotherm Limited.

Eurotherm Limited pursues a policy of continuous development and product improvement. The specification in this document may therefore be changed without notice. The information in this document is given in good faith, but is intended for guidance only. Eurotherm Limited will accept no responsibility for any losses arising from errors in this document.

MODEL 2704 CONTROLLER

ENGINEERING HANDBOOK

List of Chapters

1. CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION 12
2. CHAPTER 2 INSTALLATION 14
3. CHAPTER 3 OPERATION 36
4. CHAPTER 4 FUNCTION BLOCKS 49
5. CHAPTER 5 SOFT WIRING 50
6. CHAPTER 6 ACCESS LEVELS 56
7. CHAPTER 7 INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION 58
8. CHAPTER 8 PROGRAMMER CONFIGURATION 71
9. CHAPTER 9 DIGITAL PROGRAMMER 115
10. CHAPTER 10 ALARM OPERATION 119
11. CHAPTER 11 LOOP SET UP 134
12. CHAPTER 12 TUNING 168
13. CHAPTER 13 CONTROLLER APPLICATIONS 179
14. CHAPTER 14 INPUT OPERATORS 206
15. CHAPTER 15 TIMER, CLOCK, TOTALISER, OPERATION 215
16. CHAPTER 16 ADVANCED FUNCTIONS 225
17. CHAPTER 17 USER PAGES 234
18. CHAPTER 18 ANALOGUE AND MULTIPLE OPERATORS 247
19. CHAPTER 19 LOGIC OPERATORS 253
20. CHAPTER 20 DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS 256
21. CHAPTER 21 2704 MASTER COMMUNICATIONS 263
22. CHAPTER 22 STANDARD IO 273
23. CHAPTER 23 MODULE IO 284
24. CHAPTER 24 TRANSDUCER SCALING 316
25. CHAPTER 25 IO EXPANDER 326
26. CHAPTER 26 DIAGNOSTICS 328
27. CHAPTER 27 CALIBRATION 330
28. CHAPTER 28 BOILER CONTROL 343
29. APPENDIX A ORDER CODE 360
30. APPENDIX B SAFETY AND EMC INFORMATION 362
31. APPENDIX C TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION 365
32. APPENDIX D PARAMETER UNITS AND ADDRESSES 374

Contents

1. CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION 12
1.1 ABOUT THIS MANUAL 12
1.1.1 The Structure Of This Manual 12
1.2 WHAT IS 2704 13
2. CHAPTER 2 INSTALLATION 14
2.1 MECHANICAL INSTALLATION 14
2.1.1 Positioning 14
2.1.2 Outline dimensions Model 2704 14
2.1.3 Mounting the Controller 15
2.1.4 Unplugging and Plugging in the Controller 15
2.2 I/O MODULES 16
2.2.1 To Add or Change Modules 16
2.3 WIRING 17
2.3.1 Electrical Connections 17
2.3.2 Rear Terminal Layout 17
2.4 Rear Terminals 18
2.5 STANDARD CONNECTIONS 19
2.5.1 Power Supply Wiring 19
2.5.2 Relay Output 19
2.5.3 Sensor Input Connections 20
2.5.4 Analogue Input Connections 21
2.5.5 I/O Expander (or Additional Digital Input) 22
2.5.6 Digital I/O 23
2.6 OPTIONAL PLUG IN MODULE CONNECTIONS 24
2.6.1 Digital Communications Connections 24
2.6.2 DeviceNet® Wiring 26
2.6.3 Ethernet Connections 28
2.6.4 I/O Modules 29
2.7 TO CONNECT ZIRCONIA (DUAL SIGNAL) PROBE 34
2.7.1 Zirconia Probe Screening 35
3. CHAPTER 3 OPERATION 36
3.1 OPERATOR INTERFACE - OVERVIEW 36
3.1.1 The Operator Buttons 37
3.1.2 Status Messages 38
3.2 PARAMETERS AND HOW TO ACCESS THEM 39
3.2.1 Pages 39
3.3 NAVIGATION OVERVIEW 40
3.3.1 To Select a Page Header 40
3.3.2 To Navigate to a Parameter from a Page Header 41
3.3.3 To Change Next Parameter in the List 42
3.3.4 To Change Any Parameter in the List 42
3.4 BACKSCROLL 42
3.5 PARAMETER VALUES 43
3.5.1 Confirmation Mechanism 44
3.5.2 Invalid key actions 44
3.6 PARAMETER TABLES 45
3.7 PARAMETER AVAILABILITY AND ALTERABILITY 45
3.8 NAVIGATION DIAGRAM 46
4. CHAPTER 4 FUNCTION BLOCKS 49
4.1 What is a Function Block? 49
4.1.1 Inputs 49
4.1.2 Outputs 49
4.1.3 Settings 49
5. CHAPTER 5 SOFT WIRING 50
5.1 WHAT IS SOFT WIRING? 50
5.1.1 An Example of Soft Wiring 51
5.1.2 Configuration of the Simple PID Loop 52
6. CHAPTER 6 ACCESS LEVELS 56
6.1 THE DIFFERENT ACCESS LEVELS 56
6.2 PASSCODES 56
6.3 TO ENTER CONFIGURATION LEVEL 57
6.4 TO ENTER NEW PASSCODES 57
6.5 TO EXIT CONFIGURATION LEVEL 57

7. CHAPTER 7 INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION 58

7.1 WHAT IS INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION? 58
7.1.1 To Select the Instrument Configuration Pages 58
7.2 TO CONFIGURE CONTROLLER OPTIONS 59
7.2.1 INSTRUMENT Options Page 59
7.2.2 INSTRUMENT Info Page 60
7.2.3 INSTRUMENT Units Page 61
7.2.4 INSTRUMENT Display Page 61
7.2.5 INSTRUMENT Page Promote Page 63
7.2.6 INSTRUMENT User Text Page 64
7.2.7 INSTRUMENT Summary Page 65
7.2.8 INSTRUMENT Standby Page 67
7.3 USER TEXT EXAMPLES 68
7.3.1 To Re-Name Loop 1 to Zone 1 68
7.3.2 To Re-Name User Alarm 1 and Provide a Message 68
7.3.3 To Re-Name Module 1 to be called Heat Output 68
7.3.4 To Rename a Digital Input and show in the Summary Page 69
7.3.5 To Assign Custom Units 70
7.3.6 To Customise the Power Up Display 70

8. CHAPTER 8 PROGRAMMER CONFIGURATION 71

8.1 WHAT IS SETPOINT PROGRAMMING ? 72
8.1.1 Synchronous Programmer 72
8.1.2 Asynchronous Programmer 73
8.2 SETPOINT PROGRAMMER DEFINITIONS 74
8.2.1 Run 74
8.2.2 Hold 74
8.2.3 Reset 74
8.2.4 Servo 74
8.2.5 Hot Start 74
8.3 PROGRAMMER TYPES 75
8.3.1 Time To Target Programmer 75
8.3.2 Ramp Rate Programmer 75
8.4 SEGMENT TYPES 75
8.4.1 Profile 75
8.4.2 Go Back To Segment 76
8.4.3 End Segment 76
8.4.4 Wait 77
8.5 POWER FAIL RECOVERY 78
8.6 HOLDBACK (GUARANTEED SOAK) 79
8.7 PROGRAM USER VALUES 80
8.7.1 Program User Value Enumerations 80
8.8 External Program Inputs 80
8.9 PROFILE LOCK 80
8.10 Example: TO CONFIGURE A SYNCHRONOUS PROGRAMMER 81
8.11 Example: TO CONFIGURE SYNCHRONOUS PROGRAMMER TYPE 82
8.11.1 PROGRAM EDIT Options Page 82
8.12 PROGRAMMER WIRING 84
8.12.1 Programmer Function Block 84
8.12.2 PROGRAM EDIT Wiring Page 85
8.13 TO CREATE OR EDIT A PROGRAM 86
8.14 Example: To Access the Program Edit pages 86
8.14.1 PROGRAM EDIT (Program Page) Parameters 86
8.14.2 Fine and Coarse Holdback 87
8.15 Example: To Set Up Each Segment of a Program 88
8.15.1 PROGRAM EDIT (Segment) Parameters 88
8.16 TO RUN A SYNCHRONOUS PROGRAM 90
8.17 TO HOLD A PROGRAM 90
8.18 TO RESET A PROGRAM 90
8.18.1 From Digital Inputs 90
8.18.2 From Digital Communications 90
8.18.3 From the PROGRAM RUN Page 90
8.19 Example: To View the State of a Running Program 91
8.19.1 Run Parameter Tables 91
8.20 PROGRAMMER WIRING EXAMPLES 94
8.20.1 One Profile, Three Loops 94
8.20.2 Two Profiles, Two Loops 95
8.21 Asynchronous Programmer 96
8.22 Program Groups 97
8.23 Example: TO CONFIGURE AN ASYNCHRONOUS PROGRAMMER 98
8.24 Example: TO CONFIGURE ASYNCHRONOUS PROGRAMMER TYPE 99
8.24.1 Program GROUP Options Page 99
8.24.2 PROGRAM GROUPS Wiring Page 100

8.24.3 PROGRAM GROUPS Group Edit Page ... 100
8.25 PROFILE SETPOINT PAGES ... 101
8.25.1 PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE Options ... 101
8.25.2 PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE Wiring ... 103
8.25.3 PSP1 (2 OR 3) PROFILE Run General Pages ... 103
8.25.4 PSP1 (2 OR 3) PROFILE Run Segment Pages ... 106
8.25.5 PSP1 (2 OR 3) PROFILE Program Edit Parameters ... 107
8.25.6 PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE Segment Parameters ... 108
8.26 Example: To set up and run program groups ... 110
8.27 Example: To Copy a Program ... 111
8.28 Example: To Insert a Segment into a Program ... 112
8.29 Programmer error messages ... 112
8.30 runNING an asynchronous programmer ... 112
8.31 Example: To Run a Program Using the PROG Button ... 113
8.31.1 Asynchronous Programmer Status Bar ... 114
9. CHAPTER 9 DIGITAL PROGRAMMER ... 115
9.1 WHAT IS THE DIGITAL PROGRAMMER? ... 115
9.2 TO EDIT THE DIGITAL PROGRAMMER ... 116
9.2.1 Digital Program Edit Page ... 116
9.2.2 Digital Program 1 to 4 Page ... 117
9.3 POWER FAIL RECOVERY ... 117
9.4 Cascade Trim Mode – Earlier Controllers ... 118
9.4.1 Cascade Parameters (prior to April 2001) ... 118
10. CHAPTER 10 ALARM OPERATION ... 119
10.1 DEFINITION OF ALARMS AND EVENTS ... 119
10.1.1 Customisable Parameter Names ... 119
10.2 TYPES OF ALARM USED IN 2704 CONTROLLER ... 120
10.2.1 Full Scale High ... 120
10.2.2 Full Scale Low ... 120
10.2.3 Deviation High Alarm ... 120
10.2.4 Deviation Low Alarm ... 121
10.2.5 Deviation Band ... 121
10.2.6 Rate Of Change Alarm (Negative Direction) ... 122
10.2.7 Rate Of Change Alarm (Positive Direction) ... 122
10.3 BLOCKING ALARMS ... 123
10.3.1 Full Scale Low With Blocking ... 123
10.3.2 Full Scale High Alarm With Blocking ... 123
10.3.3 Deviation Band With Blocking ... 123
10.4 LATCHING ALARMS ... 124
10.4.1 Latched Alarm (Full Scale High) - Automatic ... 124
10.4.2 Latched Alarm (Full Scale High) - Manual ... 124
10.4.3 Grouped Alarms ... 125
10.5 HOW ALARMS ARE INDICATED ... 125
10.5.1 Alarm Delay Time ... 125
10.6 TO CONFIGURE AN ALARM ... 126
10.7 ALARM TABLES ... 127
10.7.1 ALARMS (Summary Page) ... 128
10.7.2 ALARMS *LP1 (2* or *3)* Page Parameters ... 129
10.7.3 ALARMS (PV Input Page) Parameters ... 130
10.7.4 ALARMS (An Input Page) Parameters ... 130
10.7.5 ALARMS (Module 1,3, 4, 5 & 6 Page) Parameters ... 130
10.7.6 ALARMS (User 1 to 8 Page) Parameters ... 131
10.8 ALARM WIRING EXAMPLES ... 132
10.8.1 Control Loop With High and Low Alarms ... 132
10.8.2 Loop Alarm Inhibited if Programmer not in Run ... 133
11. CHAPTER 11 LOOP SET UP ... 134
11.1 WHAT IS LOOP SET UP ... 134
11.1.1 LOOP SET UP (Options page) ... 135
11.2 SINGLE LOOP CONTROL ... 138
11.2.1 LOOP SET UP (Wiring page) SINGLE LOOP ... 138
11.3 SETPOINT DEFINITION ... 139
11.3.1 Setpoint Function Block ... 139
11.3.2 Setpoint Parameters ... 140
11.3.3 *LP1* SETUP (SP Aux) Page ... 141
11.4 PID CONTROL ... 142
11.4.1 Proportional Term ... 142
11.4.2 Integral Term ... 142
11.4.3 Derivative Term ... 142
11.4.4 High and Low Cutback ... 142
11.4.5 PID Block Diagram ... 143
11.4.6 Remote (External) OP Feedback ... 143

11.4.7 Analogue Value 143
11.5 GAIN SCHEDULING 144
11.5.1 To Configure Gain Scheduling:- 145
11.5.2 PID Parameters 145
11.5.3 PID (Aux) Parameters 147
11.6 OUTPUT PARAMETERS 148
11.6.1 Table of Output Parameters 148
11.7 MOTORISED VALVE CONTROL 149
11.7.1 Motor Parameters 149
11.8 DIAGNOSTICS 150
11.8.1 Diagnostic Page 150
11.9 DISPLAY 151
11.9.1 Display Page 151
11.10 CASCADE CONTROL 152
11.10.1 Overview 152
11.10.2 Full Scale Cascade Mode 152
11.10.3 Trim Mode 153
11.10.4 Auto/Manual Operation in Cascade 153
11.10.5 Cascade Controller Block Diagrams 154
11.10.6 LOOP SETUP (Wiring page) for Cascade Loop 155
11.10.7 Cascade Parameters 156
11.10.8 Cascade Wiring Example 157
11.11 RATIO CONTROL 158
11.11.1 Overview 158
11.11.2 Basic Ratio Control 158
11.11.3 Controller Configured For Ratio 159
11.11.4 Ratio Parameters 160
11.11.5 Ratio Wiring Example 161
11.12 OVERIDE CONTROL 162
11.12.1 Overview 162
11.12.2 Simple Override 162
11.12.3 Sensor Break Action 163
11.12.4 Sensor Break Type = Output (0) 163
11.12.5 Sensor Break Type = Hold (1) 163
11.12.6 Issues with Sensor Break 163
11.12.7 Downscale 163
11.12.8 Upscale 163
11.12.9 Controller Configured For Override 164
11.12.10 Override Parameters 165
11.12.11 Override Wiring Example 166
11.13 LOOP2 SET UP 167
11.14 LOOP3 SET UP 167
12. CHAPTER 12 TUNING 168
12.1 WHAT IS TUNING 168
12.2 AUTOMATIC TUNING 168
12.2.1 One-shot Tuning 168
12.3 TO AUTOTUNE CONTOL LOOP *LP1* 169
12.3.1 Carbon Potential Control 170
12.3.2 Autotune Parameters 171
12.3.3 To View the State of Autotune 171
12.4 MANUAL TUNING 172
12.4.1 Setting the cutback values 172
12.4.2 Integral action and manual reset 173
12.4.3 Valve Position Control 173
12.5 TUNING WHEN GAIN SCHEDULING IS USED 174
12.5.1 Tuning Procedure 174
12.6 CASCADE TUNING 175
12.6.1 To Tune a Full Scale Cascade Loop 176
12.6.2 To Tune a Trim mode Cascade Loop 177
13. CHAPTER 13 CONTROLLER APPLICATIONS 179
13.1 ZIRCONIA - CARBON POTENTIAL CONTROL 180
13.1.1 Temperature Control 180
13.1.2 Carbon Potential Control 180
13.1.3 Sooting Alarm 180
13.1.4 Automatic Probe Cleaning 180
13.1.5 Endothermic Gas Correction 180
13.1.6 Example of Carbon Potential Controller Connections 181
13.2 TO VIEW AND ADJUST ZIRCONIA PARAMETERS 182
13.2.1 Zirconia Parameters 182
13.2.2 Wiring Page 184
13.3 ZIRCONIA WIRING EXAMPLE 184
13.3.1 The Zirconia Function Block 184
13.3.2 Configuration of a Carbon Potential Control Loop 185

13.3.3 Probe Impedance ... 186
13.4 HUMIDITY CONTROL ... 187
13.4.1 Overview ... 187
13.4.2 Example Of Humidity Controller Connections ... 187
13.4.3 Temperature Control Of An Environmental Chamber ... 188
13.4.4 Humidity Control Of An Environmental Chamber ... 188
13.5 TO VIEW AND ADJUST HUMIDITY PARAMETERS ... 189
13.5.1 Humidity Options Parameters ... 189
13.5.2 Wiring Page ... 189
13.6 HUMIDITY WIRING EXAMPLE ... 190
13.6.1 The Humidity Function Block ... 190
13.6.2 Configuration of a Humidity Control Loop ... 190
13.7 Vacuum Controller ... 192
13.7.1 Vacuum Chamber Example ... 192
13.8 VACUUM CONTROLLER FUNCTIONALITY ... 193
13.8.1 Setpoints ... 193
13.8.2 Low Vacuum Gauge ... 193
13.8.3 High Vacuum Gauge ... 193
13.8.4 Gauge Linearisation ... 193
13.8.5 Roughing Pump Timeout ... 194
13.8.6 Leak Detection ... 194
13.8.7 Gauge Switchover ... 194
13.9 WIRING CONNECTIONS ... 195
13.10 SWITCH ON ... 196
13.11 OPERATION ... 197
13.11.1 To Access the Vacuum Controller Parameters ... 197
13.12 PARAMETER TABLES ... 198
13.12.1 High Vacuum Parameter Tables ... 198
13.12.2 Low Vacuum Parameter Tables ... 198
13.12.3 Backing Vacuum Parameter Tables ... 198
13.12.4 Gauge Switching Parameter Tables ... 199
13.12.5 Setpoint Parameter Tables ... 199
13.12.6 Pump Control Parameter Tables ... 199
13.12.7 Leak Detect Parameter Tables ... 200
13.12.8 Vacuum display Parameter Tables ... 200
13.13 CONFIGURATION LEVEL ... 201
13.13.1 To Configure the Vacuum Summary as the HOME Page ... 201
13.13.2 To Customise the Vacuum Summary Page ... 202
13.13.3 Vacuum Function Block ... 202
13.14 VACUUM CONTROLLER WIRING EXAMPLES ... 203
13.14.1 Simple Temperature and Vacuum Control ... 203
13.14.2 To Scale Vacuum Readout in Other Units ... 205
14. CHAPTER 14 INPUT OPERATORS ... 206
14.1 WHAT ARE INPUT OPERATORS ... 206
14.2 CUSTOM LINEARISATION ... 207
14.2.1 Compensation for Sensor Non-Linearities ... 207
14.3 TO VIEW AND ADJUST INPUT OPERATOR PARAMETERS ... 208
14.3.1 Input Operator Custom Linearisation Parameters ... 208
14.4 THERMOCOUPLE/PYROMETER SWITCHING ... 209
14.4.1 Input Operators Switch Over Parameters ... 209
14.5 TO SET UP INPUT OPERATORS (MONITOR) ... 210
14.5.1 Input Operator Monitor Parameters ... 210
14.6 BCD INPUT ... 210
14.6.1 Main Features ... 210
14.6.2 BCD Parameters ... 211
14.7 INPUT OPERATORS WIRING EXAMPLES ... 212
14.7.1 Switch Over Loop With Custom Linearised Input ... 212
14.7.2 Configuring the BCD Input to Select a Program ... 213
14.7.3 Holdback Duration Timer ... 214
15. CHAPTER 15 TIMER, CLOCK, TOTALISER, OPERATION ... 215
15.1 WHAT ARE TIMER BLOCKS? ... 215
15.2 TIMER TYPES ... 216
15.2.1 On Pulse Timer Mode ... 216
15.2.2 Off Delay Timer Mode ... 217
15.2.3 One Shot Timer Mode ... 218
15.2.4 Compressor or Minimum On Timer Mode ... 219
15.3 TO VIEW AND ADJUST TIMER PARAMETERS ... 220
15.3.1 Timer Parameters ... 220
15.4 THE CLOCK ... 221
15.4.1 Clock Parameters ... 221
15.5 TIME BASED ALARMS ... 222
15.5.1 Timer Alarm Parameters ... 222

15.6 TOTALISERS 223
15.6.1 Totaliser Parameters 223
15.7 APPLICATION EXAMPLE 224
15.7.1 Compressor Timer 224
16. CHAPTER 16 ADVANCED FUNCTIONS 225
16.1 PATTERN GENERATOR 225
16.1.1 Example: Programmer Event Outputs 225
16.2 ANALOGUE SWITCHES 227
16.2.1 To Set up an Analogue Switch 227
16.3 USER VALUES 228
16.3.1 To Access User Values 228
16.3.2 User Values Parameter Table 228
16.4 USER MESSAGES 229
16.4.1 To Configure A User Message 229
16.5 USER SWITCHES 230
16.5.1 To Configure User Switches 230
16.6 CUSTOM ENUMERATIONS 231
16.6.1 To Configure Custom Enumerations 231
17. CHAPTER 17 USER PAGES 234
17.1 WHAT ARE USER PAGES 234
17.2 USER PAGE STYLES 234
17.2.1 Single Loop User Page 234
17.2.2 Dual Loop User Page 235
17.2.3 Triple Loop User Page – Style 1 235
17.2.4 Triple Loop User Page – Style 2 236
17.2.5 Status Grid User Page 236
17.2.6 Bar Graph 237
17.2.7 Parameter List Style 237
17.3 To Configure a User page 238
17.3.1 To Display the User Page View 240
17.4 Auto manual operation from a user page 240
17.5 USER PAGE PARAMETER TABLES 241
17.5.1 Single Loop 241
17.5.2 Dual Loop 242
17.5.3 Triple Loop 1 and 2 243
17.5.4 Status Grid 244
17.5.5 Bar Graph 245
17.5.6 Parameter List 246
17.5.7 Blank Page 246
18. CHAPTER 18 ANALOGUE AND MULTIPLE OPERATORS 247
18.1 WHAT ARE ANALOGUE OPERATORS? 247
18.1.1 Analogue Operations 248
18.2 TO CONFIGURE ANALOGUE OPERATORS 249
18.2.1 Analogue Operator Parameters 249
18.3 Multiple operators 250
18.3.1 Cascading Multiple Input Blocks 250
18.4 To enable multi operators 251
18.5 to locate multi operator parameters 251
18.5.1 MULTI OPERATOR MultiOp1 (to 3) Page 251
18.5.2 Use of Default 252
19. CHAPTER 19 LOGIC OPERATORS 253
19.1.1 Logic Operations 253
19.2 TO CONFIGURE LOGIC OPERATORS 254
19.2.1 Logic Operator Parameters 254
19.3 PATCH WIRING 255
19.3.1 Patch Wiring Parameters 255
20. CHAPTER 20 DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS 256
20.1 WHAT IS DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS? 256
20.2 TO CONFIGURE COMMUNICATIONS PARAMETERS 257
20.2.1 H Module Parameters 257
20.2.2 J Module Parameters 258
20.3 DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS DIAGNOSTICS 259
20.4 Ethernet Technical Note 260
20.4.1 MAC address display 260
20.4.2 DHCP Settings 260
20.4.3 Instrument setup 260
20.4.4 Network Connection 260
20.4.5 Dynamic IP Addressing 260
20.4.6 Fixed IP Addressing 260
20.4.7 Additional notes 260

20.4.8 iTools Setup ... 261
20.5 Addendum:- 2704 Controller Specials number EU0678 ... 262
21. CHAPTER 21 2704 MASTER COMMUNICATIONS ... 263
21.1 INTRODUCTION ... 263
21.1.1 Broadcast Communications ... 263
21.1.2 Direct read/write ... 263
21.2 WIRING CONNECTIONS ... 264
21.2.1 Example Wiring Diagrams for Different Slaves ... 265
21.3 cross-board version ... 267
21.4 Basic Navigation ... 267
21.5 To Configure Parameters ... 268
21.6 To Configure Slaves ... 269
21.7 Parameter Tables ... 270
21.8 additional notes ... 272
21.8.1 IEEE in 2000 Series ... 272
21.8.2 Configuration mode ... 272
22. CHAPTER 22 STANDARD IO ... 273
22.1 WHAT IS STANDARD IO? ... 273
22.2 PV Input ... 273
22.2.1 To Scale the PV Input ... 273
22.2.2 Offset ... 274
22.2.3 To View and Change Input Filter Time ... 275
22.2.4 Standard IO PV Input Parameters ... 275
22.3 ANALOGUE INPUT ... 277
22.3.1 To Scale the Analogue Input ... 277
22.3.2 Standard IO *Analogue Input* Parameters ... 277
22.3.3 Sensor Break Value ... 278
22.4 FIXED RELAY OUTPUT ... 278
22.4.1 TO SCALE THE FIXED RELAY OUTPUT ... 278
22.5 THE FIXED RELAY OUTPUT PARAMETERS ... 280
22.5.1 Standard IO *AA Relay* Parameters ... 280
22.6 STANDARD IO DIG I/OPARAMETERS ... 281
22.6.1 Standard *Digital IO* Parameters ... 281
22.7 STANDARD IO DIAGNOSTIC PARAMETERS ... 283
22.7.1 Standard IO Diagnostic Parameters Table ... 283
23. CHAPTER 23 MODULE IO ... 284
23.1 WHAT IS MODULE IO? ... 284
23.2 MODULE IDENTIFICATION ... 285
23.2.1 Idents Page ... 285
23.3 MODULE IO PARAMETERS ... 286
23.3.1 DC Control and DC Retransmission ... 286
23.3.2 Relay Output ... 287
23.3.3 Triac Output ... 288
23.3.4 Triple Logic Output and Single Isolated Logic Output ... 289
23.3.5 Triple Logic and Triple Contact Input ... 290
23.3.6 Transmitter Power Supply ... 290
23.3.7 Transducer Power Supply ... 290
23.3.8 Potentiometer Input ... 291
23.3.9 PV Input ... 291
23.3.10 DC Input ... 293
23.3.11 Dual PV Input ... 294
23.3.12 4-Wire RTD Input ... 296
23.3.13 Dual DC Output ... 297
23.3.14 Dual DC Output Module IO Parameters ... 298
23.3.15 High Resolution Retransmission Output ... 299
23.3.16 High Resolution Output Module Parameters ... 303
23.4 TDS input Module ... 304
23.4.1 TDS Input Module Parameters ... 304
23.4.2 Cable Offset ... 305
23.5 MODULE SCALING ... 306
23.5.1 The PV Input ... 306
23.5.2 To Scale The PV Input:- ... 307
23.5.3 Output modules ... 308
23.5.4 To Scale A Control Output:- ... 309
23.5.5 Retransmission Output ... 310
23.5.6 To Scale the Potentiometer input ... 311
23.6 MODULE IO WIRING EXAMPLES ... 313
23.6.1 To Configure Module 1 Channel A to Run a Program ... 313
23.6.2 To Operate a Relay from a Digital Input ... 313
23.6.3 Zirconia Probe Impedance Measurement ... 314

24. CHAPTER 24 TRANSDUCER SCALING 316
24.1 WHAT IS TRANSDUCER SCALING? 316
24.2 SHUNT CALIBRATION 316
24.2.1 To Calibrate a Strain Gauge Bridge Transducer 317
24.3 LOAD CELL CALIBRATION 319
24.3.1 To Calibrate a Load Cell 319
24.4 COMPARISON CALIBRATION 320
24.4.1 To Calibrate a Controller Against a Second Reference 321
24.5 AUTO-TARE CALIBRATION 322
24.5.1 To Use the Auto-Tare Feature 322
24.6 TRANSDUCER SCALING PARAMETERS 324
24.6.1 Transducer Scaling Parameter Table 324
24.6.2 Parameter Notes 325
25. CHAPTER 25 IO EXPANDER 326
25.1 WHAT IS IO EXPANDER? 326
25.2 TO CONFIGURE IO EXPANDER 327
25.2.1 IO Expander parameters 327
26. CHAPTER 26 DIAGNOSTICS 328
26.1 WHAT IS DIAGNOSTICS? 328
26.1.1 Diagnostics Parameters 328
27. CHAPTER 27 CALIBRATION 330
27.1 USER CALIBRATION 330
27.2 PRECAUTIONS 330
27.3 PV INPUT 331
27.3.1 To Calibrate mV Range 331
27.3.2 Thermocouple Calibration 333
27.3.3 Voltage Calibration 333
27.3.4 High Z Voltage Calibration 333
27.3.5 3-Wire RTD Calibration 334
27.4 ANALOGUE INPUT 335
27.5 MODULE I/O 336
27.5.1 DC Output Module 336
27.5.2 PV Input Module 338
27.5.3 Dual PV Input Module 338
27.5.4 DC Input Module 338
27.5.5 TDS Input Module – Conductance Calibration 339
27.5.6 4-Wire RTD Module Calibration 340
27.6 TO RESTORE FACTORY CALIBRATION VALUES 342
28. CHAPTER 28 BOILER CONTROL 343
28.1 introduction 343
28.2 what iS TDs? 343
28.3 how is tds measured? 344
28.3.1 'Specific Conductance' 344
28.3.2 Temperature Correction Factor – $TCF_{25}(T_{Liquid})$ 344
28.3.3 Probe Factor (K) 345
28.3.4 Probe Design and TDS Module Operation 345
28.3.5 Probe Deterioration 345
28.3.6 Driver O/P 346
28.3.7 Bubbles 346
28.4 TDS Function Block 347
28.4.1 Installation versus Operation Modes 347
28.4.2 Probe Deterioration / Scaling 347
28.4.3 TDS Function Block Parameters 348
28.4.4 Further Parameter Descriptions 350
28.5 bottom blowdown Function Block 355
28.5.1 Bottom Blowdown of Multiple Boilers 355
28.5.2 Operating Principles of High Integrity Interlock Bus 356
28.5.3 Blowdown Sequence 357
28.5.4 Non high integrity Interlock Bus 357
28.5.5 Valve Switch Option 357
28.5.6 Bottom Blowdown Parameters 358
28.5.7 Example: To Perform a Boiler Blowdown 359
28.6 TDS Input Module 359
29. APPENDIX A ORDER CODE 360
29.1 hardware code 360
29.2 quick start code 361
29.3 Quick start code example: 361

30. APPENDIX B SAFETY AND EMC INFORMATION 362
30.1 Safety 362
30.1.1 Electromagnetic compatibility 362
30.2 GENERAL 362
30.3 Service and repair 362
30.3.1 Electrostatic discharge precautions 362
30.3.2 Cleaning 362
30.4 Installation Safety Requirements 363
30.4.1 Safety Symbols 363
30.4.2 Personnel 363
30.4.3 Enclosure of live parts 363
30.4.4 Isolation 363
30.4.5 Wiring 363
30.4.6 Power Isolation 364
30.4.7 Earth leakage current 364
30.4.8 Overcurrent protection 364
30.4.9 Voltage rating 364
30.4.10 Conductive pollution 364
30.4.11 Over-temperature protection 364
30.4.12 Grounding of the temperature sensor shield 364
30.5 Installation requirements for EMC 364
30.5.1 Routing of wires 365
31. APPENDIX C TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION 365
31.1 all analogue, dual and pv inputs 365
31.2 Precision PV input / Module 365
31.3 dual (probe) input module 366
31.4 Analogue input 366
31.5 analogue input module 366
31.6 Standard digital I/O 367
31.7 Digital input modules 367
31.8 Digital output modules 367
31.9 Analogue output Modules 367
31.10 Transmitter PSU 367
31.11 Transducer PSU 367
31.12 Dual DC Output 368
31.13 high resolution DC Output 368
31.14 Potentiometer input 368
31.15 TDS module 368
31.16 4-Wire RTD Input 369
31.17 Digital communications 369
31.18 Alarms 370
31.19 User messages 370
31.20 Control functions 370
31.21 Setpoint programmer 370
31.22 Advanced functions 370
31.23 General specification 370
31.24 graphical representation of errors 371
31.24.1 mV Input 371
31.24.2 Mid range high impedance Input 371
31.24.3 High Level Input 372
31.24.4 3-Wire RTD (Pt-100) Input type 372
31.24.5 Thermocouple Input type 373
32. APPENDIX D PARAMETER UNITS AND ADDRESSES 374
32.1 COMMONLY USED PARAMETERS 374
32.2 PARAMETER UNITS 377
32.3 MODULE STATUS MESSAGES 377

ISSUE STATUS OF THIS MANUAL

Issue 6 applise to firmware version 6.51. The manual has been re-formatted in style and size (now A4) to maintain consistency with other controller manuals. Updates also include Installation and Operation at the beginning of the document and corrections to cascade controller block diagram sections 11.10.4, and 11.10.5.

Issue 7 updates Directive numbers in section 30.1.

Related Handbooks

The following related handbooks may be downloaded from the Eurotherm web site **www.eurotherm.co.uk/**

2704 User Guide (shipped with the controller) Part No. HA029465.	Describes Installation and general operation
Series 2000 Communication Handbook Part No. HA026230	Describes EI-BiSynch and Modbus digital communications
Series 2000 Profibus-DP Communications Handbook Part No. HA026290	Describes Profibus digital communications
Series 2000 DeviceNet® Handbook Part No HA027506	Describes DeviceNet® digital communications

Handbook Supplements

2704CP Furnace Atmosphere Controller Supplement Part No. HA027734	Describes 2704 controller configured for carbon, dewpoint and oxygen control using Zirconia probes
2704VC Vacuum Furnace Controller Supplement Part No. HA027655	Describes 2704 controller configured for temperature and vacuum control of vacuum furnaces
2704MP Melt Pressure Controller Supplement Part No. HA027519	Describes 2704 controller configured for measurement and control of melt pressure in extruders
OEM Security Supplement Part No. HA027482	Describes the orderable option which allows an OEM to develop and install machine specific strategies
Boiler Controller Part No. HA028177	Specific clone file description

1. CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION

Thank you for selecting the 2704 High Performance Programmer/Controller. This chapter provides a general overview of your controller to help you to become more familiar with its use, and to ensure that it is the correct type for your process.

1.1 ABOUT THIS MANUAL

This manual is intended for those who wish to install, commission and configure the controller.

An Installation and Operation sheet is supplied with the controller part number HA029465.

Access to the parameters in the controller is achieved through five configurable levels of security:-

Level 1	Operation only. This level allows, for example, parameters to be changed within safe limits or programmers to be run, held or reset.
Level 2	Supervisory level. This level allows, for example, parameter limits to be pre-set or programs to be edited or created. (Default Passcode = 2)
Level 3	Commissioning level. This level is intended for use when commissioning the instrument. It allows, for example, calibration offsets to be adjusted to match transducer and transmitter characteristics. (Default Passcode = 3)
View Configuration	It is possible also to read the configuration of the controller at any level but the configuration cannot be changed. (Passcode = 2704)
Configuration	Configuration of the controller allows you to set up the fundamental characteristics of the controller so that it can be made to match the requirements of the process. (Default Passcode = 4)

1.1.1 The Structure Of This Manual

This chapter provides a general overview of the controller.

Chapter 2 describes installation and wiring.

Chapter 3 describes general operation in Operator levels.

Remaining chapters are associated with configuring the controller to specific applications and provide parameter tables with explanations of their meanings. These chapters follow the order in which the features appear in the controller and the navigation diagram in section 3.3.

1.2 WHAT IS 2704

The 2704 is a modular, fully configurable, high accuracy, high stability temperature and process controller which is available in a single, dual or three loop format.

It is supplied in accordance with an ordering code which can be found printed on a label on the side of the instrument case. A description of the order code is given in Appendix A of this guide and should be checked with that shown on the label.

A 120 x 160 pixel electroluminescent is used to show all process information. The user interface is menu driven via the display and seven front panel keys.

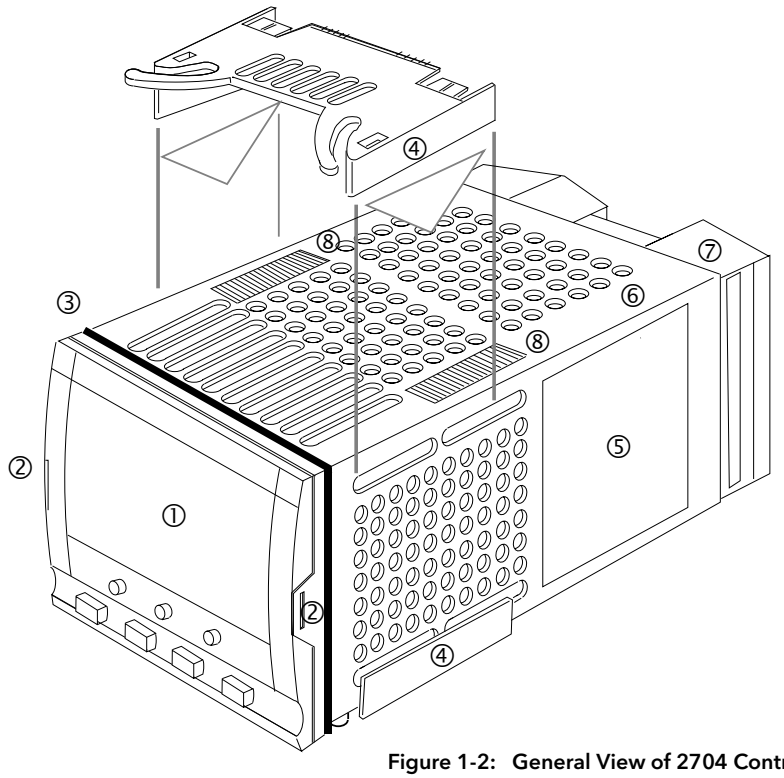
Figure 1-1 shows an example of this display when the instrument has been configured as a three loop controller.

Figure 1-1: General View of 2704 Controller Display

Features include:

- Advanced ramp/dwell programmer with storage of up to 50 programs.
- Application specific controllers such as Carbon Potential, Humididty and Melt Pressure
- A wide variety of inputs which can be configured, including thermocouples, Pt100 resistance thermometers and high level process inputs.
- Each loop can be defined to be PID, On/Off or motorised valve position and can control using a variety of strategies including single, cascade, override and ratio control.
- PID control outputs can be relay, logic, triac or dc with motorised valve position outputs being relay triac or logic.
- Auto tuning and PID gain scheduling are available to simplify commissioning and optimise the process

Configuration of the controller is explained in this Manual. Configuration is achieved either via the front panel operator interface or by using 'iTools' - a configuration package which runs under the Windows 95, or NT operating systems



KEY

① Display screen
② Latching ears
③ Panel sealing gasket
④ Panel retaining clips
⑤ Label
⑥ Sleeve
⑦ Terminal covers
⑧ Ratchets

Figure 1-2: General View of 2704 Controller

2. CHAPTER 2 INSTALLATION

The 2704 controller must be mounted and wired in accordance with the instructions given in this chapter and in the Installation sheet, Part No. HA029465 which is supplied with the controller.

The controller is intended to be mounted through a cut out in the front panel of an electrical control cabinet. Select a location where the minimum vibrations are present and the ambient temperature is within 0 and 50^{O}C (32 and 122^{O}F). The controller is retained in position using the panel mounting clips supplied.

All wires are connected to terminals at the rear of the instrument. Each block of six terminals is protected by a hinged cover which clicks into closed position.

Before proceeding please read Appendix B 'Safety and EMC Information'.

2.1 MECHANICAL INSTALLATION

2.1.1 Positioning

The controller can be mounted vertically or on a sloping panel of maximum thickness 15mm (0.6in). Adequate access space must be available at the rear of the instrument panel for wiring and servicing purposes. The outline dimensions are shown in below.

Take care not to cover ventilation holes in the top, bottom and sides of the instrument.

2.1.2 Outline dimensions Model 2704

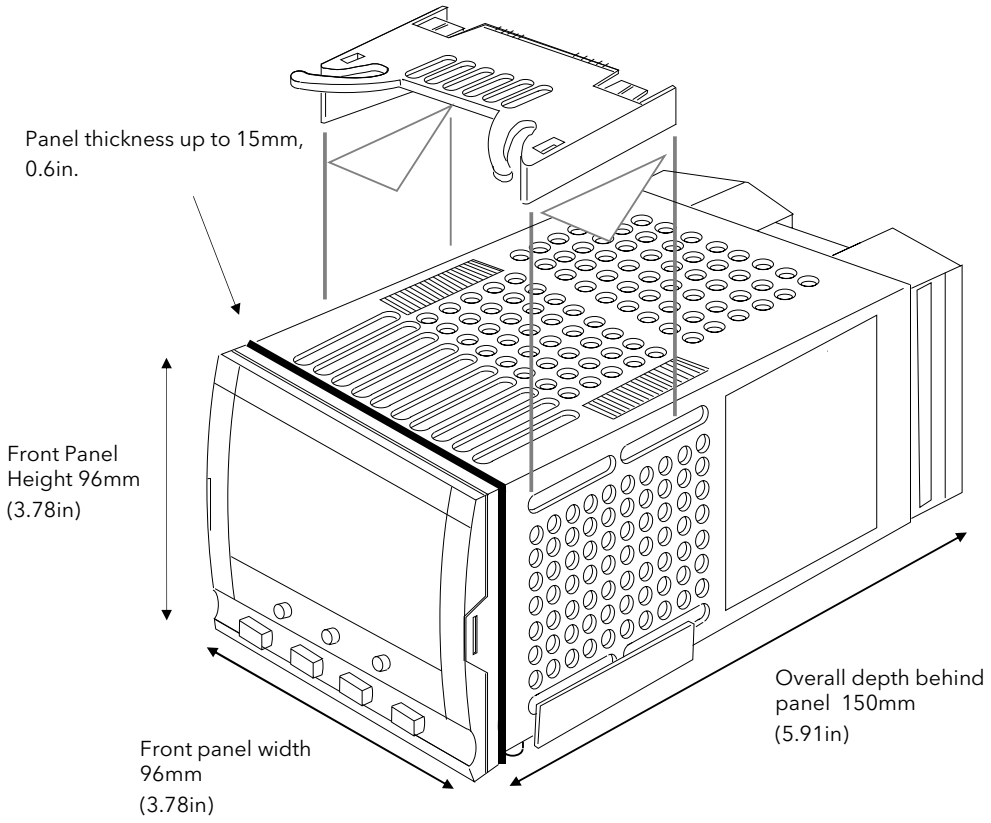


Figure 2-1: Outline Dimensions

2.1.3 Mounting the Controller

1. Prepare the panel cut-out to the size shown in Figure 2-2. Ensure that there is sufficient spacing between instruments as shown by the minimum dimensions given in Figure 2-2. Ensure also that the controller is not mounted close to any device which is likely to produce a significant amount of heat which may affect the performance of the controller.
2. Insert the controller through the panel cut-out.
3. Spring the upper and lower panel retaining clips into place. Secure the controller in position by holding it level and pushing both retaining clips forward.
4. Peel off the protective cover from the display.

Note:- If the retaining clips subsequently need removing, in order to extract the controller from the control panel, they can be unhooked from the side with either your fingers or a screwdriver.

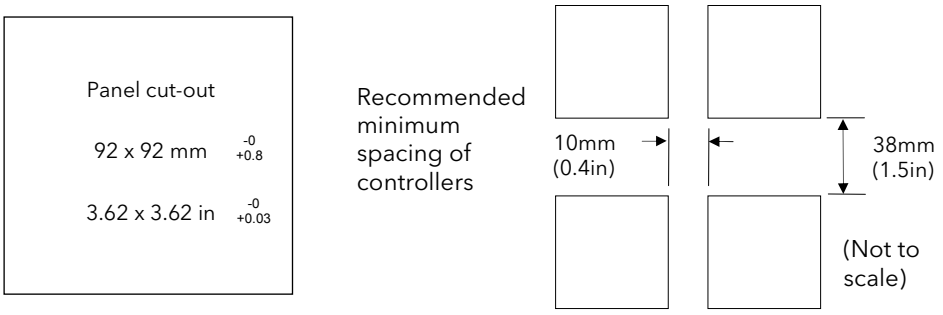


Figure 2-2: Panel Cut-out and Minimum Spacing Requirements

2.1.4 Unplugging and Plugging in the Controller

If required, the controller can be unplugged from its sleeve by easing the latching ears outwards and pulling the controller forward out of the sleeve. When plugging the controller back into its sleeve, ensure that the latching ears click into place.

It is recommended that the power to the controller is switched off when un-plugging or plugging the controller into its sleeve. This is to prevent premature wear on the controller connectors when current is flowing through them.

2.2 I/O MODULES

The 2704 controller has the facility to fit optional plug in modules. The connections for these modules are made to the inner three connector blocks as shown below.

The modules are:

- Communications modules.
- I/O modules

A list of available modules is given in Table 23-1.

These modules are fitted simply by sliding them into the relevant position as shown below.

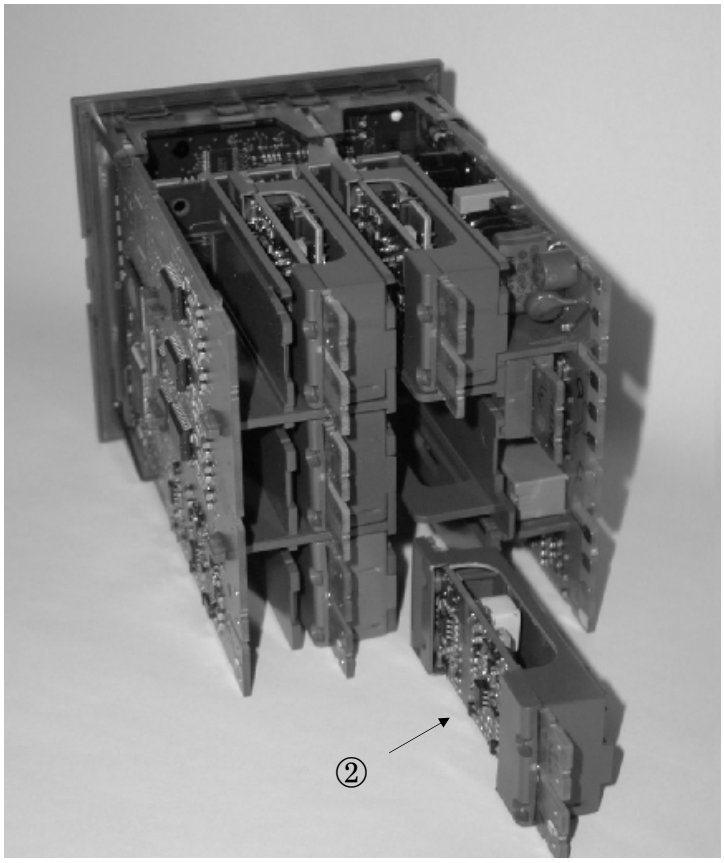


Figure 2-3: View of the Plug-in Modules

2.2.1 To Add or Change Modules

Should it be necessary to add, remove or change the position of modules the following procedure is recommended.

Remove the controller form its sleeve.

It is recommended that the controller is switched off before it is removed from its sleeve.

1. To remove the controller from its sleeve, push both latching ears ② (Figure 2-1) outwards and ease the controller forwards from its sleeve. It should not be necessary to use any tools for this.
2. To remove a module it may be gripped by the rear terminals and pulled out from its location.
3. To fit a new module gently insert it into the required location ensuring that the raised section on the plastic cover of the module slides into the slot in the retaining housing.
4. Slide the controller back into its sleeve and turn power back on.
5. After a brief initialisation period, the message **!:Module Changed** will appear on the display.
6. Press and together, as instructed, to acknowledge.
7. If the message **Bad Ident** is displayed this indicates that the wrong type of module has been installed, for example an unisolated logic output module from 2400 series.

2.3 WIRING

WARNING

You must ensure that the controller is correctly configured for your application. Incorrect configuration could result in damage to the process being controlled, and/or personal injury. It is your responsibility, as the installer, to ensure that the configuration is correct. The controller may either have been configured when ordered, or may need configuring now.

Before proceeding further, please read Appendix B, Safety and EMC information.

2.3.1 Electrical Connections

All electrical connections are made to the screw terminals at the rear of the controller. They accept wire sizes from 0.5 to 1.5 mm^2 (16 to 22 AWG) and should be tightened to a torque of 0.4Nm (3.5lbin). If you wish to use crimp connectors, the correct size is AMP part number 349262-1. The terminals are protected by a clear plastic hinged cover to prevent hands, or metal, making accidental contact with live wires.

2.3.2 Rear Terminal Layout

The rear terminal layout is shown in Figure 2-4, which identifies terminal designations and their functions. Refer to the individual diagrams to wire the controller to your requirements.

The two outer terminal strips have fixed hardware for all versions of the instrument, as follows:-

- A Process Variable input which can be configured for:-
    - Thermocouple, RTD, Pyrometer, Voltage (e.g. 0-10Vdc) or Milliamp (e.g. 4-20mA) plus vacuum – log10
- Seven Digital I/O, configurable as input or output
    - Inputs are logic (-1 to 35Vdc) or contact closure, and can be configured for:- Manual, Remote, Run, Hold, Reset, etc,
    - Outputs are open collector requiring an external power supply, and can be configured as event, status time proportioning or valve position outputs.
- One digital input
- An I/O expander which allows additional digital I/O via an external unit, or an extra digital input
- A changeover relay which can be configured as an alarm or event output. It cannot be configured as a time proportioning output
- An analogue input for volts (e.g. 0-10Vdc) or Milliamp (e.g. 4-20mA) signals to a second PID loop, setpoint, etc,. (This input can be characterised to match a particular curve from a transmitter. It cannot accept thermocouple inputs directly)
- Power supply to the unit. The supply may be 85 - 264Vac 50 or 60 Hz,

The three central terminal strips are for optional plug in modules, as follows:-

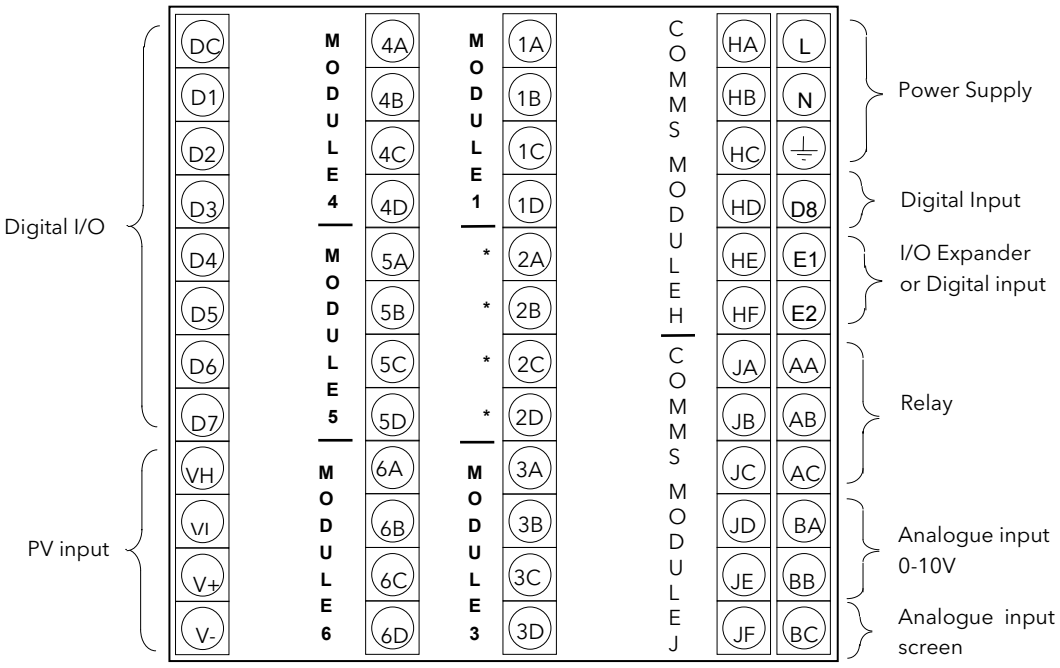
- Terminals marked 2A to 2D are reserved for a Memory Module only. No connections should be made to these terminals
- Terminals marked HA to HF are connections for optional EIA232, EIA485, or EIA422 communications modules
- Terminals marked JA to JF are connections for an optional slave communications module or second communications port used to communicate with other instruments

  The modules fitted into the above two communications slots can be inter-changed

For a full list of available modules refer to the Ordering code - Appendix A and the Technical Specification - Appendix C.

Warning:- Take care that mains supplies are connected only to the power supply terminals (100 to 240Vac only), the fixed relay terminals or to relay or triac modules. Under no circumstances should mains supplies be connected to any other terminals.

2.4 REAR TERMINALS



The functionality of the two outer rows of terminals is common to all instrument variants, as follows:-

PV input	VH, VI, V+, V-
Analogue input	BA, BB
I/O expander	E1, E2
Fixed changeover relay	AA, AB, AC
Digital I/O channels	D1 to D8 and DC
Power supply	L, N, Earth

*** Terminals 2A, 2B, 2C, 2D must not be wired to.**

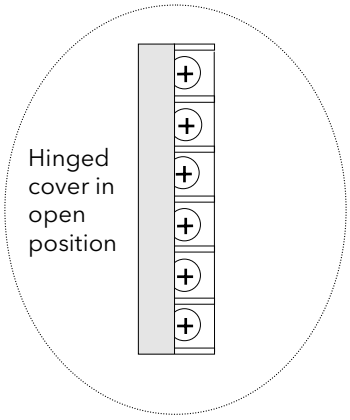


Figure 2-4: Rear Terminal Connections

2.5 STANDARD CONNECTIONS

2.5.1 Power Supply Wiring

Controllers supplied with the VH Supply Voltage option are suitable for connection to a power supply of between 100 and 240Vac, -15%, +10%, 48 to 62 Hz.

Controllers supplied with the VL Supply Voltage option are suitable for connection to a power supply of between 24Vac/dc , -15%, +10%, 48 to 62Hz or 20 to 29Vdc.

It is the users responsibility to provide an external fuse or circuit breaker. Suitable fuses are :

For 100 to 240 volt supply Fuse type T (EN60127 time-lag type) rated at 1A ,250V
24 volt supply Fuse type T (EN60127 time-lag type) rated at 4A, 250V

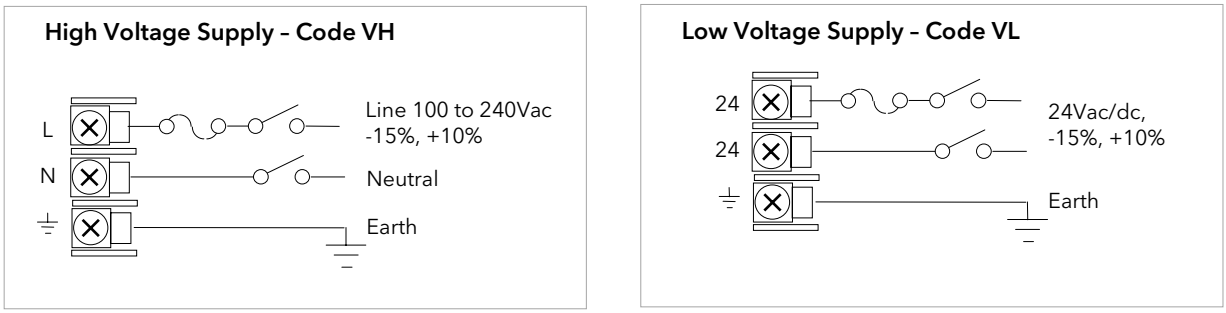


Figure 2-5: Supply Voltage Connections

2.5.2 Relay Output

A single changeover relay is provided as standard. It can be configured as a control output or an alarm or event output.

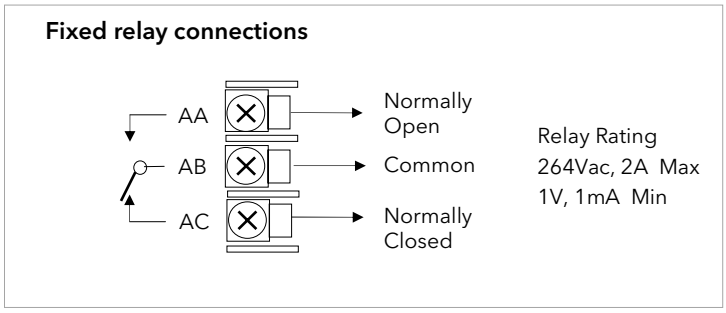
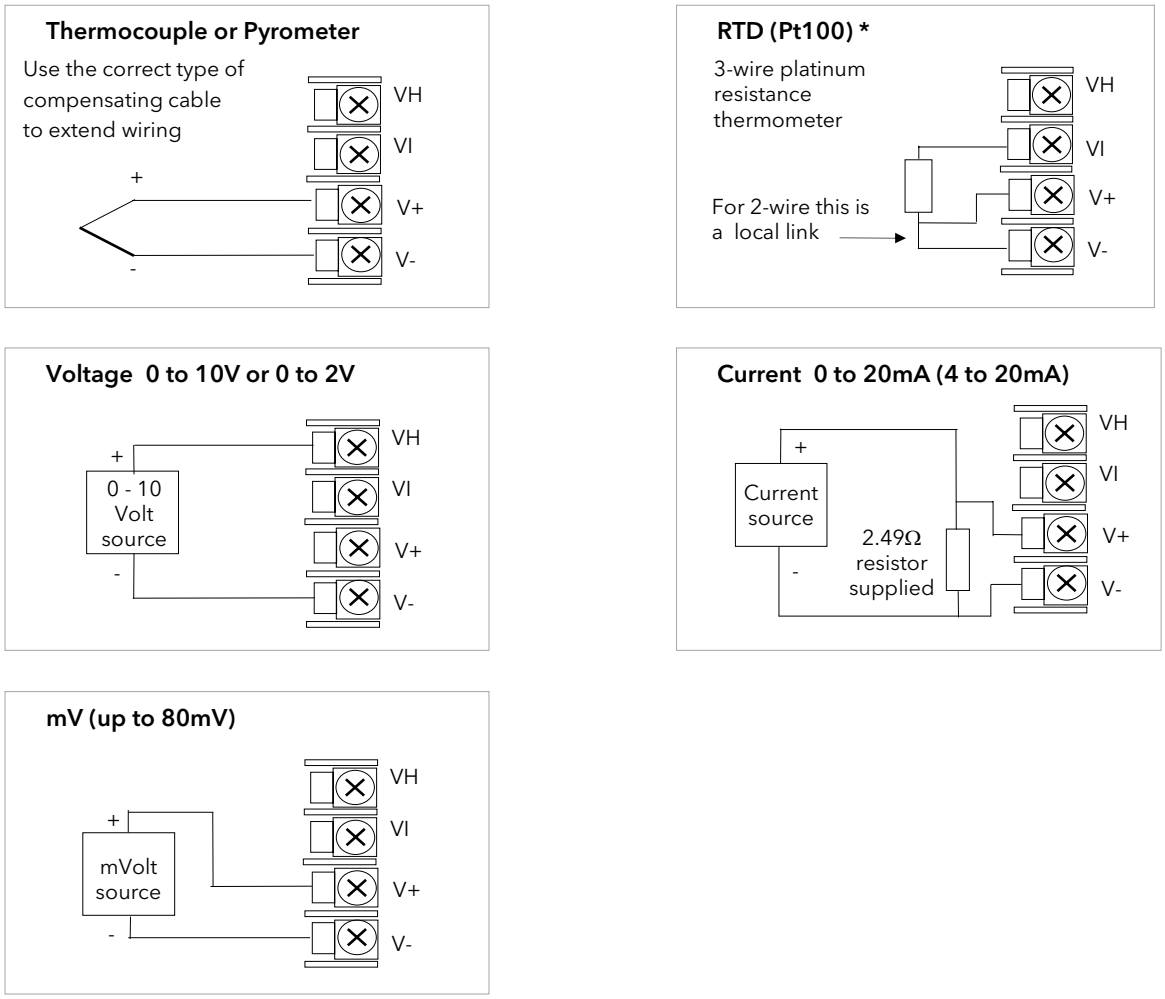


Figure 2-6: Wiring Connections For Fixed Relay Output

2.5.3 Sensor Input Connections

The fixed PV input can accept a range of sensors including Thermocouple, RTD (Pt100), Pyrometer, Voltage (e.g. 0-10Vdc) or Milliamp (e.g. 4-20mA) signals. These sensors are used to provide inputs to Control Loop 1.



* Note: This connection is shown for 26 and 2700 series controllers. It is not the same as 2400 and 2200 series controllers.

Figure 2-7: Wiring Connections For PV Input

2.5.4 Analogue Input Connections

The analogue input is supplied as standard and is intended to accept 0 to 10 Vdc from a voltage source. A milli-amp current source can be used by connecting a 100Ω resistor across terminals BA and BB. This input can be used as a remote setpoint input, remote setpoint trim or as a high level PV input to a control loop. This input is not isolated from the digital IO.

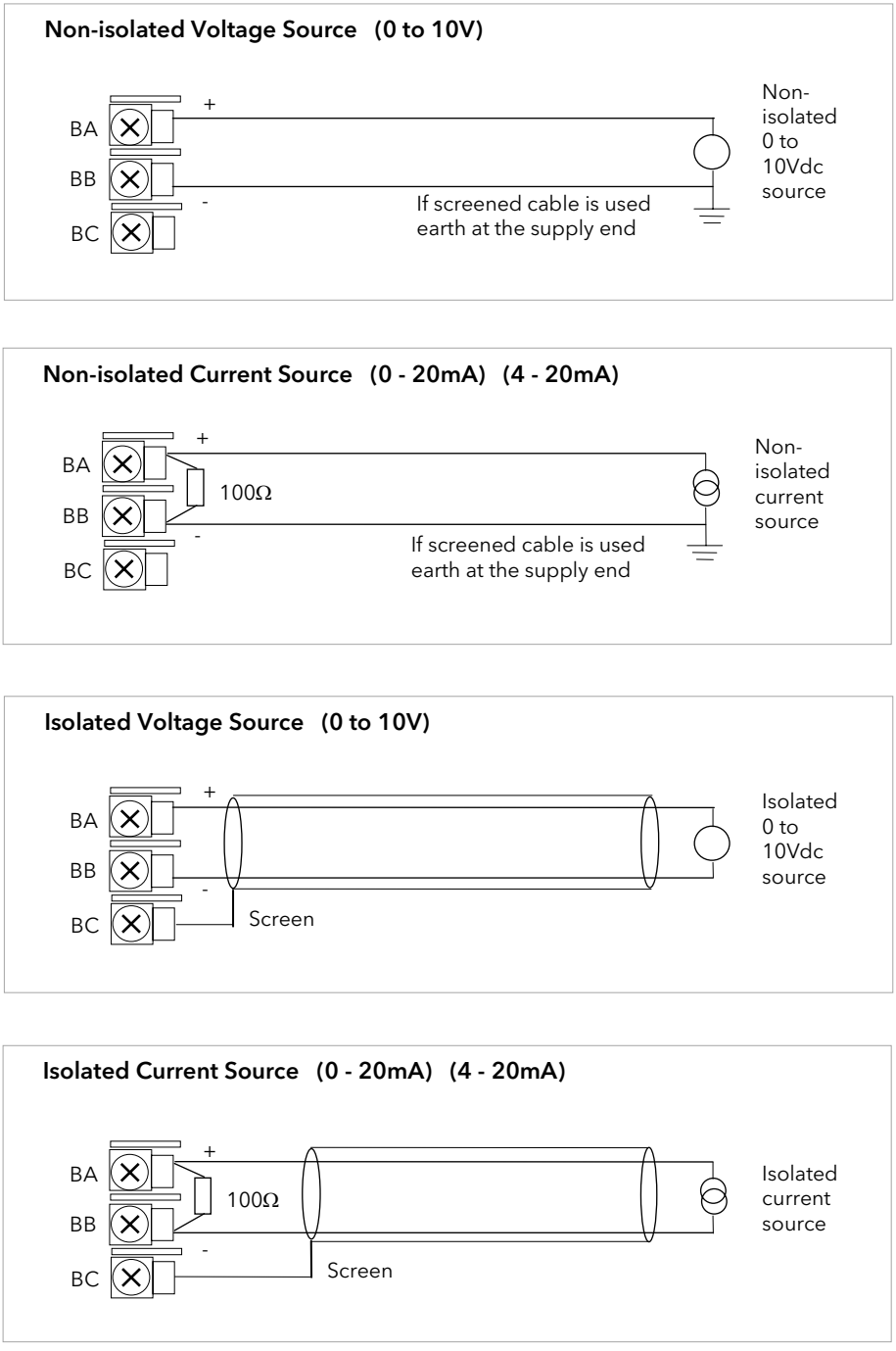


Figure 2-8: Wiring Connections For Analogue Input

2.5.5 I/O Expander (or Additional Digital Input)

An I/O expander (Model No 2000IO) can be used with the 2704 to allow the number of I/O points to be increased by a further 20 digital inputs and 20 digital outputs. Data transfer is performed serially via a two wire interface from instrument to expander.

If the expander unit is not required it is possible to use terminals E1 & E2 as a secondary digital input. These terminals are not part of the digital I/O terminals D1 to D8 and if used in this way connect a 2K2, ¼ W limiting resistor in series with the input, see Figure 2-9.

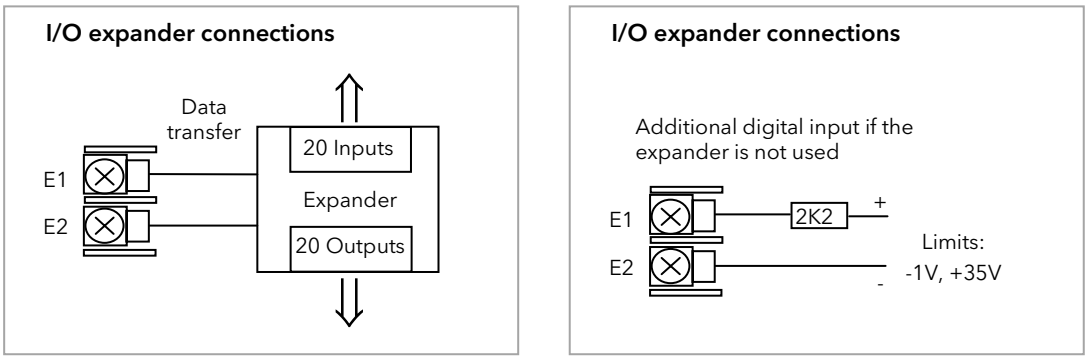


Figure 2-9: Wiring Connections for the I/O Expander

For details of the IO Expander refer to the Operating Instructions HA026893. The connections for this unit are reproduced below for convenience.

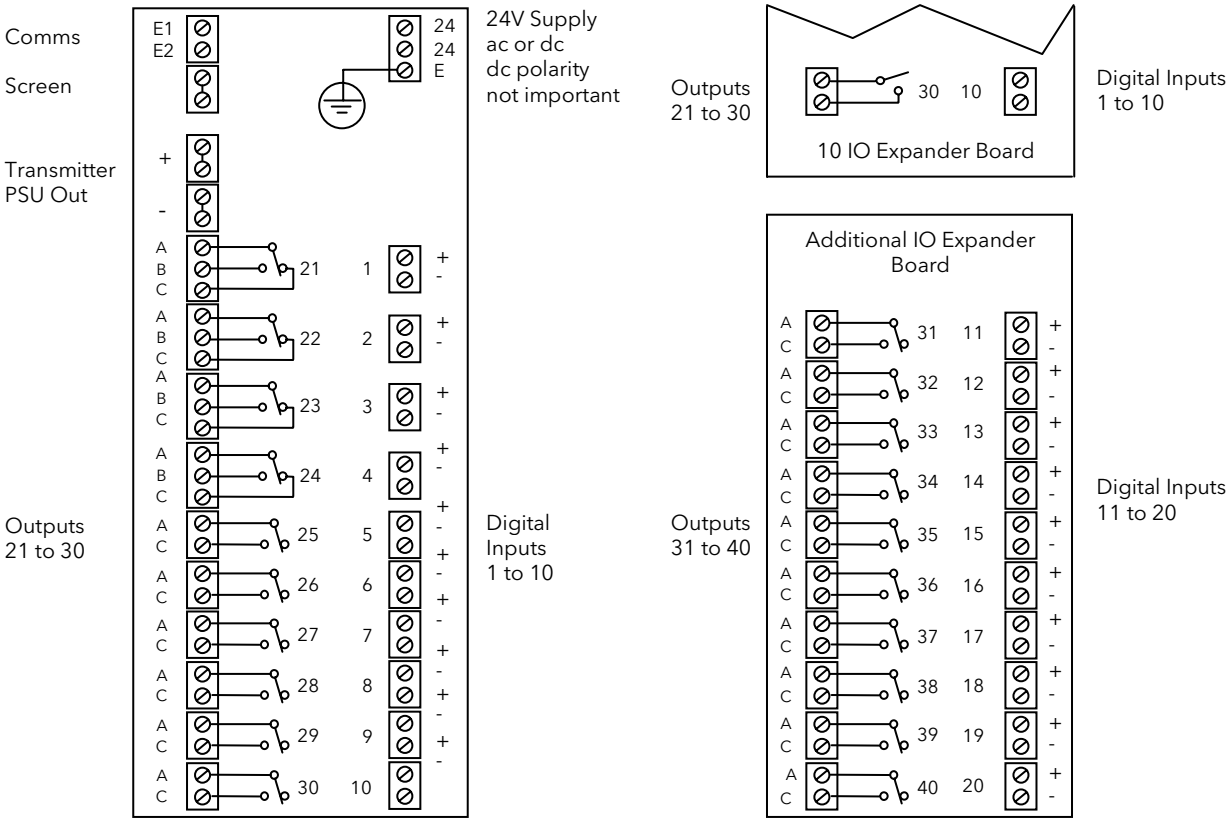


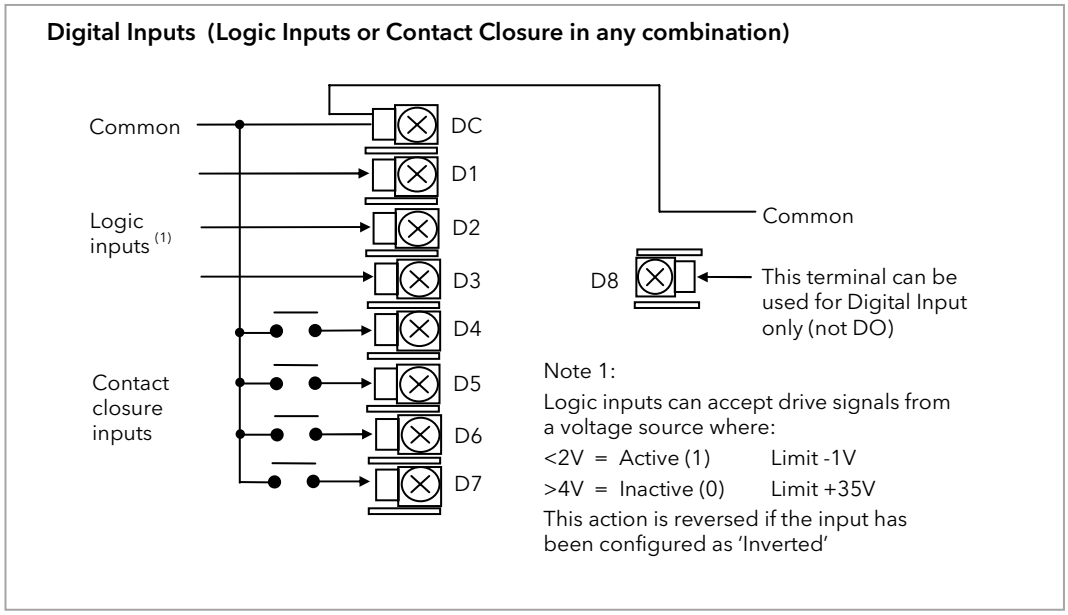
Figure 2-10: IO Expander Connections

2.5.6 Digital I/O

Eight digital I/O connections are provided as standard. They can be individually configured as:

1. Inputs Run, Hold, Reset, Auto/Manual, etc, - logic or contact closure.
2. Outputs Configurable as Control outputs, Programmer Events, Alarms, etc.

Digital IO is not isolated from instrument ground.



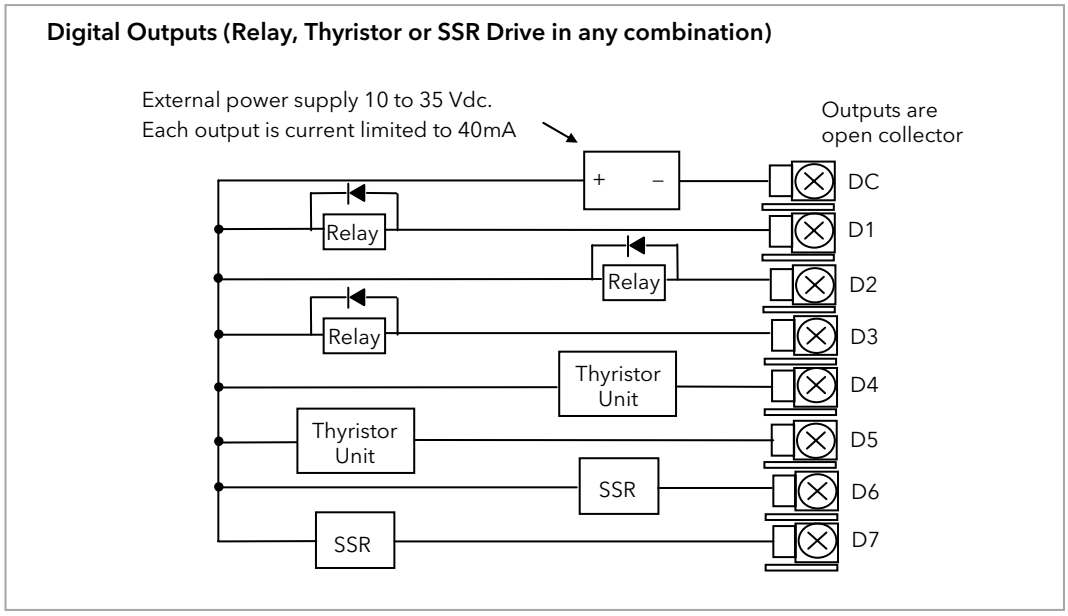


Figure 2-11: Wiring Connections for Digital I/O

2.6 OPTIONAL PLUG IN MODULE CONNECTIONS

2.6.1 Digital Communications Connections

Digital Communications modules can be fitted in two positions in the 2704 controller. The connections being available on HA to HF and JA to JF depending on the position in which the module is fitted. The two positions could be used, for example, to communicate with a configuration package, such as 'iTools', on one position and to a PC running a supervisory package on the second position.

The connections shown in the following diagrams show EIA232, 2-wire EIA 485, 4-wire EIA 422 and master/slave communications to a second controller.

The diagrams show connections for 'bench top test' wiring. For a full description of the installation of a communications link, including line resistors, see Communications Handbook, Part No. HA026230, and EMC Installation Guide, part no. HA025464.

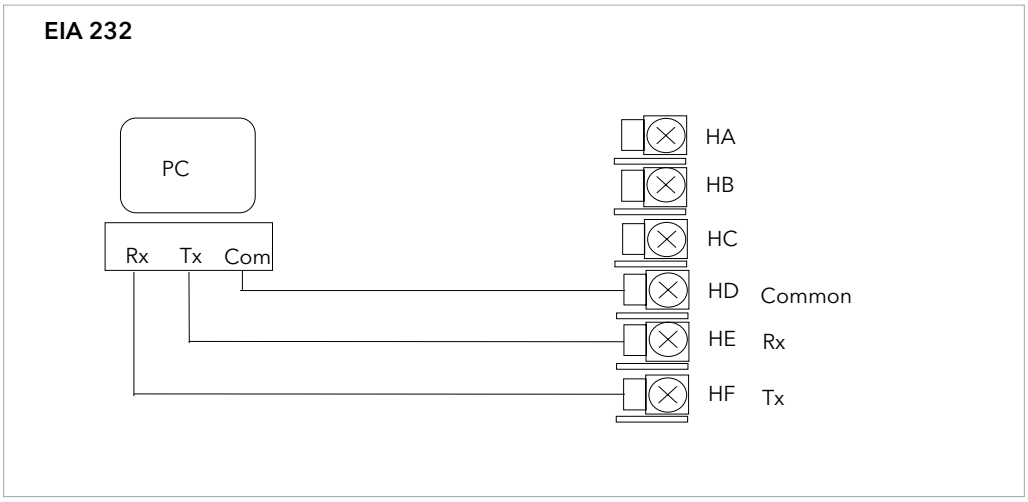


Figure 2-12: EIA232 Communications Connections

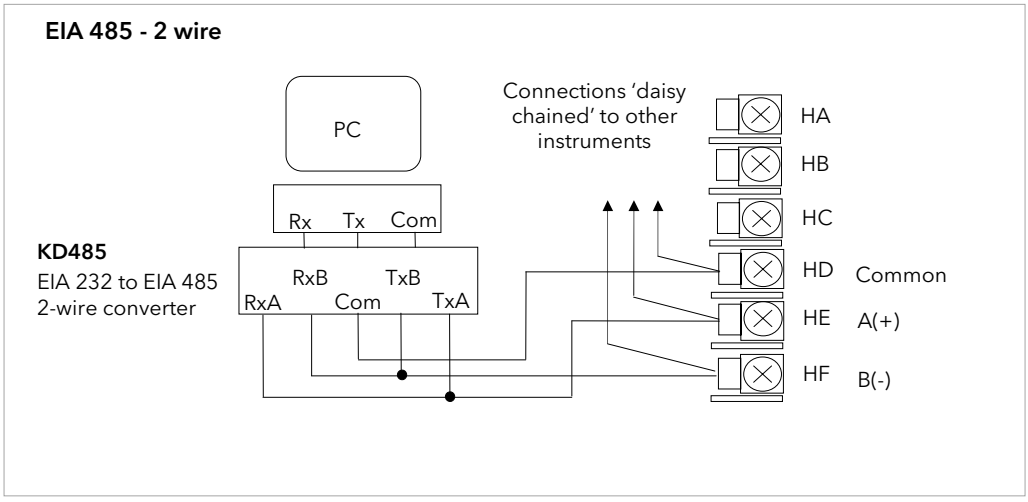


Figure 2-13: EIA 485 2- Wire Communications Connections

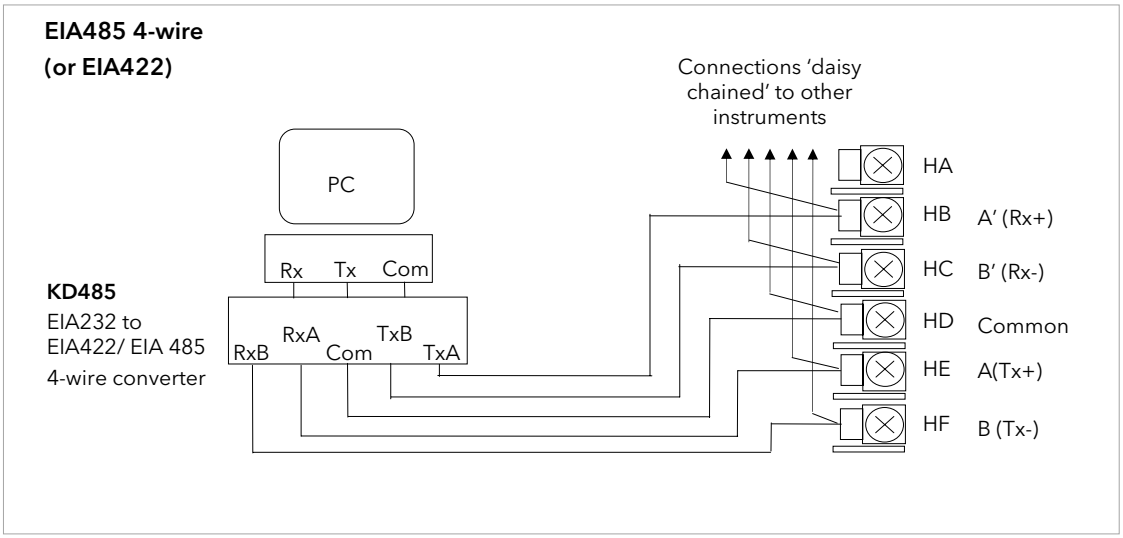


Figure 2-14: RS485 4-Wire Communications Connections

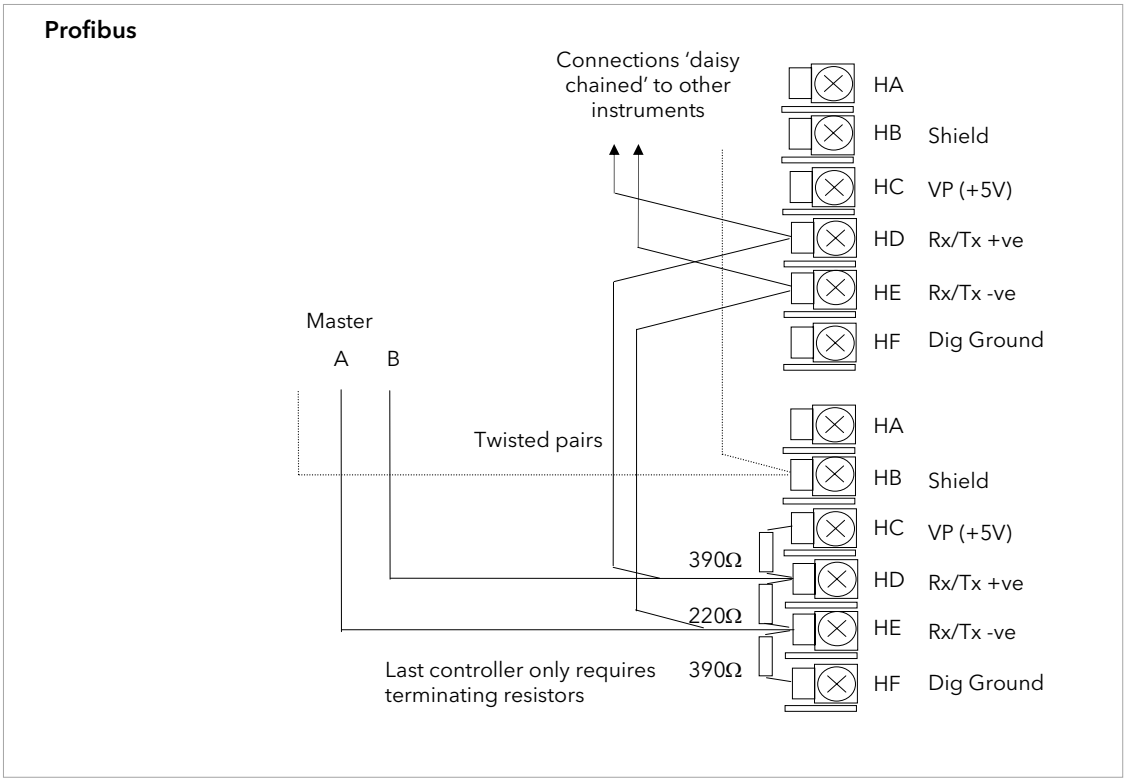


Figure 2-15: Profibus Wiring Connections

2.6.2 DeviceNet® Wiring

This section covers the DeviceNet digital communications option. To configure DeviceNet communications refer to the DeviceNet Handbook Part No HA027506.

2.6.2.1 DeviceNet Terminal Functions

Terminal Reference	CAN Label	Color Chip	Description
HA	V+	Red	DeviceNet network power positive terminal. Connect the red wire of the DeviceNet cable here. If the DeviceNet network does not supply the power, connect to the positive terminal of an external 11-25 Vdc power supply.
HB	CAN_H	White	DeviceNet CAN_H data bus terminal. Connect the white wire of the DeviceNet cable here.
HC	SHIELD	None	Shield/Drain wire connection. Connect the DeviceNet cable shield here. To prevent ground loops, the DeviceNet network should be grounded in only one location.
HD	CAN_L	Blue	DeviceNet CAN_L data bus terminal. Connect the blue wire of the DeviceNet cable here.
HE	V-	Black	DeviceNet network power negative terminal. Connect the black wire of the DeviceNet cable here. If the DeviceNet network does not supply the power, connect to the negative terminal of an external 11-25 Vdc power supply.
HF			Connect to instrument earth

i Power taps are recommended to connect the DC power supply to the DeviceNet trunk line. Power taps include:

A Schottky Diode to connect the power supply V+ and allows for multiple power supplies to be connected.
2 fuses or circuit breakers to protect the bus from excessive current which could damage the cable and connectors.
The earth connection, HF, to be connected to the main supply earth terminal.

2.6.2.2 Wiring Interconnections for DeviceNet Communications

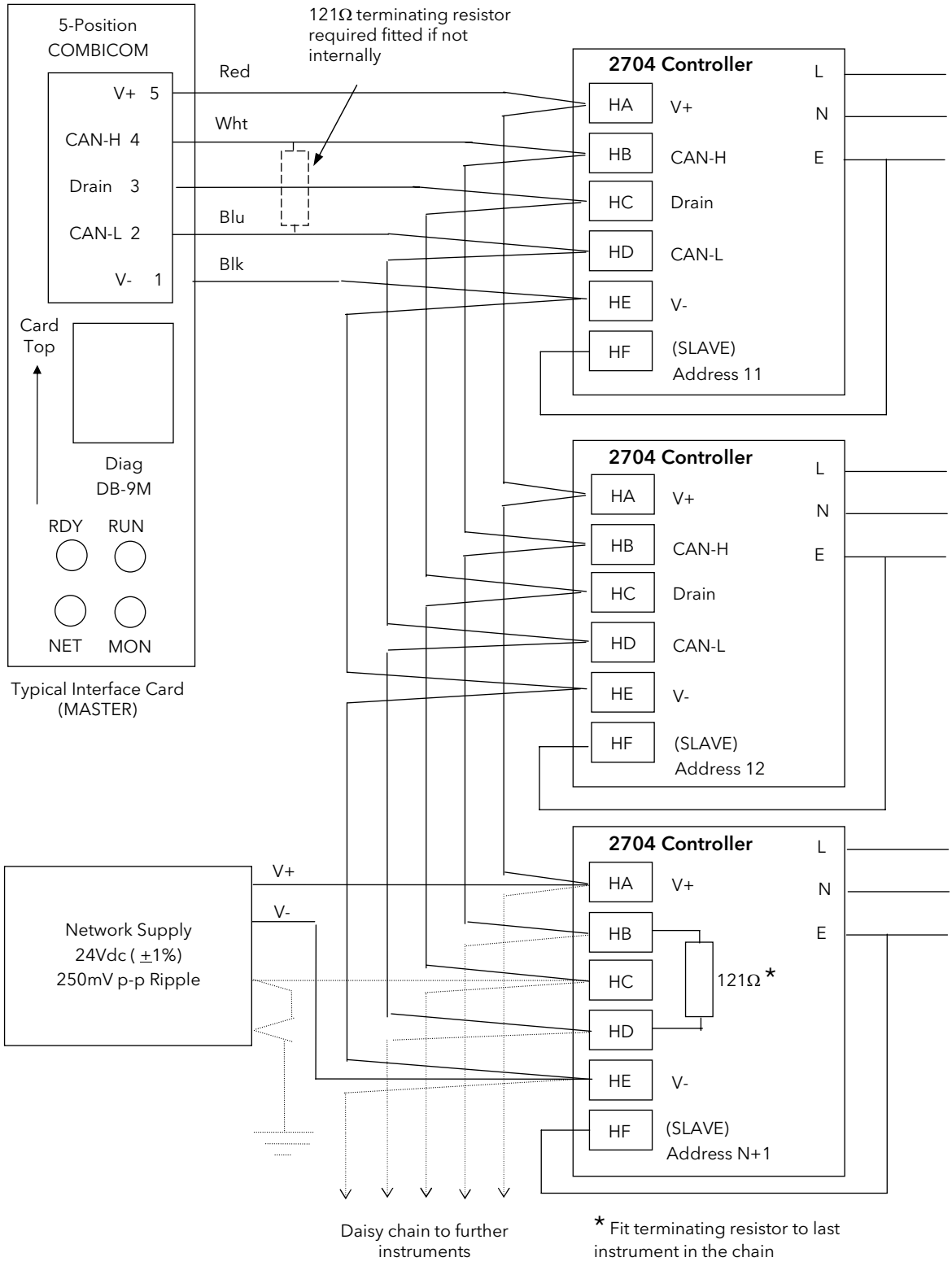


Figure 2-16: Devicenet Wiring

2.6.3 Ethernet Connections

When the controller is supplied with the Ethernet communications option a special cable assembly is also supplied. This cable must be used since the magnetic coupling is contained within the RJ45 connector. It consists of an RJ45 connector (socket) and a termination assembly which must be connected to terminals HA to HF.

Use standard CAT5 cable to connect to the Ethernet 10BaseT switch or hub. Use cross-over cable only if connecting one-to-one with a PC acting as network master

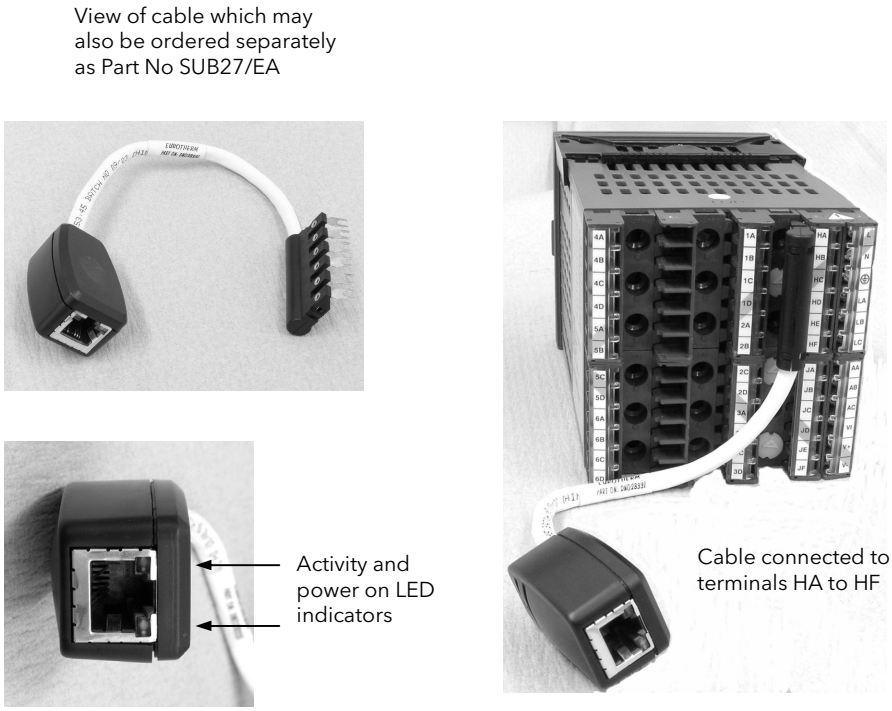
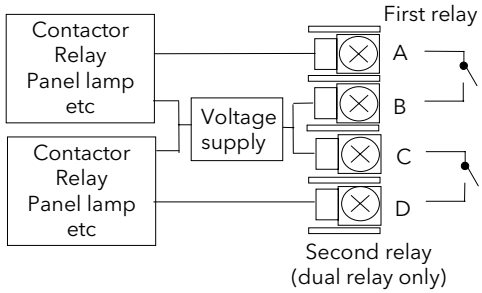
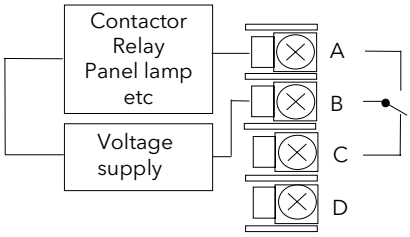
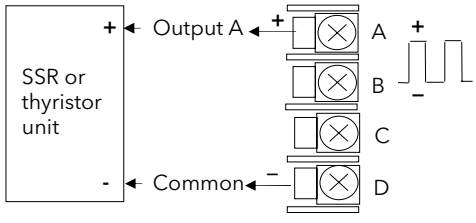
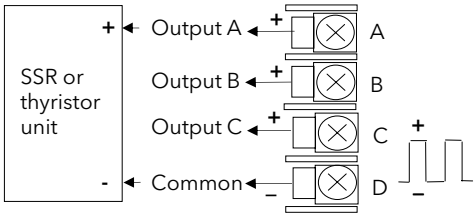

View of cable which may also be ordered separately as Part No SUB27/EA
Activity and power on LED indicators
Cable connected to terminals HA to HF

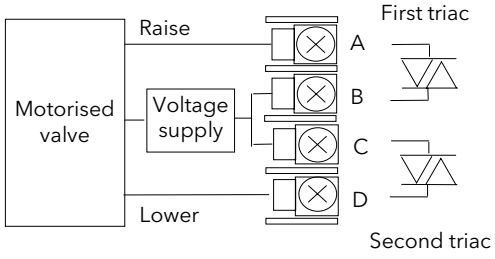
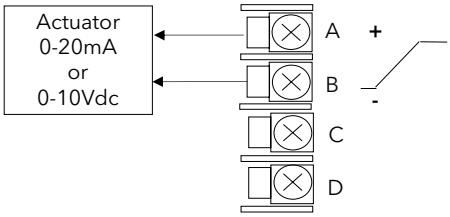
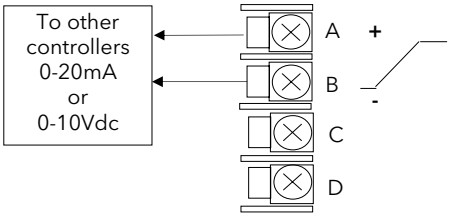
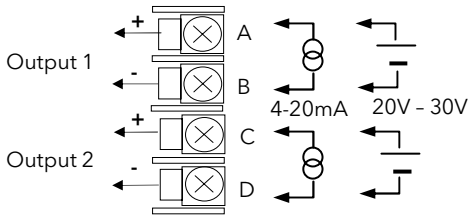
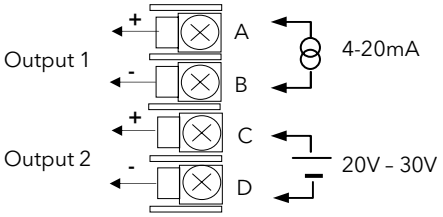
Figure 2-17: Ethernet Connections

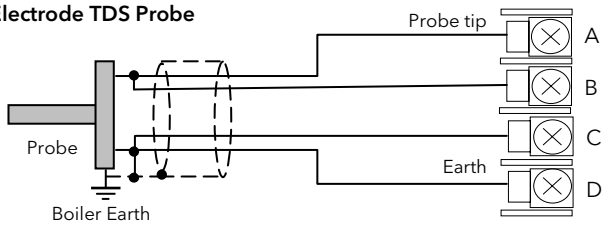
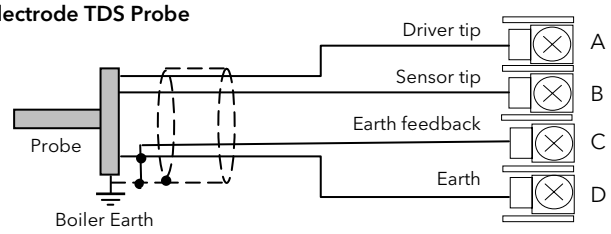
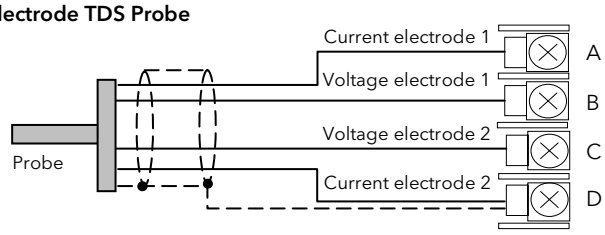
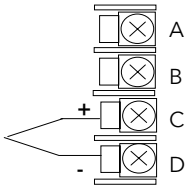
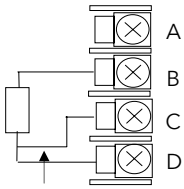
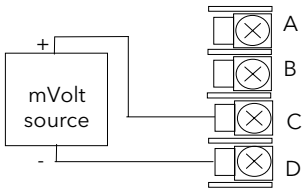
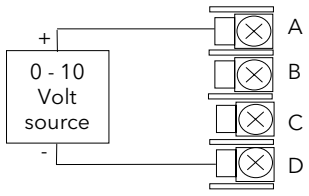
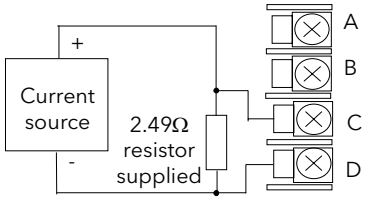
2.6.4 I/O Modules

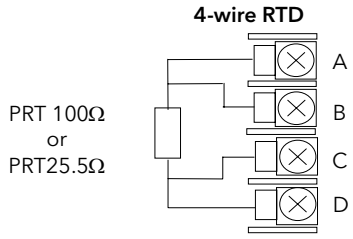
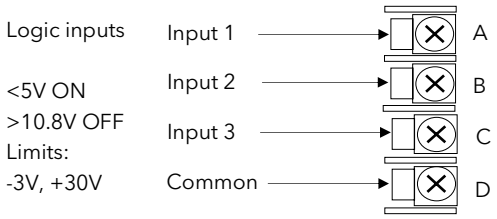
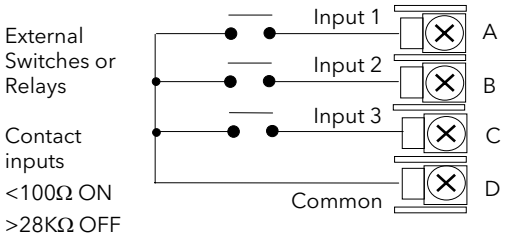
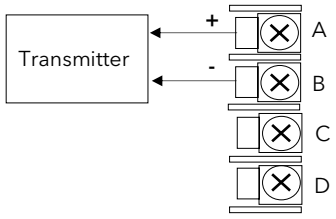
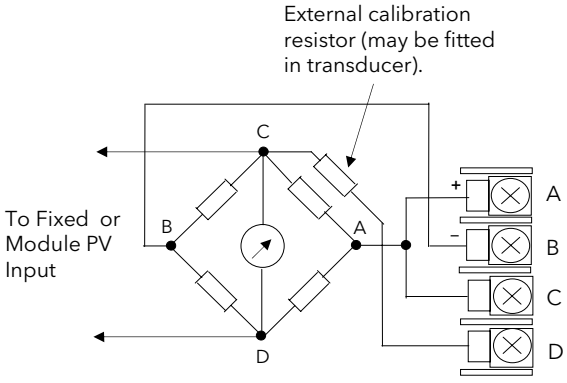
The 2704 controller contains five positions in which 4-terminal I/O modules can be fitted. These positions are marked Module 1, Module 3, Module 4, Module 5, Module 6, in Figure 2-4. Module 2 is reserved for the Memory Module which can only be fitted in this position. To find out which modules are fitted check the ordering code which is found on a label on the side of the instrument.

Any module, listed in this section, can be fitted in any position, except the PV input - limited to positions 3 and 6 only; and the Analogue Input module - cannot be fitted in slot 5. Care should be taken, therefore, to ensure that modules are fitted as expected from the order code. The instrument can be interrogated in 'View Config' level to locate the positions in which the modules are fitted. See Chapter 6, Access Levels. If modules have been added, removed or changed it is recommended that this is recorded on the instrument code label.

I/O Module	Typical usage	H/W Code	Connections and examples of use
Note: The order code and terminal number is pre-fixed by the module number. Module 1 is connected to terminals 1A, 1B, 1C, 1D; module 3 to 3A, 3B, 3C, 3D, etc.			
Relay (2 pin) and Dual Relay max 264Vac, 2A, min 12V, 100mA	Heating, cooling, alarm, program event, valve raise, valve lower	R2 and RR	
Change Over Relay max 264Vac, 2A, min 12V, 10mA	Heating, cooling, alarm, program event, valve raise, valve lower	R4	
Isolated Single Logic Output 18Vdc at 24mA max	Heating, Cooling, Program events	LO	
Triple Logic Output (18Vdc at 8mA max. per channel)	Heating, cooling, program events	TP	

I/O Module	Typical usage	H/W Code	Connections and examples of use
Triac and Dual Triac (0.7A, 30 to 264Vac combined rating)	Heating, cooling, valve raise, valve lower	T2 and TT	 Note: Dual relay modules may be used in place of dual triac. **Note:-** **The combined current rating for the two triacs must not exceed 0.7A.**
DC Control (10Vdc, 20mA max)	Heating, cooling e.g. to a 4-20mA process actuator	D4	
DC Re-transmission (10Vdc, 20mA max)	Logging of PV, SP, output power, etc., (0 to 10Vdc, or 0 to 20mA)	D6	
Dual DC Output (each channel can be 4-20mA or 24Vdc power supply)	Control output 12 bit resolution Can only be fitted in slots 1,4 or 5	DO	
High Resolution DC Output (one 15 bit 4-20mA plus one 24V power supply	Retransmission in 'feedback mode' Fitted in slots 1,4 or 5 only	HR	

I/O Module	Typical usage	H/W Code	Connections and examples of use
TDS Module **The diagrams show general wiring connections.** **Connection terminals vary from supplier to supplier.** **Particular attention must be made to grounding and screen connections as recommended by the supplier**	TDS Control in boilers		**2 Electrode TDS Probe**  **3 Electrode TDS Probe**  **4 Electrode TDS Probe** 
PV Input (Modules 3 & 6 only) and **Analogue Input** (Modules 1, 3, 4 & 6 only)	Second or third PV input mV, V, mA, TC, RTD (Pt100) Zirconia probe Second or third PV input mV, mA, TC, RTD (Pt100)	PV AM	**Thermocouple**  **3-wire RTD**  For 2-wire this is a local link **AM (up to 100mV)**  **Voltage 0 to 10V or 0 to 2V**  **Current 0 to 20mA (4 to 20mA)** 

I/O Module	Typical usage	H/W Code	Connections and examples of use
4-Wire PRT Input (Modules 3 & 6 only)	Two special versions of the PV Input module provide high accuracy, high stability temperature measurement. Code PH is PRT 100Ω Code PL is PRT 25.5Ω	PH PL	 Use screened wires if longer than 30 metres
Triple Logic Input	Events e.g. Program Run, Reset, Hold	TL	
Triple Contact Input	Events e.g. Program Run, Reset, Hold	TK	
24V Transmitter Supply (20mA)	To power an external transmitter	MS	
Transducer Power Supply	Provide 5V or 10Vdc to power Strain Gauge Transducer + Shunt Contact	G3 or G5	 Note: To minimise noise pick up it is recommended that screened cables are used for strain gauge power supply connections.

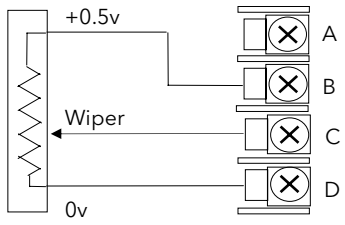
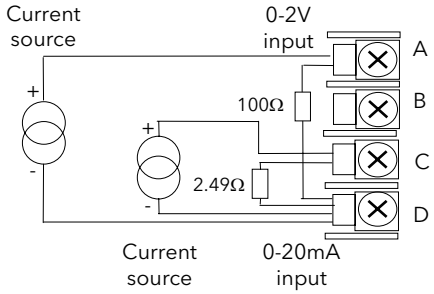
I/O Module	Typical usage	H/W Code	Connections and examples of use
Potentio-meter Input (100Ω to 15KΩ)	Motorised valve position feedback Remote SP	VU	
Dual PV Input (Modules 3 & 6 only)	To accept two inputs from a high level and a low level source. The two inputs are not isolated from each other.	DP	 The common connections to terminal D must be returned separately to D as shown in the dual current example above.

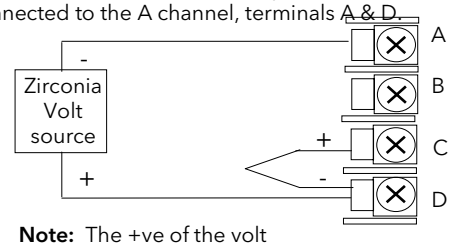
Figure 2-18: Wiring Connections for IO Modules

2.7 TO CONNECT ZIRCONIA (DUAL SIGNAL) PROBE

A dual signal probe, such as a Zirconia probe, will normally be connected to a Dual PV Input module (Code DP). The module presents two channels, A and C, where A is the voltage input and C is the mV, thermocouple, RTD or mA input.

Example 1 shown below uses the Dual PV Input module with both channels configured. In this configuration the module runs at 4.5Hz. The two channels are un-isolated from one-another but isolated from the rest of the instrument.

Example 2 uses two modules. The modules can either be two PV Input modules (code PV) or a Dual PV Input module (code DP) with Channel C configured as 'None' plus a PV Input module. This combination runs at 9Hz and may be used if the loop is unusually fast.

<table>
<tr><th>I/O Module</th><th>Typical usage</th><th>Order Code</th><th>Connections and examples of use</th></tr>
<tr><td>Dual PV Input</td><td rowspan="2">Zirconia probe</td><td>DP</td><td>Example 1:- Using the Dual PV Input Module.
Channel C is shown configured for thermocouple. The temperature sensor of a zirconia probe is connected to this input, terminals C & D. The Volt Source is connected to the A channel, terminals A & D.
 

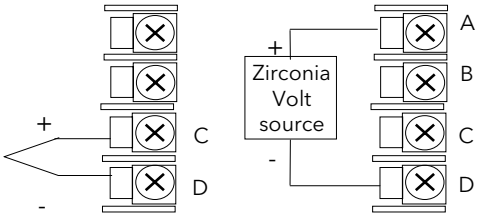
Note: The +ve of the volt source must be connected to the-ve of the thermocouple.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Two PV Input Modules</td><td>PV</td><td>Example 2:- Using Two Modules
The temperature sensor of the zirconia probe can be connected to the precision PV input of one I/O module, connections C & D, with the Volt Source connected to the second module, terminals A & D.
 
</td></tr>
</table>

Figure 2-19: Wiring Connections for Zirconia Probe

2.7.1 Zirconia Probe Screening

2.7.1.1 Zirconia Carbon Probe Construction

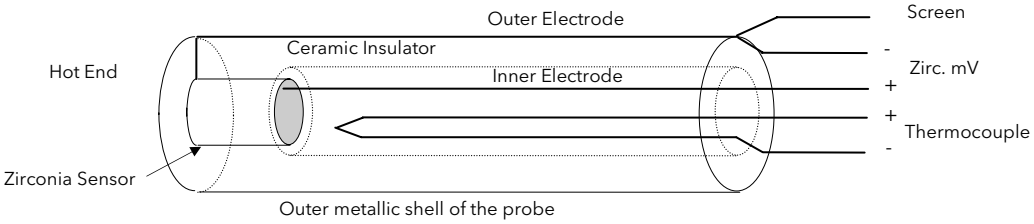


Figure 2-20: Zirconia probe construction

2.7.1.2 Screening connections when two modules are used

The zirconia sensor wires should be screened and connected to the outer shell of the probe if it is situated in an area of high interference.

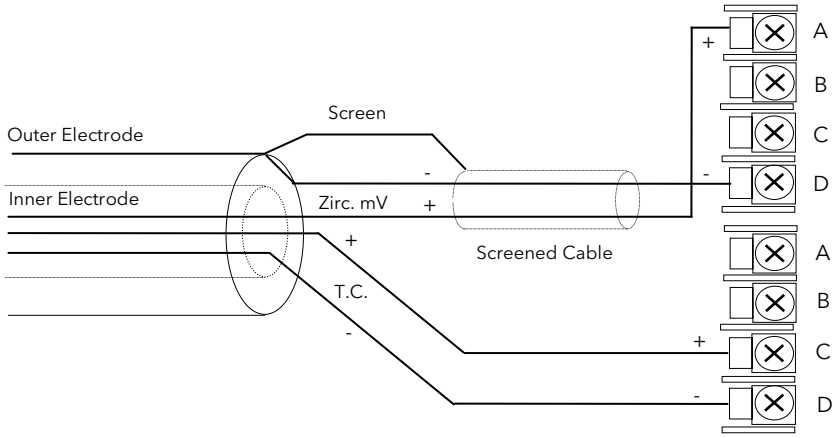


Figure 2-21: Screening connections - two module configuration

2.7.1.3 Screening connections when a dual input module is used

Both the thermocouple and the zirconia sensor wires must be screened and connected to the outer shell of the probe if it is situated in an area of high interference.

Note the reverse connection of the zirconia sensor .

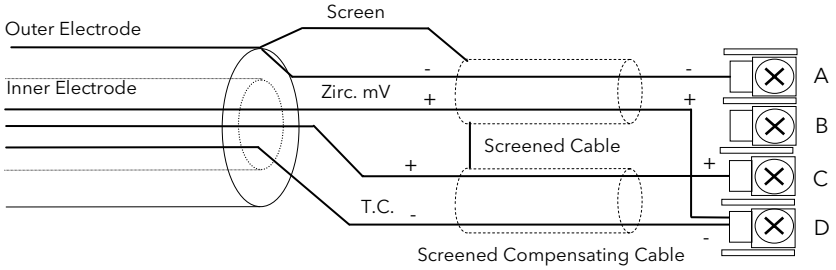


Figure 2-22: Screening connections - dual input configuration

3. CHAPTER 3 OPERATION

This chapter describes day to day operation of the controller.

3.1 OPERATOR INTERFACE - OVERVIEW

The front panel of the 2704 consists of a 120 x 160 pixel electroluminscent display, and seven operator push-buttons. Figure 3-1 shows an example of a single loop display.

- The display is used to show the process conditions.
- The seven operator buttons allow adjustments to be made to the controller.

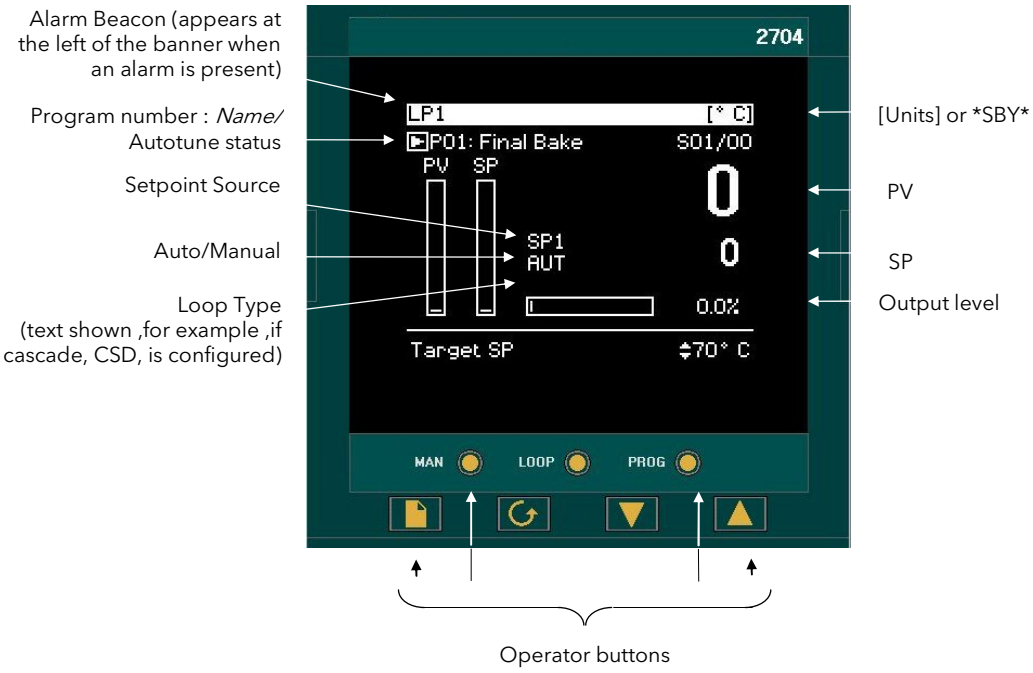
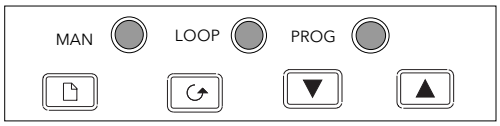


Figure 3-1: Operator Interface (Single Loop)

[Units] If units have been selected in configuration level they will be displayed on the status bar.
The choices are:-
°C/°F/°K
V, mV, A, mA
PH
mmHg, psi, bar, mbar, mmWg, inWg, inWW, PSIG
Ohms
%, %RH, %O2, %CO2, %CP,
PPM
Custom units are also possible

3.1.1 The Operator Buttons



AUTO	Auto/Manual button	When pressed, this toggles between automatic and manual mode: • If the controller is in automatic mode 'AUT' is displayed • If the controller is in manual mode, 'MAN' is displayed
LOOP	Loop select button	Each press selects each loop in turn or between each loop and the trend chart if each of the above options are configured plus a summary of all loops. *The loop name is shown in the banner at the top of the display*
PROG	Programmer button This button operates the programmer on all loops See also Chapter 8 'Programmer Operation'	• Press once to display a pop up window The pop up window will remain for approximately 6 seconds and during this period:- • Press PROG again to RUN a program • Press PROG again to HOLD a program • Press PROG again to toggle between RUN & HOLD • Press PROG and hold for two seconds to reset
	Page button	Press to select the Page Header 'Menu'.
	Scroll button	Press to select a new parameter from the page heading. If held down it will continuously scroll through the parameters.
	Down button	Press to decrease an analogue value, or to change the state of a digital value
	Up button	Press to increase an analogue value, or to change the state of a digital value

Note:- The AUTO, LOOP, or PROG may have been disabled in configuration level.

Figure 3-2: Operator Buttons

3.1.2 Status Messages

Messages appear on the display to show the current status of the controller. Table 3-1 below describes these messages:-

LP1, LP2, LP3	Indicates which loop is being viewed. *LP1, LP2, LP3* may be user defined names. All user defined names are shown in *italics* throughout this manual
P01 to 50	Indicates which program is in use and its current status. P01: to P50: can be followed by a user defined name.
AUT	The selected loop is in automatic (closed loop) control
MAN	The selected loop is in manual (open loop) control
SP1, SP2, PO1 to PO50, REM	Indicates where the SP is derived, i.e. Setpoint 1, Setpoint 2, Programmer, Remote
CSD	Indicates that the loop is in cascade.
OVR	Indicates that the loop is in override.
RAT	Indicates that the loop is in ratio (Ratio must be enabled from the parameter list at the bottom of the display)
	Indicates a program is activated
	Indicates a program is held at its current levels
	Indicates a program is in reset condition i.e. not running
	When an alarm occurs an alarm symbol flashes in the header banner. When the alarm is acknowledged but is still active the symbol will be permanently lit. When the alarm is acknowledged but is no longer active the symbol will disappear. See Chapter 10 'Alarm Operation' for further details.
[UNITS]	The process units are displayed in the right hand side of the banner
[SBY]	This symbol will flash in the right hand side of the banner in place of 'units' when the controller is in standby mode. In this state all interfaces to the plant are switched to a rest condition. For example, all control outputs = 0. **When this symbol is on the controller is no longer controlling the process.** This symbol will be on when:- • The controller is in configuration mode • Standby mode has been selected through the user interface or via an external digital input • During the first few seconds after start up

Table 3-1: Status Messages

3.2 PARAMETERS AND HOW TO ACCESS THEM

Parameters are settings, within the controller, which determine how the controller will operate. They are accessed, using the and buttons, and can be changed, to suit the process, using the and buttons.
Selected parameters may be protected under different security access levels.

Examples of parameters are:-
Values - such as setpoints, alarm trip levels, high and low limits, etc.,
or
States - such as auto/manual, on/off, etc. These are often referred to as enumerated values.

3.2.1 Pages

The parameters are organised into different pages. A page shows information such as page headers, parameter names and parameter values.

Parameters are grouped in accordance with the function they perform. Each group is given a '**Page Header'** which is a generic description of the parameter group. Examples are 'The Alarm Page', 'The Programmer Page', etc,. A complete list of these is shown in the full navigation diagram, Section 3.3.

Where a function has many parameters associated with it, the Page Header may be further sub divided into **'Sub-Headers'.** The parameters are then found under this category.

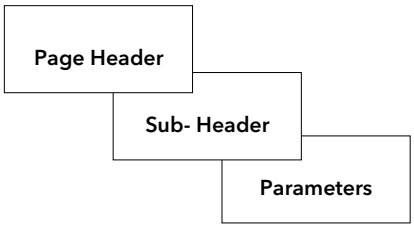


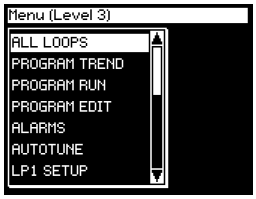
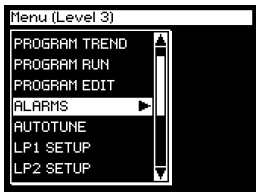
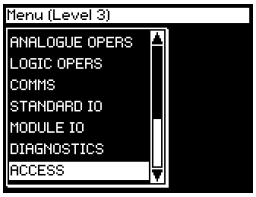
Figure 3-3: Page Types

It is possible to configure different start up pages as the Home page, but the principle of navigation is the same for all pages.

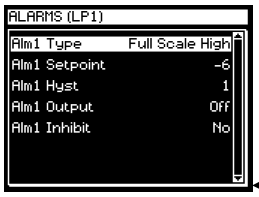
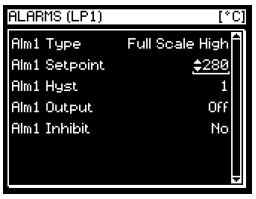
Note:-
A page only appears on the controller if the function has been ordered and is enabled in Configuration mode. For example, if a programmer is not configured the RUN page and the EDIT PROGRAM pages will not be displayed in operation levels.

3.3 NAVIGATION OVERVIEW

3.3.1 To Select a Page Header

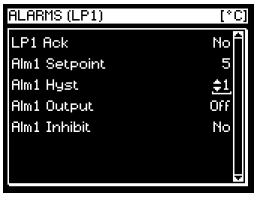
Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [ ] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu		The vertical bar on the right of the display indicates the position of the page header.
2. Press [▼] to scroll down the list of page headers.		When the vertical bar reaches the centre of the screen the text moves up. This feature allows you to see previous and following page header names.
3. Press [▲] to scroll back up the list of page headers.	 The sequence is repeated following further presses of [▼] button	When the last name in the Page Header list appears at the bottom of the display, the vertical bar and the highlighted text will continue move downwards.

3.3.2 To Navigate to a Parameter from a Page Header.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any page press [D] as many times as necessary to select the list of **Page Headers**		The ▸ symbol indicates that the page header is followed by a list of sub-headers.
2. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll up or down the list of page headers.		
	Press [D] to return to Page Header	
3. Press [↷] to select the list of **Page Sub- Headers** for the highlighted Page Header.		If a page does not contain a Sub-Header the display goes directly to 5 below
4. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll up or down the list of page sub-headers		
	Press [D] to return to Sub- Header	
5. Press [↷] to select the list of **Parameters** in the highlighted sub-header.		
6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll up or down the list of parameters.		
	Press [D] to return	
7. Press [↷] to select the parameter which you wish to change		A flashing bar underlines the selected parameter. The parameter can only be altered if the value is preceded by ⬍ If the value is read only it will be replaced by **'- -'** for as long as the raise or lower buttons are pressed
8. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		

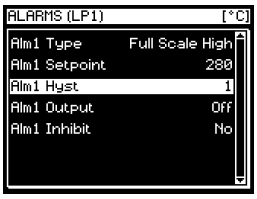
3.3.3 To Change Next Parameter in the List

This section describes how to select further parameters in the list which you may wish to alter or to view.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the previous display, press [⟳] to select the next parameter which you wish to change 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		The [⟳] button will allow you to scroll down the list. If this button is held down it will continuously scroll around the list, which will enable you to change a previous parameter.

3.3.4 To Change Any Parameter in the List

As stated above you can keep pressing or hold down the [⟳] button to continuously scroll around the list of parameters. There are two other alternatives. The first is to return to the highlight bar, described below. The second is 'Backscroll' described in the next section.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the previous display, press [⧉] to highlight the parameter value and its name. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll up or down the list.		

3.4 BACKSCROLL

In some cases it may be more convenient to scroll back up the list, for example, to select a new segment number when setting up a program.

A short cut is provided by holding down [⟳] and pressing [▲] or [▼].

Each press of [▲] will step back to the previous parameter. Each press of [▼] will step forward to the next parameter.

This function is provided as a short cut and is not necessary to navigate through the parameters.

3.5 PARAMETER VALUES

Parameter values can be displayed in different ways depending upon the parameter type. The different types of parameter, and how their values are changed, are shown below.

1. Numerical Values (eg Full Scale High Alarm Setpoint)

Press ▲ to increase the value
Press ▼ to decrease the value

2. Enumerated Values (eg PV Input Alarm Acknowledge)

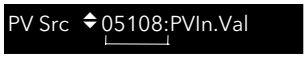
Press ▲ to show next state
Press ▼ to show previous state

3. Digital Values (e.g. programmer event outputs)

Press ↻ to step along the values. A cursor under the selected value flashes.

Press ▼ or ▲ to turn the value on or off

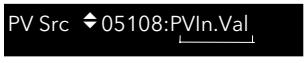
4. Parameter Addresses (eg PV Src)



Press ▲ or ▼ to change the **Parameter address**. A cursor under the parameter address flashes.

The parameter name for that address (if it exists) is shown to the right of the Modbus address.

Press ↻ to change from parameter address to parameter mnemonic



Press ▲ or ▼ to change the parameter address by scrolling through a list of the most popular mnemonics. A cursor under the parameter mnemonic flashes.

5. Text (eg Program Name - User definable)

Press ▲ or ▼ to change the character

Press ↻ to change to the next character

Press ▲ or ▼ to change the character. Up to 16 characters can be altered.

6. Time (eg Programmer Segment Duration)

Press ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the time setting. This is an accelerating display.

Figure 3-4: Changing Parameter Values for Different Parameter Types

3.5.1 Confirmation Mechanism

Having changed a value, when the ▲ or ▼ key is released, the display will blink after a period of 1.5 seconds, indicating that the new parameter value has been accepted. If any other key is pressed during the 1.5 second period the parameter value is accepted immediately.

There are exceptions for specific parameters. Examples of these are:-

Output Power adjustment when in Manual mode. The value is written continuously as the value is changed.

Alarm Acknowledge. If the Alarm Acknowledge is changed from 'No' to 'Acknowledge' a confirmation message appears. Press ↵ key to confirm the change. If no key is pressed for 10 seconds the value is restored to its previous value.

3.5.2 Invalid key actions

At any time some state transitions may be invalid, due, for example, to contention with digital inputs or to the current operating state of the instrument.

Examples are:-

1. Digital inputs have priority over the operator buttons.
2. If a parameter value cannot be changed the ⬍ prompt is not shown
3. If the ▲ or ▼ button is pressed for a read only parameter a number of dashes, ----, is displayed.

3.6 PARAMETER TABLES

Subsequent chapters in this manual refer to parameter tables. These tables provide the full list of parameters available in 'Config' level in a particular page. The table below is an example.

Column 1 gives the name of the parameter as it appears on the display.

Column 2 is a description and possible usage of the parameter

Column 3 is the range of values which can be set. This may be a numerical value, eg -n to +n, or the condition (enumeration) of a parameter, eg the parameter 'Program Status' has enumerations 'Run', 'Hold', 'Reset'.

Column 4 is the default value (if applicable) of the parameter set during manufacture

Column 5 is the access level required to change the parameter value.
L1 means that the value is only shown in Level 1
L2 means that the value is only shown in Level 1 and Level 2
L3 means that the value is always available in the instrument operating mode Conf means Configuration Level
R/O is Read Only
Access Levels are described in Chapter 6.

Table Number:	Description of the page			Page Header
1 **Parameter Name**	**2** **Parameter Description**	**3** **Value**	**4** **Default**	**5** **Access Level**
Program Number	The number of the selected program			L3
Segment Number	The currently running segment number			L3
PSP1 Type	Program Setpoint 1 type			L3
PSP1 Working SP	Program Setpoint 1 working setpoint			L3
PSP1 Target	Program Setpoint 1 target setpoint			L3
PSP1 Dwell Time	Program Setpoint 1 dwell time			L3
This is a continuous loop which returns to the list header				

Note:-

A parameter only appears if it is relevant to the configuration of the controller. For example, a programmer configured as Time to Target will not display the Rate parameter.

3.7 PARAMETER AVAILABILITY AND ALTERABILITY

A parameter which appears on a page is described as available. Parameters are not available if they are not appropriate for a particular configuration or instrument status. For example, relative cool gain does not appear in a heat only controller, and integral time does not appear in an On/Off controller.

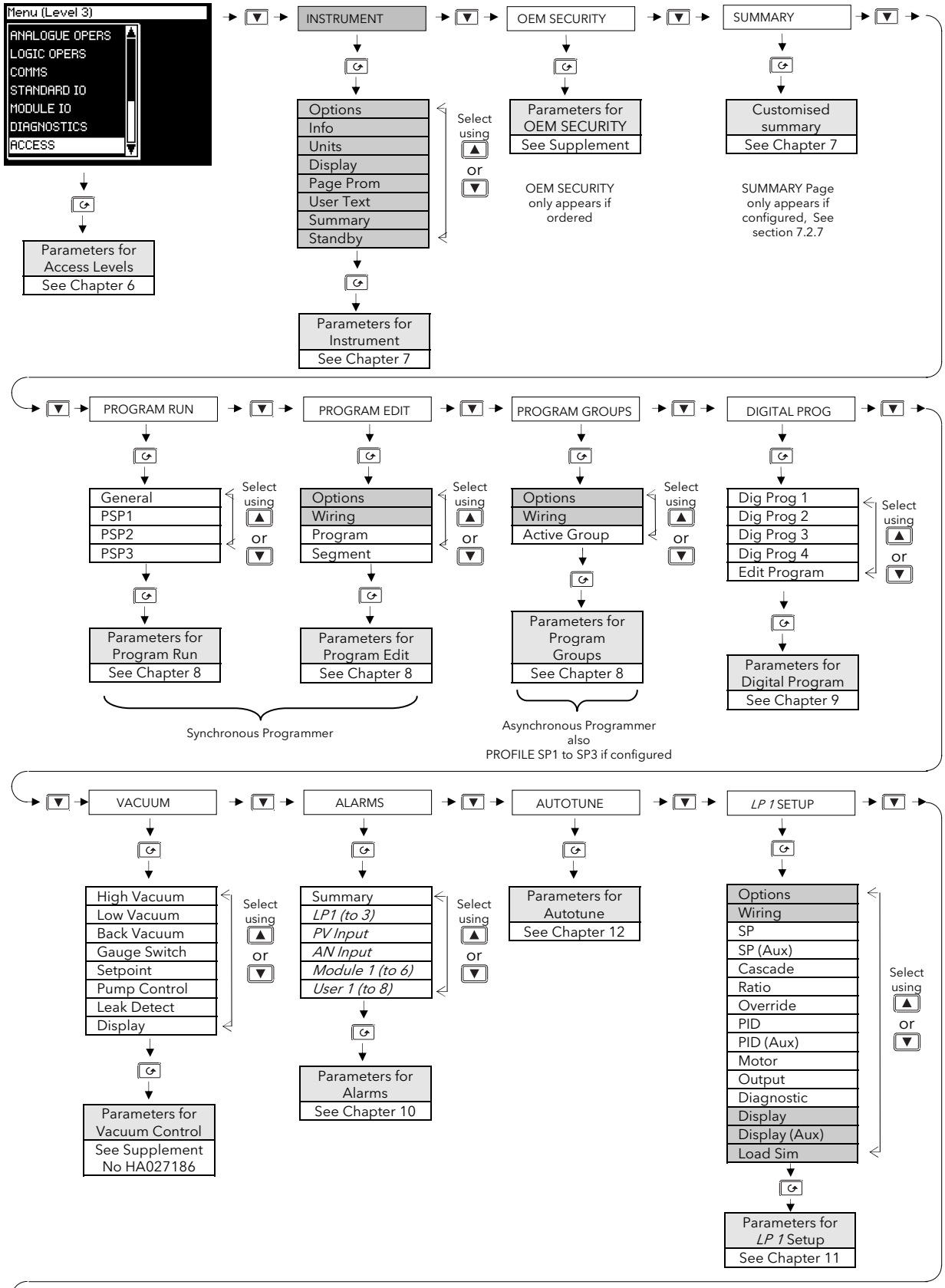
A parameter described as alterable is preceded by the ⬍ symbol which indicates that its value can be changed. A parameter which is not alterable may be viewed (subject to availability), but may be changed by an instrument algorithm.

A parameter is alterable only if the following conditions are satisfied:-

- The parameter is READ/WRITE
- The parameter does not conflict with the status of the instrument. For example, the proportional band will not be alterable if autotune is active
- The instrument keys must be enabled. Keys can be disabled by a logic input, turned off in configuration level or via digital communications. A logic input can be configured to disable front panel keys; this will not remove remote control of the user interface via digital communications.

The Navigation Diagram which follows shows all pages which are available at Config level.

3.8 NAVIGATION DIAGRAM

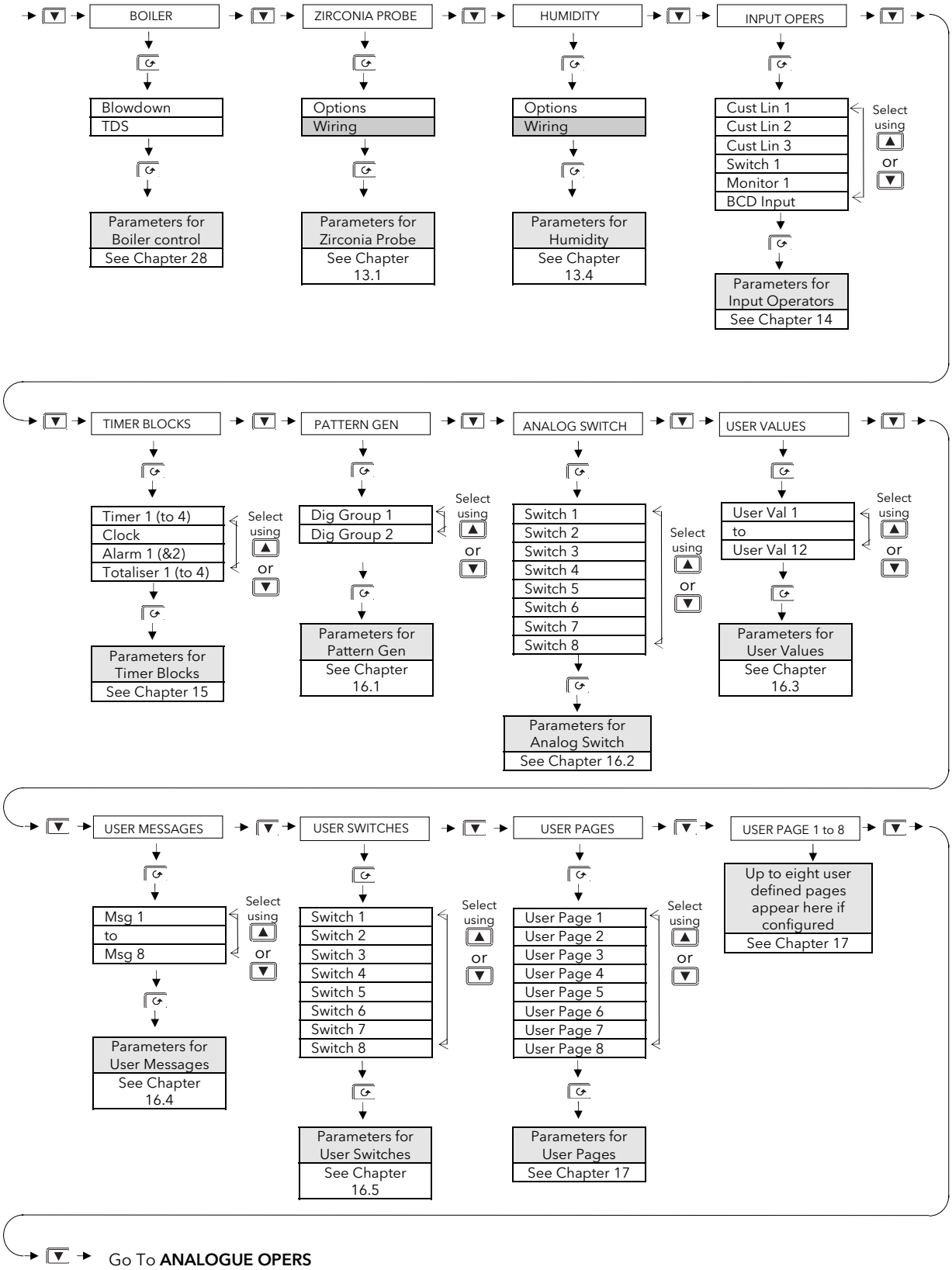


Notes:

Page headers shown shaded are not available in levels 1, 2 or 3. See also INSTRUMENT (Page Promote) Chapter 5.

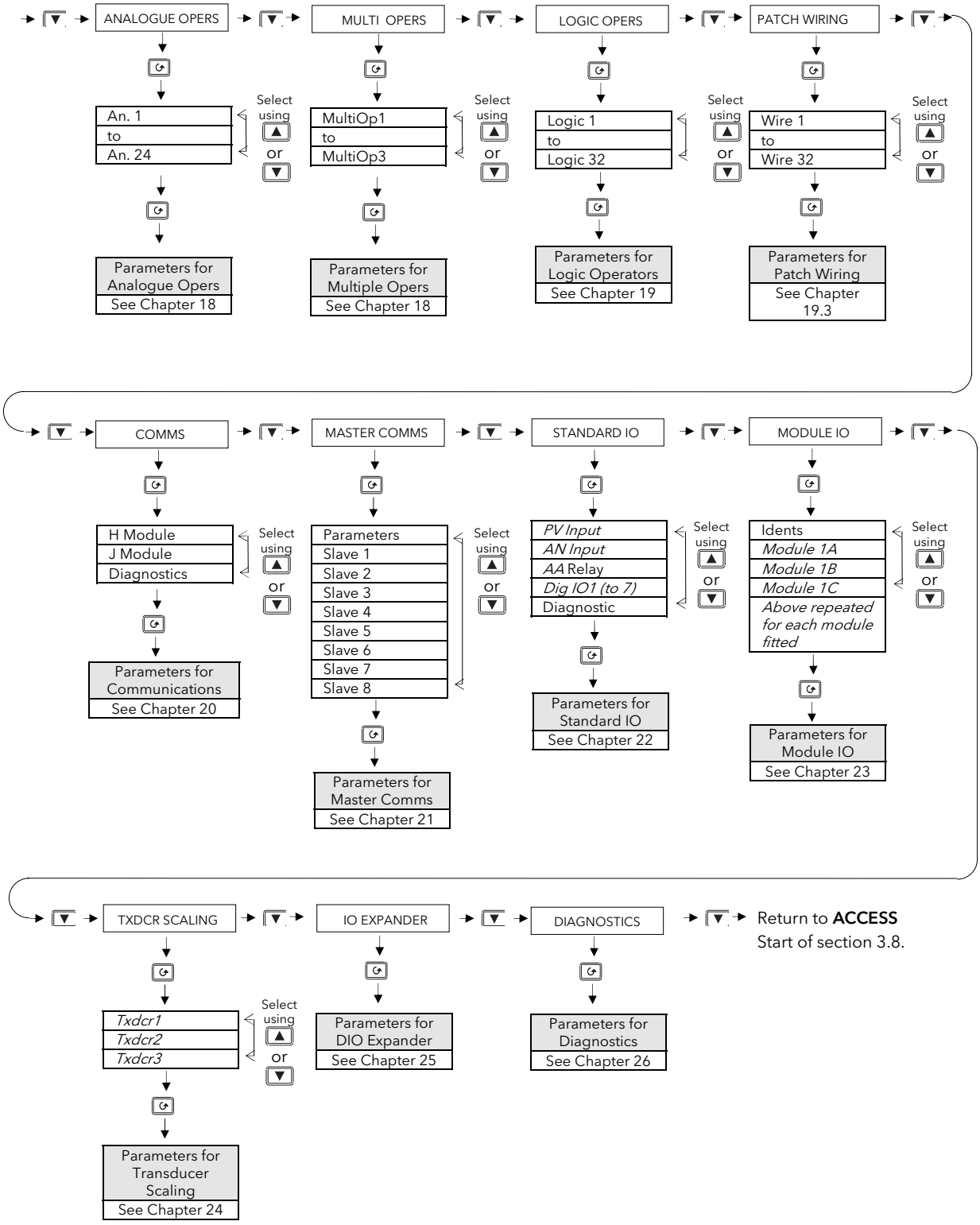
Text shown in italics is user configurable in configuration mode and may be different from that shown

From **LP3 SETUP**
Previous page



Next page

From **USER PAGE X**
Previous page



4. CHAPTER 4 FUNCTION BLOCKS

4.1 WHAT IS A FUNCTION BLOCK?

A function block is a software device which performs a control strategy. Examples are PID Controller, Setpoint Programmer, Cascade Controller, Timer, etc. A function block may be represented as a 'box' which takes in data at one side (as 'Inputs'), manipulates the data internally (using parameter 'Settings') and 'outputs' data at the other side to interface with analogue or digital IO and other function blocks. Figure 4-1 shows a representation of a PID function block as used in the 2704 controller.

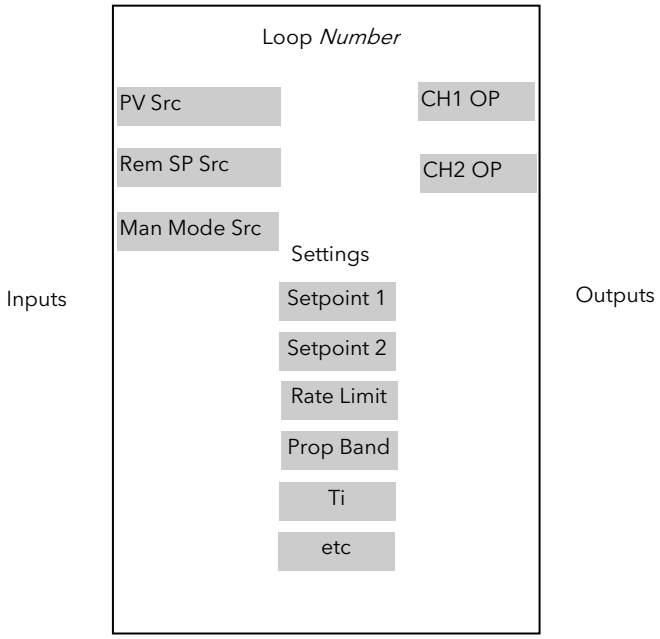


Figure 4-1: A Simple PID Function Block

4.1.1 Inputs

Inputs are provided to the function block from field sensors or from other function blocks within the controller. Each field input is served by an analogue or digital input block which processes the signal (depending upon the type of input) and makes it available to the function block in a useable form.

Each input 'wire' (see Chapter 5) is labelled as 'Src' since it defines the source of the signal by holding its Modbus address.

4.1.2 Outputs

In a similar way the function block makes available signals to other blocks, plant actuators and other devices. Each output interfaces with analogue or digital output drivers which provide signals to the plant such as relay, 4-20mA, 0-10V outputs, etc

4.1.3 Settings

The purpose of a particular function block is defined by its internal parameters. Some of these parameters are available to the user so that they can be adjusted to suit the characteristics of the plant.

Examples of parameters available to the user are shown in Figure 4-1 as 'Settings'. In this manual these parameters are shown in tables an example of which is shown in Section 3.6.

5. CHAPTER 5 SOFT WIRING

5.1 WHAT IS SOFT WIRING?

Soft Wiring (sometimes known as User Wiring) refers to the connections which are made in software between function blocks. This chapter describes the principles of soft wiring through the operator interface of the instrument. iTools configuration software, available from your supplier, enables you to configure this feature using a PC.

In general every function block has at least one input and one output. Input parameters are used to specify where a function block reads its incoming data (the 'Input Source'). The input source is usually soft wired to the output from a preceding function block. Output parameters are usually soft wired to the input source of subsequent function blocks.

It is possible to wire from any parameter using its Modbus address. In practice, however, it is unlikely that you will wish to wire from many of the available parameters. A list of commonly wireable parameters has, therefore, been produced and these are displayed in the controller with both their Modbus address and a mnemonic of the parameter name. An example is shown in the Section 5.1.2.1 i.e. 05108:PVIn.Val. The full list of these commonly wired parameters is given in Appendix D.

The function blocks used in this manual are drawn as follows:

1. Input parameters defined by **'Src'** on the left of the function block diagram
2. Typically wired output parameters on the right hand side
3. Other parameters, which are not normally wired to, are shown as settings

A parameter which is not wired to can be adjusted through the front panel of the controller provided it is not Read Only (R/O) and the correct access level is selected.

All parameters shown in the function block diagrams are also shown in the parameter tables, in the relevant chapters, in the order in which they appear on the instrument display.

Figure 5-1 shows an example of how a PID function block (Loop 1) might be wired to other function blocks to produce a simple single loop controller. The Loop1'PV Src' input is soft wired to the output value from the Standard IO PV Input block on terminals V- to VH.
The channel 1 (heat) output from the PID block is soft wired to the input source ('Wire Src') of Module 1A, fitted as an output module.

Also in this example, a digital input to the 'Man Mode Src', allows the loop to be placed into manual depending upon the state of the digital input. The digital input is DIO1 connected to terminal D1 on the controller.

For further information on the configuration of the Standard IO and the Module IO see Chapters 22 and 23 respectively.

Further examples of function block wiring are given in specific chapters throughout this manual.

5.1.1 An Example of Soft Wiring

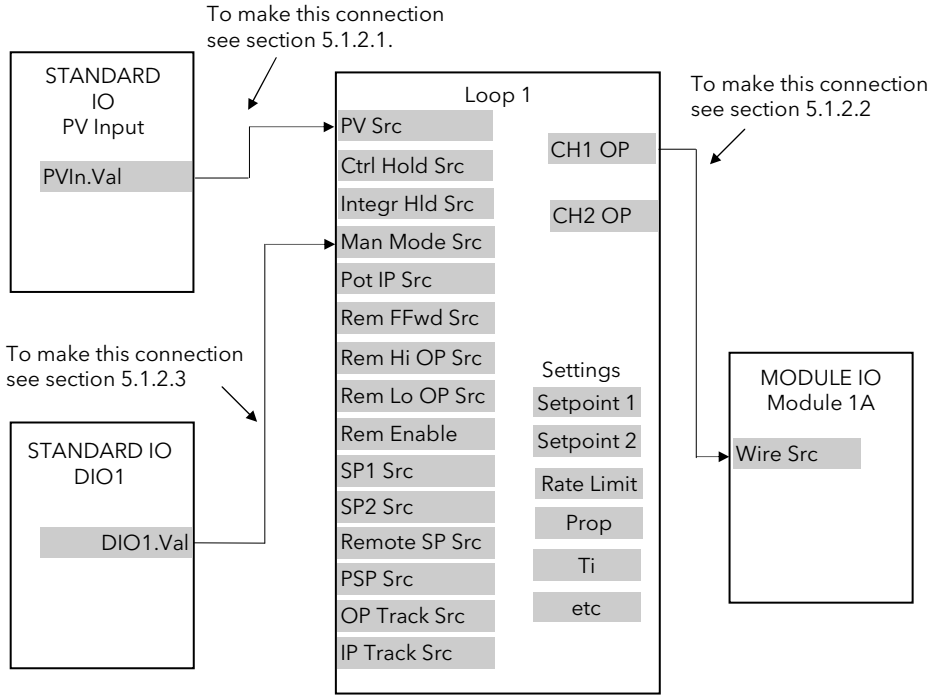


Figure 5-1: A Simple Wiring Example of a PID Function Block

5.1.2 Configuration of the Simple PID Loop

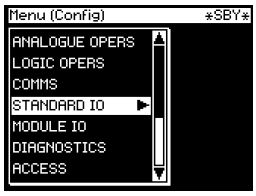
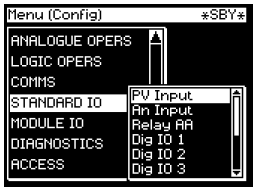
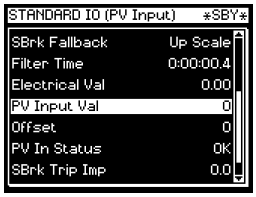
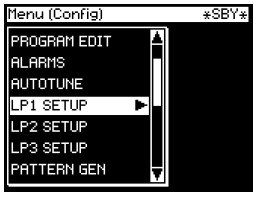
The following description explains how the wiring connections are made to produce the simple PID controller shown in Figure 5-1.

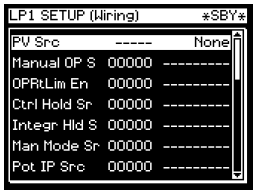
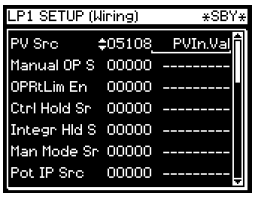
5.1.2.1 To connect the PV input to the Loop

The example is to connect the output from the 'PV Input' to the 'PV Source' of Loop 1.

Firstly, enter Configuration mode, as explained in Chapter 6.

Then:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
	Select the wire source	
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'STANDARD IO'**		
3. Press [↵] to display the list of sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'PV Input'** (if necessary)		
5. Press [↵] to display the parameter list 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'PV Input Val'**		This selects the **'PV Input Val'** parameter which is to be wired from.
7. Press [AUTO/MAN] to copy this parameter. This button becomes a 'copy' button in configuration mode.	**Copy the Parameter** PV Input Val Address '05108' Copied Value '0' Copied	This display confirms that the parameter with Modbus address 05108 (ie PV Input.Val) has been copied. This display appears for as long as the A/M button is depressed.
	Select the wire destination	
8. Press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to select ***'LP1 SETUP'***		
10. Press [↵] to display the list of sub-headers 11. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Wiring'**		

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
12. Press [▶] to display the parameter list 13. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'PV Src'** (if necessary)	**Select the wire source** 	PV Src of LP1.is the parameter to be wired to.
14. Press the Loop Select button, LP1 LP2 ◉ LP3 AUX, to paste the copied parameter ie 05108 to the PV Src of LPI. This button becomes a 'paste' button in configuration mode	**Paste the wire** 	The Loop Select button becomes a 'paste' button in this mode Press [▶] to confirm Press [🗋] to cancel as instructed

The parameter with Modbus address 05108 has now been pasted to PV Src.

i

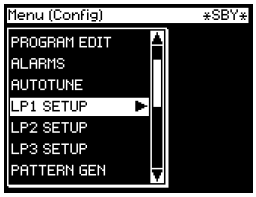
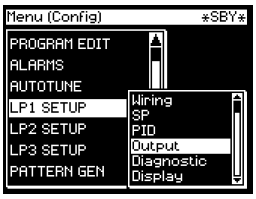
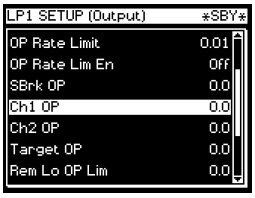
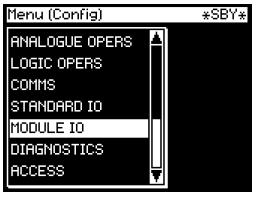
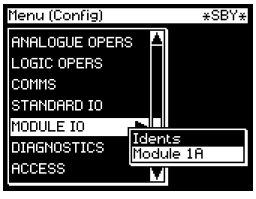
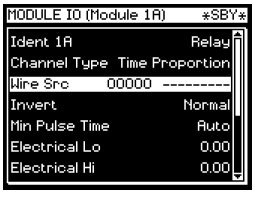
If the modbus address is known or the parameter name is one that is listed in Appendix D it can be entered directly at stage 13 above as follows:-

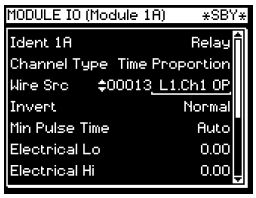
1. Repeat stages 8 to 13
2. At stage 13 press [▶] to edit 'PV Src'. A flashing cursor appears under the modbus address
3. If the modbus address is known, enter it here by pressing the [▲] or [▼] button
4. If the modbus address is not known press [▶]. The display transfers to the name of the parameter.
5. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll through a list of parameter names.

See Appendix D for the list of these parameters.

5.1.2.2 To connect the Loop to the Output Module

The example is Loop 1 Channel 1 output to Module 1A input.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select ***'LP1 SETUP'***	**Select the wire source** 	
3. Press [↻] to display the list of sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Output'**		
5. Press [↻] to display the parameter list 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'CH1 OP'**		This selects the parameter to be wired from.
7. Press [AUTO/MAN] [◎] to copy this parameter. This button becomes a 'copy' button in configuration mode.	**Copy the wire source** Ch1 OP Address '00013' Copied Value '0.0' Copied	This display confirms that the parameter with Modbus address 00013 (ie CH1 OP) has been copied. This display appears for as long as the A/M button is depressed
8. Press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'MODULE IO'**	**Select the wire destination** 	
10. Press [↻] to display the list of sub-headers 11. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Module 1A'**		
12. Press [↻] to display the parameter list 13. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to **'Wire Src'**		This is the parameter to be wired to.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
14. Press the Loop Select button, LP1 LP2 LP3 AUX, to paste the copied parameter ie 00013 to the Wire Src of Module 1A. This button becomes a 'paste' button in configuration mode	**Paste the wire** 	The Loop Select button becomes a 'paste' button in this mode Press ↵ to confirm Press ⎙ to cancel as instructed

i As in the previous example the modbus address can be entered at stage 13 above if it is known

☺ Tip:

You can page back by holding down the ⎙ button and pressing ▲ button.

You can scroll back by holding down the ↵ button and pressing ▲ button.

5.1.2.3 To connect Digital Input DIO1 to Loop 1 Manual Input

The following description is given as a quick summary of the previous two examples.

1. Select the Wire Source 05402:DIO1.Val
2. Copy
3. Select the Wire Destination LP1 Man Mode Src
4. Paste

The source and destination of parameters is given in the **Parameter Tables** listed in following chapters.

6. CHAPTER 6 ACCESS LEVELS

Parameters are protected under five different levels of access for which security codes may be necessary. This chapter describes the different levels of access to the operating parameters available in the controller.

6.1 THE DIFFERENT ACCESS LEVELS

Access Level	What you can do	Password Protection
Level 1	This is sometimes referred to as Operator Level since it allows operators to view and adjust parameters within limits set in higher levels. Any page available in levels 2 or 3 may be configured to appear in level 1. This is done from the configuration level using the page promote feature.	No
Level 2	This is sometimes referred to as Supervisor level since all the parameters relevant to a particular configuration are visible. All alterable parameters can be adjusted.	Yes
Level 3	These are parameters which are generally required when commissioning the controller. Any page at this level can also be configured to appear at Level 2.	Yes
Config	This level allows access to configure the fundamental characteristics of the controller and it is this level which is described in this manual.	Yes
View Config	This is a read only level which allows you to view the configuration of the controller. It is not possible to change parameter values in this level. It is not possible to read passcodes in this level.	Yes

6.2 PASSCODES

On switch on the controller defaults to Level 1 which is not protected by a passcode. A limited set of parameters can be changed in this level. The parameter tables in each chapter list those parameters which can be changed.

Level 2, level 3 and Configuration level are protected by passcodes. The default passcodes set in a new controller are:

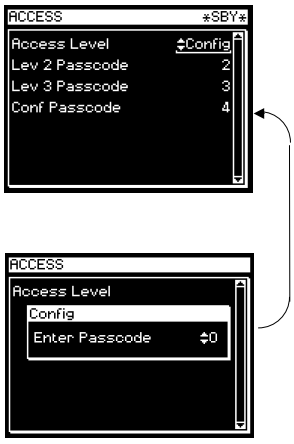
Level 2 Passcode '2'
Level 3 Passcode '3'
View Config Passcode '2704'
Config Passcode '4'

These passcodes, with the exception of View Config, can be changed in configuration level.

If a passcode of 'None' has been entered for any level (apart from View Config which is fixed) it will not be necessary to enter a passcode to enter that level.

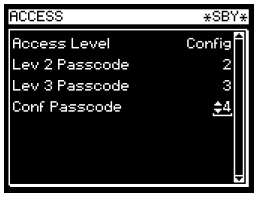
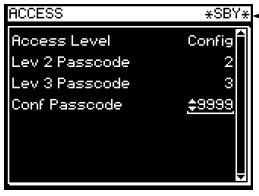
Note:-
In configuration mode the controller enters a standby state in which all outputs are frozen. If the controller is connected to a process, it no longer controls that process when it is in Configuration mode.

6.3 TO ENTER CONFIGURATION LEVEL

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] to return to the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**ACCESS**'		This is the page header which contains the access levels
3. Press [↵] to select the access level parameters		
4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Config'** 5. Press [▲] or [▼] to enter the passcode. When the correct passcode is entered the display momentarily changes to ⇕PASS, then back to the start level to confirm correct entry.		The default passcode of a new controller is 4 to enter Config level. If a new passcode has been entered in Config level this will be in the form 0 to 9999. If an incorrect passcode is entered, the display returns to ⇕0. Note: In the special case that the passcode has been configured as None, the display will blink momentarily when Config level is selected and Config level will be entered immediately.

To go from a higher level to a lower level does not require entry of a passcode.

6.4 TO ENTER NEW PASSCODES

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the previous display, press [↵] to scroll to the level at which you wish to change the passcode		This will change the passcode for the configuration level
2. Press [▲] or [▼] to enter the new passcode, from 0 to 9999		The display will blink to accept the new passcode

i **When the controller is in Configuration Level *SBY* will flash in the status bar.**

6.5 TO EXIT CONFIGURATION LEVEL

To exit configuration level it is only necessary to select the level which you wish to go to. When entering a new level from a higher level it is not necessary to enter the passcode for this level. It is only necessary to enter the passcode when going from a lower level of access to a higher level.

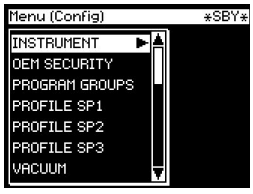
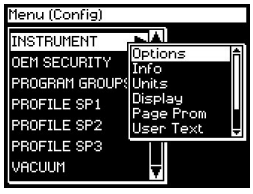
7. CHAPTER 7 INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION

7.1 WHAT IS INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION?

Instrument configuration allows you to enable and set up features within the instrument such as:-

1. The number of loops
2. Control application - PID, Programmer, Zirconia, Humidity, Input Operators, Timer Blocks, Analogue and Logic Operators, Transducer Scaling
3. Display Units
4. The format of the display
5. The functions of the keys (buttons)
6. Promotion of selected parameters to different levels
7. To configure a 'library' of text defined by the user for use with a range of features within the instrument
8. Format of the Summary Page
9. Standby Behaviour

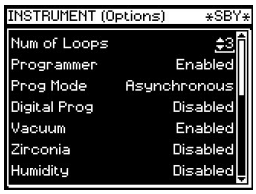
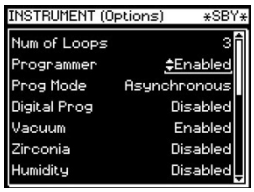
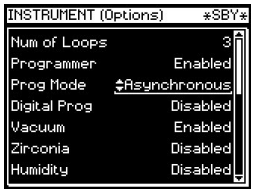
7.1.1 To Select the Instrument Configuration Pages

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'INSTRUMENT**		Views are typical and may vary depending upon options in any particular controller
3. Press [↵] to display the list of sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll around the sub-headers		The choice of page headers is:- Options Info Units Display Page Prom User Text Summary Standby

Note:-

It is only possible to configure chargeable options which have been ordered. An example of a chargeable option is the number of loops. For other chargeable options see Order Code, Appendix A.

7.2 TO CONFIGURE CONTROLLER OPTIONS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. Select **INSTRUMENT (Options Page)** as in section 5.1.1.		
2. Press [↵] to display the list of parameters 3. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll around the parameters 4. Press [↵] to select a parameter. In this example **'Num of Loops'** 5. Press [▲] or [▼] to set the number of loops required		1, 2 or 3 loops can be selected if the option has been supplied
6. Press [↵] to scroll to **'Programmer'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value or state of the parameter		In this example the programmer function can be **Enabled** or **Disabled**
8. Press [↵] to scroll to **'Prog Mode'** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value or state of the parameter		In this example the programmer mode can be **Synchronous** or **Asynchronous**
10. Continue to select and change instrument options as described above.		The following table gives the full list of parameters available under INSTRUMENT list header

7.2.1 INSTRUMENT Options Page

⇓

Table Number: 7.2.1.	**These parameters allow you to enable or disable instrument options. This table is only available in Configuration Level**		**INSTRUMENT (Options Page)**
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Further Info**	**Value**
Num of Loops *	To configure the number of loops	Chapter 11	1, 2 or 3
Programmer *	To enable or disable the programmer	Chapter 8	Disabled Enabled
Prog Mode	To select the type of programmer	Chapter 8	Synchronous Asynchronous
Digital Prog *	To enable or disable the digital programmer	Chapter 9	Disabled Enabled
Vacuum	To enable or disable the vacuum control block	Chapter 13	Disabled Enabled
Zirconia *	To enable or disable the zirconia block	Chapter 13	Disabled Enabled
Humidity	To enable or disable the humidity block	Chapter 13	Disabled Enabled
Input Opers	To enable or disable the Input Operators	Chapter 14	Disabled Enabled

Table Number: 7.2.1.	These parameters allow you to enable or disable instrument options. This table is only available in Configuration Level		INSTRUMENT (Options Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Further Info**	**Value**
Timer Blocks	To enable or disable the Timer Blocks	Chapter 15	Disabled Enabled
Pattern Gen	To enable or disable the pattern generator	Chapter 16	Disabled Enabled
Analogue Switch	To enable or disable the analogue switches	Chapter 16	Disabled Enabled
An/Logic Opers *	To enable or disable the Analogue and Logic Operators. Also includes Multiple Operators and Patch Wiring from software versions 6	Chapter 19 and 18	Disabled Enabled
Txdcr Scaling	To enable or disable transducer scaling	Chapter 24	Disabled Enabled
IO Expander	To enable or disable the IO Expander	Chapter 25	Disabled Enabled
Master Comms	To enable master comms	Chapter 21	Disabled Enabled
Boiler	To enable boiler control option	Chapter 28	Disabled Enabled
User Mbus Map	To enable user modbus map		Disabled Enabled
Clear Memory	Clear non-vol memory areas	No Programs User Text Promote Params Promote Pages All Memory	No
Load Sim	To enable or disable a control loop simulation for test/demonstration	Technical Note Ref TIN123	Disabled Enabled

* Can only be activated if ordered, see 'Ordering Code' Appendix A.

Note 1. Areas of memory which can be independently cleared are:-
Programs, User Text, Promoted Parameters, Promote Pages, All Memory.

7.2.2 INSTRUMENT Info Page

Table Number: 7.2.2.	These parameters are read only and available in Level 3. They give information about the controller		INSTRUMENT (Info Page)
Parameter Name Press ↺ to select	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**
Inst Type	Instrument type	2704	2704
Inst Serial No	Instrument serial number	Numeric	
Inst Version	Software version	e.g. V4.00	
CBC Version	Software version number of the 'cross board'	e.g. 40	
Feature Code 1	Codes required to upgrade		
Feature Code 2	chargeable features		
Inst 2nd Lang	Instrument language for user interface		
Alt Protocol	Alternative comms protocol	EI Bisynch Modbus Profibus Devicenet	
ROM Size	ROM Size	eg 512K Word	
RAM Size	RAM Size	eg 128K Bytes	
NVOL Size	Non Volatile memory size	eg 128K Bytes	

7.2.3 INSTRUMENT Units Page

Table Number: 7.2.3.	These parameters allow you to configure instrument units			INSTRUMENT (Units Page)
Parameter Name Press ↺ to select	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Temp Units	Temperature Units		None oC, oF, oK	Conf
Custom Units 1			01:Usr1	Conf
Custom Units 2	An index of customised	01:Usr1	01:Usr1	Conf
Custom Units 3	display units selected from	to	01:Usr1	Conf
Custom Units 4	User Text (section 7.2.6.)	50:Usr50	01:Usr1	Conf
Custom Units 5			01:Usr1	Conf
Custom Units 6			01:Usr1	Conf

7.2.4 INSTRUMENT Display Page

Table Number: 7.2.4.	These parameters allow you to configure the display		INSTRUMENT (Display Page)	
Parameter Name Press ↺ to select	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Language	Display language	See note 1		Conf
Startup Text 1	Text which may be used to override the default message	01:Usr01 to 100:Usr100	Default Text	L3
Startup Text 2	Up to 100 text strings are available	01:Usr01 to 100:Usr100	Default Text	L3
Home Page	Defines which page is displayed in the lower readout after initialisation2.	See Note 2		L3
Home Timeout	To set a timeout for the display to return to the Home page.	None 9:99:99.9	0:10:00	Conf
All Loops Name	All loops summary page name	01:Usr01 to 100:Usr100	Default Text	Conf
Disable Keys	Yes will disable all front panel buttons when in operation levels	No Yes	No	Conf
Function Key 1	Function key 1 is Auto/Manual or disabled	Auto/Manual Disabled	Auto/Man	Conf
Function Key 2	Function key 2 is Loop Select key or disabled	View Loop Disabled	View Loop	Conf
Function Key 3	Function key 1 is Program Run/Hold or disabled	Run/Hold Disabled	Run/Hold	Conf
Disable Key	Disable all keys			Conf
Page Key Src				Conf
Scroll Key Src	Keys may be wired to an			Conf
Lower Key Src	external source such as a			Conf
Raise Key Src	digital input for remote panel	Modbus		Conf
Func Key 1 S	operation.	address		Conf
Func Key 2 S				Conf
Func Key 3 S				Conf
Func1 Pressed (1)	State of function key 1	No	No	Conf
Func2 Pressed (1)	State of function key 2	Yes	No	Conf
Func3 Pressed (1)	State of function key 3		No	Conf

Notes:-

1. The 2704 stores the user interface in 2 languages. English is always available plus French, German or Spanish.

2. The first page to be displayed when the instrument is switched on can be chosen from:-

LP1, *LP1* A., *LP2*, *LP2* A., *LP3*, or *LP3* A. (In 2704 *LPx* and *LPx A* have the same effect)
Access Page
Cycle Each Loop
All Loops
LP1 Trend, *LP2* Trend, *LP3* Trend
Program Mimic
User Pages 1 to 8 (may show user defined names)
Vacuum
SUMMARY
Program Run

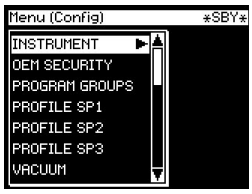
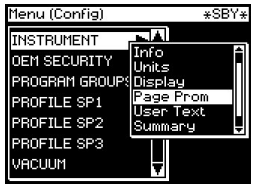
3. These may be wired to function blocks to trigger other events in the system.

4. Text in *italics* can be customised

5. A parameter marked as available in Access Level 'L3' means that it will be visible if the page is promoted from configuration level to Level 3.

7.2.5 INSTRUMENT Page Promote Page

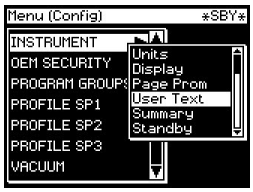
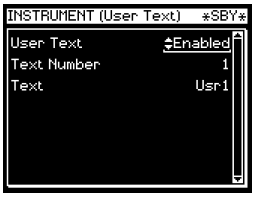
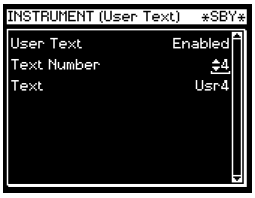
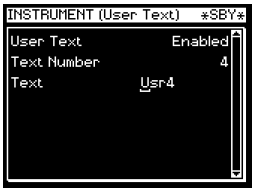
Any page shown un-shaded in the Navigation Diagram, section 3.3, can be promoted to Level 1, Level 2 or Level 3 as follows:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [ ] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'INSTRUMENT'**		Views are typical and may vary depending upon options in any particular controller
3. Press [ ] to show sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Page Prom'**		The choices are:- Options Info Units Display Page Prom User Text Summary Standby
5. Press [ ] to show parameters 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the name of a page which you wish to promote to levels 1, 2 or 3. 7. Press [ ] to edit 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the level at which you wish the page to be displayed		The choices are **Lev1, Lev2,** or **Lev3.** In this view, the Summary and Program Mimic pages will only displayed at Operator Levels 1 and higher. All others at Lev 3 only Note:- Not all parameters in a page will be seen. For example, parameters marked as available in a higher level eg 3 will not be shown in the page if it is promoted to a lower level.

Repeat the above for every page which you wish to promote to a different level.

7.2.6 INSTRUMENT User Text Page

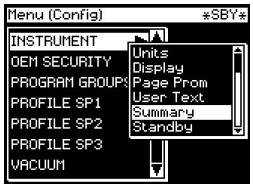
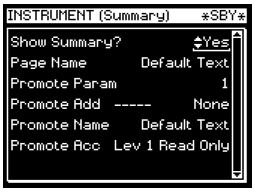
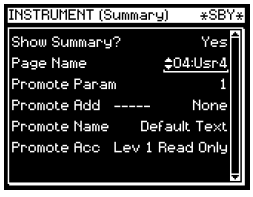
This page allows you to configure up to 100 User Text strings of up to 16 characters. Any string can be used to provide a name for particular parameters. For example Loops can be given names which are more meaningful to the user, such as 'Zone 1', 'Level Controller', etc. (To use a customised name, go to the relevant page such as LPx SETUP/Display page or MODULE IO/Module x page. Examples are given at the end of this chapter).
To enter User Text:-

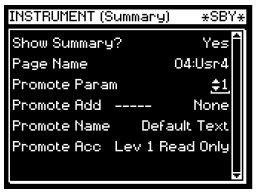
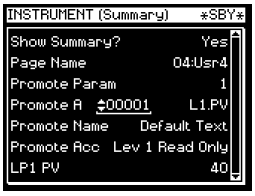
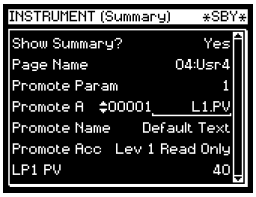
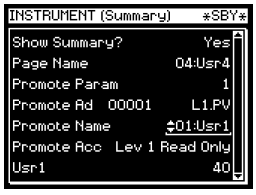
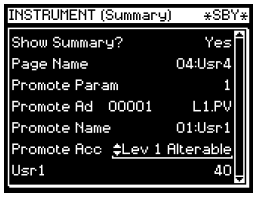
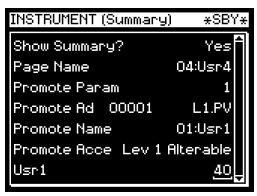
Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the **'INSTRUMENT'** page header, press [↵] to display the list of sub-headers 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**User Text'**		Views are typical and may vary depending upon options in any particular controller
3. Press [↵] to show sub-headers 4. Press [↵] to edit **'User Text'** 5. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'Enabled'**.		If **'Disabled'** no further parameters are available
6. Press [↵] to select **'Text Number'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the text number to be configured		Up to 100 Text Numbers are available
8. Press [↵] to select **'Text'** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to set the first (under-scored) character of the user text 10. Repeat 8 and 9 above to set every character in the required text		'Usrx' is the default text which is replaced by the text of your choice. Up to 16 characters are available

7.2.7 INSTRUMENT Summary Page

These parameters allow you to configure a page consisting of a list of up to 10 parameters which are in common use on a particular installation. The first parameter in the list - 'Show Summary' must be enabled so that the summary list is shown in operating levels.

To configure Summary pages:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
To Show the Summary Page in Operating Levels		
1. From the **'INSTRUMENT'** page header, press to display the list of sub-headers 2. Press or to select '**Summary'**		Views are typical and may vary depending upon options in any particular controller The level at which the Summary Page is shown is selected by the Page Promote section 5.2.5.
3. Press to show the list of parameters 4. Press to select '**Show Summary?'** 5. Press or to **'Yes'**.		If Yes is selected the Summary Page, which consists of up to 10 parameters, will be shown in the Main Menu following INSTRUMENT (or OEM SECURITY if ordered, see Navigation Diagram, section 1.12) If 'No' is selected the Summary page will not be shown.
To Allocate a Name to the Summary Page		
1. Press to select '**Page Name'** 2. Press or to select the required name from the User Text 'library'		Up to 100 user defined text Names are available. The previous section explains how User Text is set up.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
To Select the First Parameter which is to Appear on the Summary Page		
1. Press [↻] to select '**Promote Param'** 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'1'** (if necessary)		Up to 10 parameters are available
3. Press [↻] to select '**Promote Ad'** 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the required parameter using its Modbus address		The flashing _ indicates the value to be changed
If the Modbus Address is not known it is possible to select the required parameter from a list of commonly used parameters. This list is shown in Appendix D		
5. Press [↻] again 6. Then press [▲] or [▼] to scroll through a list of commonly used parameters		
To Select a User Defined Name for the First Parameter in the List		
1. Press [↻] to select '**Promote Name'** 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the name from the User Text library		The name of the parameter is chosen from the User Text library set up as described in section 5.2.5.
To Set the Access level for the First Parameter in the List		
1. Press [↻] to select **Promote Access** ' 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the Access Level		This sets the level to which the parameter is promoted. The choices are:- Lev 1 Read Only Lev 1 Alterable Lev 2 Read Only Lev 2 Alterable
3. Press [↻]. This shows the first parameter which will appear in the operation level selected in 7 above.		The actual value of the parameter is shown in this display together with its allocated units

Repeat the above steps for up to 10 parameters which are to be promoted to the Summary page.

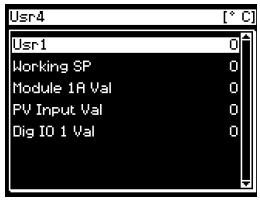
7.2.7.1 Summary Page Example

This is an example of a Summary Page showing five parameters produced by the above procedure.

Page Name chosen from User Text →

Name of parameter chosen from User Text →

These four parameter names use the default text }

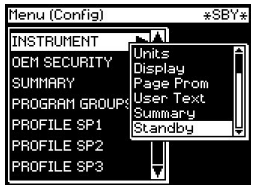
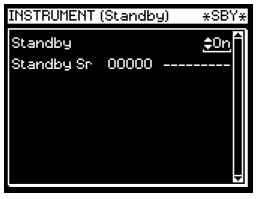
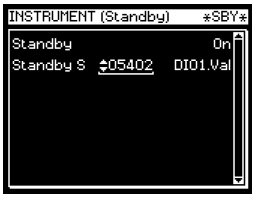


7.2.8 INSTRUMENT Standby Page

The standby state of the controller occurs when it is in configuration mode or during the first few seconds after switch on, see also Section 3.1.2.

The INSTRUMENT Standby Page allows you to wire to a parameter such as a digital input which when true will switch the controller to Standby Mode.

7.2.8.1 Example:- To wire Standby to Fixed Digital Input 1.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the **'INSTRUMENT'** page header, press [↻] to display the list of sub-headers 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Standby**'		Views are typical and may vary depending upon options in any particular controller
3. Press [↻] to show the list of parameters 4. Press [↻] to select '**Standby**' 5. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'On'**.		If On is selected the controller will be switched to Standby Mode when the event (DI01) becomes true. If Off is selected the event is ignored.
6. Press [↻] to select '**Standby Src'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to. select the Modbus Address of the parameter to be wired to		The Modbus Address of Fixed Digital Input number 01 is 05402
If the Modbus Address is not known it is possible to select the required parameter from a list of commonly used parameters. This list is shown in Appendix D		
8. Press [↻] again 9. Then press [▲] or [▼] to scroll through a list of commonly used parameters		If the Modbus Address is not known the parameter can be selected its mnemonic. See Appendix D for a list of these commonly used parameters.

☺: **See 'Copy and Paste' Section 5.1.2.**

7.3 USER TEXT EXAMPLES

7.3.1 To Re-Name Loop 1 to Zone 1

First enable User Text since its factory default is disabled. A library of User Text can then be created from which the new loop name can be selected.

7.3.1.1 Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page
   set User Text = Enabled
   set 'Text Number' = 1 (or any unused text no.)
   set 'Text' = Zone 1
   This defines Text Number 1 to be Zone 1.
2. In LOOP 1 SETUP /Display Page
   set 'Loop Name' = 01:Zone 1
   This replaces the default name (LP1) with Zone 1

7.3.2 To Re-Name User Alarm 1 and Provide a Message

User alarms can be re-named and also provide a diagnostic message to the user.

7.3.2.1 Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page
   set User Text = Enabled
   set 'Text Number' = 2 (or any unused text no.)
   set 'Usr2' = High Temp
   This defines Text Number 2 to be High Temp.
   set 'Text Number' = 3 (or any unused text no.)
   set 'Usr3' = Check Chiller
2. In ALARMS/User 1 Page
   set 'Name' = 02:High Temp
   This replaces the default name with High Temp
   Set 'Message' =03:Check Chiller

7.3.3 To Re-Name Module 1 to be called Heat Output

Individual modules can be re-named to simplify plant diagnostics.

7.3.3.1 Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page
   set User Text = Enabled
   set 'Text Number' = 4 (or any unused text no.)
   set 'Usr4' = Heat Output
   This defines Text Number 4 to be Heat Output.
2. In MODULE IO/Module 1A Page
   set 'Module Name' = 04:Heat Output
   This replaces the default name with Heat Output

7.3.4 To Rename a Digital Input and show in the Summary Page

This example will display the value of the digital input alongside the text 'Test 1' in the Summary Page for Digital Input 1.

7.3.4.1 Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page
   - set User Text = Enabled
   - set 'Text Number' = 5 (or any unused text no.)
   - set 'Usr5' = Test 1
2. In STANDARD IO /Dig IO1 Page
   - set Channel Type = Digital Input
   - This page also allows you to set the input for inverted operation
3. In INSTRUMENT/Summary Page
   - set 'Show Summary? = Yes
   - set 'Promote Param' = 5 (or the text no. above)
   - set 'Promote Addr' = 05402:DIO1.Val
   - This connects digital input 1 to the first parameter of the Summary display
   - set 'Promote Name' = 05:Test 1

In Operation Level, the text in the Summary page will show:

In place of 0 or 1, you may wish to display On or Off. There are two ways to achieve this.

In earlier instruments it is necessary to use a Logic or Analogue Operator. The implementation using Logic Operator 1 is as follows:

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page
   - set User Text = Enabled
   - set 'Text Number' = 5 (or any unused text no.)
   - set 'Usr5' = Test 1
2. In STANDARD IO /Dig IO1 Page
   - set Channel Type = Digital Input
   - This page also allows you to set the input for inverted operation
3. In LOGIC OPERS/Logic 1 Page
   - set 'Operation = OR
   - set 'Input 1 Src = 05402:DIO1.Val
   - set 'Input 2 Src = 05402:DIO1.Val
   - This connects digital input 1 to logic operator 1. Note: it is necessary to wire to both inputs of a logic (or analogue operator)
4. In INSTRUMENT/Summary Page
   - set 'Show Summary? = Yes
   - set 'Promote Param' = 1 (or the text no. above)
   - set 'Promote Addr' = 07176:LgOp1.OP
   - The logic operator is defined simply to provide On/Off annunciation in the display Summary page.

1. In later instruments you can use Custom Enumerations

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page
   - set User Text = Enabled
   - select a User 'Text Number' e.g. 9 (or any unused text)
   - set 'Usr9' = On
   - select the next User 'Text Number' e.g. 10
   - set 'Usr10' = Off
2. In STANDARD IO /Dig IO1 Page
   - set DigIO Enum = User Text 6 i.e. 09:On

The enumeration of the parameter called Test1 will change between 09:On and 10:Off.

i You can use any text for the enumeration, for example Open/Closed, Up/Down, etc.

7.3.5 To Assign Custom Units

Most commonly used units can be selected for display on the user interface. In addition to the standard selection up to six custom units can be created. In this example the units of the PV Input will be Gal/m

7.3.5.1 Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page
   set User Text = Enabled
   set 'Text Number' = 6 (or any unused text no.)
   set 'Usr6' = Gal/m
   This defines Text Number 6 to be Gal/m.
2. In INSTRUMENT/Units Page
   set 'Custom 1 Units' = 06:Gal/m
   This sets Custom Units 1 to Gal/m
3. In STANDARD IO/PV Input Page
   set 'Units' = Custom 1

7.3.6 To Customise the Power Up Display

In this example the users company name will be used provide the start up message when the controller is switched on. The company name will be CML Controls and is based in Scotland.

7.3.6.1 Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page
   set User Text = Enabled
   set 'Text Number' = 7 (or any unused text no.)
   set 'Usr7' = CML Controls
   This defines Text Number 7 to be CML Controls
   set 'Text Number' = 8 (or any unused text no.)
   set 'Usr8' = Scotland
2. In INSTRUMENT/Display Page
   set 'Startup Text 1' = 07: CML Controls
   set 'Startup Text 2' = 08: Scotland

i See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

8. CHAPTER 8 PROGRAMMER CONFIGURATION

This chapter explains:-

- The features of a setpoint programmer in general
- How to configure and edit a Synchronous Programmer
- How to configure an Asynchronous Programmer (software versions 6 onwards)

Customisable Parameter Names

Throughout this chapter parameter names shown in *italics* are customisable by the user when in configuration access level. The name of the parameter may vary, therefore, from instrument to instrument.

Typical customisable parameter names are:

- Program names
- Profile Setpoint names
- Segment names
- Digital Event Names

8.1 WHAT IS SETPOINT PROGRAMMING ?

In a setpoint programmer you can set up a profile in the controller in which the setpoint varies in a pre-determined way over a period of time. Temperature is a very common application where it is required to 'ramp' the process value from one level to another over a set period of time.

The 2704 controller will program up to three separate profiles. These may be temperature, pressure, light level, humidity, etc., depending on the application, and are referred to as **Profiled Setpoints (PSPs).**

The **Program** is divided into a flexible number of **Segments** - each being a single time duration, - and containing details for each profiled setpoint. The total number of segments available is **100 per program** with a **maximum of 600** for the Time to Target Programmer and **480** for the Ramp Rate programmer.

The 2704 programmer may store up to 20 programs as standard, with up to 60 if purchased.

It is often necessary to switch external devices at particular times during the program. Digital 'event' outputs can be programmed to operate during those segments.

8.1.1 Synchronous Programmer

In a synchronous programmer all PSPs are run on a common timebase. That is, they all start at the same time and the time duration of a segment is the same for each PSP. This is shown in Figure 8-1.

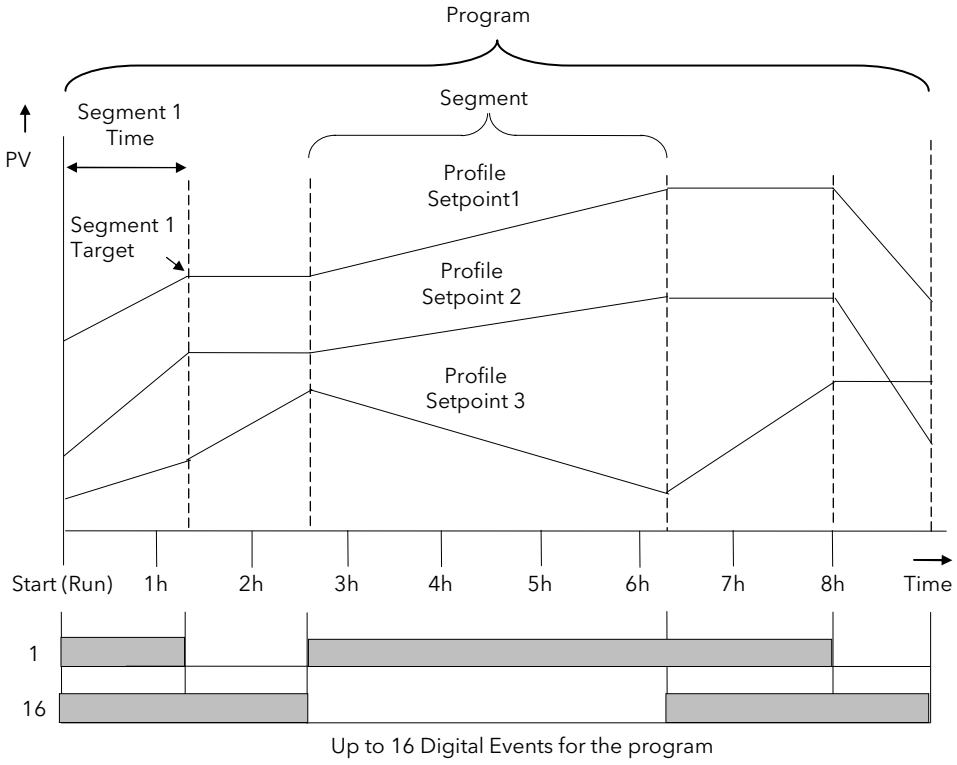


Figure 8-1: An Example of a Synchronous Setpoint Program

8.1.2 Asynchronous Programmer

In an asynchronous programmer up to three PSPs can be run with a different number of segments, based on an independent time base. Each PSP can start at the same time or can be started individually.

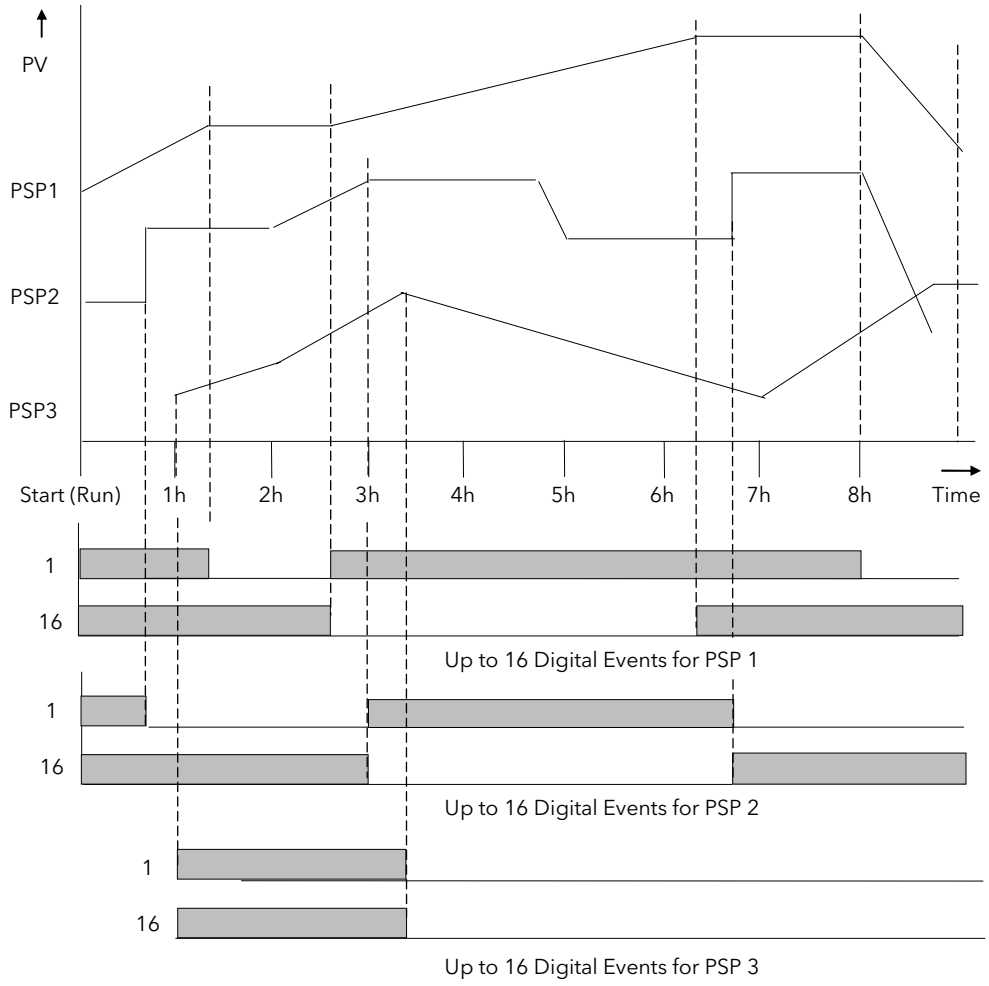


Figure 8-2: An Example of an Asynchronous Setpoint Program

The configuration and operation of the synchronous programmer is described in the first part of this chapter; the configuration and operation of the asynchronous programmer is described in the last part of this chapter where it differs from the synchronous programmer.

8.2 SETPOINT PROGRAMMER DEFINITIONS

This section defines the more common parameters to be found when running a 2704 programmer /controller.

8.2.1 Run

In run the programmer varies the setpoint in accordance with the profile set in the active program.

8.2.2 Hold

In hold the programmer is frozen at its current point. In this state you can make temporary changes to program parameters such as a target setpoint, ramp rates and dwells (if programmer configured for ramp rate) or segment duration (if programmer configured as Time to Target). Such changes will only remain effective until the end of the currently running segment, when they will be overwritten by the stored program values.

8.2.3 Reset

In reset the programmer is inactive and the controller behaves as a standard controller, with the setpoint determined by the raise/lower buttons.

8.2.4 Servo

Servo can be set in configuration so that when a program is run the setpoint can start from the initial controller setpoint or from the current process value. Whichever it is, the starting point is called the servo point. This can be set in the program.

Servo to PV is the default and will produce a smooth and bumpless start to the process.

Servo to SP may be used in a Ramp Rate programmer to guarantee the time period of the first segment. In this case it is necessary to soft wire the Working Setpoint parameter to the PSP Reset Value parameter. (Note: in a Time to Target programmer the segment duration will always be determined by the setting of the Segment Duration parameter.)

8.2.5 Hot Start

When run is initiated Hot Start allows the program to automatically advance to the correct point in the profile which corresponds to the operating value of the process. It can occur in any segment type, for any PSP but is most useful to ramp segments. Hot start is enabled in configuration level and specifies which programmed variable to use when deciding the correct segment.

8.3 PROGRAMMER TYPES

The programmer can be configured as **Time to Target** or **Ramp Rate.** A time to target programmer requires fewer settings and is simple to use since all segments are the same. A time to target programmer can, in general contain more segments than a ramp rate.

8.3.1 Time To Target Programmer

Each segment consists of a **single duration parameter** and a set of **target values** for the profiled variables.

1. The **duration** specifies the time that the segment takes to change the profiled variables from their current values to the new targets.
2. A **dwell** type segment is set up by leaving the target setpoint at the previous value.
3. A **Step** type segment is set up by setting the segment time to zero.

8.3.2 Ramp Rate Programmer

Each segment can be specified by the operator as **Ramp Rate, Dwell or Step**.

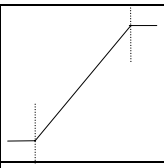
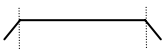
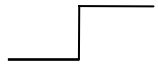
1. Each profiled setpoint must complete its segment before the programmer will move to the next segment. If one ramp reaches its target setpoint ahead of the other variables, it will dwell at that value until the other variables have completed. The program will then move to the next segment.
2. The duration parameter for a segment is read only. In this case the dwell period can be changed when the program is in Hold.
3. The duration is determined by the longest profile setting.

8.4 SEGMENT TYPES

A segment type can be defined as **Profile, Go Back To** or **End.**

8.4.1 Profile

A profile segment may be set as:-

Ramp		**The setpoint ramps linearly**, from its current value to a new value, either at a set rate (called *ramp-rate programming*), or in a set time (called *time-to-target programming*). You must specify the ramp rate or the ramp time, and the target setpoint, when creating or modifying a program.
Dwell		**The setpoint remains constant** for a specified period at the specified target. When creating programs the target is inherited from the previous segment.
Step		**The setpoint steps instantaneously** from its current value to a new value at the beginning of a segment.

8.4.2 Go Back To Segment

Go Back allows segments in a program to be repeated by a set number of times. It is the equivalent of inserting 'sub-programs' on some controllers. Figure 8-3 shows an example of a program which is required to repeat the same section a number of times and then continue the program.

A Go Back To segment is used to save the total number of segments required in a program and to simplify setting up. When planning a program it is advisable to ensure that the end and start setpoints of the program are the same otherwise it will step to the different levels. A Go Back To segment is defined when editing a program, see section 8.15.1.

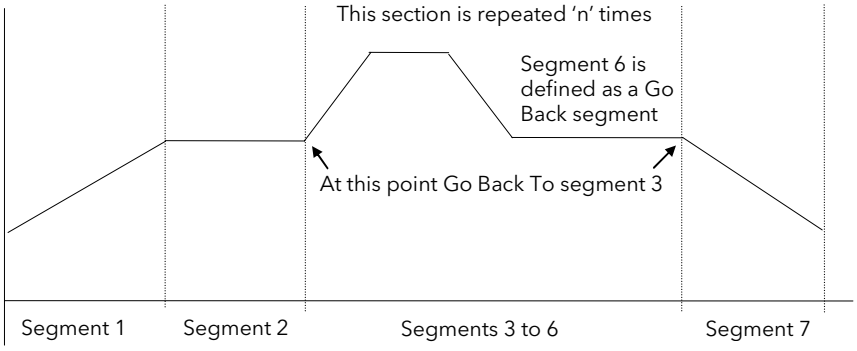

This section is repeated 'n' times
Segment 6 is defined as a Go Back segment
At this point Go Back To segment 3
Segment 1
Segment 2
Segments 3 to 6
Segment 7

Figure 8-3: An Example of a Program with Repeating Section

Note 1. If a second or more 'Go Back' segments are created, they cannot return to a segment before the previous 'Go Back' segment as shown below.

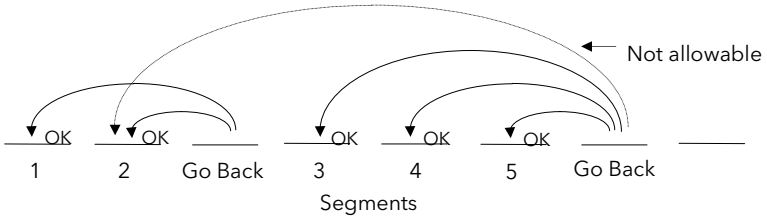


Figure 8-4: Permitted Go Back Segments

8.4.3 End Segment

The last segment in a program is normally defined as an End segment

The program either ends, repeats or resets in this segment. You specify which is the case when you create, or modify, the program. When the program ends, the programmer is put into either, a continuous dwell state with all outputs staying unchanged, or the reset state.

8.4.4 Wait

An event can be configured at the end of each segment, which, when active, will cause the program to wait before progressing to the next segment. Three wait conditions are provided which may be wired, in configuration level, to an external source using digital inputs or to internal sources, e.g. a loop alarm. Each segment may then select No-Wait, Wait on Event A, Wait on Event B or Wait on Event C. In a synchronous programmer the program will not proceed until all profile segments are complete.

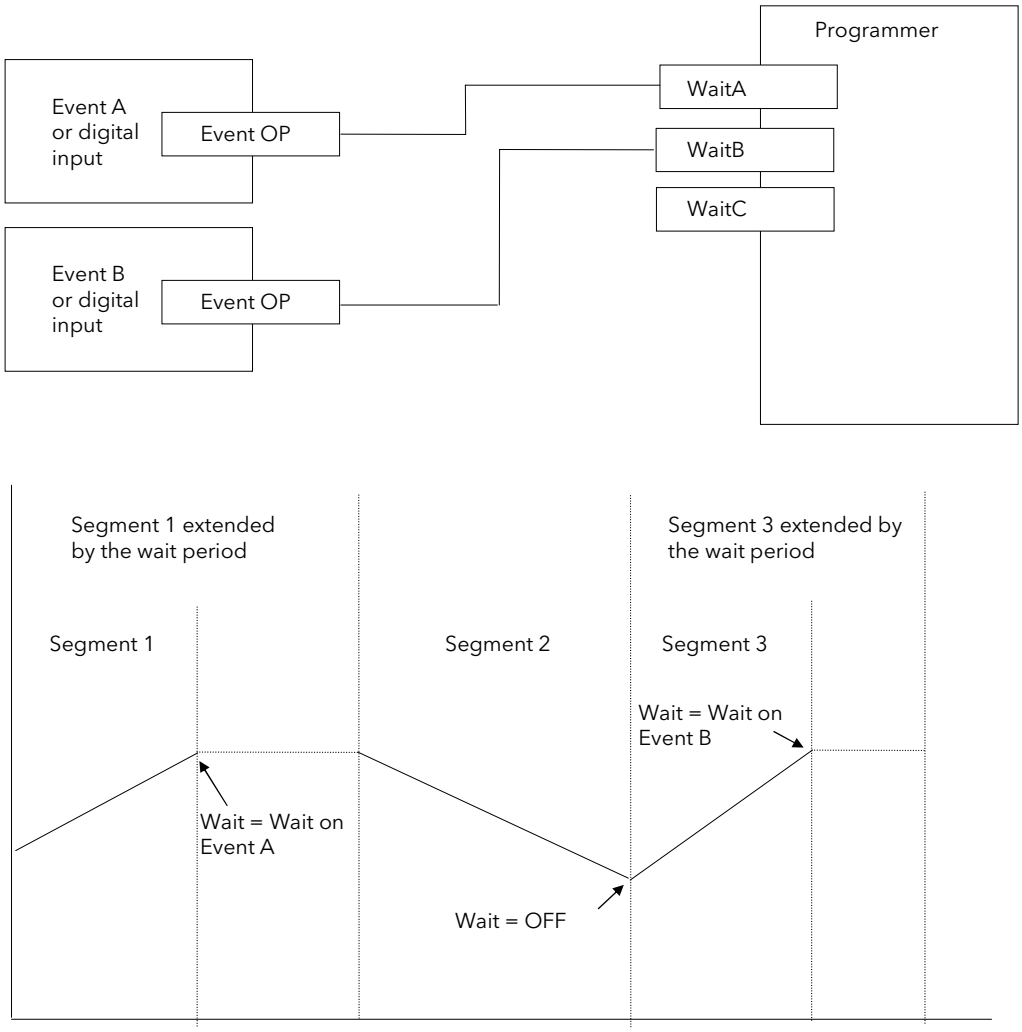
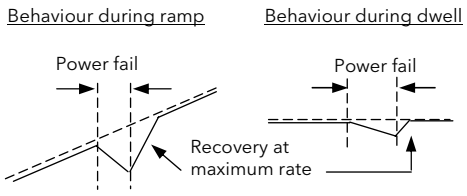
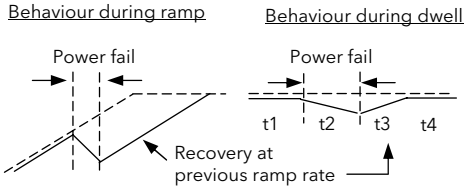


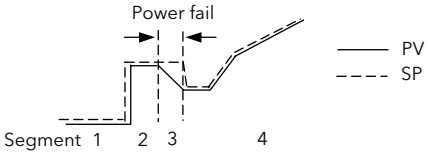
Figure 8-5: Wait Events

8.5 POWER FAIL RECOVERY

In the event of power fail to the controller, a strategy may be set in configuration level, which defines how the controller behaves on restoration of the power. These strategies include:

<table>
<tr><td>Continue</td><td>The program runs from the last setpoint. This may cause full power to be applied to the process for a short period to heat the process back to its value prior to the power failure</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Ramp back</td><td>The PV will ramp back to its original value at the rate last encountered.

In a Dwell segment, the period continues when the PV recovers to the SP value. The power fail time + the recovery time is added to the dwell time set.</td><td> 

Dwell time = t1+t2+t3+t4
where t1+t4 = dwell time set</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>A special case exists if no ramps have been encountered. The diagram shows the behaviour following a power fail in segment 3.</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Reset</td><td colspan="2">The process is aborted by resetting the program</td></tr>
<tr><td>Hold Program</td><td colspan="2">The programmer will enter the HOLD state. The operator may then change the state to Reset or Run. On exiting from Hold into Run the program will continue, it will not ramp back.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Test Time</td><td colspan="2">This option makes use of the real time clock in the controller to determine how long the power has been off. Two time periods can be set which allows three strategies:

1. If the power is off for less than the first period, the programmer will continue from its last operating point

2. If the power is off for a time between the two time boundaries, the controller will servo to the PV and ramp back to the operating point using the previous ramp rate.

3. If the power is off for longer than the second time boundary, the programmer will reset.

☺ The programmer takes about 25 seconds to start running after power is applied to the 2704. This delay should be taken into consideration when setting up the Test Time recovery parameter.</td></tr>
</table>

8.6 HOLDBACK (GUARANTEED SOAK)

Holdback freezes the program if the process value does not track the setpoint by an amount which can be set by the user. It may operate in any PSP type.

In a Ramp it indicates that the process value is lagging the setpoint by more than a settable amount and that the program is waiting for the process to catch up.

In a Dwell it will freeze the dwell time if the difference between SP and PV exceeds settable limits.

In both cases it guarantees the correct soak period for the product.

Holdback may be configured in three modes:

- OFF - holdback does not operate
- Applied to the complete program. Holdback operates the same way in every segment
- To each individual segment. A different holdback type can be applied to each segment

Holdback Type defines how holdback operates. It may apply when:

- The PV is below the SP by a pre-set value (Lo),
- The PV is above the SP by a pre-set value(Hi)
- The PV is below or above the SP by a pre-set value (Band).

In addition two levels of holdback are available per profile setpoint, per program. These are defined as 'Fine' and 'Course'.

Example:

Holdback, operating in each segment, is often used in a temperature control application as detailed below:-

During a ramp up period the holdback type may be set to deviation low. If the Process Value lags the programmed rate of rise, holdback will stop the program until the PV catches up. This prevents the set program from entering the next segment until the PV has attained the correct temperature.

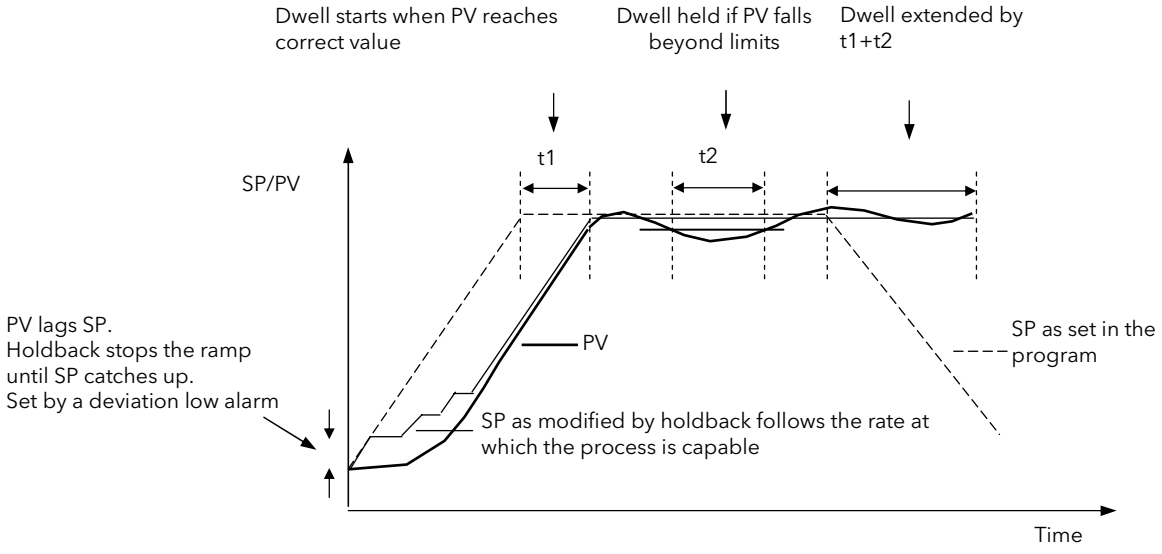

Dwell starts when PV reaches correct value
Dwell held if PV falls beyond limits
Dwell extended by t1+t2
t1
t2
SP/PV
PV lags SP.
Holdback stops the ramp until SP catches up.
Set by a deviation low alarm
PV
SP as set in the program
SP as modified by holdback follows the rate at which the process is capable
Time

Figure 8-6: Effect of Holdback to Produce Guaranteed soak

During a dwell period the holdback type may be set to deviation band. This guarantees that the dwell or soak period operates only when the process value is within both high and low deviation limits.

During a ramp down period the holdback type may be set to deviation high. If the process cannot cool at the rate set by the ramp down rate the program will be held until the process catches up.

When a profile is placed into holdback the other profiles are (normally) not held. They continue and rendezvous at the end of the segment.

Each segment may consist of up to three profiles. Two levels of holdback value, course and fine, may be applied for each profile of each segment in the PROGRAM EDIT Program page.

8.7 PROGRAM USER VALUES

Program User Values provide multiplexor facilities for the user. Each user value provides storage for a number of event values (currently 127). Each user value will normally be soft wired (see Chapter 5) to call up another feature.

The following example shows how the programmer user values may be used to call up different sets of pre-configured digital output values for different segments in a programmer. This would make use of the Pattern Generator described in Chapter 16, and assumes that a user value has been wired to a Pattern Generator.

Program Segment 1	Program Segment 2	Program Segment 3	Program Segment x
User Value 1 Value 1	User Value 1 Value 6	User Value 1 Value 11	User Value 1 Value 15
Pattern Generator output 1	Pattern Generator output 6	Pattern Generator output 11	Pattern Generator output 15

In each segment a different pattern of digital outputs is set up from the single value set in the User Value for each segment.

8.7.1 Program User Value Enumerations

Each program user value may be allocated a name chosen from the 'User Text' library, see section 0. This means that a name can be allocated to Value 1 to Value x in the above table, and can be used to describe the functions carried out in each segment. For example, if User Value 1 is called 'Carburise' the Pattern Generator will set the digital pattern required for carburising and this message can be made to appear in the PATTERN GEN (Dig Group x) page during that segment.

Section 16.6. shows an example which shows how to apply an Enumeration to a Programmer User Value.

8.8 EXTERNAL PROGRAM INPUTS

Digital inputs may have been configured to allow the program to be operated by external sources.

Run	Allows the program to be run from a pushbutton or other event
Hold	Allows the program to be held from a switch or other event.
Reset	Allows the program to be reset from a pushbutton or other event.
Run/Hold	Allows the program to be run or held from a single external source
Run/Reset	Allows the program to be run or reset from a single external source
Advance Segment	Selects the next segment from an external source
Advance Program	Selects the next program from an external source. When this event occurs, the controller display will change to programmer view. Subsequent changes of this source will cause the program number to increment.
Holdback disabled	Disables holdback from an external source

8.9 PROFILE LOCK

Profile Lock is a configuration parameter found in the PROGRAM EDIT (Options Page) which allows programs to be created but which prevents them from being changed in operation levels.

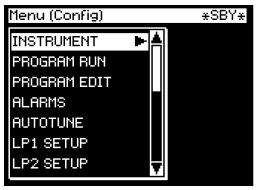
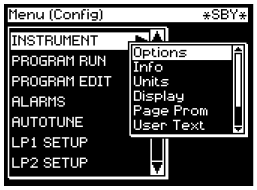
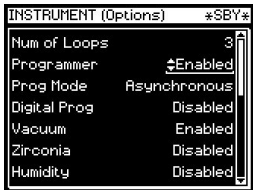
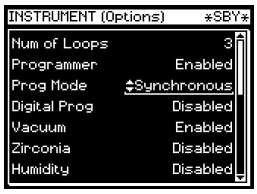
If more than one program was created prior to 'Profile Lock' being selected, then the user can select these programs (using 'Program Number') but cannot create any more.

The options are:-

Fully Locked	No parameter or the profile can be changed in operation levels
Profile Locked	The profile of the program is locked but changes can be made to certain parameters such as Target setpoints, rates, dwells or segment duration.

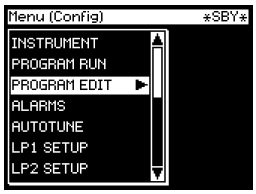
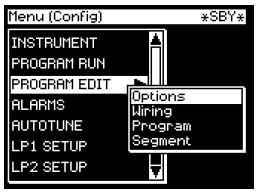
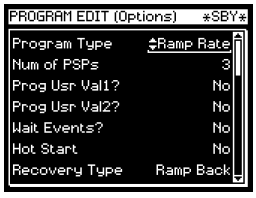
8.10 EXAMPLE: TO CONFIGURE A SYNCHRONOUS PROGRAMMER

If the instrument has been supplied as a programmer it will only be necessary to complete this step if the programmer feature has subsequently been disabled or it is required to change from a synchronous to asynchronous programmer:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**INSTRUMENT'**		
3. Press [↵] to display sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Options'** (if necessary)		
5. Press [↵] to display parameters 6. Press [▼] to scroll to '**Programmer'** 7. Press [↵] to edit 'Programmer' 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'Enabled'**		
9. Press [↵] to edit 'Prog Mode' 10. Press [▲] or [▼] to 'Synchronous'		It is then necessary to confirm this change since any programs already entered will be lost. Press [↵] to confirm or [page] to cancel as instructed in the pop up box.

8.11 EXAMPLE: TO CONFIGURE SYNCHRONOUS PROGRAMMER TYPE

The programmer is supplied as a **Time to Target** programmer. This section describes how to configure a **Ramp Rate** type:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**PROGRAM EDIT**'		
3. Press [↻] to display sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Options**' (if necessary)		
5. Press [↻] to display parameters 6. Press [↻] again to select **'Program Type'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Ramp Rate'**		**If programs have already been set up using the previous Program Type all segment data will be deleted and will need to be re-entered in Operation level.** The Program Type requires a few seconds to re-configure during which time **'INITIALISING'** is displayed. The Program Type is then confirmed
8. Confirm or reject as instructed	 If no button is pressed for 10 seconds the display reverts to the previous view.	

The following table lists further parameters in this page ⇓

8.11.1 PROGRAM EDIT Options Page

Table Number: 8.11.1.	These parameters allow you to configure Program Type and Options. Press ↻ to select each parameter This table is only available in Configuration Level		**PROGRAM EDIT (Options Page)**
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**
Program Type	See previous section		
Num of PSPs	Number of programmer setpoints	1, 2 or 3	
Prog Usr Val1?	Allows programmer User Value 1 to be enabled.	No Yes	No
UVal1 Low Lim (1)	User value 1 low limit	0 to 127 Limited by Uval1 Hi Lim	Only shown if Prog Usr Val = Yes
UVal1 Hi Lim (1)	User value 1 high limit	0 to 127	
Usr Val1 Name (1)	Name from user text for programmer user value 1	01:Usr1 to 100:Usr100	Default Text
Usr Val1 Enum (1)	First user string from for programmer user value 1 custom enumeration	01:Usr1 to 100:Usr100	Default Text
Prog Usr Val2?	Allows programmer User Value 2 to be enabled.	No Yes	No

Table Number: 8.11.1.	These parameters allow you to configure Program Type and Options. Press ↻ to select each parameter This table is only available in Configuration Level		**PROGRAM EDIT (Options Page)**
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**
UVal2 Low Lim (1)	User value 2 low limit	0 to 127 Limited by Uval2 Hi Lim	Only shown if Prog Usr Val = Yes
UVal2 Hi Lim (1)	User value 2 high limit	0 to 127	
Usr Val2 Name (1)	Name from user text for programmer user value 2	01:Usr1 to 100:Usr100	Default Text
Usr Val2 Enum (1)	First user string from for programmer user value 2 custom enumeration	01:Usr1 to 100:Usr100	Default Text
Wait Events?	Activates the Wait events option	No Yes	
Hot Start	Activates the hot start option	No Yes	
Recovery Type	Defines the power recovery strategy See also Section 8.5.	Ramp Back Reset Continue Hold Test Time	Continue
Reset Time	Power recovery reset time (Only if 'Recovery Type' = 'Test Time')	0:00:00 to 23:59:59	
Servo Time	Power recovery servo time (Only if 'Recovery Type' = 'Test Time')	0:00:00 to 23:59:59	
Num of Prg DOs	Defines the number of digital event outputs used	None to 16	
Named Dos?	Allows names to be allocated to digital event outputs	No Yes	No
DO1 Name	To allocate a name for digital event output 1 from User Text This parameter only appears if 'Named Dos?' = 'Yes'	User Text 1 to 100	Default Text
The above parameter is repeated for every digital event output configured			
PSP1 Units	Units to be displayed for PSP1	See Appendix D.2.	
PSP1 Resol	PSP1 decimal point resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX	
PSP1 Low Lim	PSP1 low limit	Display range	
PSP1 High Lim	PSP1 high limit	Display range	
PSP1 Reset Val	Safe state target setpoint	Prog SP lo lim - Prog SP hi lim	
PSP1 Rate Res	PSP1 Rate Resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX	
PSP1 Name	To choose a name for PSP1 from user text	Default Text to 100:User100	Default Text
The above parameters are repeated for PSP2 and PSP3 if 'Num of PSPs' = 2 or 3			
Profile Lock	Prevents a program from being selected See also section 8.9.	Unlocked Profile Locked Fully Locked	
Mimic Page	The program mimic page may be turned off or configured to appear in the Main Menu or in the Summary Page	Off Main Page Summary Page	

Note (1) – Parameters only available if the relevant User Value = 'Yes'

8.12 PROGRAMMER WIRING

8.12.1 Programmer Function Block

The programmer function block, shown in Figure 8-7, shows an example of soft wiring to other functions. The connections can be made using the copy and paste method described in Section 5.1.2. with the exception of the Prg.DO1 to Prg.DO16 event outputs. These can be found by searching through the list of parameters or by entering the Modbus address directly. The Modbus addresses for these parameters are 05869 to 05883 inclusive.

The parameters which can be wired are listed in Figure 8-7. These parameters can be wired to any other parameter by Modbus address or using the shorter list of parameter names – Appendix D.

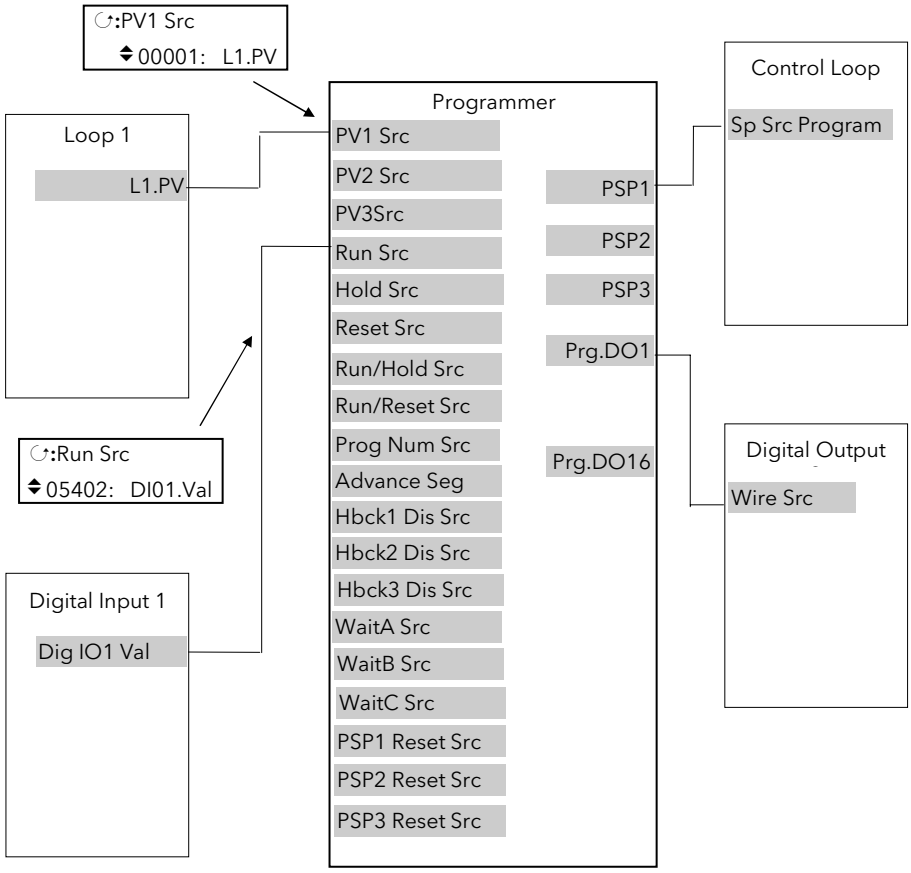


Figure 8-7: Programmer Function Block and Wiring Example

8.12.2 PROGRAM EDIT Wiring Page

Table Number: 8.12.2.	These parameters allow you to soft wire programmer functions This table is only available in Configuration Level	PROGRAM EDIT (Wiring Page)
Parameter Name Press ↻ to select	**Parameter Description**	**Default Wiring Value** Modbus Address:Parameter Mnemonic
PV1 Src	PV 1 source	00001:LP1 PV
PV2 Src	PV 2 source	01025:LP2 PV
PV3 Src	PV 3 source	02049:LP3 PV
Prog Num Src	Program number source	Note 2
Run Src	Run source	05494
Hold Src	Hold Source	05642
Reset Src	Reset Source	05690
Run/Hold Src	Run/Hold Source	Note 2
Run/Reset Src	Run/Reset Source	Note 2
Advanc Prg Src	Advance Program source	Note 2
Advanc Seg Src	Advance segment source	12609
FineHbck1 Sr	Fine holdback 1 source	Note 2
CorseHbck1	Course holdback 1 source	Note 2
Hbck1 Dis Src	Holdback 1 disable source	Note 2
FineHbck2 Sr	Fine holdback 2 source	Note 2
CorseHbck2	Course holdback 2 source	Note 2
Hbck2 Dis Src	Holdback 2 disable source	Note 2
FineHbck3 Sr	Fine holdback 3 source	Note 2
CorseHbck3	Course holdback 3 source	Note 2
Hbck3 Dis Src	Holdback 3 disable source	Note 2
WaitA Src	Wait A source	Note 2
WaitB Src	Wait B source	Note 2
WaitC Src	Wait C source	Note 2
PSP1 Reset Src	PSP1 reset source (1)	00001:LP1 PV
PSP2 Reset Src	PSP2 reset source (1)	01025:LP2 PV
PSP3 Reset Src	PSP3 reset source (1)	02049:LP3 PV

Note 1:-

The PSP Reset Source defines the programmer starting conditions. To servo to setpoint, wire the relevant reset source into the SP. To servo to PV, wire the relevant reset source into the PV.
The value which is wired into the Reset Source is the value which appears at the programmer output.

Note2:-
By default these parameters are not soft wired.

8.13 TO CREATE OR EDIT A PROGRAM

To create or edit a program it is first necessary to define the parameters associated with the overall program. These parameters will be found under the page header **'PROGRAM EDIT (Program)',** see section 8.14.1.

Then set up the parameters which define each individual segment. These parameters will be found in the page **'PROGRAM EDIT (Segments)',** see section 8.15.1.

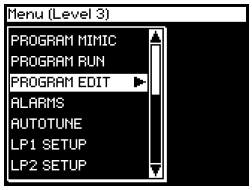
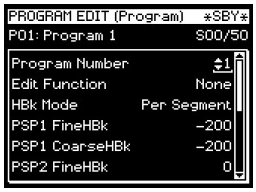
Notes:-

1. A running program cannot be edited, it must be put into **Reset** or **Hold** mode.
2. Changes can be made to any segment of a currently running program as follows:-

- To the currently running segment - use the PROGRAM RUN page. These changes are always temporary and apply to the current run only
- To any segment - use the PROGRAM EDIT page. These changes are always permanent and will apply to subsequent runs.

3. Other programs can be created or edited when another program is running.
4. A program can be edited in Configuration Level or Operating Level

8.14 EXAMPLE: TO ACCESS THE PROGRAM EDIT PAGES

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [ ] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**PROGRAM EDIT**'		
3. Press [ ] to show sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] (if necessary) to select **'Program'**		This page allows the overall programmer parameters to be defined
5. Press [ ] to show parameters 6. Press [ ] again to edit the highlighted parameter		The value of a parameter prefixed by ⬍ can be changed using [▲] or [▼] The full list of parameters is shown in the following table

⇓

8.14.1 PROGRAM EDIT (Program Page) Parameters

Table Number: 8.14.1	These parameters affect the overall program.			PROGRAM EDIT (Program Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Program Number	Selects the program number to be edited. If 'Profile Lock' ≠ 'Unlocked', only those programs which were created prior to setting the 'Profile Lock' parameter can be selected.	1 to 20 or 1 to 60	1	L1
Edit Function	Allows a program to be copied. The example in section 8.28 describes how this feature is used	None Copy Program Paste Program	None	L1
Hbk Mode	Holdback mode None = no holdback Per prog = applied over the whole program Per seg = active in every segment	None Per Program Per Segment	None	L1

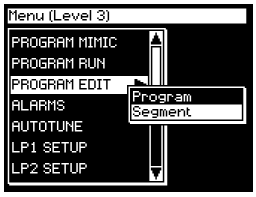
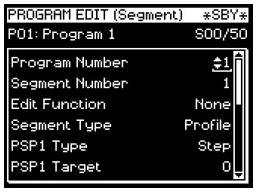
Table Number: 8.14.1	These parameters affect the overall program.			PROGRAM EDIT (Program Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
PSP1 HBk Type	Holdback type for *PSP1* (per program) These are deviations between SP and PV Fine and course holdback allows two levels of holdback to be applied to different segments, see section 8.14.2.	Off Fine Lo Fine Hi Fine Band Course Lo Course Hi Course Band	Off	L1 Only displayed if Per Program configured
PSP1 FineHbk	Fine holdback value for *PSP1*	Display Range	0	L1 Only shown if
PSP1 CourseHbk	Course holdback value for *PSP1*	Display Range	0	HBk Type ≠ Off
The above three parameters are repeated for *PSP2* and for *PSP3* if these are configured				
Hot Start PSP	Allows hot start to be applied to each PSP. See also section 8.2.5.	None *PSP1* *PSP2* *PSP3*	None	L1
Rate Units	Rate units for a Ramp Rate Programmer	Per Second Per Minute Per Hour		L1. Only displayed if the programmer is Ramp Rate
Program Cycles	The number of times a program repeats.	Cont. to 999	Cont.	L1
End Action	Defines the action in the end segment. Dwell - the program will dwell indefinitely at the conditions set in the end segment. Reset - the program will reset to the start conditions.	Dwell Reset		L1
Program Name	Allows a user defined name to be given to the program number	User string Each character can be set in turn		L1

8.14.2 Fine and Coarse Holdback

Fine and Coarse Holdback values are only displayed when 'Holdback Mode' = 'Per Segment'. They allow you to apply one value of holdback to selected segments and another value to other segments. For example, you could apply 'Fine Holdback' to one or more Dwell segments and 'Coarse Holdback' to one or more Ramp segments

The segments in which Fine and Coarse Holdback are applied are selected in **'PROGRAM EDIT (Segments)'**.

8.15 EXAMPLE: TO SET UP EACH SEGMENT OF A PROGRAM

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'PROGRAM EDIT'**		
3. Press [↵] to show sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] (if necessary) to select **'Segment'**		If the program is new, confirm as instructed on the display Create Prg: 2? [page]→Cancel [↵]→OK
5. Press [↵] to select the segment parameters 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll up or down the list of parameters. 7. Press [↵] again to edit the parameter.	If the program exists, the segment details are displayed 	Up to 100 segments are available per program
The value or state of a parameter prefixed by ⬍ can be changed using [▲] or [▼]		

☺

A back and forward scroll is available by holding down [↵] and pressing [▲] or [▼] respectively

Further parameters may be accessed and adjusted in the same way. These are listed together with an explanation of their function in the following table ⇓

8.15.1 PROGRAM EDIT (Segment) Parameters

Table Number: 8.15.1.	These parameters allow you to set up each segment in the program			PROGRAM EDIT (Segment)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Program Number	Selects the program number to be edited	1 to 20 (or 60)		L1
Segment Number	Selects the segment number to be edited	1 to 100		L1
Edit Function	Allows a segment to be inserted The example in section 8.28 describes how this feature is used	None Insert Segment Delete Segment	None	L1
Segment Type	Segment type	Profile End Segment Go Back	Profile	L1

Profile = a normal segment
End Segment = the last segment in the program (press ↵ to confirm)
Go Back = repeat part of program. Not shown for segment 1.

Table Number: 8.15.1.	These parameters allow you to set up each segment in the program		PROGRAM EDIT (Segment)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
PSP1 Type	Profile setpoint 1 type	Step Dwell Ramp		L1.
Only shown if Program Type = Ramp Rate and program not in End				
PSP1 Target	Profile setpoint 1 target value	SP1 lo limit to SP1 hi limit	0	L1
PSP1 Dwell Tm	Profile setpoint 1 dwell time	d : h : m : s		L1.
Only shown if Program Type =Ramp Rate; Segment Type = Dwell and program not in End				
PSP1 Rate	Profile setpoint 1 rate			L1
Only shown if Program Type =Ramp Rate; Segment Type = Dwell and program not in End				
PSP1 Hbk Type	Profile setpoint 1 holdback type	Off Fine Lo Fine Hi Fine Band Course Lo Course Hi Course Band	Off	L1
Only shown if holdback is configured per segment				
The above five parameters are repeated if *PSP2* and *PSP3* are configured				
Seg Duration	Duration for Time to Target programmer only	d : h : m : s		L1
Wait Event	Wait if selected event is true Only shown if wait events configured	No wait Event A Event B Event C	No Wait	L1
Prog User Val 1	Allows a Programmer User Val to be chosen. See also section 8.7. Only shown if Prog User Val 1 is configured	0 to 100	0	L1
Prog User Val 2	Allows a Programmer User Val to be chosen. See also section 8.7. Only shown if Prog User Val 2 is configured	0 to 100	0	L1
Prog DO Values	Sets programmer event outputs on or off. The number of DO values is set by 'Num of Prog DOs' PROGRAM EDIT (Options) Not shown if Num of Prog Dos = 'None'	□□■□ ■ = Off □ = On		L1
Seg Edit 1 (to 16)	If programmer event outputs have been configured, then, as an alternative to the previous presentation, the event can be given a name. [PROGRAM EDIT (Options) – Named Dos? = Yes]	The name of the event is shown with its state On or Off	Off	L1
GoBack to Seg	Allows repeat segments to be set up within a profile. Go back defines the point in the program where the repeat segments are entered. Only shown if segment. type is Go Back	1 to no. of segments See also Section 8.4.2.		L1
Go Back Cycles	Sets up the number of times the segments are repeated Only shown if segment. type is Go Back	1 to 999	1	L1
Segment Name	Allows a user defined name to be chosen	Default Text to 100:Usr 100	Default Text	L1

8.16 TO RUN A SYNCHRONOUS PROGRAM

Press PROG . **A program can only be Run, Reset or Held in Operator Level 1, 2 or 3.**

1. The program status pop up window is displayed
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the program to be run
3. Press ↻ to edit Delayed Start if it is required to run the program after a set period
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to set a time period for the delayed start
5. Press the PROG button again to select **'Run'**

The symbol in the top left of the display changes to

8.17 TO HOLD A PROGRAM

A program can only be held from Run mode. Press the '**PROG'** button once. The pop up window is again displayed showing **'Run'.** Press the **'PROG'** button again. The message in the pop up window changes to **'Hold'**.

The symbol in the top left of the display changes to.

8.18 TO RESET A PROGRAM

Press the '**PROG'** button once. The pop up window is again displayed showing **'Run'** or **'Hold'.** Press the **'PROG'** button again and hold it pressed for 2 seconds. The message changes to **'Reset'**.

The symbol in the top left of the display changes to

8.18.1 From Digital Inputs

If digital inputs have been configured and wired for an external RUN, HOLD or RESET, activate the relevant digital input. This will normally be activated from an external switch.

8.18.2 From Digital Communications

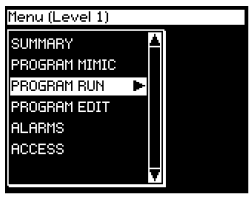
If a PC running SCADA package or iTools is connected to the controller via the digital communications module, the programmer status may be changed from this package.

8.18.3 From the PROGRAM RUN Page

This page contains a parameter called **'Program Status'**. Its value can be changed to **'Run'**, **'Hold'** or **'Reset'**. See the following section.

8.19 EXAMPLE: TO VIEW THE STATE OF A RUNNING PROGRAM

If you wish to know the state of the digital outputs or times remaining, for example, then you can access the 'PROGRAM RUN' pages:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**PROGRAM RUN'**		
3. Press [↻] to show sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] (if necessary) to select **'General'**		
5. Press [↻] to select the list of parameters for running the program.		The parameters in this view include:- • Program Status – Run Hold or Reset can be selected from this list • Current segment • Program event outputs • Time & Days remaining to end of program • Fast Run

Warning!

i **Fast Run** allows the program to be tested by quickly running through the program segments. If the controller is connected to the process, ensure that the process is not affected if fast run is selected.

The default value, **No,** means that the program will run at the set rate

The full list of parameters is shown in the following table

8.19.1 Run Parameter Tables

Table Number: 8.19.1a	These parameters provide information on the running program.		PROGRAM RUN (General Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Prog DOs	Digital outputs summary These are shown in this format if 'Named Dos' = 'No' The number of DO values is set by 'Num of Prog DOs' PROGRAM EDIT (Options) Not shown if Num of Prog DOs = 'None'	□□■□ (Up to 16) ■ = Off □ = On		L3
Prog DO 1 (to 16)	If programmer event outputs have been configured, then, as an alternative to the previous presentation, the event can be given a name. [PROGRAM EDIT (Options) – Named Dos? = Yes]	The name of the event is shown with its state On or Off	Off	L3
Delayed Start	Delay before the start of the program	h:mm:ss	0:00:00	L3
Time Remaining	Time remaining to end of program	Not Running or h:mm:ss		L3
Days Remaining	Number of days left for the	0 to 255		L3

Table Number: 8.19.1a	These parameters provide information on the running program.	PROGRAM RUN (General Page)		
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
	programmer to run			
Fast Run	To fast run the program	No Yes	No	L3
Program Status	Displays the status of the program	Reset Run Hold Complete		L1
Prog Run	Programmer run status	1=running		L3
Prog Hold	Programmer hold status	1=holding		L3
Prog Reset	Programmer reset status	1=reset		L3
Prog End	Programmer end status	1=end		L3
New Seg	New segment loaded	1=new segment for 100ms		L3
Prog Time Elap	Program time elapsed	h: mm: ss	up to 24Hrs	L3 R/O
Prog Cycle Rem	Remaining number of cycles Only if 'Prog Cycles' >1	1 to 999		L1 R/O
Total Segments	Number of segments in the running program	0 to 100		L1 R/O
Segment Number	The currently running segment number	1 to 100		L1 R/O
Segment Type	Current segment type Profile = normal segment End Segment = End of prog Go Back =repeat part of prog	Profile End Segment Go Back	Profile	L1 R/O Alterable in Hold
Segment Name	A user defined name for the segment	User Text	Default Text	L1 R/O
Seg Time Rem	Time remaining in the current segment	d: h: m: s		L1. R/O Alterable if Time To Target prog and in Hold
Wait Status	Wait Status	No Wait Event A Event B Event C	No Wait	L1 R/O
Wait Condition	Wait condition for the running segment	No Wait Event A Event B Event C	No Wait	L1. Alterable in Hold
Prog User Val 1	Active User Val 1			L1
Prog User Val 2	Active User Val 2			L1
Goback Rem	Go back cycles remaining	1 to 999		L1 R/O
End Action	The state required in the end segment	Dwell Reset		L1 R/O
Prog Reset DO	Digital event outputs in Reset These are shown in this format if 'Named Dos' = 'No'	□□■□ (up to 16) ■ = Off □ = On		L1 R/O Only shown if configured
Seg Edit 1 (to 16)	If programmer event outputs have been configured, then, as an alternative to the previous presentation, the event can be given a name. [PROGRAM EDIT (Options) – Named Dos? = Yes]	The name of the event is shown with its state On or Off	Off	L3
Reset UsrVal1	Reset value for User Value 1			L1
Reset UsrVal2	Reset value for User Value 2			L1

Table Number: 8.19.1b	These parameters are associated with Profiled Setpoint number 1		PROGRAM RUN (*PSP1* Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Seg Time Rem	Segment time remaining	h:m:s		L1
PSP1 Type	Running segment type for profiled setpoint 1	Not Used Step Dwell Ramp		L1 R/O - shown in Ramp Rate programmer only
PSP1	Working setpoint for profiled setpoint 1	Display range (Note 1)		L1. Alterable in Hold
PSP1 Target	Running segment target for profiled setpoint 1	Display range (Note 1)		L1. Alterable in Hold
PSP1 Dwell Tm	Time remaining in running segment for profiled setpoint 1	Display range		L1. Alterable in Hold
PSP1 Rate	Running segment rate for profiled setpoint 1	Display range (Note 1)		L1. Not in Time To Target prog
PSP1 HBk Appl	Holdback applied for profiled setpoint 1	No Yes		L1 R/O - shown if configured

Note 1: Range limited by user defined upper and lower limits

The above table is repeated for *PSP2* parameters and *PSP3* parameters

8.20 PROGRAMMER WIRING EXAMPLES

8.20.1 One Profile, Three Loops

This example explains how to configure a programmer to allow one profile to generate a setpoint for three control loops.

The 2704 program block can generate up to three profiled variables, which can then be internally wired to any parameter source. In most cases the PSPs are used to allow control loop setpoints to follow a pre-determined ramp/dwell sequence, but they can also be used, for example, to retransmit a setpoint to a slave device.

In this example PSP1 is soft wired to the program setpoints of each control loop. Also, the PV of loop1 is wired to the PV1 source, to provide holdback, and the PSP1 reset source, to provide servo start. This configuration is supplied from the factory by defining the hardware code field, in the 2704 order code, for loops/programs to be '321' or '351'.

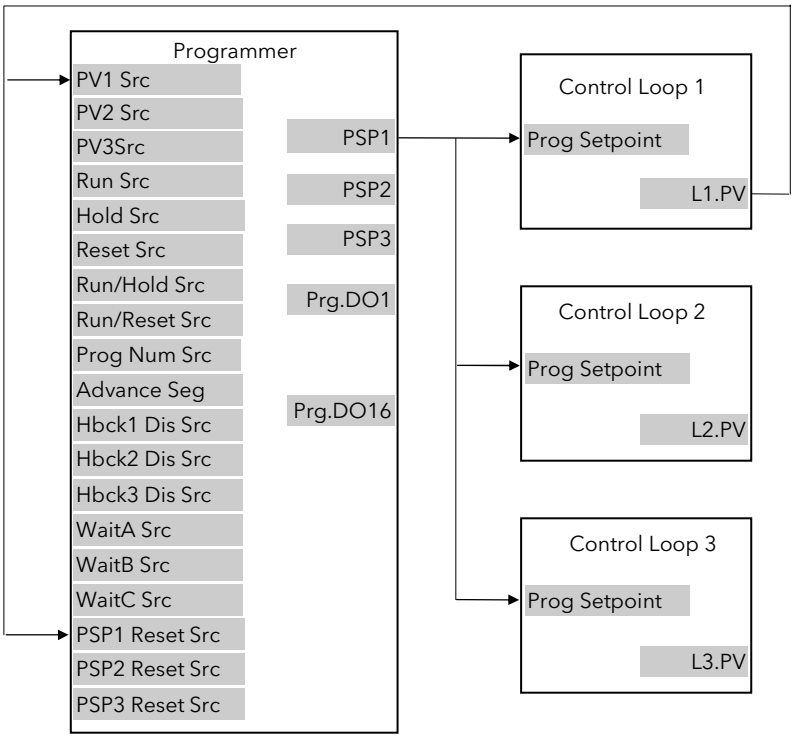


Figure 8-8: Example Programmer Wiring One Profile Three Loops

8.20.1.1 Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/Options Page
   set 'Num of Loops' = 3
   set 'Programmer = Enabled
2. In PROGRAM EDIT/Options Page
   set 'Num of PSPs' = 1
   (Note: other parameters such as number of digital event outputs, SP range and power failure recovery are also set in this page)
3. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page
   Set 'PV1 Src' = 00001:L1.PV
   This connection is required so that the programmer can use Loop 1 PV to calculate holdback.
4. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page
   Set 'PSP1 Reset Src' = 00001:L1.PV
   This connection is required so that the programmer can use Loop 1 PV to servo start.
5. In LP1 SETUP/Options Page
   Set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP1
   Connects PSP1 to become the program SP for Loop 1
6. In LP2 SETUP/Options Page
   Set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP1
   Connects PSP1 to become the program SP for Loop 2
7. In LP3 SETUP/Options Page
   Set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP1
   Connects PSP1 to become the program SP for Loop 3

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 5.

8.20.2 Two Profiles, Two Loops

This example explains how to configure a 2704 programmer to generate two setpoints which are then used to profile the setpoint for two independent control loops.

In this example PSP1 and PSP2 are soft wired to the program setpoints of loop 1 and loop 2 respectively. Also, the PV of loop1 is wired to the PV1 source, to provide holdback, and the PSP1 reset source, to provide servo start. The latter is repeated for Loop 2. This configuration is supplied from the factory by defining the hardware code field, in the 2704 order code, for loops/programs to be '222' or '252'.

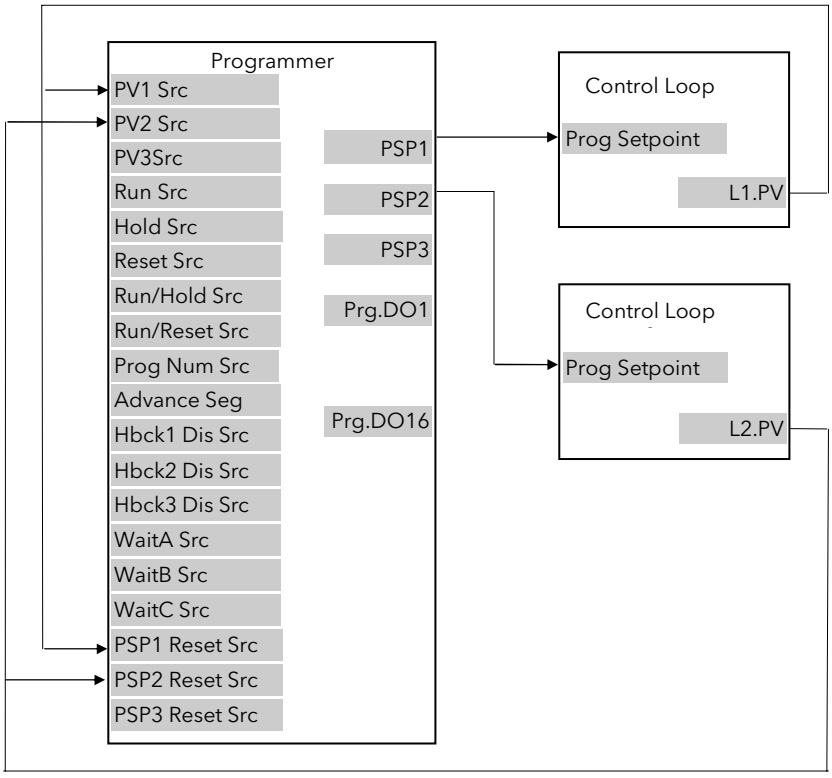


Figure 8-9: Example Programmer Wiring Two Profiles Two Loops

8.20.2.1 Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/Options Page
   set 'Num of Loops' = 2
   set 'Programmer = Enabled
2. In PROGRAM EDIT/Options Page
   set 'Num of PSPs' = 2
   (Note: other parameters such as number of digital event outputs, SP range and power failure recovery are also set in this page)
3. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page
   Set 'PV1 Src' = 00001:L1.PV
   This connection is required so that the programmer can use Loop 1 PV to calculate holdback for PSP1.
4. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page
   Set 'PV2 Src' = 01025:L2.PV
   This connection is required so that the programmer can use Loop 2 PV to calculate holdback for PSP2.
5. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page
   Set 'PSP1 Reset Src' = 00001:L1.PV
   This connection is required so that PSP1 can use Loop 1 PV to servo start.
6. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page
   Set 'PSP2 Reset Src' = 01025:L2.PV
   This connection is required so that PSP2 can use Loop 2 PV to servo start.
7. In LP1 SETUP/Options Page
   Set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP1
   Connects PSP1 to become the program SP for Loop 1
8. In LP2 SETUP/Options Page
   Set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP2
   Connects PSP2 to become the program SP for Loop 2

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 5.

8.21 ASYNCHRONOUS PROGRAMMER

A summary of the functions available in the asynchronous programmer is given below:-

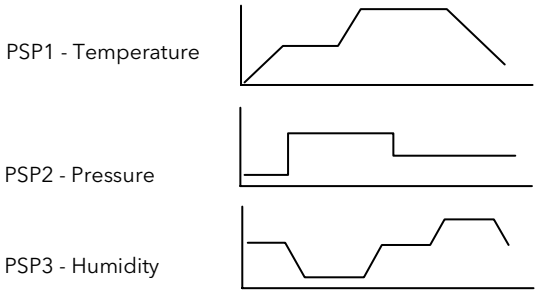
- Creation of programs is the same as for the synchronous programmer, thus allowing for a different number of segments for each PSP.
- The number of available programs for each PSP is fixed at 20
- Twenty Program Groups are available. Program Groups are described in section 8.22.
- Up to three programs may be configured into each program group
- Programs in each Program group are executed asynchronously. They all start at the same time although it is possible to run, say, PSP1 and PSP2 with PSP3 not used; then run PSP3 later
- Each program can have up to 16 event outputs and two user values per segment
- The first press of the PROG button allows the user to select the program group to run
- The user may select and modify programs in the selected group when the program is in Hold or Reset mode in the same way as a synchronous programmer
- Changes made to programs, other than Group 0, are permanent
- A delayed start parameter is available
- Changes made to Program Group 0 will be overwritten by stored program combinations for other groups when one of these is selected
- The Run/Hold button acts as a global Program Group control, i.e. all programs in the program group are put into the requested state
- Individual status parameters are available for each program in the group
- There is a Group Status parameter to control the state of the active run group
- Three programmer blocks are utilised to service each Program Group
- Programs not running as part of an active group may be run under independent control, provided the programmer block is not already in use by the active Program Group

8.22 PROGRAM GROUPS

Up to three PSPs can be programmed into a single Program Group.

Example 1: Run Group 1

You may wish to run a Temperature program, a Pressure program and a Humidity program in a particular application. These are shown below as PSP1, PSP2 and PSP3 respectively. Each PSP program can store up to 20 profiles and each includes 16 event outputs. Any combination of these can be placed into a program group. Up to 20 program groups can be defined.



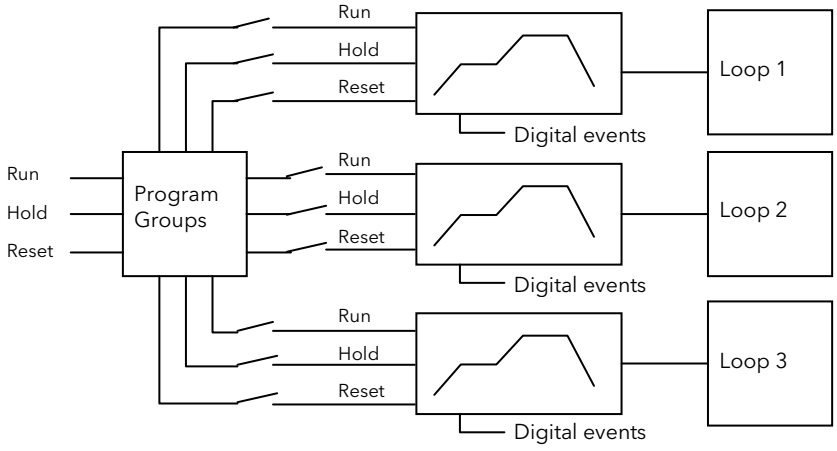
PSP1 is allocated to the first 20 program numbers - default names PSP1:01 to 20

PSP2 to the next 20 - default names PSP2:01 to 20

PSP2 to the last 20 - default names PSP3:01 to 20

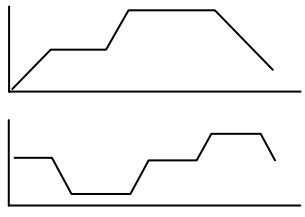
This is applicable over digital communications or when wiring the parameters.

Each program can be run, held or reset individually or together as a group.



Example Run Group 2

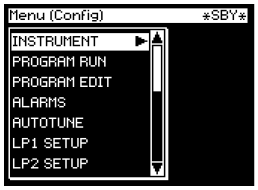
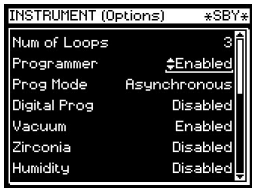
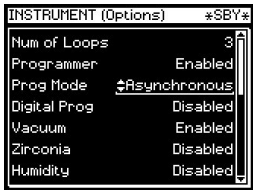
This might consist of a Temperature Profile and a Humidity profile



Up to 20 profiles can be stored in each PSP

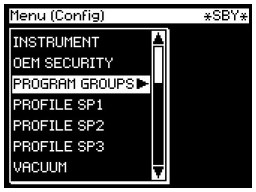
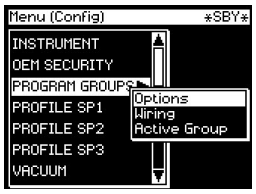
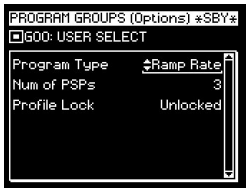
8.23 EXAMPLE: TO CONFIGURE AN ASYNCHRONOUS PROGRAMMER

If the instrument has been supplied as a programmer it will only be necessary to complete this step if the programmer feature has subsequently been disabled or it is required to change from a synchronous to asynchronous programmer:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [D] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**INSTRUMENT'**		
3. Press [↵] to display sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Options'** (if necessary)		
5. Press [↵] to display parameters 6. Press [▼] to scroll to '**Programmer'** 7. Press [↵] to edit 'Programmer' 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'Enabled'**		
9. Press [↵] to edit 'Prog Mode' 10. ' Press [▲] or [▼] to **'Asynchronous'**		In an Asynchronous programmer each program can run independently

8.24 EXAMPLE: TO CONFIGURE ASYNCHRONOUS PROGRAMMER TYPE

The programmer is supplied as a **Time to Target** programmer. This section describes how to configure a **Ramp Rate** type:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**PROGRAM GROUPS**'		Programmer Groups is a new list added for the asynchronous programmer and configures: ▪ Programmer Type ▪ Number of programs ▪ Hot Start ▪ Power fail recovery type ▪ Profile Lock for all PSPs
3. Press [↵] to display sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Options'** (if necessary)		
5. Press [↵] to display parameters 6. Press [↵] again to edit **'Program Type'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Ramp Rate'**		**If programs have already been set up using the previous Program Type all segment data will be deleted and will need to be re-entered in Operation level.** The Program Type requires a few seconds to re-configure during which time **'INITIALISING'** is displayed.
8. Confirm or reject as instructed	 If no button is pressed for 10 seconds the display reverts to previous.	The Program Type is then confirmed

The following table lists further parameters in this page ⇓

8.24.1 Program GROUP Options Page

The following pages allow you to set up and configure the Program Groups. It consists of three sub-headings; the Options page is to configure the overall program; the Wiring page allows internal soft wiring to different parameters; the Active Group page allows each individual group to be set up and is available in operator level access.

Table Number: 8.24.1.	**These parameters allow you to configure Program Type and Options.** This page is only available in configuration level		**PROGRAM GROUPS (Options Page)**
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**
Program Type	To select the type of programmer	Time to Target Ramp Rate	Time to Target
Num of PSPs	Number of profile setpoints used	1, 2 or 3	
Profile Lock	To allow a program to be created but allows no changes in operation levels	Unlocked Profile Locked Fully Locked	Unlocked

A description of each of these parameters is given in the earlier sections of this chapter.

8.24.2 PROGRAM GROUPS Wiring Page

Table Number: 8.24.2.	These parameters allow you to configure the internal soft wiring connections for the Program Groups. This page is only available in configuration level		PROGRAM GROUPS (Wiring Page)
Parameter Name Press ↻ to select	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**
Group Num.	Group number source	Modbus address Enter either the Modbus address directly if known or select from the list in Appendix D	- - - - - None
Run Src	Run Source		
Hold Src	Hold Source		
Reset Src	Reset Source		
Run-Hold Src	Run-Hold Source		
Run-Reset Src	Run-Reset Source		
Group Adv.	Group advance – move to the next group		

8.24.3 PROGRAM GROUPS Group Edit Page

This page is available in operator and configuration level.

Table Number: 8.24.3.	These parameters allow you to set up individual Program Groups			PROGRAM GROUPS (Group Edit Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Group Number	To select the Group number Load Programs allows a program to be entered and run directly	'Load Programs' or select from 1 to 20	Load Programs	L1
Delayed Start	To set a time delay before the program will run	h:mm:ss	0:00:00	L3
Group Status	The program group can be controlled from this parameter The status of the program is also shown by text and symbols at the top of this display	Reset Run Hold Complete		L1
PSP1	To select the profile to be run in the group. Not Used means PSP1 is not part of the group 01:PSP1:P1 means PSP1 is selected from program 1 to 20	Not Used 01:PSP1:P1 to 20:PSP1;P20		L1
PSP2	As above			L1
PSP3	As above			L1
Group Name	A user configurable name By default if Group Number = Load Programs then Group Name = USER SELECT. To customise the name press △ or ▽ to change the digit with the flashing cursor. Press ↻ to advance the cursor	USER SELECT Group 1 to 20	GROUP NAME	L1
Group Run	Group Run	Off On	R/O	L3 R/O
Group Hold	Group Hold	Off On	R/O	L3 R/O
Group Reset	Group Reset	Off On	R/O	L3 R/O
Group End	Group End	Off On	R/O	L3 R/O

8.25 PROFILE SETPOINT PAGES

These pages are similar to the PROGRAM EDIT page available in the synchronous programmer. They allow you to configure and set up each PSP.
There are six pages:-

1. The Options page available in configuration level only. Allows configuration of overall parameters associated with the PSP such as limits, PSP names, units, etc
2. The Wiring page available in configuration level only. Allows internal soft wiring to parameters specific to the application
3. The Run General page available in Operator Level 1. Provides running information of the PSP
4. The Run Segment page available in Operator Level 1. Provides running information of each segment of the PSP
5. The Program Edit page available in Operator Level 1. Allows editing of the overall PSP
6. The Segment Edit page available in Operator Level 1. Allows editing of each segment in the PSP

8.25.1 PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE Options

This page is only available in configuration level

Table Number: 8.25.1.	**These parameters allow you to configure parameters associated with the PSP.**	**PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE (Options Page)**	
Parameter Name Press ↻ to select	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**
Prog Usr Val1?	Allows programmer User Value 1 to be enabled.	No Yes	No
UVal1 Low Lim (1)	User value 1 low limit	0 to 127 Limited by Uval1 Hi Lim	Only shown if Prog Usr Val = Yes
UVal1 Hi Lim (1)	User value 1 high limit	0 to 127	
Usr Val1 Name (1)	Name from user text for programmer user value 1	01:Usr1 to 100:Usr100	Default Text
Usr Val1 Enum (1)	First user string for programmer user value 1 custom enumeration	01:Usr1 to 100:Usr100	Default Text
The above parameters are repeated for User value 2			
Wait Events?	Enables wait events	No Yes	No
Hot Start	Enables the hot start option	No Yes	No
Recovery Type	Defines the power recovery strategy See also section 8.5.	Ramp Back Reset Continue Hold Test Time	Continue
Reset Time	Power recovery reset time	h:mm:ss	
Servo Time	Power recovery servo time	h:mm:ss	
Num of Prg DOs	Defines the number of digital event outputs used	None to 16	
Named DOs?	Allows names to be allocated to digital event outputs	No Yes	No
DO1 Name	To allocate a name for digital event output 1 from User Text This parameter only appears if 'Named Dos?' = 'Yes'	User Text 1 to 100	Default Text
The above parameter is repeated for every digital event output configured			
PSP1 Units	Units to be displayed for PSP1	See Appendix D	
PSP1 Resol	PSP1 decimal point resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX	
PSP1 Low Lim	PSP1 low limit	Display range	
PSP1 High Lim	PSP1 high limit	Display range	
PSP1 Reset Val	Safe state target setpoint	Prog SP lo lim to Prog SP hi lim	

Table Number: 8.25.1.	These parameters allow you to configure parameters associated with the PSP.	PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE (Options Page)	
Parameter Name Press ↻ to select	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**
PSP1 Rate Res	PSP1 rate resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX	
PSP1 Name	To choose a name for PSP1 from user text	Default Text to 100:User100	Default Text
Mimic Page	The program mimic page may be turned off or configured to appear in the Main Menu or in the Summary Page	Off Main Page Summary Page	

Note (1) – Parameters only available if the relevant 'User Value' = 'Yes'

8.25.2 PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE Wiring

This table is only available in Configuration Level

Table Number: 8.25.2.	These parameters allow you to soft wire programmer functions.	PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE (Wiring Page)
Parameter Name Press ↻ to select	**Parameter Description**	**Default Wiring Value** Modbus Address :Parameter Mnemonic
PV1 Src	PV1 source	00001:LP1 PV
Prog Num Src	Program number source	Note 2
Run Src	Run source	Note 2
Hold Src	Hold Source	Note 2
Reset Src	Reset Source	Note 2
Run/Hold Src	Run/Hold Source	Note 2
Run/Reset S	Run/Reset Source	Note 2
Advanc Prg Src	Advance Program source	Note 2
Advanc Seg Src	Advance segment source	Note 2
FineHbck1 Src	Fine holdback value source for PSP1	Note 2
CorseHbck1 Src	Course holdback value source for PSP1	Note 2
Hbck1 Dis Src	Holdback 1 disable source for PSP1	Note 2
WaitA Src	Wait A source	Note 2
WaitB Src	Wait B source	Note 2
WaitC Src	Wait C source	Note 2
PSP1 Reset Src	PSP1 reset source	00001:LP1 PV. Note 1

Note 1:- The PSP Reset Source defines the programmer starting conditions. To servo to setpoint, wire the relevant reset source into the SP. To servo to PV, wire the relevant reset source into the PV.
The value which is wired into the Reset Source is the value which appears at the programmer output.

Note2:- By default these parameters are not soft wired.

The above table is repeated for PSP2 and PSP3. The default wiring is shown below:-

PV2 Src	PV2 source	01025:LP2 PV
PSP2 Reset Src	PSP2 reset source	01025:LP2 PV. Note 1
PV3 Src	PV3 source	02049:LP3 PV
PSP3 Reset Src	PSP3 reset source	02049:LP3. Note 1

8.25.3 PSP1 (2 OR 3) PROFILE Run General Pages

This page is similar to the 'PROGRAM RUN' page for the synchronous programmer and provides information on the running program.

Table Number: 8.25.3	**These parameters p**rovide running information of the PSP This page is available in operator and configuration level			PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE (Run General)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Program	Number of the running program	*PSP1:01* to *PSP1:20* Or name from user text	PSP1:01	L3
Prog DOs	Digital outputs summary (Up to 16) These are shown in this format if 'Named Dos' = 'No'	□□■□ ■ = Off □ = On		L3
Prog DO 1 (to 16)	If programmer event outputs have been configured, then, as an alternative to the previous presentation the event can be given a name. [PROGRAM EDIT (Options) – Named Dos? = Yes]	The name of the event is shown with its state On or Off	Off	L3

Table Number: 8.25.3	**These parameters p**rovide running information of the PSP This page is available in operator and configuration level		PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE (Run General)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Time Remaining	Time remaining to end of program (up to 24 hrs)	Not Running or h:mm:ss		L3
Days Remaining	Number of days left for the programmer to run	0 to 255		L3
Fast Run	Allows the program to fast run	No Yes	No	L3. Alterable in reset or complete
Delayed Start	Delay before the start of the program	h:mm:ss	0:00:00.0	L3
Program Status	Controls the program when not part of a group	Reset Run Hold Complete		L1
Prog Run	Programmer run status	1 = running		Conf
Prog Hold	Programmer hold status	1 = holding		Conf
Prog Reset	Programmer reset status	1 = reset		Conf
Prog End	Programmer end status	1 = end		Conf
New Seg	New segment loaded	1 = new segment for 100ms		Conf
Prog Time Elap	Program time elapsed (up to 24 Hrs)	h: mm: ss		L3 R/O
Prog Cycle Rem	Remaining number of cycles	1 to 999		L1 Alterable in Hold (only shown if 'Prog Cycles' > 0)
Total Segments	Number of segments in the running program	0 to 100		L1 Alterable in Hold
Segment Number	The currently running segment number	1 to 100		L1 Alterable in Hold
Segment Type	Running program segment type Profile = normal segment End Segment = End of prog Go Back =repeat part of prog	 Profile End Segment Go Back	Profile	L1 R/O
Segment Name	A user defined name for the segment		Default Text	L1 R/O
Seg Time Rem	Time remaining in the current segment	d: h: m: s		L1 R/O Alterable if Time To Target prog and in Hold
Wait Status	Wait Status	No Wait Event A Event B Event C	No Wait	L1 R/O
Wait Condition	Wait condition for the running segment	No Wait Event A Event B Event C	No Wait	L1 Alterable in Hold
Prog User Val 1	Active Programmer User Val 1. Name is user configurable			L1
Prog User Val 2	Active Programmer User Val 2. Name is user configurable			L1
GoBack Rem	Number of repeat cycles remaining	1 to 999		L1 Alterable in Hold
End Action	The state required in the end segment	Dwell Reset		L1 R/O
Prog Reset DO	These are the digital events in Reset and are shown in this format if 'Named	□□■□		Only shown if

Table Number: 8.25.3	**These parameters p**rovide running information of the PSP This page is available in operator and configuration level		PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE (Run General)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
	Dos' = 'No' The number of DO values is set by 'Num of Prog DOs' PROGRAM EDIT (Options) Not shown if Num of Prog Dos = 'None'	(up to 16) ■ = Off □ = On		configured. Alterable in Reset
Prog DO 1 (to 16)	If programmer event outputs have been configured, then, as an alternative to the previous presentation, the event can be given a name. [PROGRAM EDIT (Options) – Named Dos? = Yes]	The name of the event is shown with its state On or Off	Off	L1
Reset *UsrVal1*	Reset prog user 1 values. Name is user configurable			L1
Reset *UsrVal1*	Reset prog user 1 values. Name is user configurable			L1

8.25.4 PSP1 (2 OR 3) PROFILE Run Segment Pages

Table Number: 8.25.4	These parameters show the running conditions in each segment of the running program		PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE (Run Segment Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Seg Time Rem	Segment time remaining	h: m: s		L1
PSP1 Type	PSP1 type Name is user configurable	Step Dwell Ramp		L1
PSP1	Working setpoint for profiled setpoint 1. Name is user configurable	Display range Note 1		L1. Alterable in Hold
PSP1 Target	Running segment target for profiled setpoint 1. Name is user configurable	Display range Note 1		L1. Alterable in Hold
PSP1 Dwell Time	Remaining dwell time for PSP1	h: m: s		L1. Alterable in Hold
PSP1 Rate	PSP1 ramp rate			L1
PSP1 HBk Appl	PSP1 holdback applied	No Yes		L1

Note 1:- Range limited by user defined upper and lower limits. If HHHHH or LLLLL appear this indicates out of range high or low respectively.

8.25.5 PSP1 (2 OR 3) PROFILE Program Edit Parameters

This page is similar to the PROGRAM EDIT (Program Page) in the synchronous programmer

Table Number: 8.25.5	These parameters set up the overall program.			PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE (Program Edit)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Program Number	Selects the program number to be edited. If 'Profile Lock' ≠ 'Unlocked', only those programs which were created prior to setting the 'Profile Lock' parameter can be selected.	*PSP1:01* to *PSP20:20* Or name from user text	PSP1:01	L1
Edit Function	Allows a program to be copied and pasted. The example in section 8.27. describes how this feature is used	None Copy Program Paste Program	None	L1
Hbk Mode	Holdback mode None = no holdback Per prog = applied over the whole program Per seg = active in every segment	None Per Program Per Segment	None	L1
PSP1 HBk Type	Holdback type for *PSP1* (per program) These are deviations between SP and PV Fine and course holdback allows two levels of holdback to be applied to different segments.	Off Fine Lo Fine Hi Fine Band Course Lo Course Hi Course Band	Off	L1 Only displayed if Per Program configured
PSP1 FineHBk	Fine holdback value for *PSP1*	Display Range	0	L1. Only shown if HBk Type ≠ Off
PSP1 CourseHBk	Course holdback value for *PSP1*	Display Range	0	
Rate Units	Rate units Only if program Type = Ramp Rate (PROGRAM GROUPS 0ptions Page)	Per Second Per Minute Per Hour		L1
Hot Start	Allows hot start to be applied. Only appears if Hot Start = Yes (PROFILE SP1 Options Page)	Disabled Enabled	None	L1
Program Cycles	The number of times a program repeats.	Cont. to 999	Cont.	L1
End Action	Defines the action in the end segment. Dwell - the program will dwell indefinitely at the conditions set in the end segment. Reset - the program will reset to the start conditions.	Dwell Reset		L1
Program Name	Allows a user defined name to be given to the program number	User string Each character can be set in turn		L1

8.25.6 PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE Segment Parameters

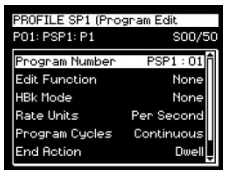
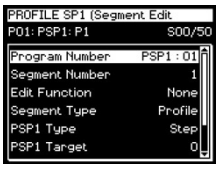
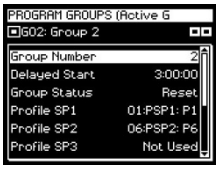
This page is similar to the PROGRAM EDIT (Segment Page) in the synchronous programmer

Table Number: 8.25.6.	These parameters allow you to set up each segment in the program		PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE (Segment Edit)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Program	Selects the program number to be edited	*PSP1:01* to *PSP1:20* Or name from user text	PSP1:01	L1
Segment Number	Selects the segment number to be edited	1 to 100		L1
Edit Function	Allows a segment to be inserted The example in section 8.28. describes how this feature is used	None Insert Segment Delete Segment	None	L1
Segment Type	Segment type	Profile End Segment Go Back	Profile	L1
Profile = a normal segment End Segment = the last segment in the program (press ↻ to confirm) Go Back = repeat part of program. Not shown for segment 1.				
PSP1 Type	Profile setpoint 1 type	Step Dwell Ramp		L1
Only shown if Program Type = Ramp Rate and program not in End				
PSP1 Target	Profile setpoint 1 target value	SP1 lo limit to SP1 hi limit	0	L1
PSP1 Dwell Tm	Profile setpoint 1 dwell time	d : h : m : s	0:00:00.0	L1
Only shown if Program Type =Ramp Rate; Segment Type = Dwell and program not in End				
PSP1 Rate	Profile setpoint 1 rate			L1
Only shown if Program Type =Ramp Rate; Segment Type = Dwell and program not in End				
PSP1 Hbk Type	Profile setpoint 1 holdback type Only shown if holdback is configured per segment	Off Fine Lo Fine Hi Fine Band Course Lo Course Hi Course Band	Off	L1
Seg Duration	Segment duration for Time to Target programmer only	d : h : m : s	0:00:00.0	L1
Wait Event	Wait if selected event is true Only shown if wait events configured	No wait Event A Event B Event C	No Wait	L1
Prog User Val 1	Allows a Programmer User Val to be chosen. See also section 8.7. Only shown if Prog User Val 1 is configured	0 to 100	0	L1
Prog User Val 2	Allows a Programmer User Val to be chosen. See also section 8.7. Only shown if Prog User Val 2 is configured	0 to 100	0	L1
Prog DO Values	Digital outputs summary These are shown in this format if 'Named Dos' = 'No' The number of DO values is set by 'Num of Prog DOs' PROFILE SP1 (Options) Not shown if Num of Prog Dos = 'None'	□□■□ (Up to 16) ■ = Off □ = On		L1
Seg Edit 1 (to 16)	If programmer event outputs have been configured, then, as an alternative to the previous presentation the event can be given a name. [PROGRAM EDIT (Options) – Named Dos? = Yes]	The name of the event is shown with its state On or Off	Off	L1

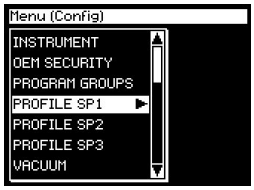
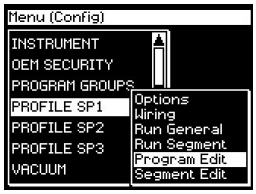
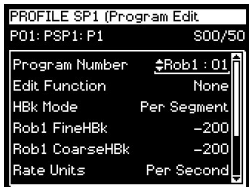
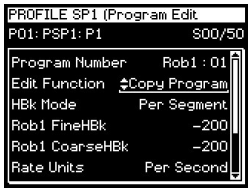
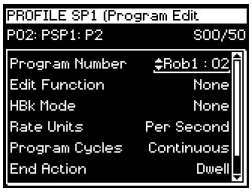
Table Number: 8.25.6.	These parameters allow you to set up each segment in the program		PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE (Segment Edit)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
GoBack to Seg	Allows repeat segments to be set up within a profile. Go back defines the point in the program where the repeat segments are entered.	1 to no. of segments See also Section 8.4.2.		L1
Go Back Cycles	Sets up the number of times the segments are repeated	1 to 999	1	L1
The above two parameters are only shown if segment type is Go Back				
Segment Name	Allows a user defined name to be chosen	Default Text to 50:Usr 50	Default Text	L1

8.26 EXAMPLE: TO SET UP AND RUN PROGRAM GROUPS

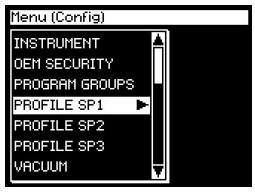
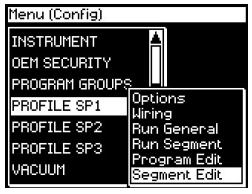
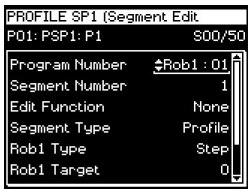
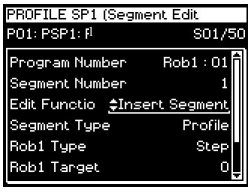
Using the two examples from section 8.22 and the general navigation procedures:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. Set up a temperature program in PSP1:01		See section 8.25.5 for the full list of parameters Set each parameter to suit your application
2. Set up each segment in the program		See section 8.25.6. for the full list of parameters Set each parameter to suit your application
3. Set up a pressure and Humidity program in PSP2:01 and PSP3:01		These are the same as Example 1 shown in section 8.22.
4. Set up further programs as required in PSP1:02 (to 20), PSP2:02 (to 20), and PSP3:02 (to 20)		These are the same as Example 2 shown in section 8.22.
5. When all PSPs have been set up, place them in Groups		
6. Repeat for futher groups		In this example a delayed start of 3 hours has been placed on Group 2 which will run two profiles PSP1:P1 and PSP2:P6
7. To run the program press PROG This is also described in sections 8.30 and 8.31.		Select the group to run. Press PROG again to run the selected group

8.27 EXAMPLE: TO COPY A PROGRAM

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**PROFILE SP1**'		
3. Press [↻] to select sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Program Edit'**		
5. Press [↻] to select parameters and again to edit **'Program Number'** 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the program number to be copied		In this case the program has been given a name by the user
7. Press [↻] to scroll to **'Edit Function'** 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'Copy Program**		When the program is copied the display returns to 'None'
9. Press [↻] and [▲] to scroll back to **'Program Number'** 10. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the program to paste to – in this case program 2		
11. Press [↻] again to scroll to **'Edit Function'** 12. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'Paste Program**		Press [↻] or [page] to confirm or cancel. If no button is pressed for 10 seconds the display reverts to previous and the paste is cancelled.

8.28 EXAMPLE: TO INSERT A SEGMENT INTO A PROGRAM

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'PROFILE SP1'**		
3. Press [↵] to select sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Segment Edit'**		
5. Press [↵] to select parameters and press again to edit **'Program Number'** 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the program number to be edited		In this case the program has been given a name by the user
7. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to **'Edit Function'** 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'Insert Segment'** 9. Press [↵] to confirm or [page] to cancel	 	In this case segment 1 is inserted and the total segment count increases by one If no button is pressed for 10 seconds the display reverts to previous.
		If all segments in the program are already configured the message 'Program Full' is shown

8.29 PROGRAMMER ERROR MESSAGES

If an invalid entry is made when setting up programs through the front panel, a pop up error message will appear. For example a pop up will occur if an attempt is made to copy and paste a program which has more segments than the controller has left. The messages are similar to those which are shown if the same action is implemented over digital communications – see section 20.3.

8.30 RUNNING AN ASYNCHRONOUS PROGRAMMER

As with the synchronous programmer the group of programs can be run using:-

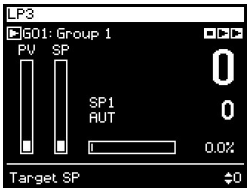
1. The 'PROG' button.
2. A digital input configured to activate all configured PSPs
3. Digital inputs configured to run each PSP separately
4. Via a command from digital communications

If the PROG button is used (as described in the following section), a pop-up window is shown which allows you to choose the format of the program. The other methods listed above are designed for remote or fixed operation in which case the pop-up window is not displayed.

The program may also be controlled using the relevant parameters in the lists. These are:-

5. 'Group Status' in the PROGRAM GROUPS Active Group list. This allows all configured PSPs to be started together
6. 'Program Status' in the PSP1 (2 or 3) PROFILE Run General list. This allows each PSP to be run separately.

8.31 EXAMPLE: TO RUN A PROGRAM USING THE PROG BUTTON

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display Press PROG ◉		The Run Group Status pop-up will be shown. The following conditions may be selected:- Group to run: Group 1 to Group 20 or USER SELECT (Press △ or ▽ to choose) Group 1 to 20 selects pre-set profiles as set up in PROGRAM GROUPS Active Group page. If the user changes the profiles in this pop-up display the changes become permanent. (Press ↻ to scroll down the list): USER SELECT will choose the last selected Program Group but if the profiles are changed they are only applicable to the current run Profile SP1: Not Used or 01:*PSP1:P1* to 20:*PSP1:20* Not Used means that the profile will not be run in this program 01:PSP1:P1 will select PSP1 Program 1 to PSP1 Program 20 Profile SP2: Not Used or 01:*PSP2:P1* to 20:*PSP2:20* Profile SP3: Not Used or 01:*PSP3:P1* to 20:*PSP3:20* Delayed Start: This can be set between 0:00:00 and 500:00:0 hrs. This value counts down when Run is selected. In the event of a power fail, delayed start retains its value prior to the power fail, but the request to run is cancelled.
2. Press PROG ◉ again to **Run** the program		
3. Press PROG ◉ again to **Hold** the program 4. Press PROG ◉ and hold for 3 seconds to **Reset** the program		
This is an example of an Overview display Note the symbols shown on each of these displays as described in the following section		

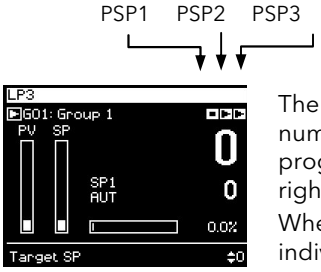
A running program may be interrogated and changes made to segments in the same way as a synchronous programmer.

The programmer mimic can also be displayed in the same way as a synchronous programmer

8.31.1 Asynchronous Programmer Status Bar

The programmer status bar is shown in the top right hand corner of the loop overview displays (as selected by the LOOP button).

They are shown as



The view shown here is applicable when Groups are used. The number of displayed status symbols depends on the number of programmer blocks used, but the order of display is always left to right – with no gaps.

When Groups are not used the program status is associated with the individual loop pages.

Symbols Used

Reset

Run

Hold

The current status is shown in inverse, e.g. PSP is in Hold

These symbols are also used on other views, for example, the Run Group Status pop-up shown in the previous section.

9. CHAPTER 9 DIGITAL PROGRAMMER

9.1 WHAT IS THE DIGITAL PROGRAMMER?

The digital programmer provides a timed control of a single digital output. It may be used during any segment of a Setpoint Programmer or it may be used independently of the Setpoint Programmer.

A sequence of eight Off and On times may be set for the output and up to four Digital Programs can be set. Figure 9-1 shows an example of a timed digital output program.

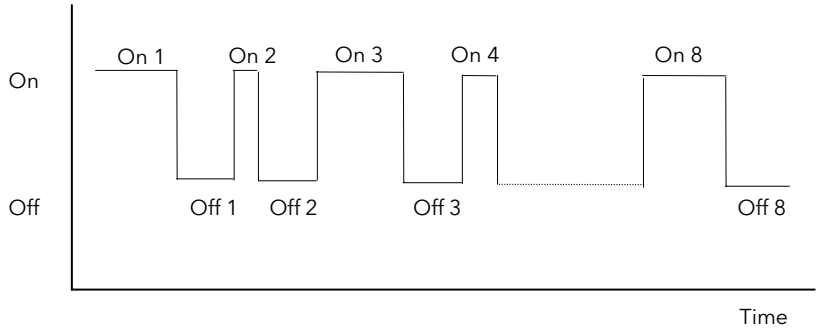


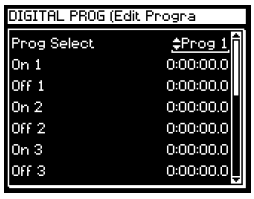
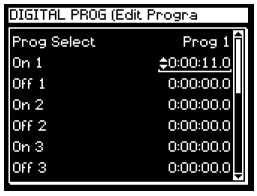
Figure 9-1: An Example of a Programmed Digital Output

Step	Time	Description
On 1	1:00:00.0	On starting the sequence the output will be ON for 1 hour
Off 1	0:30:00.0	The output switches OFF for 30 minutes
On 2	0:05:00.0	The output switches ON for 5 minutes
Off 2	0:30:00.0	The output switches OFF for 30 minutes
On 3	1:00:00.0	The output switches ON for 1 hour
Off 3	0:25:00.0	The output switches OFF for 25 minutes
On 4	0:10:00.0	The output switches ON for 10 minutes
Off 4	0:00:00.0	
On 5	0:00:00.0	
Off 5	0:00:00.0	The step is omitted for any time set to zero
On 6	0:00:00.0	
Off 7	0:00:00.0	
On 8	1:10:00.0	The output switches ON for 1 hour 10 minutes
Off 8	0:40:00.0	The output switches OFF for 40 minutes and is then reset to the start of the sequence

The sequence may be run by:

1. Setting the 'Prog Status' parameter to 'Run'
2. Wiring the 'Run/Hold Src' to:
   a. A digital input controlled an external source such as a push-button
   b. A programmer 'User Value'

9.2 TO EDIT THE DIGITAL PROGRAMMER

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [D] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'DIGITAL PROG'**		
3. Press [↵] to show sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Edit Program'**		
5. Press [↵] to show the list of parameters 6. Press [↵] again to select **'Prog Select'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the program number if required		Up to four programs can be chosen
8. Press [↵] to select **'On 1'** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to increase or decrease the on time for the first output in the sequence 10. Repeat for the eight On and Off periods which make up the sequence		Tip ☺ To enter a large time period press [↵] and [▲] together. This will underline the mins and hours sections independently each time the [▲] button is pressed. The hours/mins can then be raised or lowered using [▲] or [▼]

The full list of parameters is shown in the following table ⇓

9.2.1 Digital Program Edit Page

Table Number: 9.2.1.	These parameters edit the digital programmer		DIGITAL PROG (Edit Program Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Prog Hi Limit	Program select upper limit	0 to 3		L3
Prog Select	Program select	Prog 1 to Prog 4		L3
Prog Enum	User string for first custom enumeration	Not enumerated Usr01 to Usr 50	Not enumerated	L3
On 1	On period 1	0:00:00.0 to 99:59:59.9 If this setting is exceeded HHHH is displayed. To reduce the value Press and hold ▼ button	0:00:00.0	L3
Off 1	Off period 1		0:00:00.0	L3
On and Off periods are repeated up to period 8			0:00:00.0	L3

9.2.2 Digital Program 1 to 4 Page

Table Number: 9.2.2.	These parameters are associated with Digital Programs 1 to 4		DIGITAL PROG (Dig Prog x Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Reset Src	Reset wire source	Modbus address	None	Conf
Run/Hold Src	Run/Hold (equivalent to Prog Status) wire source	Modbus address	None	Conf
OP Enable Src	Output wire source	Modbus address	None	Conf
Reset Disable	When Reset Disable = Off the program is in reset	Off On	Off	L3
Prog Status	Program status	Hold Run		L3
OP Enable	Enables the output	Off On	Off	L3
Reset on Pfail	Power fail recovery see section 9.3	Off On	Off	L3
Program Cycles	Number of cycles for the sequence	Continuous to 999	Continuous	L3
Seg Time Rem	Segment time remaining	0:00:00.0 to 99:59:59.9		L3
Output	Shows the current state of the output	Off On		L3
Output (Inv)	Shows the current inverted state of the output	Off On		L3
Prg End	Program complete Off = prog running` On = prog complete	Off On		L3 R/O

9.3 POWER FAIL RECOVERY

In the event of a power fail to the controller, the parameter, 'Reset on Pfail', defines how the controller behaves on restoration of the power.

If this parameter = 'On' then 'Prog Status' = 'Hold' and 'Reset Disable' = 'Off' at power up.

If Prog Status and Reset Disable have been soft wired they override this state.

9.4 CASCADE TRIM MODE – EARLIER CONTROLLERS

This section applies only to controllers built before April 2001 with software versions 3 or less. Controllers built after this date have software version 4.0 or greater and use the cascade trim block diagram shown in the previous sections.

Earlier versions used the block diagram shown below.

These later versions use additional trim limits and scaling to provide improved control in this mode and it may be advantageous to upgraded to Version 4.0 or greater.

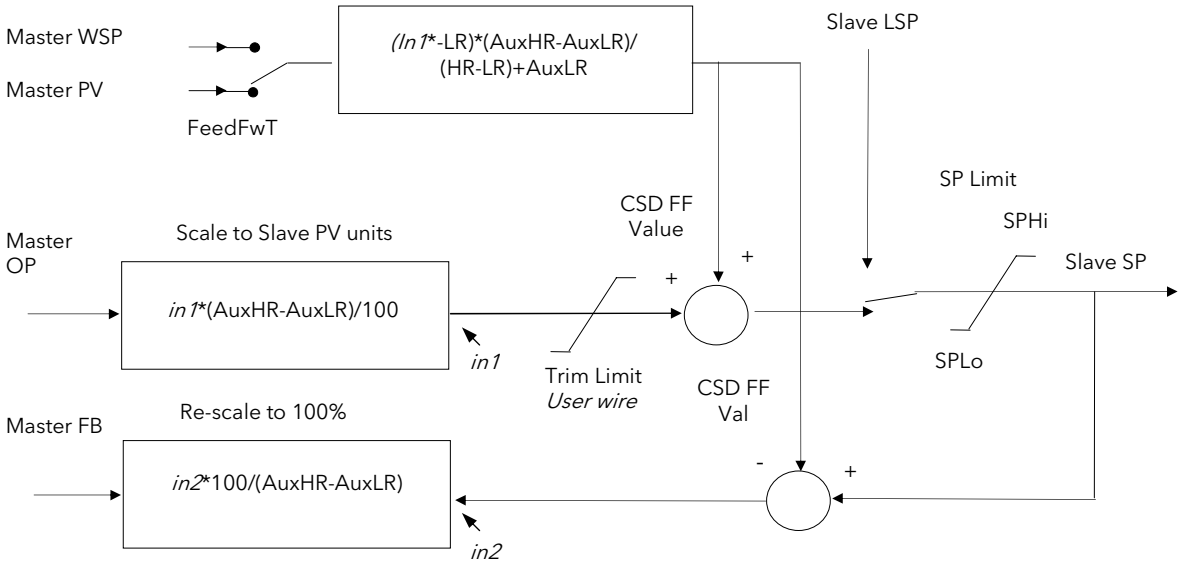


Figure 9-2: Cascade Trim Mode - Software Versions Earlier Than V4.0

9.4.1 Cascade Parameters (prior to April 2001)

Table Number: 9.4.1.	**These parameters allow you to autotune the loop**			***LPx* setup (Cascade Page)**
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Disable CSD	Cascade disable status. (It is sometimes useful to disable cascade when starting a process. This also returns the controller to single loop control using the local SP.)	Off On		L1
CSD FF Value	Cascade feedforward value i.e. The value being fed forward	Range of signal being fed forward		L3
CSD FF Trim Lim	Cascade feedforward trim limit i.e. The amount the master output can be trimmed up and down	Range of slave loop		L3
Work FF Value	Working feedforward value			R/O
The above three parameters only appear if 'FF Type' ≠ 'None'				
Master OP	Cascade master PID output power	Range of slave loop		R/O

10. CHAPTER 10 ALARM OPERATION

10.1 DEFINITION OF ALARMS AND EVENTS

Alarms are used to alert an operator when a pre-set level or condition has been exceeded. They are normally used to switch an output - usually a relay - to provide interlocking of the machine or plant or external audio or visual indication of the condition.

Soft Alarms are indication only within the controller and are not attached to an output (relay).

Events - can also be alarms - but are generally defined as conditions which occur as part of the normal operation of the plant. They do not generally require operator intervention. An example might be to open/close a vent during a programmer cycle.
The controller does not display the alarm status on the front panel.

For the purposes of the configuration of this controller, alarms and events can be considered the same.

10.1.1 Customisable Parameter Names

Throughout this chapter parameter names shown in *italics* are customisable by the user. The name of the parameter may vary, therefore, from instrument to instrument.

Typical customisable parameter names are:

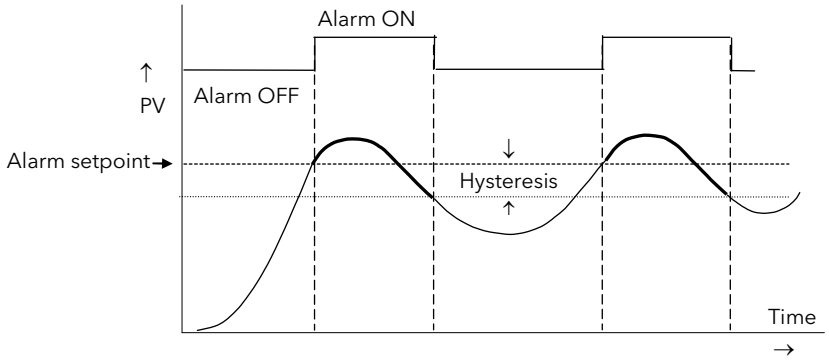
- Alarm names
- Loop names
- Module and Input names
- Custom units
- Promoted parameters

10.2 TYPES OF ALARM USED IN 2704 CONTROLLER

This section describes graphically the operation of different types of alarm used in the 2704 controller. The graphs show measured value plotted against time. The measured value may be any analogue value available in the controller.

10.2.1 Full Scale High

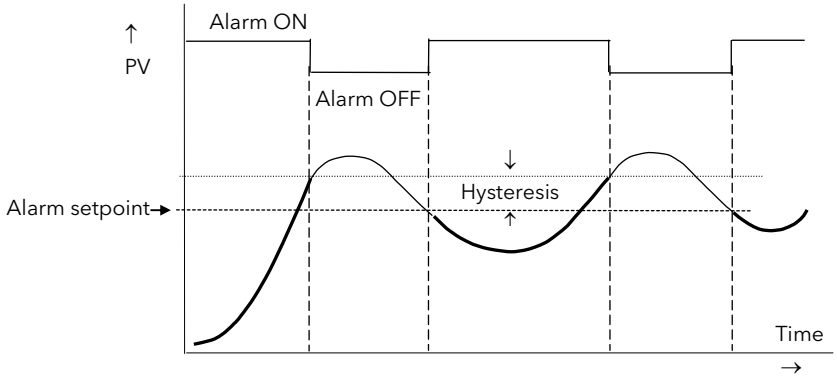
The Process Variable (PV) exceeds a set high level



Hysteresis is the difference between the alarm ON value and the alarm OFF value. It is used to prevent relay chatter.

10.2.2 Full Scale Low

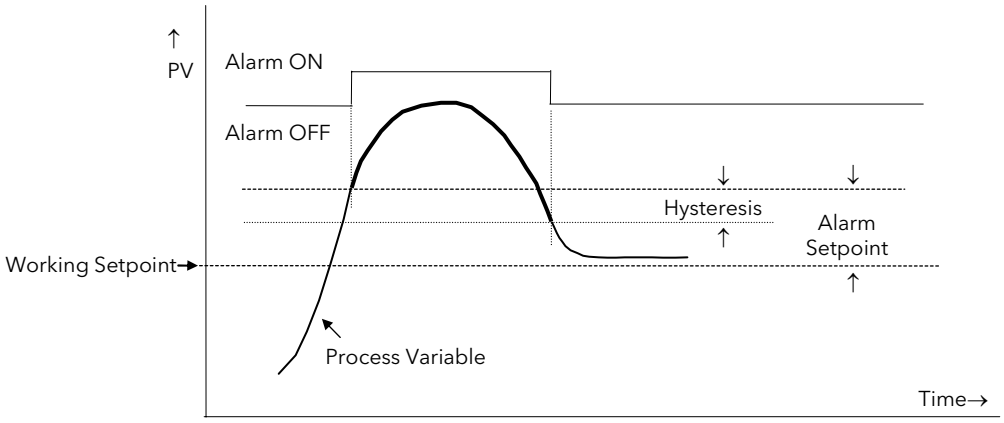
The Process Variable (PV) exceeds a set low level



10.2.3 Deviation High Alarm

The alarm occurs when the difference between the process variable and the setpoint is positive by greater than the alarm setpoint.

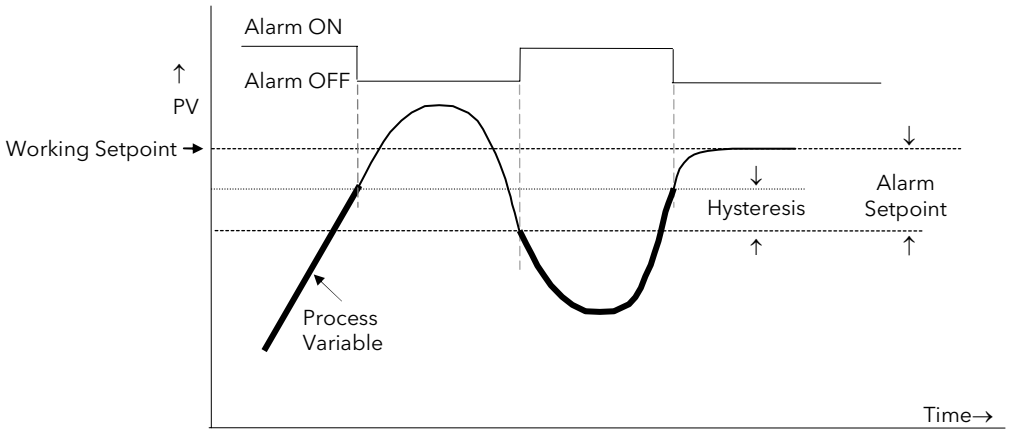
Note: For User Alarms the deviation is the difference between the two user wired analogue inputs.



10.2.4 Deviation Low Alarm

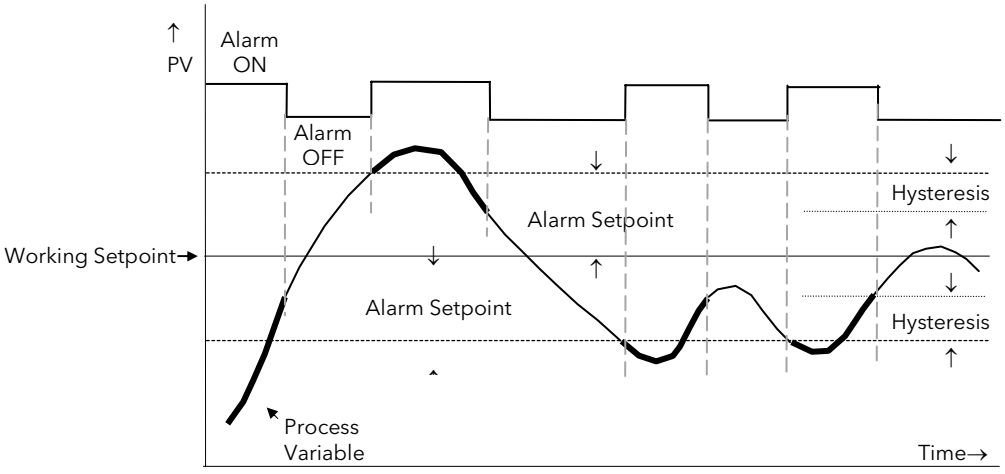
The alarm occurs when the difference between the process variable and the setpoint is negative by greater than the alarm setpoint.

Note: For User Alarms the deviation is the difference between the two user wired analogue inputs.



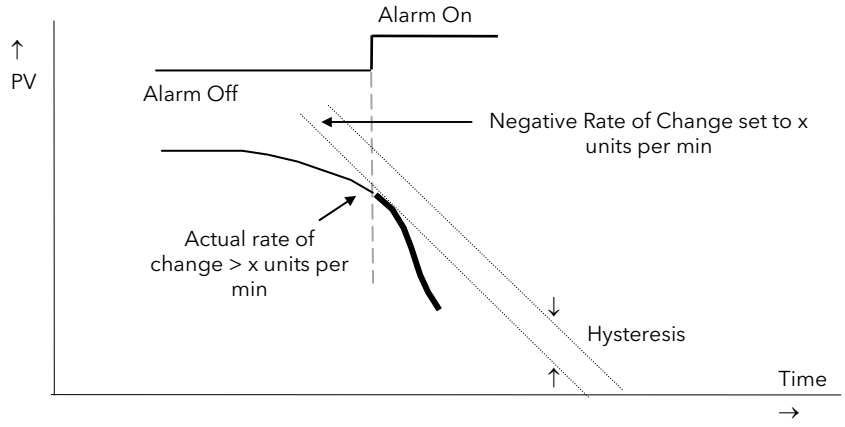
10.2.5 Deviation Band

A deviation band alarm monitors the process variable and the working setpoint and continuously compares the difference against the alarm setpoint. If the difference is either negative by greater than the alarm setpoint, or positive by greater than the alarm setpoint, the alarm state will be active.



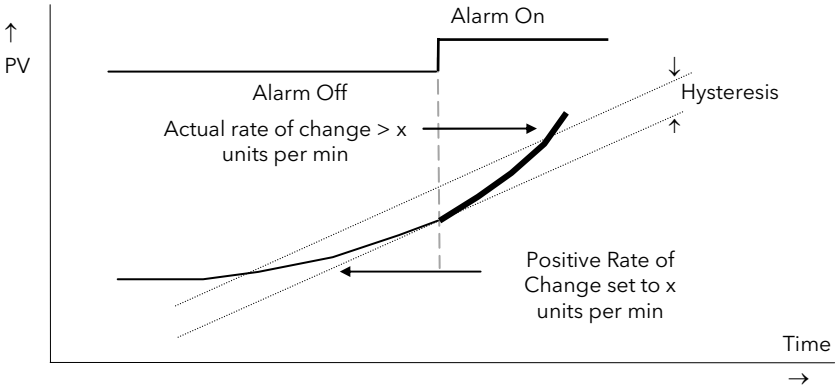
10.2.6 Rate Of Change Alarm (Negative Direction)

The Process Value falls faster than the alarm setting.



10.2.7 Rate Of Change Alarm (Positive Direction)

The Process Value rises faster than the alarm setting.



Notes:

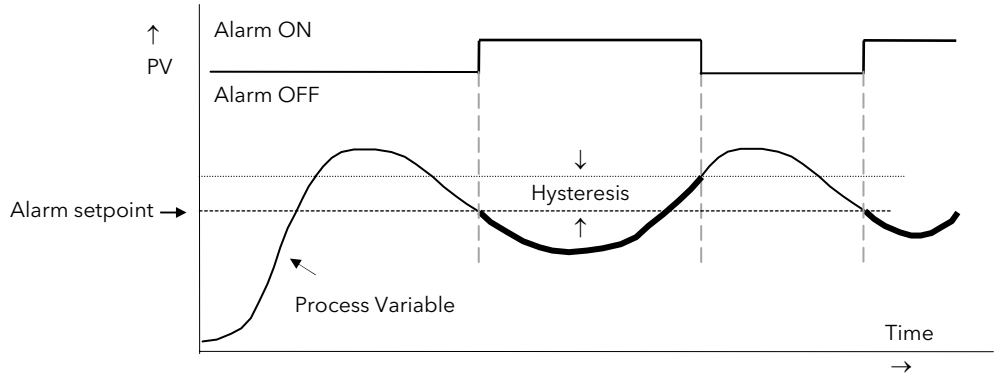
1. Separate alarms are required for positive and negative rates of change
2. An alarm is indicated during the period that the actual rate of change is greater than the set rate of change.
3. There may be a small delay before the instrument displays an alarm condition since the instrument requires several samples. This delay increases if the set value and actual value are close together
4. A hysteresis value of, say, 1 unit per second will prevent the alarm from 'chattering' if the rate of change varies by this amount

10.3 BLOCKING ALARMS

A Blocking Alarm only occurs **after** it has been through a start up phase. It is typically used to prevent alarms from being indicated until the process has settled to its normal working conditions.

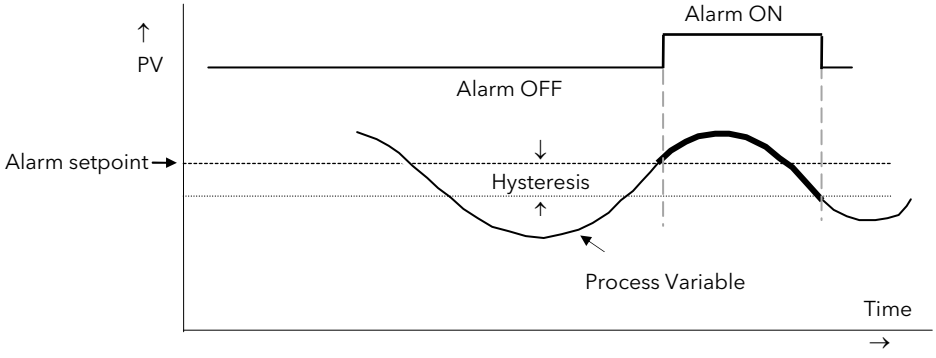
10.3.1 Full Scale Low With Blocking

The alarm only occurs **after** the start up phase when low alarm has first entered a safe state. The next time a low alarm occurs will cause the alarm to become active.



10.3.2 Full Scale High Alarm With Blocking

The alarm only occurs **after** the start up phase when high alarm has first entered a safe state. The next time a high alarm occurs will cause the alarm to become active.

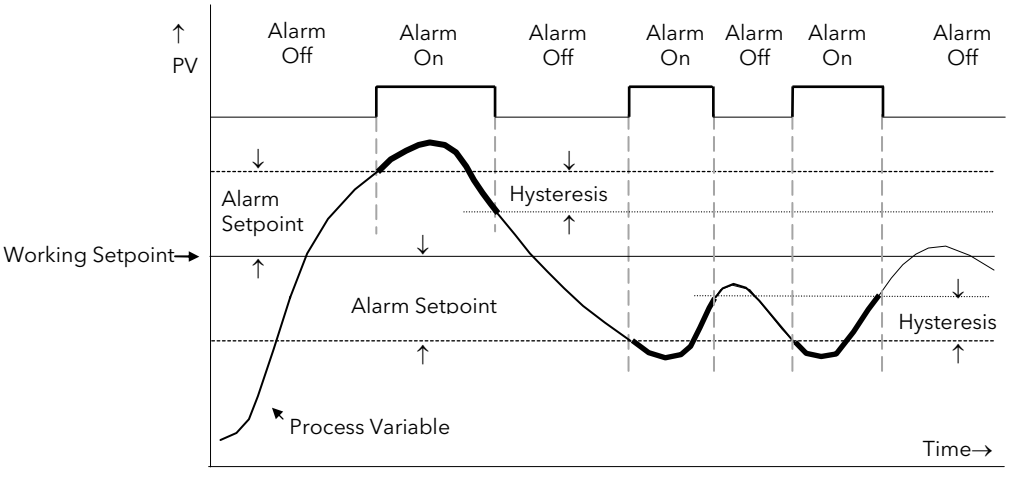


i.e. If the controller is powered up with PV > 'Hi Alarm SP' no alarm is indicated. The PV must reduce below the 'High Alarm SP' and increase again to > 'Hi Alarm SP'. The alarm condition will then be indicated.

If the controller is powered up with PV < 'Hi Alarm SP' an alarm is indicated as soon as PV > 'Hi Alarm SP'

10.3.3 Deviation Band With Blocking

The alarm only occurs **after** the start up phase when low deviation alarm has first entered a safe state. The next time an alarm occurs, whether high band or low band will cause the alarm to become active.



10.4 LATCHING ALARMS

The alarm is indicated until it is acknowledged by the user. Acknowledgement of an alarm can be through the controller front buttons, from an external source using a digital input to the controller or through digital communications.

There are two ways that the alarm can be acknowledged:

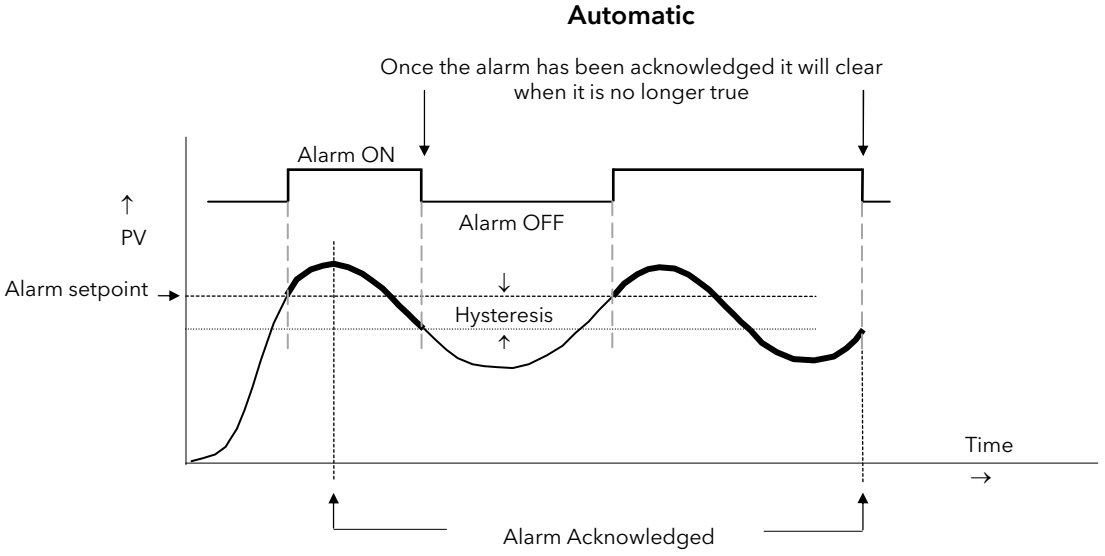
1. **Automatic.** The alarm continues to be active until both the alarm condition is removed AND the alarm is acknowledged. The acknowledgement can occur **BEFORE** the alarm condition is removed.

2. **Manual.** The alarm continues to be active until both the alarm condition is removed AND the alarm is acknowledged. The acknowledgement can only occur **AFTER** the alarm condition is removed.

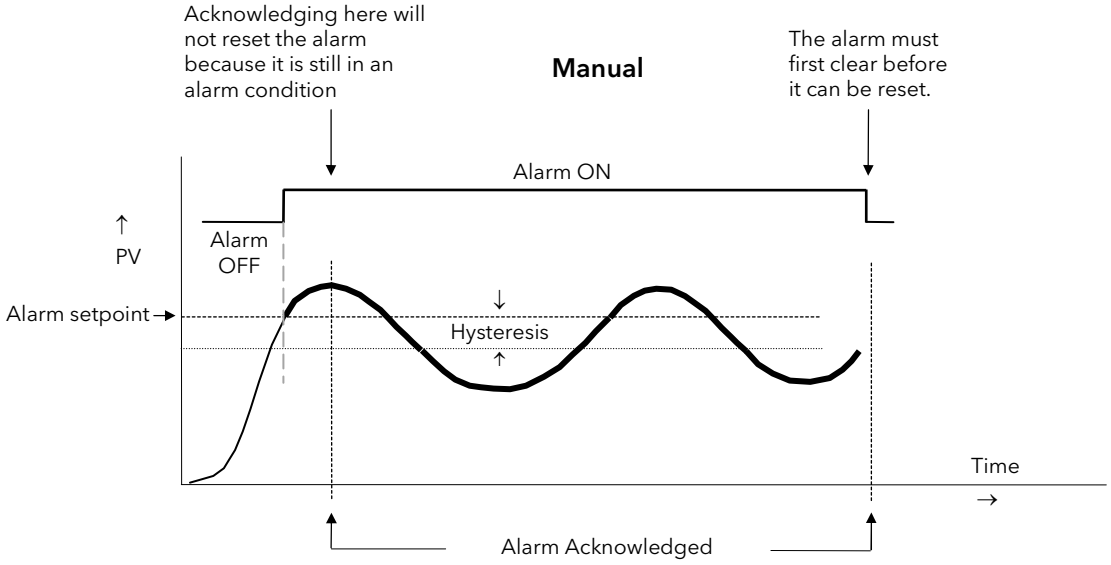
These are shown below for a Full Scale High Alarm

10.4.1 Latched Alarm (Full Scale High) - Automatic

The alarm is displayed until it is acknowledged



10.4.2 Latched Alarm (Full Scale High) - Manual



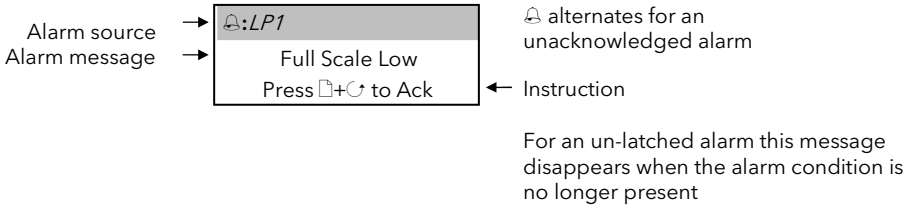
10.4.3 Grouped Alarms

Alarms can be associated with different aspects of the process. They are grouped in accordance with the functions they perform as follows:

Loop Alarms	Alarms associated with each control loop. Examples are: High, Low, Deviation and Rate of Change. Two alarms are available for each loop. On a new controller these are the only alarms which are configured - those listed below must be enabled in configuration level.
PV Input Alarms	Alarms which operate on the PV input. Examples are: High and Low. Two alarms are available with this input.
Analogue Input Alarms	Alarms which operate on the analogue input. Examples are: High and Low. Two alarms are available with this input.
Module Alarms	Alarms which operate on each plug in module. These can be input or output alarms depending upon the function of the module fitted. These alarms are associated with modules 1, 3, 4, 5, & 6, since module 2 is reserved for future use
User Alarms	Eight undedicated alarms which can be wired to any variable.

10.5 HOW ALARMS ARE INDICATED

Alarms are indicated when the controller is in normal operating level. When an alarm occurs a message will appear on the display which will indicate the source and the type of alarm. The format of this alarm message is:


Alarm source
Alarm message
:LP1
Full Scale Low
Press +↻ to Ack
alternates for an unacknowledged alarm
Instruction
For an un-latched alarm this message disappears when the alarm condition is no longer present

When the alarm has been acknowledged the message shown in the banner of the pop up window above will now be shown in the Loop Display page.

The symbol will be shown steady in the top banner of any page if any alarm is still present.

If a relay has been connected to the output of the alarm, it will operate to allow an external beacon or audible device to be activated. In general, the relay will be de-activated when the alarm is acknowledged, subject to the latching configuration.

10.5.1 Alarm Delay Time

A delay time can be set for each alarm between the occurrence of the alarm and the indication of the alarm in the controller. This is useful to prevent spurious alarms from being indicated in some noisy or rapidly changing processes.

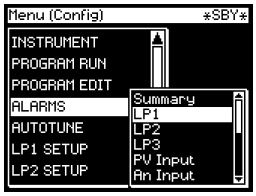
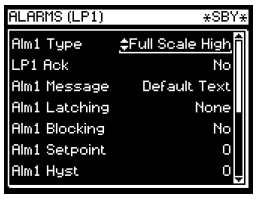
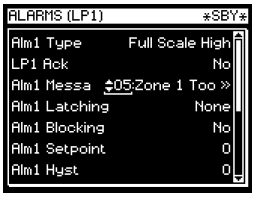
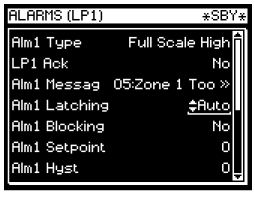
Delay time can only be set in Configuration level.

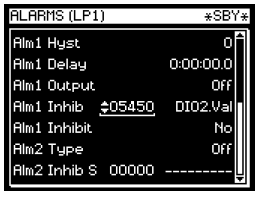
If delay time has been configured for the alarm the user may be aware that the occurrence of an alarm may not necessarily correspond with the display of the alarm

10.6 TO CONFIGURE AN ALARM

The example below is shows how to configure a Loop 1 Alarm. Each loop has two alarms, shown on the display as Alm1 and Alm2.

The procedure described below is the same for all alarms.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'ALARMS'**		
3. Press [↵] to display sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select ***'LP1'***		The first sub-header is Summary. Further sub-headers allow other alarms to be configured Text shown in *italics* is user definable and will appear if:- 1. User Text is enabled in INSTRUMENT page, see section 5.2.6. 2. The text has been assigned to this parameter
To Configure Alarm Type 5. Press [↵] to display *LP1* alarm parameters 6. Press [↵] again to edit **'Alm1 Type'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to configure the alarm type		The choices are:- Off Full Scale Low Full Scale High Deviation Band Deviation High Deviation Low Rate of Change
To Configure Alarm Message 1. Press [↵] to scroll to **'Alm1 Message'** 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the message		The message which appears when an alarm occurs can be customised from the list of User Text messages. This example chooses User Text number **'05'** previously set to **'Zone 1 Too Hot'.** See also section 5.2.6.
To Configure Alarm Latching 1. Press [↵] to scroll to **'Alm1 Latching'** 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the latching type		The choices are:- None Auto Manual Event See also 8.1 See section 8.4 for a description of alarm latching

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
To Configure Alarm Blocking, Alarm Setpoint, Alarm Hysteresis, Alarm Delay, Alarm Inhibit		
1. Press [⟳] to scroll to the parameter 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the condition or value		
To Configure Alarm Inhibit Source		
1. Press [⟳] to display **'Alm1 Inhibit Sr'** 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the Modbus address of the source parameter which you wish to wire to.		The alarm can be inhibited while an event is true. Here it is shown soft wired to Digital Input 02. For a list of commonly used wireable parameters see Appendix D. The next parameter is Alm1 Inhibit. If this is set to:- No → the event is ignored Yes → the alarm waits for the event to become true.

10.7 ALARM TABLES

The following alarm pages are available:-

Summary	A summary of all alarms. This table is also available in Level 3 but can be promoted to Level 1, see section 7.2.5.	
Alarms Loop 1	See section 10.6.	Alarms for These pages are configured As in section 10.6.
Alarms Loop 2	These are the same as loop 1	
Alarms Loop 3	These are the same as loop 1	
PV Input	High and Low Alarms are available for the fixed PV Input.	
Analogue Input	High and Low Alarms are available for the fixed Analogue Input.	
Module 1, 3, 4, 5 & 6	High and Low Alarms are available each module.	
User 1 to 8	These are alarms which are user defined	

10.7.1 ALARMS (Summary Page)

Table Number: 10.7.1.	These parameters indicate alarm status Alarm parameters in this table only appear if the function is enabled. The last three parameters always appear.		ALARMS (Summary Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
LP1 Ack1	Loop 1 alarm 1 acknowledge	No Yes		L1
LP1 Ack2	Loop 1 alarm 2 acknowledge	No Yes		L1
LP2 Ack1	Loop 2 alarm 1 acknowledge	No Yes		L1
LP2 Ack2	Loop 2 alarm 2 acknowledge	No Yes		L1
LP3 Ack1	Loop 3 alarm 1 acknowledge	No Yes		L1
LP3 Ack2	Loop 3 alarm 2 acknowledge	No Yes		L1
PV Alm AckH	PV Input high alarm acknowledge	No Yes		L1
PV Alm AckL	PV Input low alarm acknowledge	No Yes		L1
An Alm AckH	Analogue Input high alarm acknowledge	No Yes		L1
An Alm AckL	Analogue Input low alarm acknowledge	No Yes		L1
Module 1A 1 AckH	Module 1 high alarm acknowledge	No Yes		L1
Module 1A 1 AckL	Module 1 low alarm acknowledge	No Yes		L1
The above two alarms are repeated for Module 3, 4, 5 and 6 if the modules are fitted				
User 1 Ack	User defined alarm 1 acknowledge	No Yes		L1
The above alarm is repeated for up to eight user alarms if they have been configured				
New Alarm	Set to true on a new alarm	No Yes		R/O
Ack All Alms?	Acknowledges all alarms (Global acknowledge)	No Yes		L3
Ack All Src	Global Acknowledge Source	Modbus Address		Conf

10.7.2 ALARMS *LP1 (2* or *3)* Page Parameters

Table Number: 10.7.2.	These parameters configure the Loop alarms. Alarm 1 parameters only appear if the 'Alm 1 Type' ≠ 'None' Alarm 2 parameters only appear if the 'Alm 2 Type' ≠ 'None'		ALARMS *LP1 (2* or *3)*	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Alm1 Type	Alarm 1 Type	Off Full Scale Low Full Scale High Deviation Band Deviation High Deviation Low Rate of Change	As order code	Conf
LP1 Ack	Group alarm acknowledge for loop 1. Acknowledges both loop alarms.	No Yes	No	L1
Alm1 Message	Alarm 1 message. Use △ or ▽ to choose from the User Text messages set up in section 7.2.6.	Default Text or User defined Text 01 to 50	Default Text	Conf
Alm1 Latching	Alarm 1 latching. Use △ or ▽ to choose latching type	None Auto Manual Event	None	Conf
Alm1 Blocking	Alarm 1 blocking. Use △ or ▽ to enable/disable	No Yes	No	Conf
Alm1 Setpoint	Alarm 1 Setpoint	Controller range	0.0	L1
Alm1 Hyst	Alarm 1 hysteresis	Controller range		L3
Alm1 Delay	Alarm 1 delay	0:00:00.0	0.0	Conf
Alm1 Output	Alarm 1 output	Off On	Off	R/O
Alm1 Inhibit Src	Alarm 1 inhibit source	Modbus address	None	Conf
Alm1 Inhibit	Alarm 1 inhibit	No Yes	No	L3
Alm2 parameters are the same as Alm1 parameters if 'Alm2 Type' ≠ 'None'				

10.7.3 ALARMS (PV Input Page) Parameters

Table Number: 10.7.3.	These parameters set up the alarms associated with the PV input signal. They are only displayed if enabled using the parameter FS Hi Alarm or FS Lo Alarm		ALARMS (PV Input)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
FS Hi Alarm	Full scale high alarm enable/disable	Disabled Enabled	Disabled	Conf
PV Alm Ack	Group acknowledge. Acknowledges both Hi and Lo alarms	No Acknowledge		L1
FS Hi Message	Full scale high message. Use △ or ▽ to choose from the User Text messages set up in section 7.2.6.	Default Text or User defined Text 01 to 50	Default Text	Conf
FS Hi Blocking	Full scale high blocking. Use △ or ▽ to enable/disable	No Yes		Conf
FS Hi Latching	Full scale high latching. Use △ or ▽ to choose latching type	None Auto Manual Event		Conf
FS Hi Setpoint	Full Scale High Alarm (1) Setpoint	Controller range		L1
FS Hi Hyst	Full Scale High alarm (1) hysteresis	Controller range		L3
FS Hi Delay	Full Scale High alarm (1) delay	0:00:00.0		Conf
FS Hi Output	Full Scale High alarm (1) output	Off On	Off	R/O
FS Lo Alarm	Full scale Low alarm enable/disable	Disabled Enabled	Disabled	Conf
FS Lo parameters are the same as FS Hi parameters if 'FS Lo Alarm' = 'Enabled'				
Inhibit Src	Alarm inhibit source	Modbus Address		Conf
Inhibit	Alarm inhibit value	No Yes	No	L3

10.7.4 ALARMS (An Input Page) Parameters

The parameters for the Analogue Input Alarms are identical to the PV Input Alarms

10.7.5 ALARMS (Module 1,3, 4, 5 & 6 Page) Parameters

The parameters for the Module Alarms are identical to the PV Input Alarms. Module alarm pages only appear if suitable modules are fitted.

10.7.6 ALARMS (User 1 to 8 Page) Parameters

Table Number: 10.7.6.	These parameters set up user defined alarms.			ALARMS (User 1) (to User 8)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Type	Alarm Type	Off Full Scale Low Full Scale High Deviation Band Deviation High Deviation Low Rate of Change	As order code	Conf
User 1 Ack	Group alarm acknowledge for user alarm 1	No Acknowledge	No	L1
Src A	Alarm source A	Modbus address	None	Conf
Src B	Alarm source B	Modbus address	None	Conf
Name	User defined alarm name. Use △ or ▽ to choose from the User Text messages set up in section 7.2.6.	Default Text or User defined Text 01 to 50	Default Text	Conf
Message	User defined message. Use △ or ▽ to choose from the User Text messages set up in section 7.2.6.	Default Text or User defined Text 01 to 50	Default Text	Conf
Latching	Indicates if the alarm has been configured as latching	None Auto Manual Event		R/O at L3
Blocking	Indicates if the alarm has been configured as blocking	No Yes		R/O at L3
Setpoint	Alarm Setpoint	Controller range		L1
Hyst	Alarm hysteresis	Controller range		L3
Delay	Alarm delay	0:00:00.0		Conf
Output	Alarm output	Off On	Off	R/O at L1
Val A	Used if the user alarm is deviation. Normally internally wired to the PV	Display min to display max		R/O at L3 if wired to PV source
Val B	Used if the user alarm is deviation. Normally internally wired to the SP	Display min to display max		R/O at L3 if wired to SP source
Inhibit Src	Alarm inhibit source	Modbus address		Conf
Inhibit	Alarm inhibit	No Yes	No	L3

The above table is repeated for:

User alarm 2
User alarm 3
User alarm 4
User alarm 5
User alarm 6
User alarm 7
User alarm 8

10.8 ALARM WIRING EXAMPLES

10.8.1 Control Loop With High and Low Alarms

In this example two alarms are added to the loop wiring example shown in Section 5.1.1. Alarm 1 is configured as a high alarm and operates the fixed relay 'AA'. This relay is inhibited until a digital input, 'DIO1' becomes true. Alarm 2 is configured as a low alarm and operates a relay module in slot 3.

- - - - - - - = Connections made in example shown in Section 5.1.1.

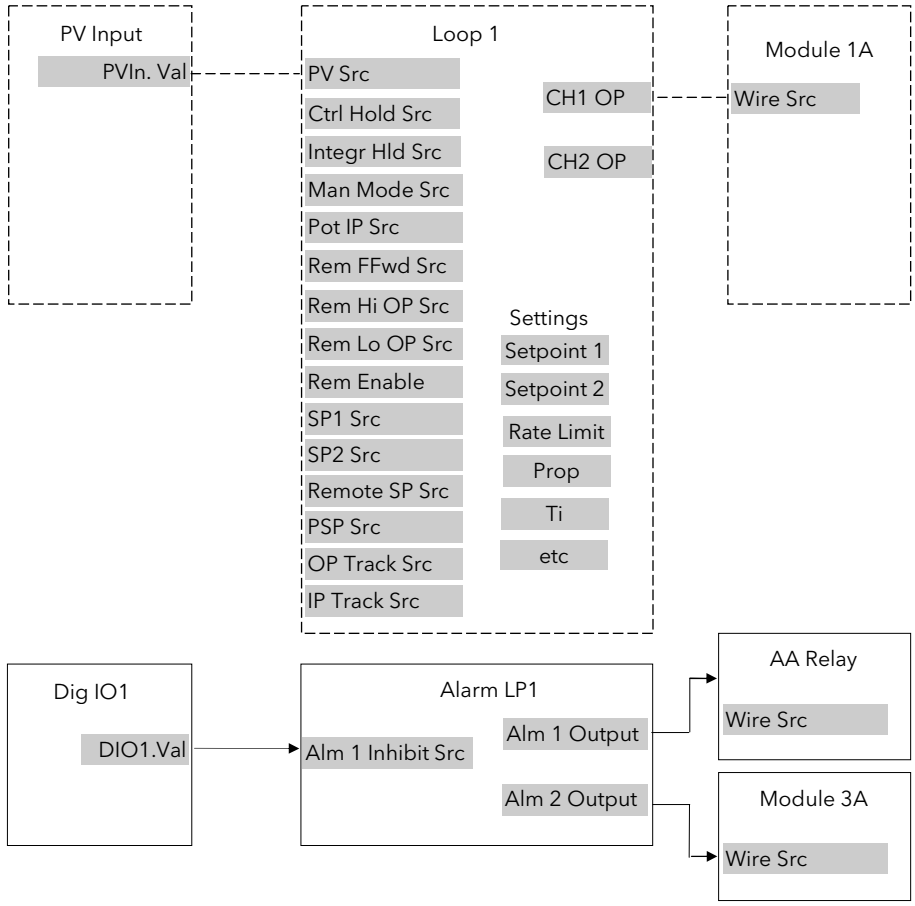


Figure 10-1: Loop Alarm Wiring

10.8.1.1 Implementation

1. In ALARMS/LP1 Page (section 10.7.2)	set 'Alm1 Type' = Full Scale High
2. In ALARMS/LP1 Page (section 10.7.2)	set 'Alm2 Type' = Full Scale Low (Note: other parameters such as alarm message, alarm latching, alarm blocking are also set in this page)
3. In ALARMS/LP1 Page (section 10.7.2)	Set 'Alm1 Inhibit Src' = 05402:DO1.Val This connects the alarm 1 inhibit to fixed digital input 1
4. In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page (section 22.5.1)	Set 'Wire Src' = 11592:L1Alm1.OP This connects Alarm 1 output to operate the AA relay
5. In MODULE IO/Module 3A Page (section 23.3.2)	Set 'Wire Src' = 11602:L1Alm2.OP This connects Alarm 2 output to operate the relay fitted in module position 3.

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ :- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 5.

10.8.2 Loop Alarm Inhibited if Programmer not in Run

In this example the alarm is gated as in the previous example. To determine if the programmer is in Run mode an Analogue Operator (An Oper 1) may be used.

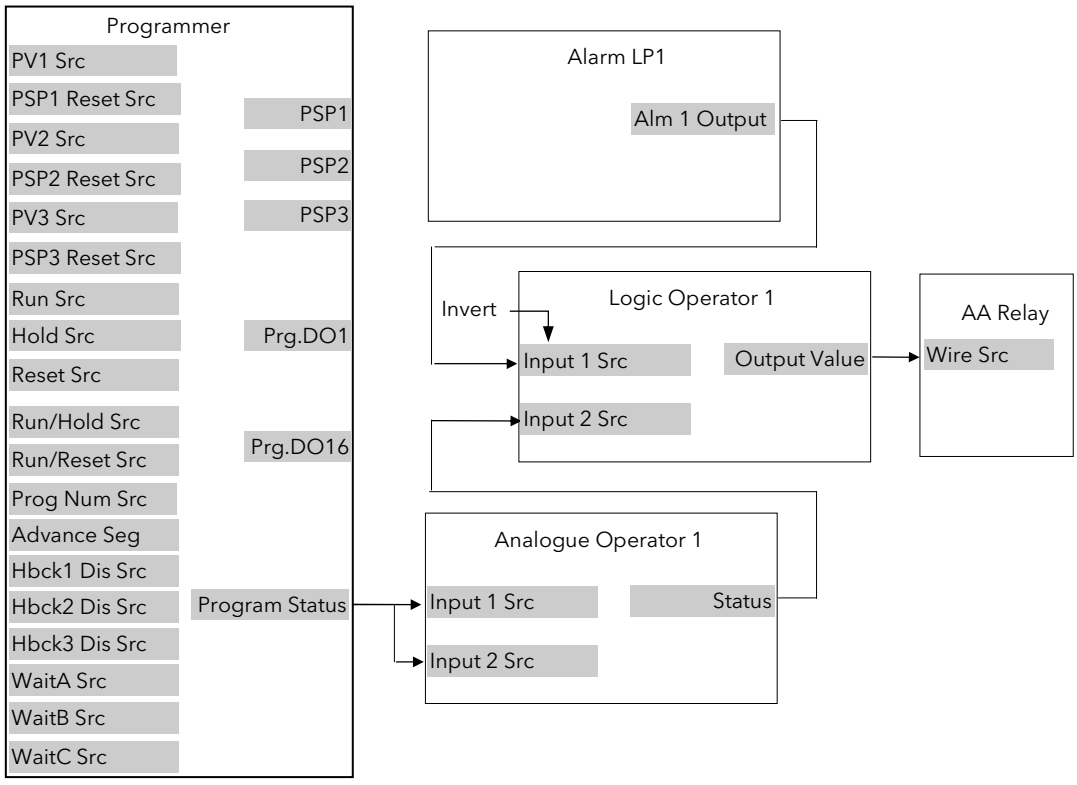


Figure 10-2: Loop Alarm Inhibited if Programmer not in Run

10.8.2.1 Implementation

1. In LOGIC OPERS/Logic 1 Page (section 19.2.1)	set 'Operation' = AND set 'Invert' = Invert Input 1 Invert input 1 is necessary because the previous operation results in 0 for a true state Set 'Input 1 Src' = 06239:--------- This is the Status of the Logic Operator Set 'Input 2 Src' = 11592: L1Alm1.OP This sets the logic operator such that both inputs must be true before the output status is true
2. In ANALOGUE OPERS/Analogue 1 Page (section 18.2.1)	set 'Operation' = Select Max set 'Input 1 Src = 05844:--------- This is the Programmer Status set 'Input 2 Src' = 05844 It is necessary to connect both inputs of an analogue operator set 'Input 1 Scalar' = 1 set 'Input 1 Scalar' = 2 set 'Low Limit' = +1 set 'High Limit' = +1 (Note: when Programmer Status = Run the result of the calculation is 0)
3. In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page (section 22.5.1)	Set 'Wire Src' = 07176:LgOp1.OP This connects Logic Operator 1 output to operate the AA relay

11. CHAPTER 11 LOOP SET UP

In the controller LOOP SET UP appears after AUTOTUNE in the operator display. In this manual, however, an explanation of how to set up each loop is given before the tuning procedure. Also the order in which each sub-header appears in this chapter is not necessarily the same as the order in which they appear in the controller because single loop control is explained before dual loops.

11.1 WHAT IS LOOP SET UP

The 2704 controller can have up to three control loops. Each loop operates independently and can be configured for On/Off, PID or Valve Positioning control. Additionally, each loop can have an auxiliary loop associated with it, and this allows other control strategies to be implemented such as cascade, ratio and override control. The LOOP SETUP pages allow you to configure the type of control most suited to your process. The pages are divided into a number of sub-headers - briefly described below:-

LP1 (2 or 3) **SETUP ▸**	SP Page	Allows you to configure the setpoint parameters for a particular loop
Note: Text shown in *italics* is user definable in configuration mode and may be different from that shown	(SP(Aux)Page	Allows you to configure the setpoint parameters for an auxiliary loop
	Cascade Page	These parameters only appear if the control loop is configured for cascade control.
	Ratio Page	These parameters only appear if the control loop is configured for ratio control.
	Override Page	These parameters only appear if the control loop is configured for override control.
	PID Page	These parameters allow you to set up the three term or PID values for the selected loop. See also Chapter 13 'Controller Applications'
	PID (Aux) Page	These parameters allow you to set up the three term or PID values for the selected auxiliary loop. See also Chapter 12 'Tuning'
	Motor Page	Allows you to set up the values for a valve positioning output when the selected loop is configured for motorised valve control. See also Chapter 13 'Controller Applications'
	Output Page	Allows you to set up the values for the output when the selected loop is configured for analogue or digital control outputs.
	Diagnostic Page	These parameters are for diagnostic purposes on the selected loop.
	(Diag Aux) Page	These parameters are for diagnostic purposes on the selected auxiliary loop.

11.1.1 LOOP SET UP (Options page)

Table Number: 11.1.1.	This page determines the control action (x) See notes for further parameter descriptions		*LP1* SETUP Options Page	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Loop Type	To configure loop type	Single Cascade Override Ratio	As order code	Conf
Control Type (1)	Control type	See note 1	As order code	Conf
Control Action (2)	Control action	Reverse Direct	Reverse	Conf
Aux Ctl Action (2)	Control action of the auxiliary loop	Reverse Direct	Reverse	Conf
Cool Type (3)	Cooling action	Linear Oil Water Fan		Conf
Prog Setpoint (4)	Loop 1 PSP select	PSP1 PSP2 PSP3 None		Conf
Deriv Type (5)	Derivative type	PV Error	PV	Conf
FF Type (6)	Feedforward type	None Remote FeedFwd SP Feedforward PV Feedforward		Conf
Force Man Mode (7)	Forced manual output mode.	Off Track Step		Conf
Rate Lim Units (8)	Rate limit units	Per Second Per Minute Per Hour	Per minute	Conf
Bumpless PD	Initialises the manual reset on Auto/Manual transfer	Yes No	Yes	Conf
Ti/Td Units	Integral and Derivative time units	sec min	sec	Conf
OnOff SBk Type	Sensor break action. Only appears if On Off control is configured	-100 0 100		Conf
Prop Bnd Units	Proportional band units	Eng Units and %		R/O
Enable Pwr Fbk	Power feedback enable	Off On		Conf
Rem SP Config	Remote setpoint configuration	SP Only LSP Trim RSP Trim	SP Only	Conf
SBrk Type	Sensor break type	Output Hold		Conf
Manual Track (9)	Manual track	Off Track		Conf
Remote Track (10)	Remote tracking	Off Track		Conf
Program Track (11)	Programmer track	Off Track		Conf

Table Number: 11.1.1.	This page determines the control action (x) See notes for further parameter descriptions		*LP1* SETUP Options Page	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Start SRL Mode (12)	Defines Setpoint Rate Limit action on power up.	None No Change Hold Clear Hold	None	Conf
Start Rem Mode (13)	Defines Local/Remote action on power up.	No Change Local Remote	No Change	Conf
Startup Mode (14)	Manual mode on power up	Continue SBrk Output	Continue	Conf
Start WSP Mode (15)	Defines the Working SP action on power up.	None PV Target SP		Conf
Ramp from WSP (16)	To allow servo from the current working setpoint or current PV	No Yes	No = servo from PV	Conf

Notes

1. Control Types

PID-Ch1 Only	Channel 1 PID only. Use for single channel control only
OnOff-Ch1 Only	Channel 1 On/Off. Use for On/Off control.
VP-Ch1 Only	Channel 1 Motorised valve position output - boundless mode.
VPB-Ch1 Only	Channel 1 Motorised valve position output - bounded mode.
PID-Ch1 PID-Ch2	Both output channels PID. Use for heat/cool type applications
PID-Ch1 OnOff-Ch2	Channel 1 PID control, channel 2 On/Off. Use for single channel PID control plus On/Off Control
OnOff-Ch1&2	Both output channels On/Off. Use for On/Off control

1. Control Action

Direct	The output will increase positively if the PV > SP.
Reverse	The output will increase positively if PV < SP.

3. Cool Type

Linear	The control output follows linearly the PID output signal, i.e. 0% PID demand = 0 power output, 50% PID demand = 50% power output, 100% PID demand = 100% power output.
Oil, Water, Fan	The control output is characterised to compensate for the non-linear effect of the cooling medium - oil, water and blown air. Typically used in extrusion processes.

4. Prog Setpoint

When the programmer is running, this parameter determines from which setpoint profile the loop obtains its setpoint. If None is selected this parameter can be soft wired.

5. Deriv Type

Derivative on PV	defines that derivative action responds to changes to PV only
Derivative on Error	defines that derivative action responds to changes to differences between SP and PV.

6. FF Type

Feedforward control is used typically to overcome time delays or to compensate for the effect of external influences such as control signals from other loops in the process. This is added directly to the output of the PID algorithm, before output limiting and dual output conversions are performed. Trim Limit applied to the PID calculated output is possible when Feedforward is enabled.

7. Force Manual Mode

Force Manual Mode allows you to select how the loop behaves on auto/ manual transfer.

Off	Transfer between auto/manual/auto takes place bumplessly
Track	Transfer from auto to manual, the output reverts to the previous manual value. Transfer from manual to auto takes place bumplessly
Step	Transfer from auto to manual, the output goes to a pre-set value. This value is set by the parameter 'Forced OP' in *LPx* SETUP/Output Page, section 11.6. Transfer from manual to auto takes place bumplessly

8. Rate Limit Units

Rate limit can be applied to the SP, such that the change in PV takes place at a controlled rate. It is used where a full programmer is not justified and is typically used to protect the process from sudden changes in the PV.

9. Manual Track

When the controller is switched into Manual mode the working setpoint tracks the value of the PV so that on return to Auto mode is bumpless.

10. Remote Track

When the controller is switched into Remote SP mode the local setpoint tracks the value of the remote SP so that the return to Local SP is bumpless.

11. Program Track

When the controller is running a program the local setpoint tracks the value of the program setpoint. If the controller is switched to Local SP the transfer takes place bumplessly.

12. Start SRL Mode

Defines Setpoint Rate Limit action on power up.

None	No Change. Setpoint Rate Limit starts up in the same mode as power off
Hold	Setpoint Rate Limit is in hold mode on power up
Clear Hold	Setpoint Rate Limit is active on power up

13. Start Rem Mode

Defines Local/Remote action on power up.

No Change	The controller powers up in the same mode as power off
Local	The controller starts up in Local setpoint mode
Remote	The controller starts up in Remote setpoint mode

14. Manual Mode on Power up

This parameter provides the choice between 'Continue' and 'SBrk Output' as the start up control mode. Selecting Continue ensures that on power up the loop control action will remain at its last state. Selecting 'SBrk Output' forces the relevant loop into the manual mode with 'SBrk OP' (Loopx → SETUP → Output) applied to the output.

15. Start WSP Mode

Defines the Working SP action on power up.

None	No Change. The controller powers up in the same mode as power off
PV	The controller servos to PV on power up
Target SP	The controller servos to the target setpoint on power up

16. Ramp from WSP

Parameter added from software versions 6 onwards

11.2 SINGLE LOOP CONTROL

Single loop control is configured when 'Loop Type' (Options Page) = 'Single'. A block diagram of a simple single loop, single output controller is shown below:

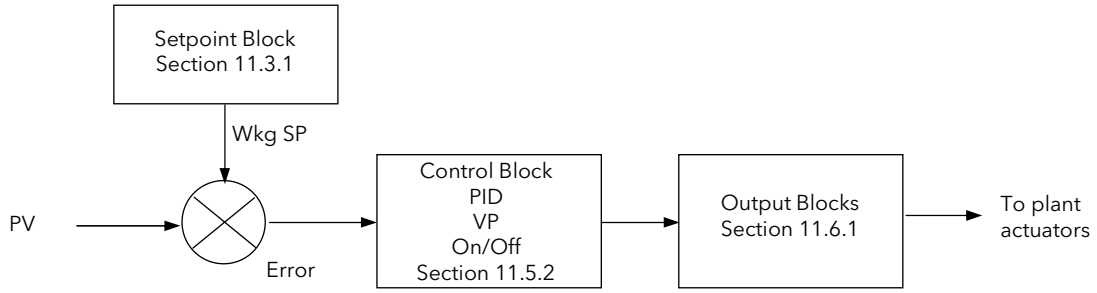


Figure 11-1: Single Loop Controller

11.2.1 LOOP SET UP (Wiring page) SINGLE LOOP

Table Number: 11.2.1.	These parameters allow you to soft wire between function blocks.		*LP1* SETUP Wiring Page	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
PV Src	Process variable source	Modbus address	05108: PVIn.Val	Conf
Manual OP Sr	Target OP power source	Modbus address		Conf
OPRtLim En S	OP rate limit enable source	Modbus address		Conf
OPRtLim Src	OP rate limit source	Modbus address		Conf
Ctrl Hold Src	Freeze control flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Integr Hld Src	Integral hold flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Man Mode Src	Auto/manual select source	Modbus address		Conf
Pot IP Src	Pot position source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem FFwd Src	Remote feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Hi OP Src	Remote high power limit source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Lo OP Src	Remote low power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
The above two parameters do not appear if Control Type (section 11.1.1) = On/Off				
Rem SP Ena Src	Remote setpoint enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Remote SP Src	Remote setpoint source	Modbus address		Conf
SP Select Src	Internal setpoint select src	Modbus address		Conf
SP1 Src	Setpoint 1 source	Modbus address		Conf
SP2 Src	Setpoint 2 source	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Dis Src	SP rate limit disable src	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Src	SP rate limit src	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Hld Src	SP rate limit hold source	Modbus address		Conf
Prog SP Src	LP1 PSP wire source	Modbus address		Conf
PID Set Src	PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
RemSchedIP	Remote scheduling input source	Modbus address		Conf
Power FF Src	Power feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Enab S [(1)]	OP track enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Src	Track output source	Modbus address		Conf
Ext FBack Src	External feedback source	Modbus address		Conf
Prop Band S	Proportional band source	Modbus address		Conf
Integral Src	Integral term source	Modbus address		Conf
Derivative Src	Derivative term source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Prop Sr	Auxiliary loop proportional band source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Integral	Auxiliary loop integral term source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Derivati	Auxiliary loop derivative term source	Modbus address		Conf

11.3 SETPOINT DEFINITION

The controller setpoint is the **Working Setpoint** which may be sourced from a number of alternatives. This is the value ultimately used to control the process variable in a loop.

LSP derives from a parameter called the local setpoint which is the value which the operator can alter. This local SP may be derived from one of two setpoints, **Setpoint 1** or **Setpoint 2**. Either of these setpoints may be selected by a parameter in the controller or soft wired to a digital input.

In remote mode, the working setpoint is modified by the **Remote SP + Local Trim**, when 'Enable Rem SP' is set to 'Yes'. When 'Remote Track' (*LP1* SETUP/Options Page) is set to 'Track' the transition to the 'Active Local SP' (SP1 or SP2) takes place bumplessly and the Active Local SP tracks the value of the Remote SP.

In a controller/programmer the Working SP is derived from the output of the programmer function block. In this case the setpoint varies in accordance with fixed rates of change stored within a program.

11.3.1 Setpoint Function Block

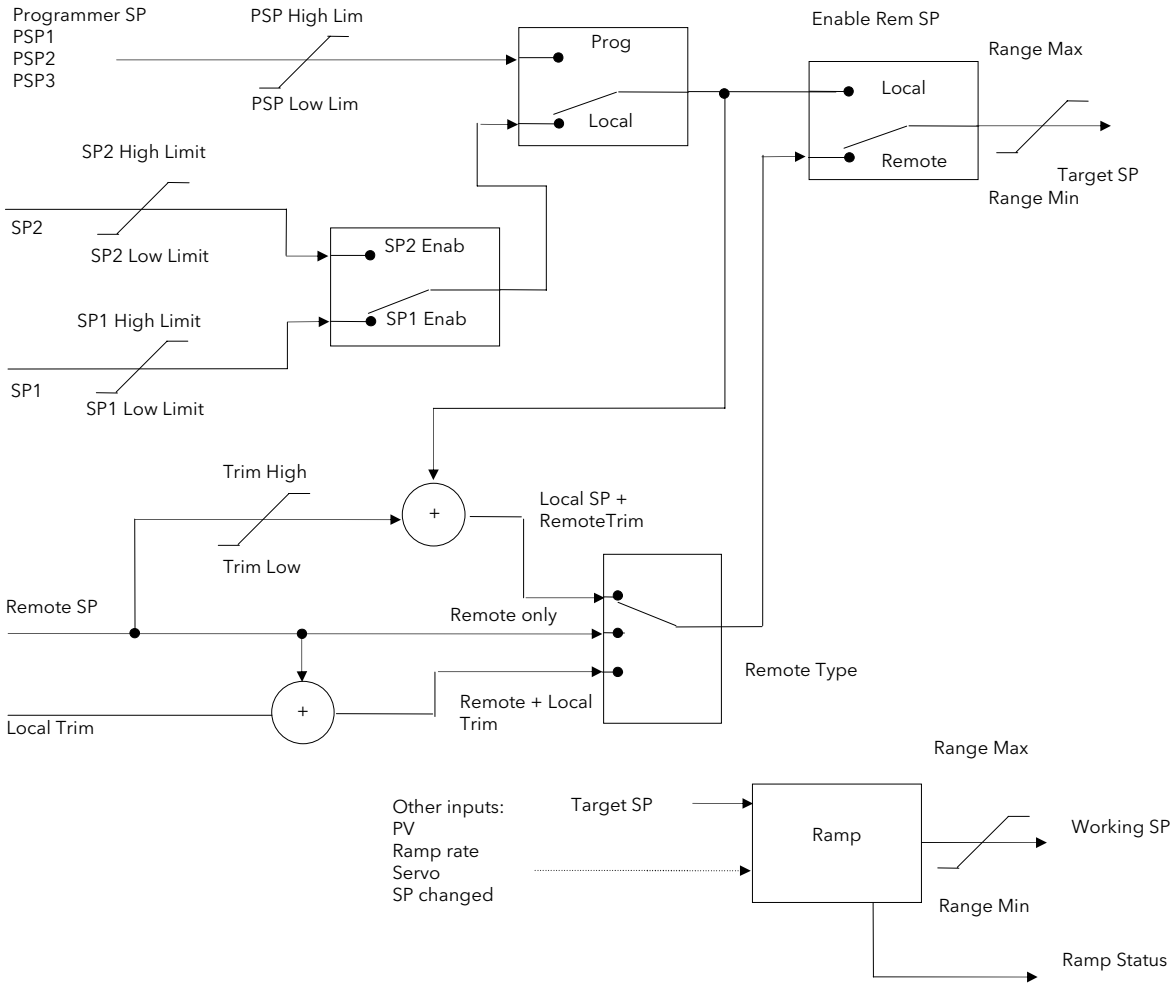


Figure 11-2: Setpoint Function Block

11.3.2 Setpoint Parameters

Table Number: 11.3.2.	This list allows you to configure SP parameters Other parameters are available in operation levels	*LP1* SETUP (SP Page)		
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Range Min	PV low limit	Min to max	-200 *	Conf
Range Max	PV high limit	disp. limit	1372 *	Conf
SP Select	Internal setpoint select	Setpoint 1 Setpoint 2		L1
SP1 Low Limit	Setpoint 1 low limit	Range units	-200 *	L3
SP1 High Limit	Setpoint 1 high limit		1372 *	L3
Setpoint 1	Setpoint 1 value			L1
SP2 Low Limit	Setpoint 2 low limit		-200 *	L3
SP2 High Limit	Setpoint 2 high limit		1372 *	L3
Setpoint 2	Setpoint 2 value			L1
Working SP	Current value of the setpoint			L3
Disable Rt Lim	Setpoint Rate limit disable	No Yes		L3
Rt Lim Hold	SP rate limit hold	No Yes	No	L3
Rate Limit Val	Rate of change of setpoint	Off to range		L3
Trim Lo Lim	Local setpoint trim low limit	Range units		L3
Trim Hi Lim	Local setpoint trim high limit	Range units		L3
Local SP Trim	Applies a trim value to the remote setpoint			L1
Enable Rem SP	Remote setpoint enable	No Yes		L1
Remote SP	Remote setpoint value	Range units		L1
HBk Type	SP rate limit holdback type	Off Low High Band		L3
HBk Value	SP rate limit holdback value	Display range		R/O
HBk Status	SP rate limit holdback status	Off Holdback		L3
* If temp units = °C				

11.3.3 *LP1* SETUP (SP Aux) Page

Table Number: 11.3.3	**This list allows you to configure auxiliary loop setpoint limits.** It only appears if cascade or override control is configured, see sections 11.10. and 11.12. Other parameters are available in operation levels**.**			***LP1* SETUP (SP Aux) Page**
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Range Min	Auxiliary PV low limit	Min to max display limit	-200 *	Conf
Range Max	Auxiliary PV high limit		1372 *	Conf
SP Low Limit	Auxiliary setpoint 1 low limit	Range units	-200 *	L3
SP High Limit	Auxiliary setpoint 1 high limit		1372 *	L3
OVR SP Trim	Override loop setpoint trim			L3. Only appears when Override control is configured
Local SP	The setpoint which the controller reverts to when not in cascade, ratio or override			L1
Working SP	The current value of the setpoint in use			L1
* If temp units = °C				

This table does not appear if the Loop Type is Ratio or Single.

11.4 PID CONTROL

PID control, also referred to as 'Three Term Control', is a technique used to achieve stable straight line control at the required setpoint. The three terms are:

P Proportional band

I Integral time

D Derivative time

The output from the controller is the sum of the contributions from these three terms. The combined output is a function of the magnitude and duration of the error signal, and the rate of change of the process value. It is possible to set P, PI, PD or PID control.

11.4.1 Proportional Term

The proportional term delivers an output which is proportional to the size of the error signal. An example of this is shown in Figure 11-3, for a temperature control loop, where the proportional band is 10°C and an error of 3°C will produce an output of 30%.

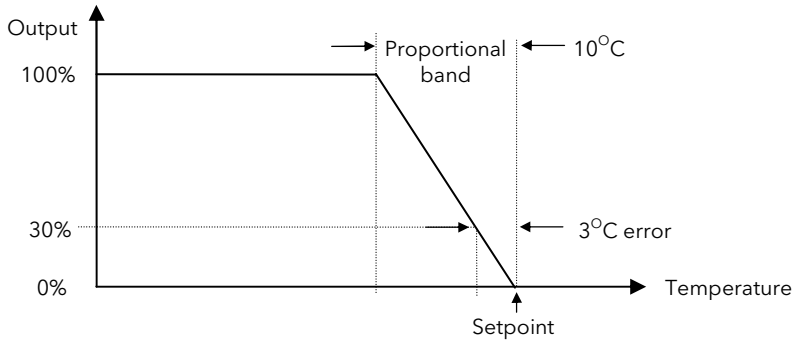


Figure 11-3: Proportional Action

Proportional only controllers will, in general, provide stable straight line control, but with an offset corresponding to the point at which the output power equals the heat loss from the system.

11.4.2 Integral Term

The integral term removes steady state control offset by ramping the output up or down in proportion to the amplitude and duration of the error signal. The ramp rate (reset rate) is the integral time constant, and must be longer than the time constant of the process to avoid oscillations.

11.4.3 Derivative Term

The derivative term is proportional to the rate of change of the temperature or process value. It is used to prevent overshoot and undershoot of the setpoint by introducing an anticipatory action. The derivative term has another beneficial effect. If the process value falls rapidly, due, for example, an oven door being opened during operation, and a wide proportional band is set the response of a PI controller can be quite slow. The derivative term modifies the proportional band according to this rate of change having the effect of narrowing the proportional band. Derivative action, therefore, improves the recovery time of a process automatically when the process value changes rapidly.

Derivative can be calculated on change of PV or change of Error. For applications such as furnace control, it is common practice to select Derivative on PV to prevent thermal shock caused by a sudden change of output following a change in setpoint.

11.4.4 High and Low Cutback

While the PID parameters are optimised for steady state control at or near the setpoint, high and low cutback parameters are used to reduce overshoot and undershoot for large step changes in the process. They respectively set the number of degrees above and below setpoint at which the controller will start to increase or cutback the output power

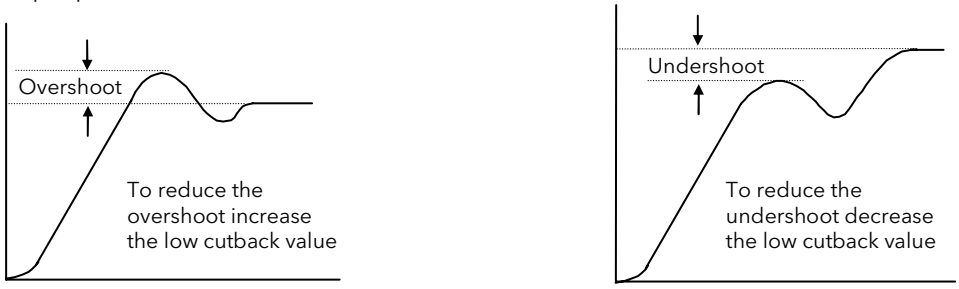

Overshoot
To reduce the overshoot increase the low cutback value
Undershoot
To reduce the undershoot decrease the low cutback value

Figure 11-4: High and Low Cutback

11.4.5 PID Block Diagram

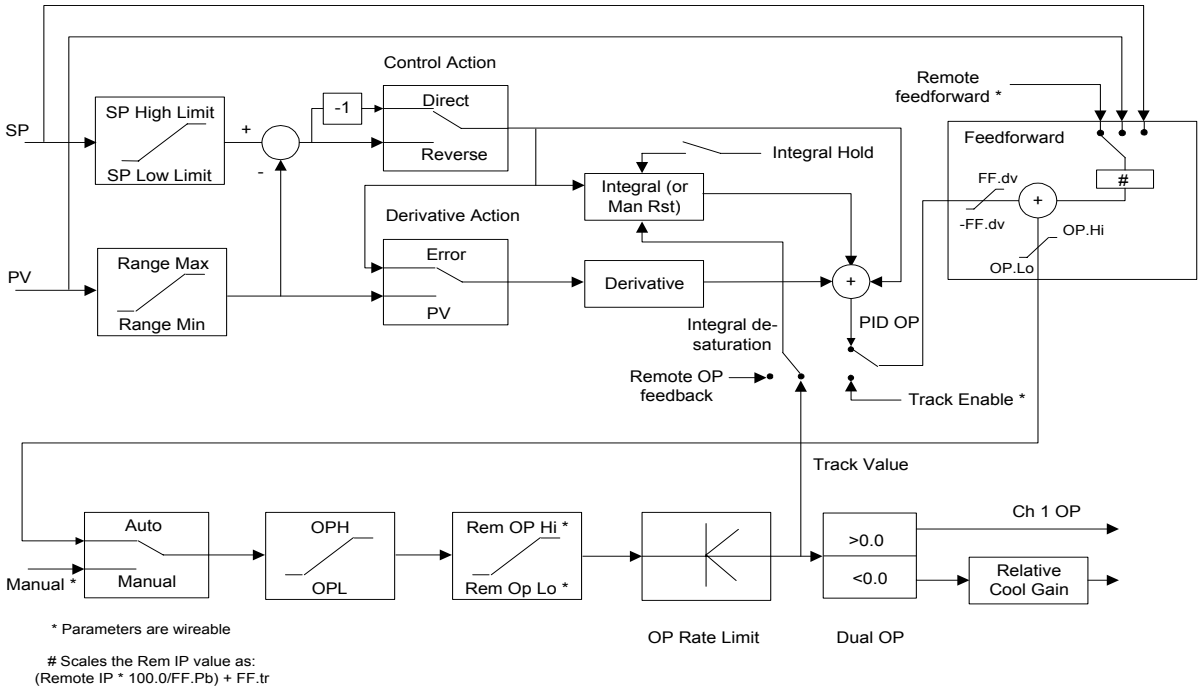


Figure 11-5: PID Block Diagram

11.4.6 Remote (External) OP Feedback

The Remote OP Feedback shown in the PID block diagram, allows an external source of output to stop integral wind up in some applications such as cascade control. The integral will calculate a PID output to match the external value when manual to auto bumpless transfer is activated.

If 'Ena OP Track' (*LP1* SETUP/Output) = 'Yes', the output will be replaced by the 'OP Track Value'. The feedback signal is used for the integral de-saturation. When the 'Remote OP Feedback' is wired the feedback signal is forced to a remote output feedback. When not wired the default internal OP is used for the integral calculation.

11.4.7 Analogue Value

The Analogue Value is a customisable parameter available in the PID (and PID Aux) pages which provides the user with additional flexibility when designing a control strategy. This parameter is called **Analogue Value (An Value 1 to 3)**. It is available for each PID set if Gain Scheduling has been configured and for each loop configured . It can be 'soft wired' in configuration mode to perform a specific function relevant to the particular process being controlled. Examples include: Output Power Limit, SP Feedforward Trim, etc,.

11.5 GAIN SCHEDULING

Gain scheduling is the automatic transfer of control between one set of PID values and another. Gain scheduling may be used in very non-linear systems where the control process exhibits large changes in response time or sensitivity, see Figure 11-6 below. This may occur, for example, over a wide range of PV, or between heating or cooling where the rates of response may be significantly different. The number of sets depends on the non-linearity of the system. Each PID set is chosen to operate over a limited (approximately linear) range.

In the case of the 2704 controller, this is done at a pre-settable strategy defined by the parameter 'Schedule Type' found in the *Loop* SETUP/PID page in configuration level. The choices are:

PV	The transfer between one set and the next depends on the value of the PV
SP	The transfer between one set and the next depends on the value of the SP
Error	The transfer between one set and the next depends on the value of the error
OP	The transfer between one set and the next depends on the value of the OP demand
Set	The PID set can be selected manually
Rem Sched IP	The transfer between one set and the next depends on the value from a remote source for example, a digital input
Soft Wired	To a parameter chosen by the user.

The 2704 controller has six sets of PID values – the maximum number which you may wish to use is set up in *Loop* SETUP/PID 'Num of Sets' parameter. You can select the active set from:

1. A digital input
2. A parameter in the *Loop* Setup(PID) page
3. Or you can transfer automatically in gain scheduling mode.

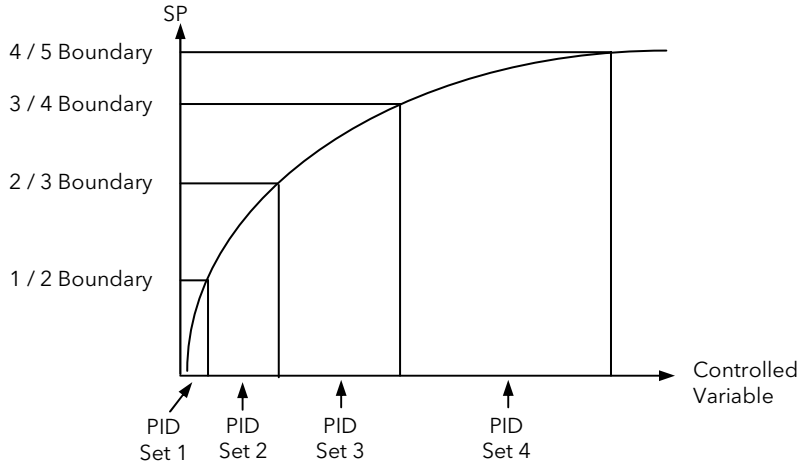
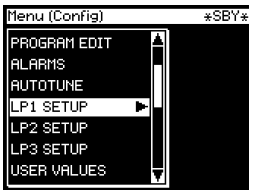
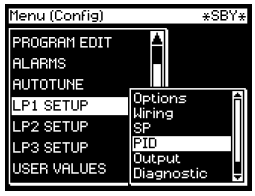
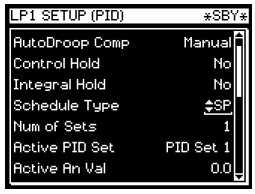


Figure 11-6: Gain Scheduling in a Non-Linear System

11.5.1 To Configure Gain Scheduling:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'LP1 SETUP'**		Alternatives are *LP 2* and *LP 3*. These only appear in the list if configured
3. Press [↵] to display sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'PID'**		
5. Press [↵] to show the parameter list. 6. Press [↵] again to select **'Schedule Type'**. 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the gain scheduling type to use		The choices are shown in section 11.5. Remaining parameters can be set in the same way

Gain scheduling is uni-directional acting on the magnitude of the scheduling variables.

The PID, Cutback Low and High, Manual Reset, Cool Gain, Analogue Value, Output High and Low values must now be set up for each gain scheduling set.
Tuning the PID parameters when using gain scheduling is described further in Chapter 12.

11.5.2 PID Parameters

Table Number: 11.5.2.	These parameters allow you to configure PID sets		*LP1* SETUP (PID Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
FF Offset	Feedforward offset value			R/O L3
FF Prop Band	Feedforward proportional band			R/O L3
FF Trim Lim	Feedforward trim limit			R/O L3
Remote FFwd	Remote feedforward	±100		L3
The above five parameters are only shown if FF Type (*LP1* SETUP/Options) = Remote, SP or PV FF				
Rem Sched IP	Remote input Only shown if Schedule Type (below) = Rem Sched IP	Display range		L3
Loop Brk Time	Loop break time	Off On		L3
AutoDroop Comp Note 1	Manual reset when Integral turned off	Manual Calc		L3
Control Hold	Control hold flag. Freezes the control output	No Yes		L3
Integral Hold	Integral hold flag	No Yes		L3

Table Number: 11.5.2.	These parameters allow you to configure PID sets		*LP1* SETUP (PID Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Schedule Type	Scheduling type	Off Set SP PV Error OP Rem Sched IP Wired	Off	Conf
Num of Sets	Number of PID sets to use	1 to 6	1	Conf
Active PID Set	The PID set in current use	PID Set 1 to 6		R/O L1
Active An Val	Displays the current analogue value being used			R/O L1
1/2 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 1 changes to PID set 2	Range units		L3
2/3 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 2 changes to PID set 3	Range units		L3
3/4 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 3 changes to PID set 4	Range units		L3
4/5 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 4 changes to PID set 5	Range units		L3
5/6 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 5 changes to PID set 6	Range units		L3
The boundary parameters do not appear if 'Schedule Type' = 'Set'				
Prop Band 1	Proportional Band Set 1	1 to 9999.9 eng units	20	L1
Integral 1	Integral Time Set 1	Off to 999.9	360	L1
Derivative 1	Derivative Time Set 1	seconds or minutes	60	L1
Cutback Low 1	Cutback Low Set 1	Auto to		L1
Cutback High 1	Cutback High Set 1	display range		L1
Manual Reset 1 Note 1	Manual Reset Set 1 (only applies to a PD controller)	Off, -100.0 to +100.0		L1
Cool Gain 1	Relative cool gain set 1	0.1 to 10	1	L1
	Only present if ch 1 and ch 2 are configured in the same loop			
An Value 1	Analogue value (set 1)			L3
OP Hi Limit 1	Output high limit 1	± 100		
OP Lo Limit 1	Output low limit 1	± 100		
The above ten parameters are repeated for sets 2 to 6 if the number of PID sets has been configured to 2 to 6 respectively.				

Note 1: **Autodroop Compensation** is used when the integral term is set to 'Off'. Under these conditions the controller will reach a steady state but is likely to control with an error.

When 'Autodroop Compensation' = 'Manual' the 'Manual Reset' parameter can be adjusted to compensate. The effect is to add or subtract a small amount of power manually into the load or actuator.

When 'Autodroop Compensation' = 'Calc' a value is calculated for the 'Manual Reset' which automatically sets the power level. Note that this is a 'snapshot' taken at a particular control point. If the SP is changed, however, the 'Manual Reset' will re-calculate.

Autodroop Compensation may be used in systems which have a very long time of response where it may not be possible to set a long enough integral time constant. Such systems usually operate at a fixed set of conditions so that a once only calculation or manual setting of the 'Manual Reset' can be acceptable.

Manual Reset should be set to 0 when the integral term is set to a value.

11.5.3 PID (Aux) Parameters

Table Number: 11.5.3.	These parameters allow you to set up the PID sets.(Override & Cascade only)		*LP1* SETUP PID(Aux) Page	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Rem Sched IP	Remote input Only shown if Schedule Type = Rem Sched IP	Display range		L3
Control Hold	Aux. Control hold flag. Freezes the control output	No Yes		L3
Integral Hold	Aux. Integral hold flag	No Yes		L3
Schedule Type	Scheduling type	As main loop	Off	Conf
Num of Sets	Number of PID sets to use	1 to 3	1	Conf
Active PID Set	The PID set in current use	PID set 1 - 3		L1
Active An Val	Active analogue value			R/O L3
1/2 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 1 changes to PID set 2	Range units		L3
2/3 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 2 changes to PID set 3	Range units		L3
The boundary parameters do not appear if 'Schedule Type' = 'Set'				
Prop Band 1	Proportional Band Set 1	1 to 9999.9 eng units	20	L1
Integral 1	Integral Time Set 1	Off to 999.9 seconds or minutes	360	L1
Derivative 1	Derivative Time Set 1		60	L1
Cutback Low 1	Cutback Low Set 1	Auto to display limit		L1
Cutback High 1	Cutback High Set 1			L1
Manual Reset 1	Manual Reset Set 1 (only applies to a PD controller)	Off, -100.0 to +100.0		L1
Cool Gain 1	Relative cool gain set 1	0.1 to 10	1	L1
	Only present if ch 1 and ch 2 are configured in the same loop			
An Value 1	Analogue value Set 1	Display range		L3
OP Hi Limit 1	Output high limit 1	± 100		
OP Lo Limit 1	Output low limit 1	± 100		
The above ten parameters are repeated for set 2 and again for set 3 if the number of PID sets has been configured to 2 or 3 respectively.				

This table does not appear if the Loop Type is Single or Ratio.

These tables are repeated for *Loop 2* and *Loop 3* if these have been configured

11.6 OUTPUT PARAMETERS

Typically the output(s) of the PID function block are wired to:

- The standard relay or logic outputs, configured for on/off or time proportioning pulses
- Relay, triac or logic output module, configured for on/off or time proportioning pulses
- Analogue output module, configured for Volts or mA

11.6.1 Table of Output Parameters

Table Number: 11.6.1	This list allows you to set up the parameters which control the output to the plant		*LP1* SETUP (Output Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Loop Mode	Allows the controller to be switched into manual	Auto Manual		
OP Low Limit	Sets a low limit on an analogue output signal	-100% to 100%		L3
OP High Limit	Sets a high limit on an analogue output signal	-100% to 100%	100	L3
OP Rate Limit	Sets the rate at which the output value changes	Off to 99.99 %/sec		L3
OP Rate Lim En	Output rate limit enable	Off On	Off	L3
Forced OP	Sets the output value when the controller is in manual - alternative to bumpless transfer	-100% to 100%		L3
SBrk OP	Sets the level of the output in sensor break	-100% to 100%		L3
CH1 OP	Reads the current value of channel 1 output	-100% to 100%		R/O
Ch1 Hysteresis	Only shown if the output relay 1 is configured as on/off. It sets the difference between relay on and relay off.	Off to 9999.9		L3
Ch1 Min Pulse	Output minimum on time (on/off control)			L3
The above three parameters are repeated for channel 2				
Deadband On/Off control only	Deadband between ch1 and ch2. Only applies if both ch1 and ch2 are configured	Off to 100.0		L3
Target OP	Target output power	-100 to 100%		L1
Rem Lo OP Lim	Remote low power limit	-100% to 100%		L3
Rem Hi OP Lim	Remote high power limit	-100% to 100%		L3
Power FF Val	Current value of power feedforward			L3
Ena OP Track	Output track enable	No Yes		L3
OP Track Value	Track input			L3
Ena Aux OP Trk	Auxiliary Output track enable	No Yes		L3
Aux OP Track	Auxiliary Track input	Display range		L3

11.7 MOTORISED VALVE CONTROL

The 2704 controller can be used for motorised valve control as an alternative to the standard PID control algorithm. This algorithm is designed specifically for positioning motorised valves. It operates in boundless or bounded mode as configured by the 'Control Type' parameter in section 11.1.1. Boundless VP control does not require a position feedback potentiometer for control purposes. Bounded VP control requires a feedback potentiometer as part of the control algorithm. Note, however that a potentiometer may be used with boundless mode but it is used solely for indication of the valve position and is not used as part of the control algorithm. The control is performed by delivering a 'raise' pulse, a 'lower' pulse or no pulse at all in response to the control demand signal via raise and lower relay or triac outputs.

11.7.1 Motor Parameters

Table Number: 11.7.1.	**This list allows you to set up the motor interface parameters for a valve positioning output.** This page only appears if a motor valve positioning output is configured. See Section 11.1.1. (Control Type)			***LP1* SETUP (Motor Page)**
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Travel Time	This parameter is set to match the time taken for the motor to travel from fully closed to fully open	0:00:00.1	0:01:00:0	L3
Inertia	This parameter is set to match the inertia (if any) of the motor	Off to 0:00:00.1	0:00:20:0	L3
Backlash	This parameter compensates for any backlash which may exist in the linkages	Off to 0:00:00.1	0:00:20:0	L3
Min Pulse Time	Sets the minimum on time of the signal which drives the motor	Auto to 0:00:00.1	Auto = 0:00:00:2	L3
VP Pot Lo Lim (1)	Adjusts the valve position low limit in bounded mode set by the potentiometer	0 to 100%	0%	L3
VP Pot Hi Lim (1)	Adjusts the valve position high limit in bounded mode set by the potentiometer	0 to 100%	100%	L3
VP SBrk OP	Sets the action of the valve in boundless mode Only appears in boundless mode, i.e. 'Control Type' = VP-Ch1 Only	VP Pos Lo to VP Pos Hi		L3
VP SBrk Action	Sets the action of the valve if the potentiometer becomes disconnected in bounded mode	Rest Up Down		L3
Valve Position	Indicates the position of the valve	0 to 100%		R/O
Enable Pot Cal (1)	Pot input calibration enable	Off On	Off	L3

Note 1

These three parameters are only displayed if the potentiometer is soft wired, i.e. 'Pot IP Src' is wired to a parameter.

11.8 DIAGNOSTICS

Diagnostic parameters are available at all levels, are read only and provide information on the current operating conditions of the controller.

11.8.1 Diagnostic Page

Table Number: 11.8.1.	This list allows you to interrogate operating conditions of the loop			*LP 1* SETUP (Diagnostic Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
LP1 PV	Process Variable	Display range		L1
*LP1*A PV	Auxiliary Process Variable			L1
Working SP	The value of the working setpoint			L1
Working OP	The value of the working output	-100 to 100		L1
Error	Value of main loop error (PV - SP)	Display range		L1
Aux Error	Value of the auxiliary loop error (PV - SP)	-9999 to 9999		R/O
P OP	Proportional component of the output	-999 to 9999		R/O
Aux P OP	Proportional component of the auxiliary loop output	-999 to 9999		R/O
I OP	Integral component of the output	-999 to 9999		R/O
Aux I OP	Integral component of the auxiliary loop output	-999 to 9999		R/O
D OP	Derivative component of the output	-999 to 9999		R/O
Aux D OP	Derivative component of the auxiliary loop output	-999 to 9999		R/O
FF OP	Feedforward component of output	-9999 to 9999		R/O
SRL Complete	Setpoint rate limit complete			R/O
VP Velocity	VP output velocity	-100 to 100		R/O
Loop Brk Stat	Loop break status flag	No Yes		R/O
Ext FBack	External Feedback			R/O
Aux Ext FBack	Auxiliary External Feedback			R/O

11.9 DISPLAY

The Summary Page, displayed in Operation levels, (see the Navigation Diagram, section 3.3) consists of up to 10 parameters which are in common use on a particular process. These parameters are 'promoted' to this display using the following table.

11.9.1 Display Page

Table Number: 11.9.1.	This list configures the Loop Summary display.			*LP 1* SETUP (Display Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Loop Name	Loop name chosen from User Text, see Section 7.2.6.	Default Text or 01 to 50 User Text	Default Text	Conf
Graph Low	Sets the lower limit on the trend plot	Display Range		L3
Graph High	Sets the upper limit on the trend plot	Display Range		L3
Param Promote	Selects the parameter which is to be promoted to the Summary Page.	1 to 10		Conf
Param Address	The modbus address of the parameter selected by 'Param Promote'. See Appendix D (32.1)	Modbus address		Conf
Param Name	A name can be selected from User Text (see section 7.2.6.) and replaces the number of the 'Param Promote' parameter.	Default Text or 01 to 50 User Text		Conf
Param Access	Sets the read/write access level of the 'Param Promote' parameter.	Lev 1 Read Only Lev 1 Alterable Lev 2 Read Only Lev 2 Alterable		Conf
Parameters which have been promoted using 'Param Promote' are listed at the end of this table as a preview of those which will appear in the Summary page in operation levels.				

11.10 CASCADE CONTROL

11.10.1 Overview

Cascade control is classified as an advanced control technique used, for example, to enable processes with long time constants to be controlled with the fastest possible response to process disturbances, including setpoint changes, whilst still minimising the potential for overshoot. It is a combination of two PID controllers, where the output signal from one (the master) forms the setpoint for the other (the slave). For cascade control to be effective the slave loop should be more responsive than the master.

11.10.2 Full Scale Cascade Mode

An example of Full Scale Cascade Mode is shown in Figure 11-7. A controller, the slave, regulates the fuel flow to a furnace. A second controller, the master, measures the temperature but, instead of regulating the valve, it regulates the setpoint of the flow controller. In full scale mode the scaling is such that the master is allowed to adjust the slave by 0-100%.

Remote feedforward is a user defined, wireable parameter. It may be used if there is a requirement for some additional parameter, for example an analogue input, to trim the master PID output value before the slave setpoint is applied. An application may be a liquid temperature control system using cascade control of heater temperature where variations in control rate can be directly fed forward into the slave loop, modifying heater temperature and giving rapid compensation

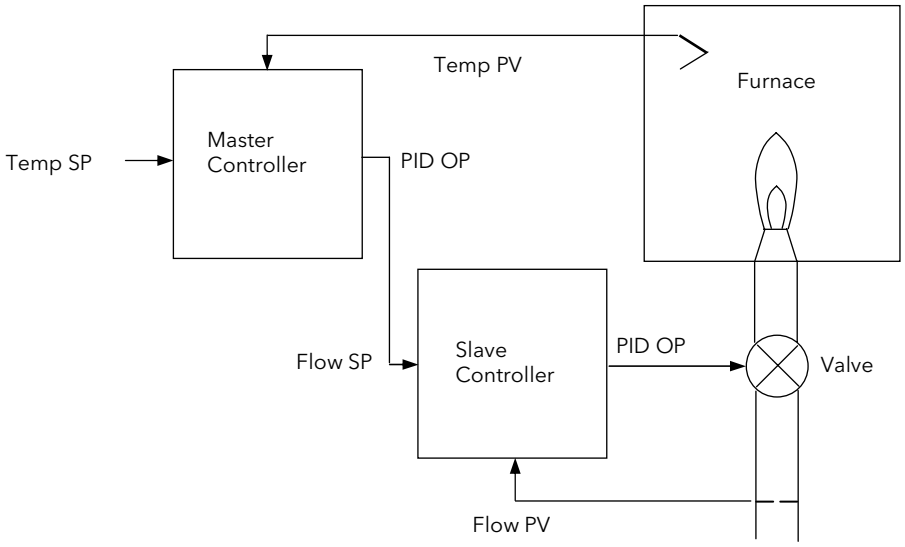


Figure 11-7: Full Scale Cascade Control

11.10.3 Trim Mode

In this example the slave controls the temperature within a furnace. The master is measuring the temperature of the workpiece and controlling the temperature of the slave. In this case the master trims the setpoint of the slave rather than controlling it directly. By limiting the amount of trim the temperature of the furnace will remain within bounds.

Feedforward allows either the master PV, master SP or a user defined variable (CSD FFwd Src) to be fed forward so that it directly influences the slave setpoint.

A typical application for SP feedforward could be in a heat treatment furnace, where it can be used to extend the life of heating elements by limiting their maximum operating temperature.

An application using PV feedforward could be in autoclaves or reactor vessels where it is sometimes required to protect the product from excessive temperature gradients (also referred to as Delta T Control). The effect of this is to limit the furnace temperature to a band around the target temperature.

Feedforward can also be a user defined variable in trim mode in the same way as full scale mode

The implementation of cascade control in the 2704 is available as a standard option. ie it is not necessary to order a dual loop controller to perform cascade control.

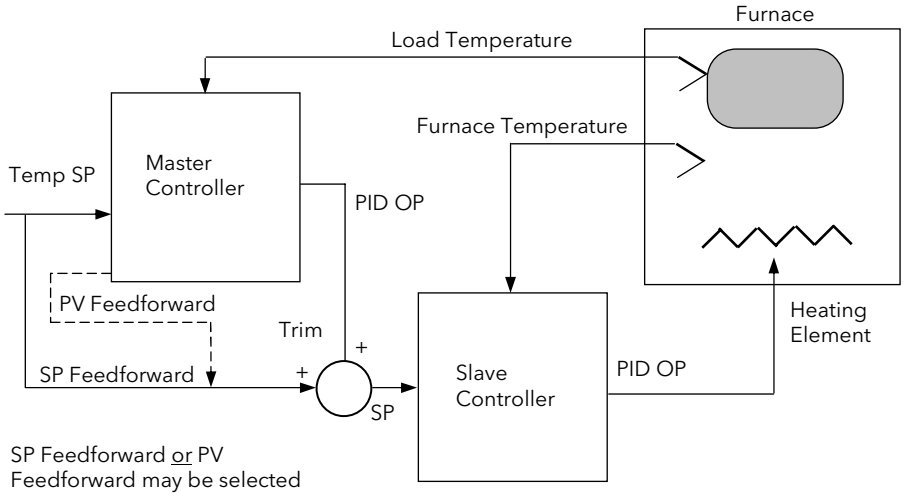


Figure 11-8: Cascade Trim Control

11.10.4 Auto/Manual Operation in Cascade

There are three modes of operation:

Manual – manual control of the actual output

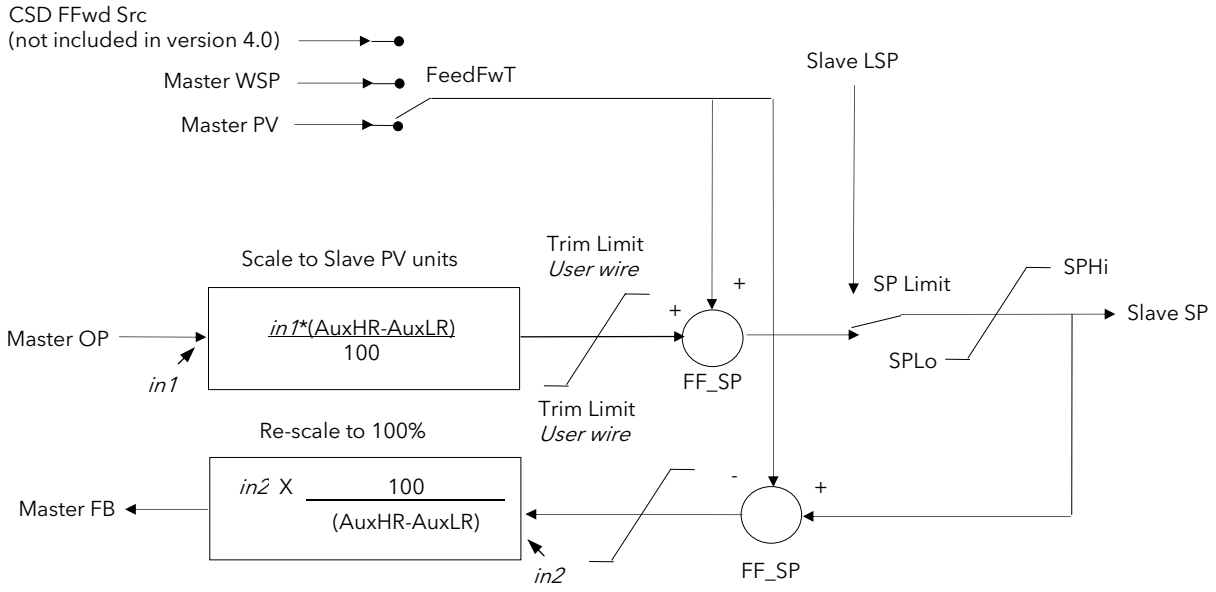
Auto – Slave operates in automatic with local setpoint

Cascade – Master controls the slave setpoint. Slave is in auto.

When the controller is placed in manual the slave working setpoint will track the value of the slave process value continually, therefore ensuring bumpless transfer.

When cascade is deactivated the master loop will monitor the setpoint of the slave loop and provide a smooth transition of output power when the loop moves back to cascade mode.

11.10.5 Cascade Controller Block Diagrams



Note: This diagram applies to controllers with software version 4.0 or greater
For earlier versions, see Appendix E

Figure 11-9: Cascade Controller in Trim Mode

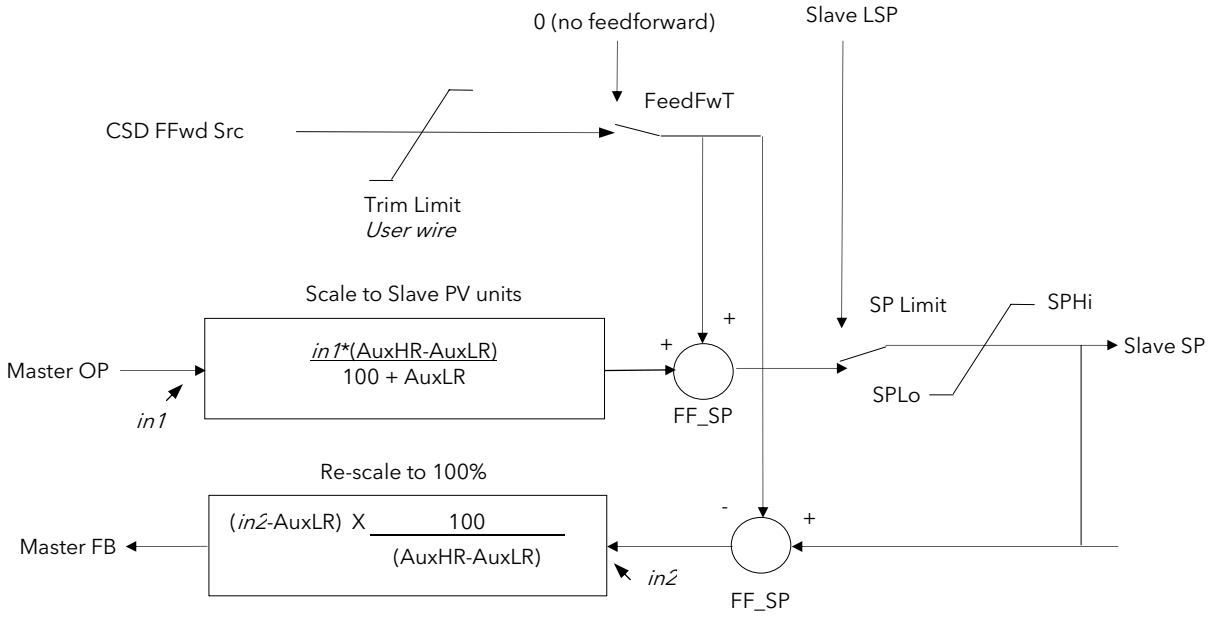


Figure 11-10: Cascade Controller in Full Scale Mode

11.10.6 LOOP SETUP (Wiring page) for Cascade Loop

A controller is configured for cascade operation if 'Loop Type'= 'Cascade' in 'LOOP SETUP(Options)' page, (section 11.1.1).

Table Number: 11.10.6.	These parameters allow you to soft wire between function blocks.		*LP1* SETUP Wiring Page	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
PV Src	Process variable source	Modbus address	05108: PVIn.Val	Conf
Aux PV Src	Auxiliary PV source	Modbus address		Conf
Manual OP Sr	Target OP power source	Modbus address		Conf
OPRtLim En S	OP rate limit enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux LSP Src	Auxiliary local SP source	Modbus address		Conf
Casc Disable S	Cascade disable source	Modbus address		Conf
Casc FFwd Src	Casc. feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
The above parameter does not appear if FF Type (section 11.1.1.) = None				
Casc TrmLim S	Casc. FF trim limit source	Modbus address		Conf
Ctrl Hold Src	Freeze control flag source	Modbus address		Conf
AuxCtrlHold Src	Aux. freeze control flag src	Modbus address		Conf
Integr Hld Src	Integral hold flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux I Hold Src	Aux. Integral hold flag src	Modbus address		Conf
Man Mode Src	Auto/manual select source	Modbus address		Conf
Pot IP Src	Pot position source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem FFwd Src	Remote feedforward src	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Hi OP Src	Remote hi power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Lo OP Sr	Remote lo power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
The above two parameters do not appear if Control Type (section 11.1.1) = On/Off				
Rem SP Ena S	Remote SP enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Remote SP Sr	Remote setpoint source	Modbus address		Conf
SP Select Sr	Internal SP select source	Modbus address		Conf
SP1 Src	Setpoint 1 source	Modbus address		Conf
SP2 Src	Setpoint 2 source	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Dis Src	SP rate limit disable source	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Hld Src	SP rate limit hold source	Modbus address		Conf
Prog SP Src	LP1 PSP wire source	Modbus address		Conf
PID Set Src	PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux PID Set S	Auxiliary PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
Power FF Src	Power feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Enab S	OP track enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Src	Track output source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Trk En S	Aux. OP track enable src	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Trk Src	Aux. track output source	Modbus address		Conf
Ext FBack Src	External feedback source	Modbus address		Conf
AuxExtFBck Src	Auxiliary external feedback source	Modbus address		Conf

11.10.7 Cascade Parameters

Table Number: 11.10.7.	This list only appears if cascade is configured, (see section 11.1.1) and allows you to set up parameters specific to cascade controllers.		*LP1* SETUP (Cascade Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Cascade Mode	Cascade mode	Full Scale FF Full Scale Trim PV FF Trim SP FF		Conf
Disable CSD	Cascade disable status. (It is sometimes useful to disable cascade when starting a process. This also returns the controller to single loop control using the local SP.)	Off On		L1.
CSD TrimLo	Cascade low trim limit			
CSD TrimHi	Cascade high trim limit			
CSD FF Value	Cascade feedforward value i.e. The value being fed forward	Range of signal being fed forward		L3
Work FF Value	Working feedforward value			R/O
Master FB	Cascade master PID feedback value	Range of slave loop		R/O

11.10.8 Cascade Wiring Example

This example shows how to configure Loop 1 to be a simple cascade controller. The master PV is connected to the Main PV input and the slave PV is connected to a PV Input module fitted in Slot 3. The control output is a 4-20mA signal which uses a DC control module fitted in Slot 1.

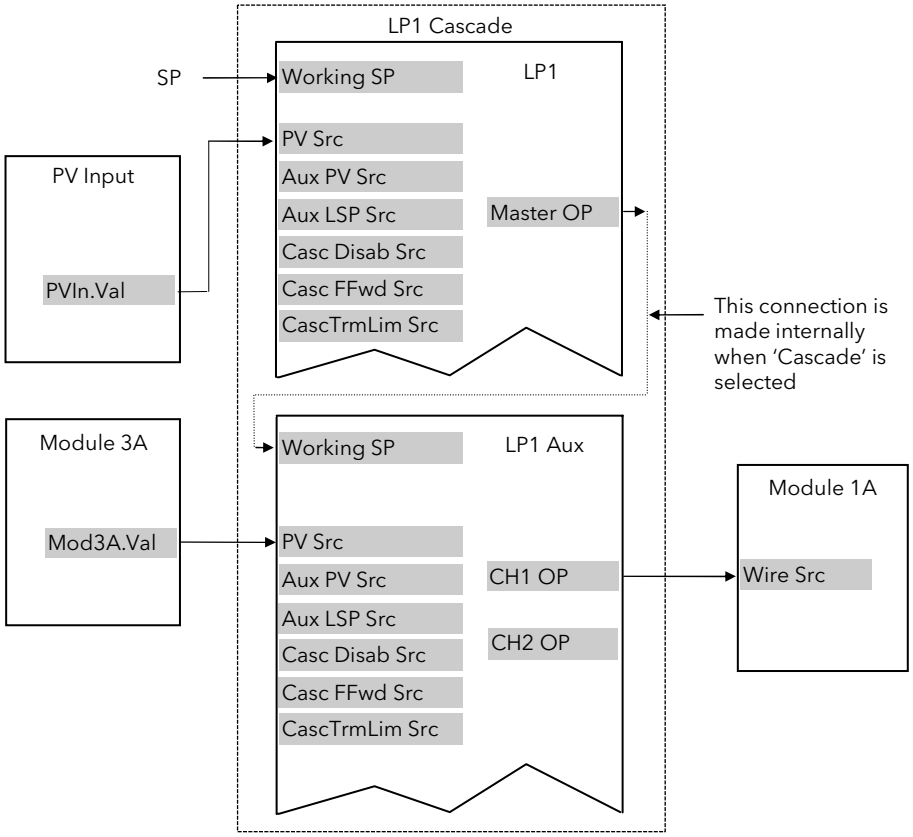


Figure 11-11: Wiring for Simple Cascade Control Loop

11.10.8.1 Implementation

1. In LP1 SETUP / Options Page (section 11.1.1),	set 'Loop Type' = Cascade
2. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring Page (section 11.10.6)	set 'PV Src' = 05108: PVIn.Val (Appendix D) *This connects the PV input to the master PV of the cascade loop*
3. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring Page (section 11.10.6)	set 'Aux PV Src' = 04468: Mod3A.Val (Appendix D) *This connects the PV input from Module 3 to the slave PV of the cascade loop*
4. In MODULE IO / Module 1 A Page (section 23.3.1)	set 'Wire Src = 00013: L1.Ch1.OP (Appendix D) *This connects channel 1(heat) control to the DC output module*

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 5.

11.11 RATIO CONTROL

11.11.1 Overview

Ratio Control is a technique used to control a process variable at a setpoint which is calculated as a proportion of a second (lead) input. The ratio setpoint determines the proportion of the lead value that is to be used as the actual control setpoint. The ratio setpoint can be applied as either a multiplier or as a divisor to the second input.

A typical application is in gas fired furnaces where in order to achieve efficient combustion, the gas and air flow supplied to the burners needs to be maintained at a constant ratio.

11.11.2 Basic Ratio Control

The 2704 contains a ratio control function block which can be used in any control loop. Figure 11-12 shows a block diagram of a simple ratio controller. The lead PV is multiplied or divided by the ratio setpoint to calculate the desired control setpoint. Prior to the setpoint calculation, the ratio setpoint can be offset by the ratio trim value and must obey the overall ratio setpoint operating limits. Another useful feature of the is the automatic calculation of the actual measured ratio which is then available to be displayed on the controller front panel.

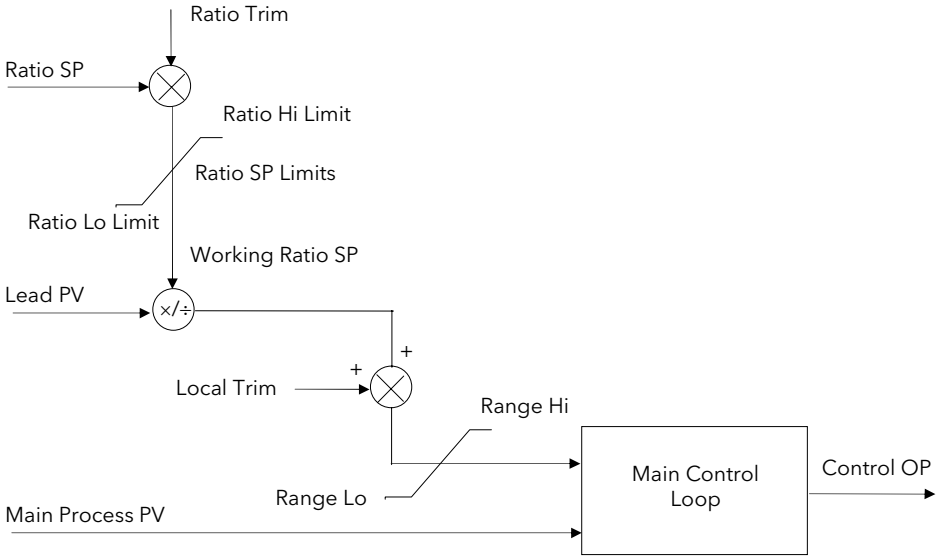


Figure 11-12: Simple Ratio Control Block Diagram

The measured ratio is calculated from the Lead PV and the Process PV. It is also possible to enable 'Ratio Track'. If 'Enable Ratio' is set to 'Off' and Ratio Track is set to 'On', then the Ratio SP will track the measured ratio. This feature allows the user to set the Ratio SP according to the condition of the process.

11.11.3 Controller Configured For Ratio

A controller is configured for ratio operation if 'Loop Type'= 'Ratio' in 'LOOP SETUP(Options)' page, (section 11.1.1.).

Table Number: 11.11.3.	These parameters allow you to soft wire between function blocks.		*LP1* SETUP Wiring Page	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
PV Src	Process variable source	Modbus address	05108: PVIn.Val	Conf
Manual OP Sr	Target OP power source	Modbus address		Conf
OPRtLim En S	OP rate limit enable src	Modbus address		Conf
Lead PV Src	Lead PV source	Modbus address		Conf
Ratio SP Src	Ratio setpoint source	Modbus address		Conf
Ratio Trim Src	Ratio trim source	Modbus address		Conf
Ratio Enab Src	Ratio enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Ctrl Hold Src	Freeze control flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Integr Hld Src	Integral hold flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Man Mode Src	Auto/manual select source	Modbus address		Conf
Pot IP Src	Pot position source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem FFwd Sr	Remote feedforward src	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Hi OP Src	Remote high power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Lo OP Src	Remote low power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
The above two parameters do not appear if Control Type (section 11.1.1.) = On/Off				
Rem SP Ena S	Remote SP enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Remote SP Sr	Remote setpoint source	Modbus address		Conf
SP Select Sr	Internal SP select source	Modbus address		Conf
SP1 Src	Setpoint 1 source	Modbus address		Conf
SP2 Src	Setpoint 2 source	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Dis Src	SP rate limit disable src	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Hld Src	SP rate limit hold source	Modbus address		Conf
Prog SP Src	LP1 PSP wire source	Modbus address		Conf
PID Set Src	PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
Power FF Src	Power feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Enab S	OP track enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Src	Track output source	Modbus address		Conf
Ext FBack Src	External feedback source	Modbus address		Conf

11.11.4 Ratio Parameters

Table Number: 11.11.4.	This list only appears if ratio is configured (see section 11.1.1.) and allows you to set up parameters specific to ratio controllers.		*LP1* SETUP (Ratio Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ratio Resol	Ratio display resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX		Conf
Ratio Type	Ratio type	Divide Multiply		Conf
Lead PV	The value of the lead process variable			L1
Measured Ratio	Measured Ratio			R/O
Work Ratio SP	Ratio working setpoint			R/O
Ratio Lo Lim	Ratio setpoint low limit			L3
Ratio Hi Lim	Ratio setpoint high limit			L3
Ratio SP	Ratio setpoint			L1
Ratio Trim	Ratio trim value			L1
Enable Ratio	Ratio enable	Off On		L1
Ratio Track	Ratio track mode	Off On		Conf

11.11.5 Ratio Wiring Example

This example shows how to configure Loop 1 to be a simple ratio controller. The main PV is connected to the PV Input (rear terminals V+ & V-) and the lead PV is connected to the Analogue Input (rear terminals BA & BB). The control output is a valve position signal which uses a dual triac control module fitted in Slot 1.

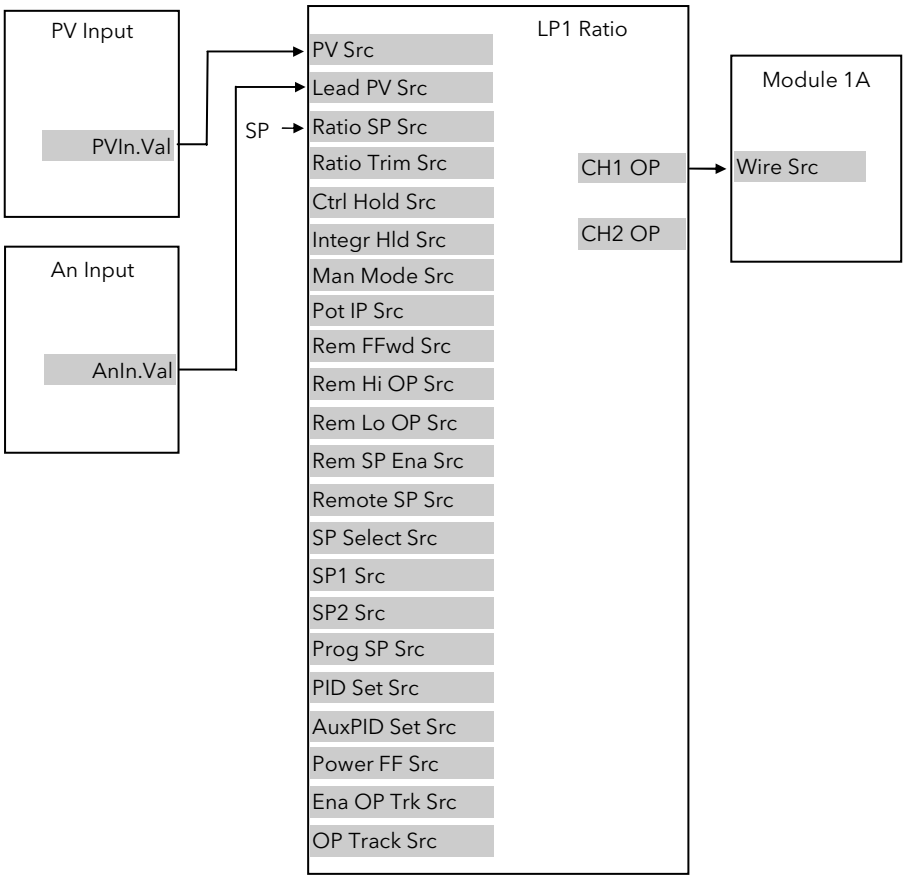


Figure 11-13: Wiring for Simple Ratio Control Loop

11.11.5.1 Implementation

1. In LP1 SETUP / Options Page (section 11.1.1),	set 'Loop Type' = Ratio
2. In LP1 SETUP / Ratio Page (section 11.11.4),	set 'Enable Ratio' = On Set other parameters as required
3. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring Page (section 11.11.3.)	set 'PV Src' = 05108: PVIn.Val (Appendix D) *This connects the PV input to the main PV of the ratio loop*
4. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring Page (section 11.11.3.)	set 'Lead PV Src' = 05268: AnIn.Val (Appendix D) *This connects the lead PV input of the ratio loop from Analogue Input*
5. In MODULE IO / Module 1 A Page (section 23.3.3)	set 'Wire Src = 00013: L1.Ch1.OP (Appendix D) *This connects channel 1(heat) control to the Dual Triac output module*

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 5.

11.12 OVERIDE CONTROL

11.12.1 Overview

Override Control allows a secondary control loop to override the main control output in order to prevent an undesirable operating condition. The override function can be configured to operate in either minimum, maximum or select mode.

A typical example can be implemented in a heat treatment furnace with one thermocouple attached to the workpiece, and another situated close to the heating elements. Control of the furnace during the heating up period is regulated by the override (heating element) temperature controller which provides a safeguard against overheating. Control of the furnace will switch over to the workpiece temperature controller at some point when the temperature is near to its target setpoint. The exact point of switchover is determined automatically by the controller, and will be dependent on the selected PID terms.

11.12.2 Simple Override

Override control is available with analogue, time proportioning and ON/OFF control outputs. It is not available with valve position outputs. Figure 11-14 shows a simple override control loop. The main and override controller outputs are fed to a low signal selector. The override controller setpoint is set to a value somewhere above the normal operating setpoint, but below any safety interlocks.

There is only one Auto Manual switch for both loops. In manual mode the control outputs of both loops track the actual output, ensuring bumpless transfer when auto is selected. The transfer between main and override PID control is also bumpless.

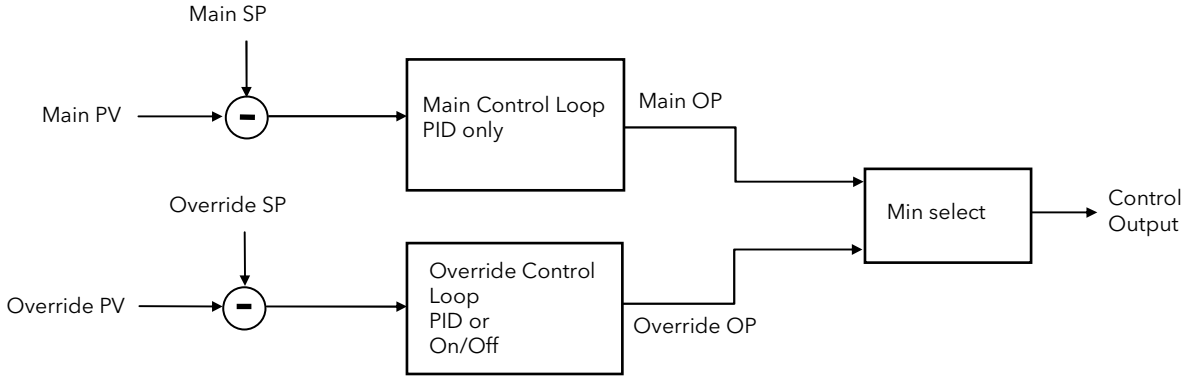


Figure 11-14: Simple Override Control (Select Minimum)

11.12.3 Sensor Break Action

As from firmware version 6.10 the action of the control loops during sensor break will be determined by the Sensor Break Type parameter (Sbrt).

11.12.4 Sensor Break Type = Output (0)

In this mode then no matter which sensor fails the output will go to the Sensor Break Power (oSbOP).

11.12.5 Sensor Break Type = Hold (1)

In this mode the action is dependent on whether the loop to which the sensor is attached is the controlling loop. If it is the controlling loop then the output will hold at its current value and override action is suspended. If it is the loop not currently in control then the controlling loop will continue controlling.

11.12.6 Issues with Sensor Break

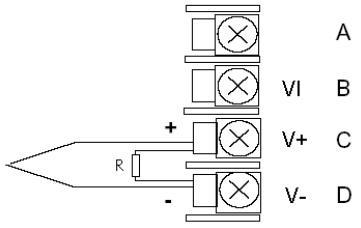
A **PV** or **Analogue Input** can be set up to have a sensor break fall back vale (InpClp) of Up Scale (2) or Down Scale (1). On 2000 series controllers the break impedance is measured with an AC signal. For the short period until the break condition is detected the value of the input can drift.

This can produce an undesirable effect with override control if the drifting signal causes the override to switch loops.

To ensure that any initial drift is in the correct direction it may be necessary to fit a resistor to the sensor input terminals. The terminals used will be dependent on whether the signal is required to go downscale or upscale as follows:

11.12.7 Downscale

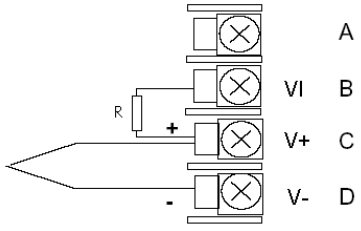
Fitting a resistor across the sense terminals V+ and V- will cause the temperature reading to collapse towards ambient when the sensor is broken. A value between 100K and 10M can be used with little effect to the normally displayed value.



11.12.8 Upscale

Fitting a resistor across the sense terminals VI and V+ will cause the temperature reading to rise when the sensor is broken. Due to the sensor wire resistance being as much as 22R the temperature reading will be sensitive to the value of R.

A value of 10M will add 5.5uV to the reading. This could produce an offset of between 0.1C and 1C but is dependent on thermocouple type and actual temperature. As this is a small fixed offset for a given reading, the 'Offset' parameter of the input block could be used to cancel it if necessary.



11.12.9 Controller Configured For Override

A controller is configured for override operation if 'Loop Type'= 'Override' in 'LOOP SETUP(Options)' page, (section 11.1.1).

Table Number: 11.12.9.	These parameters allow you to soft wire between function blocks.		*LP1* SETUP Wiring Page	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
PV Src	Process variable source	Modbus address	05108: PVIn.Val	Conf
Aux PV Src	Auxiliary PV source	Modbus address		Conf
Manual OP Sr	Target OP power source	Modbus address		Conf
OPRtLim En S	OP rate limit enable src	Modbus address		Conf
Aux LSP Src	Auxiliary local SP source	Modbus address		Conf
Ctrl Hold Src	Freeze control flag source	Modbus address		Conf
AuxCtrlHold Sr	Aux freeze control flag src	Modbus address		Conf
Integr Hld Sr	Integral hold flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux I Hold Sr	Aux. Integral hold flag src	Modbus address		Conf
Man Mode Sr	Manual mode source	Modbus address		Conf
Active Lp Sr	Active loop source	Modbus address		Conf
OVR Disab Sr	Override disable source	Modbus address		Conf
OVR Trim Src	Override trim source	Modbus address		Conf
Pot IP Src	Pot position source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem FFwd Sr	Remote feedforward src	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Hi OP Src	Remote hi power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Lo OP Sr	Remote lo power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
The above two parameters do not appear if Control Type (section 11.1.1) = On/Off				
Rem SP Ena S	Remote SP enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Remote SP Sr	Remote setpoint source	Modbus address		Conf
SP Select Sr	Internal SP select source	Modbus address		Conf
SP1 Src	Setpoint 1 source	Modbus address		Conf
SP2 Src	Setpoint 2 source	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Dis Src	SP rate limit disable src	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Hld Src	SP rate limit hold source	Modbus address		Conf
Prog SP Src	LP1 PSP wire source	Modbus address		Conf
PID Set Src	PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux PID Set S	Auxiliary PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
Power FF Src	Power feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Enab S	OP track enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Src	Track input source	Modbus address		Conf
Ext FBack Src	External feedback source	Modbus address		Conf
AuxExtFBck Src	Auxiliary external feedback source	Modbus address		Conf

11.12.10 Override Parameters

Table Number: 11.12.10.	This list only appears if override is configured (see section 11.1.1.) and allows you to set up parameters specific to override controllers		*LP1* SETUP (Override Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Override Type	Override type See Note 1	Minimum Maximum Select		Conf
OVR Target SP	Override target setpoint	Display range		
Disable OVR	Disable override control. See Note 2.	No Yes		L1
Active Loop	Displays the loop which is controlling at any time			L1
OVR SP Trim	Override loop setpoint trim	Range limit		L1
Main OP	Override main output	-100 to 100		R/O
Override OP	Override output	-100 to 100		R/O

Note 1:-

Minimum selects the lowest output power from the two loops to be the control output.

Maximum selects the highest output power from the two loops to be the control output.

Select allows either the main output or the override output to be used as the control output depending on the state of a digital input or via digital communications.

Note 2:-

The main control loop is active when Override control is disabled.

11.12.11 Override Wiring Example

This example shows how to configure Loop 1 to be a simple override furnace temperature controller. The main PV is connected to the PV Input (rear terminals V+ & V-) and the override PV is connected to a PV Input module fitted in slot 3 (rear terminals 3C & 3D). The control output is an analogue control module fitted in Slot 1.

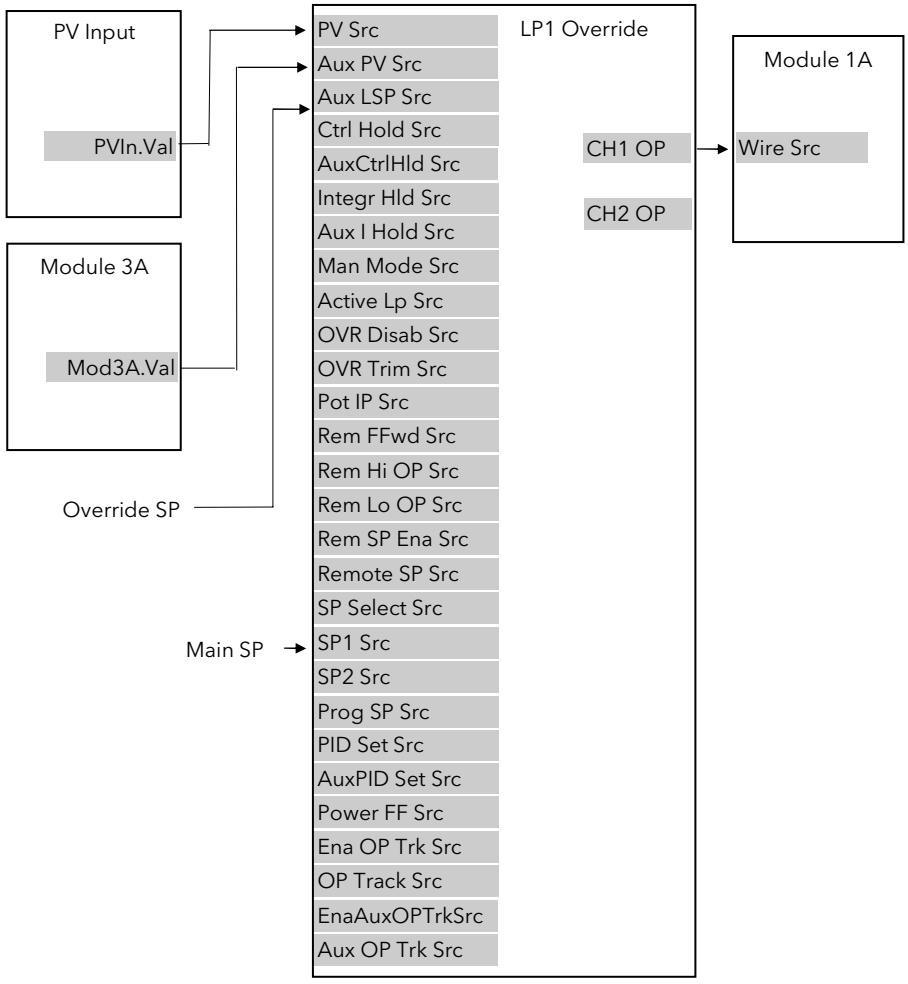


Figure 11-15: Wiring for Simple Override Control Loop

11.12.11.1 Implementation

1. In LP1 SETUP / Options Page (section 11.1.1), set 'Loop Type' = Override
   This action also connects the main SP and override SP to SP1 and SP2 respectively.
2. In LP1 SETUP / Override Page (section 11.12.10) set 'Override Type' = Minimum
   Set other parameters as required
3. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring Page (section 11.2.1) set 'PV Src' = 05108: PVIn.Val (Appendix D)
   This connects the PV input to the main PV of the override loop
4. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring Page (section 11.2.1) set 'Aux PV Src' = 04468: Mod3A.Val (Appendix D)
   This connects the override PV input of the override loop from Analogue Input
5. In MODULE IO / Module 1 A Page (section 23.3.1) set 'Wire Src = 00013: L1.Ch1.OP (Appendix D)
   This connects channel 1(heat) control to the Analogue output module

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ :- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 5.

11.13 LOOP2 SET UP

All pages listed in the previous sections are repeated for Loop 2.

11.14 LOOP3 SET UP

All pages listed in the previous sections are repeated for Loop 3.

12. CHAPTER 12 TUNING

This chapter describes how to tune your controller to match the characteristics of the process under control. There are five topics:

- WHAT IS TUNING?
- AUTOMATIC TUNING
- MANUAL TUNING
- GAIN SCHEDULING
- TUNING OF CASCADE LOOPS

This chapter should be read in conjunction with Chapter 11, 'Loop Set Up'.

12.1 WHAT IS TUNING

In tuning, you match the characteristics of the controller to those of the process being controlled in order to obtain good control. Good control means:

- Stable, 'straight-line' control of the PV at setpoint without fluctuation
- No overshoot, or undershoot, of the PV setpoint
- Quick response to deviations from the setpoint caused by external disturbances, thereby rapidly restoring the PV to the setpoint value.

Tuning involves calculating and setting the value of the parameters listed in Table 12-1 . These parameters appear in the *Loop* Setup (PID) list, see Chapter 11.

Parameter	Meaning or Function
Proportional band	The bandwidth, in display units or %, over which the output power is proportioned between minimum and maximum.
Integral time	Determines the time taken by the controller to remove steady-state error signals.
Derivative time	Determines how strongly the controller will react to the rate-of-change of the measured value.
High Cutback	The number of display units, above setpoint, at which the controller will increase the output power, in order to prevent undershoot on cool down.
Low cutback	The number of display units, below setpoint, at which the controller will cutback the output power, in order to prevent overshoot on heat up.
Cool gain	Only present if cooling has been configured and a module is fitted. Sets the cooling proportional band, which equals the proportional band value divided by the cool gain value.

Table 12-1: Tuning Parameters

12.2 AUTOMATIC TUNING

The 2704 controller uses a one-shot tuner which automatically sets up the initial values of the three term parameters.

12.2.1 One-shot Tuning

The 'one-shot' tuner works by switching the output on and off to induce an oscillation in the measured value. From the amplitude and period of the oscillation, it calculates the tuning parameter values.

If the process cannot tolerate full heating or cooling being applied during tuning, then the levels can be restricted by setting the autotune high power limit ('Tune OH') and autotune low power limit ('Tune OL') in the AUTOTUNE parameters page (section 12.3.2.). These limits are only applied during the autotune process. However, the measured value *must* oscillate to some degree for the tuner to be able to calculate values.

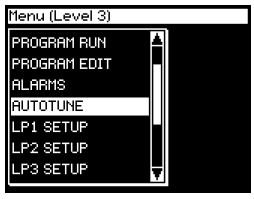
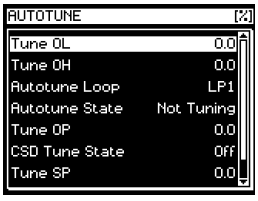
Under normal control the output power limits may be set by 'OP Low Limit' and 'OP High Limit' found in *LPx* SETUP/Output lists. If these limits are set to a lower value than the autotune limits, then the autotune high and low power limits will be clipped to the output limits as soon as autotune is run.

A One-shot Tune can be performed at any time, but normally it is performed only once during the initial commissioning of the process. However, if the process under control subsequently becomes unstable (because its characteristics have changed), you can re-tune again for the new conditions.

It is best to start tuning with the process at ambient conditions and with the SP close to the normal operating level. This allows the tuner to calculate more accurately the low cutback and high cutback values which restrict the amount of overshoot, or undershoot.

12.3 TO AUTOTUNE CONTOL LOOP *LP1*

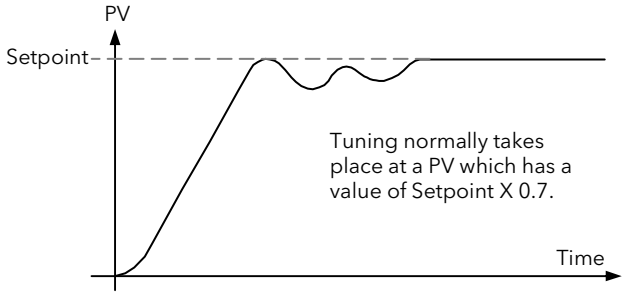
In most cases it will only be necessary to carry out the Autotune procedure when commissioning your controller.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
Set the setpoint to the value at which you will normally operate the process .		
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'AUTOTUNE'**		Autotune page is at Level 3 by default, but can be promoted to L1 or L2. See section 7.2.5.
3. Press [↺] to display sub-headers and again to select 'Tune OL' 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to set the minimum power limit during tuning 5. Repeat for 'Tune OH' 6. Press [↺] to select 'Autotune Loop'' 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the loop to tune		The choices are:- *LP1* *LP1A* *LP1* Cascade These are repeated for Loops 2 and 3 Note: Text shown in *italics* is user definable in configuration mode and may be different from that shown

1. The controller induces an oscillation in the PV by first turning the output (power) on, and then off. The power is limited by **'Tune OL'** and **'Tune OH'**. These two parameters are defaulted to 0 and should be set to values which do not overload the process during tuning. These values are limited by the overall 'OP Low Limit' and 'OP High Limit' set in the Output Page. The first cycle is not complete until the measured value has reached the required setpoint.
2. After two cycles of oscillation the tuning is completed and the tuner switches itself off.
3. When the controller is autotuning the status of autotune is shown periodically on the relevant loop summary
4. The parameter 'Tune SP' is the setpoint value which the controller uses to tune. In a cascade loop this may be derived form the master or slave loops.
5. The parameter 'Stage Time' shows the time spent in any individual stage of the tuning process. If the time in any stage exceeds two hours the auto tune is aborted.
6. The controller then calculates the tuning parameters listed in Table 12-1 and resumes normal control action.

If you want 'Proportional only', 'PD', or 'PI' control, you should set the Integral time parameter or derivative time parameter to OFF before commencing the tuning cycle. These parameters are found in the *Loop* Setup (PID) pages, see Chapter 11. The tuner will leave them off and will not calculate a value for them.

Typical automatic tuning cycle



Calculation of the cutback values

Low cutback and *High cutback* are values that restrict the amount of overshoot, or undershoot, that occurs during large step changes in PV (for example, under start-up conditions).

If either low cutback, or high cutback, is set to 'Auto' the values are fixed at three times the proportional band, and are not changed during automatic tuning.

12.3.1 Carbon Potential Control

If the loop is configured for carbon potential control it is necessary to set the proportional band from 'Engineering Units' to 'Percentage' before initiating self tune. This is because the controller requires an error of at least one unit to be able to tune. In the case of carbon potential this signal is very often <1.

To set Proportional Band in Percentage:-

In *LPx* SET UP/Options Page	Scroll to 'Prop Bnd Units' Press ▲ or ▼ button to select 'Percentage'

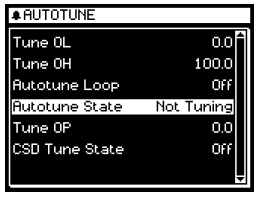
For further information see Chapter 11.

12.3.2 Autotune Parameters

Table Number: 12.3.2.	These parameters allow you to autotune the loop		AUTOTUNE	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Tune OL	Auto tune low power limit. Sets a minimum output limit during tuning	-100 to 100%	0	L1
Tune OH	Auto tune high power limit Sets a maximum output limit during tuning	-100 to 100%	0	L1
Autotune Loop	Selects the loop number to tune	*LP1* *LP!A* *LP1* (CSD) Repeated for *LP2* & *LP3*		L1
Autotune State	Shows the current state of autotune	Not Tuning Measuring Noise Tuning at SP Tuning to SP Finding Minimum Finding Maximum Storing Time End Calculating PID ABORTED	Not Tuning	L1 R/O
Tune OP	Tune output	-100 to 100		R/O L1
CSD Tune State	Cascade tuning state	Off Initialising Tuning Slave Waiting Waiting Again Tuning Master	Off	L1
Tune SP	The SP selected by the controller at which to tune	Display range		R/O L3
Stage Time	Time spent in an individual stage	0:00:00.0		R/O L3

12.3.3 To View the State of Autotune

As autotune progresses, its state is displayed on the loop overview screen and also in the autoune parameter list as follows.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the previous display Press to display **'Autotune State**		This parameter displays the state of Autotuning. The choices are: Not Tuning Measuring Noise Tuning A at SP Tuning to SP Finding Minimum Finding Maximum Storing Time Calculating PID End ABORTED In the relevant loop summary, a message below the banner is periodically flashed with the loop being tuned. A second message flashes the state of tuning from the text above.

12.4 MANUAL TUNING

If for any reason automatic tuning gives unsatisfactory results, you can tune the controller manually. There are a number of standard methods for manual tuning. The one described here is the Ziegler-Nichols method.

With the process at its normal running conditions:

1. Set the Integral Time and the Derivative Time to OFF.
2. Set High Cutback and Low Cutback to 'Auto'.
3. Ignore the fact that the PV may not settle precisely at the setpoint.
4. If the PV is stable, reduce the proportional band so that the PV just starts to oscillate. If PV is already oscillating, increase the proportional band until it just stops oscillating. Allow enough time between each adjustment for the loop to stabilise. Make a note of the proportional band value 'B' and the period of oscillation 'T'.
5. Set the proportional band, integral time and derivative time parameter values according to the calculations given in the table below.

Type of control	Proportional band (P)	Integral time (I)	Derivative time (D)
Proportional only	2xB	OFF	OFF
P + I control	2.2xB	0.8xT	OFF
P + I + D control	1.7xB	0.5xT	0.12xT

Table 12-2: Tuning Values

Note:-
The parameters listed in the above table will be found under the heading **Loop Setup**. This heading is also described in the following chapter.

12.4.1 Setting the cutback values

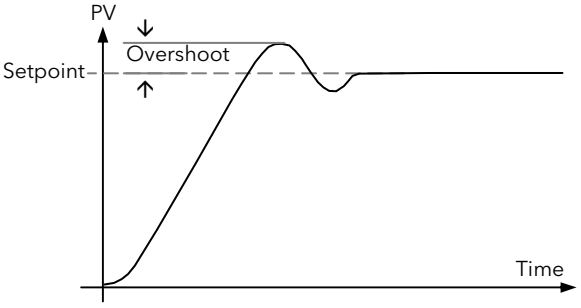
The above procedure sets up the parameters for optimum steady state control. If unacceptable levels of overshoot or undershoot occur during start-up, or for large step changes in PV, then manually set the cutback parameters.

Proceed as follows:

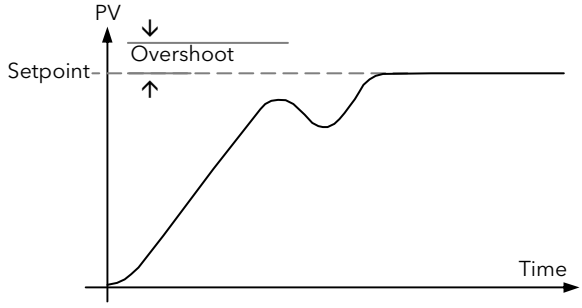
1. Set the low and high cutback values to three proportional bandwidths (that is to say, Lcb = Hcb = 3 x P).
2. Note the level of overshoot, or undershoot, that occurs for large PV changes (see the diagrams below).

In example (a) increase Low Cutback by the overshoot value. In example (b) reduce Low Cutback by the undershoot value.

Example (a)



Example (b)



Where the PV approaches setpoint from above, you can set High Cutback in a similar manner.

12.4.2 Integral action and manual reset

In a full three-term controller (that is, a PID controller), the integral term automatically removes steady state errors from the setpoint. If the controller is set up to work in two-term mode (that is PD mode), the integral term will be set to 'OFF'. Under these conditions the measured value may not settle precisely at setpoint. The parameter 'Manual Reset' in the *Loop* Setup (PID) page is used to compensate for no integral term by providing a small output bleed, and must be set manually in order to remove the steady state error.

12.4.3 Valve Position Control

See section 11.7 'Control of Valve Positioning Motors', for an explanation of the additional parameters required for motorised valves and how to set the values of these parameters.

12.5 TUNING WHEN GAIN SCHEDULING IS USED

Gain scheduling is described in section 11.5. It is the automatic transfer of control between one set of control values and another set in non-linear control systems. Up to six sets can be configured and each set is configured to operate over a selected input range where the control operates over a reduced and approximately linear range.

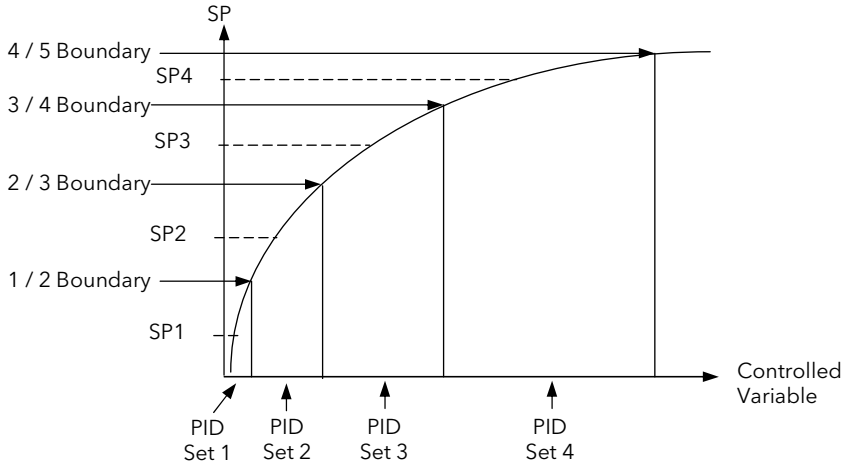


Figure 12-1: Gain Scheduling

12.5.1 Tuning Procedure

In normal operating mode 'Schedule type' will be set to PV, SP, OP, Error, Rem Sched IP or Soft Wired as dictated by the requirements of the process.

1. Select the number of PID sets required from 1 to 6.
2. Set the Boundaries over which each PID set is required to operate
3. Go to Configuration level (if not already selected)
4. Set 'Schedule Type' (*LPx* SETUP/PID page) = 'Set'
5. Go to Level 3
6. Select 'Active PID Set' = 'PID Set 1'
7. Set the Setpoint to control at a point approximately midway between 0 and 1/2 Boundary
8. Select Autotune as described in section 12.3. At the end of tune the values will be automatically stored into PID Set 1. It is possible to limit the output power in each set.
9. Repeat the above for all PID sets. For each set, adjust the SP approximately midway between the two boundaries (Figure 12-1)
10. When all PID sets have been determined, go back to configuration level and re-set 'Schedule Type' to the type required for the process

Note: It is possible to tune each set when Gain Scheduling is selected, but this is not recommended since it is possible that, at the end of tune, the values could be stored into the incorrect PID set. This might occur, for example, if the system is highly oscillatory and the values for, say, PID set 2 are stored when the excursion is in PID set 1.

12.6 CASCADE TUNING

Cascade control uses a combination of two PID controllers, where the output of one (the master) provides the setpoint for the second (the slave). Cascade control was described in more detail in section 11.10. Figure 12-2 shows a cascade controller applied to the control of a furnace load.

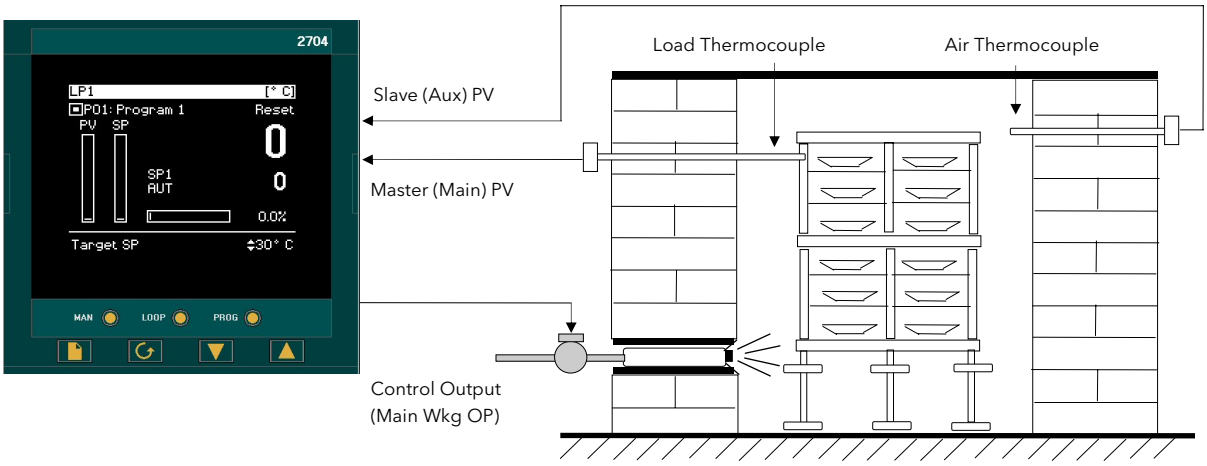


Figure 12-2: Cascade Control of a Furnace Load

When tuning a cascade loop it is necessary that both master and slave loops are tuned. It is recommended that each loop is tuned independently using the procedure below.

Because the slave loop is used by the master loop it must be tuned first.

12.6.1 To Tune a Full Scale Cascade Loop

Step 1. Configure the loop as cascade full scale as follows:-

In *LP1* SETUP/Options Page (section 11.1.1.)	Set 'Loop Type' = Cascade
In *LP1* SETUP/Cascade Page (section 11.10.7.)	Set 'Cascade Mode' = Full Scale Set 'Disable CSD' = Yes
In *LP1* SETUP/SP page (section 11.3.2.)	Set 'Setpoint 1' = the normal operating setpoint value for the main loop
In *LP1* SETUP/SP(Aux) page (section 11.3.3.)	Set 'Local SP' = the normal operating setpoint value for the slave loop (when cascade is disabled)

Step 2. Start the controller in Level 3 as follows:

In ACCESS	Select Level 3

Step 3. Set tune output high and low limits as follows:

Note: For the slave tune you may wish to restrict the ability of the tuner to disturb the process. Tune OH should, therefore, be set to a value that will only enable the tune to achieve the local setpoint which is chosen.

In AUTOTUNE	Set 'Tune OL' to a value which will limit the minimum output demand during tuning. This may be 0.0 for a heat only loop. Set 'Tune OH' to a value which will limit the maximum output demand during tuning.

Step 4. Start tune on the slave loop as follows:

In AUTOTUNE	Set 'Autotune Loop' to *LP1A*

Step 5. You may monitor the progress of the tune by viewing the following parameters:

In AUTOTUNE	'Autotune State'	This indicates which step is being performed
	'Tune OP'	The output demand of the autotune. For a slave loop this will be the same as the working output power.
	'Tune SP'	The setpoint about which the loop is being tuned
	'Stage Time'	The length of time this particular step has been running. The tune step will abort after two hours

Step 6. On completion of the slave loop tuning:

Keep the loop in Cascade Disabled, and allow the slave loop to control the process. You must allow the slave loop to control at its Local SP. Wait for the master loop to settle to a steady state value. (Note, it is unlikely that the master loop steady state is the same as the slaves).

When the master PV is at a steady value proceed with tuning the master loop. (Note, if the master loop has not settled satisfactorily you may not be able to tune the master loop at all, since it is necessary to restrict the disturbance of the slave when tuning the master.

Step 7. Tune the master loop

In AUTOTUNE	Set 'Tune OL' and 'Tune OH' The values chosen should be symmetrical and chosen such that the slave stays in control (typically $\pm$ 0.5 * slave proportional band). This amount, however, may not be sufficient to disturb the master to achieve a successful tune. If the proportional band of the master is in engineering units, the tune hysteresis of the master will be $\pm$1 engineering unit. For a temperature loop, therefore, the master must be disturbed by at least 1 degree. Tune OL and Tune OH are set in %. Although it is the master which is being tuned, it is the slave working SP which has to be modified in order to achieve a change in the output and hence measure a disturbance in the master PV. Therefore, Tune OL and Tune OH relate to a percentage of the slave range by which the slave working SP will be changed. For example, if the slave has a range of –200 to +1372 the slave range is 1572 and Tune OL and Tune OH are 1%, then the slave working setpoint will be modified by $\pm$15.72 degrees.
In AUTOTUNE	Set 'Autotune Loop' to *LP1*
In LP1 SETUP/Cascade Page (11.10.7.)	Set 'Disable CSD to 'No' This is to re-enable cascade mode and must be done before the time out period of 1 min

Step 8: Return to control

The slave and master loops should now be tuned. Try changing the main setpoint and observe the response. If the master PV response is oscillatory then you may not have restricted the disturbance of the slave enough. Try decreasing the values of 'Tune OL' and Tune OH' and retune the master.

12.6.2 To Tune a Trim mode Cascade Loop

This example uses SP feedforward where the value of the MasterWSP is 50, the slave range is 0-200 and the Trim limits are 25%.

The slave setpoint calculation is shown in the diagram below which has been reproduced from the previous chapter.

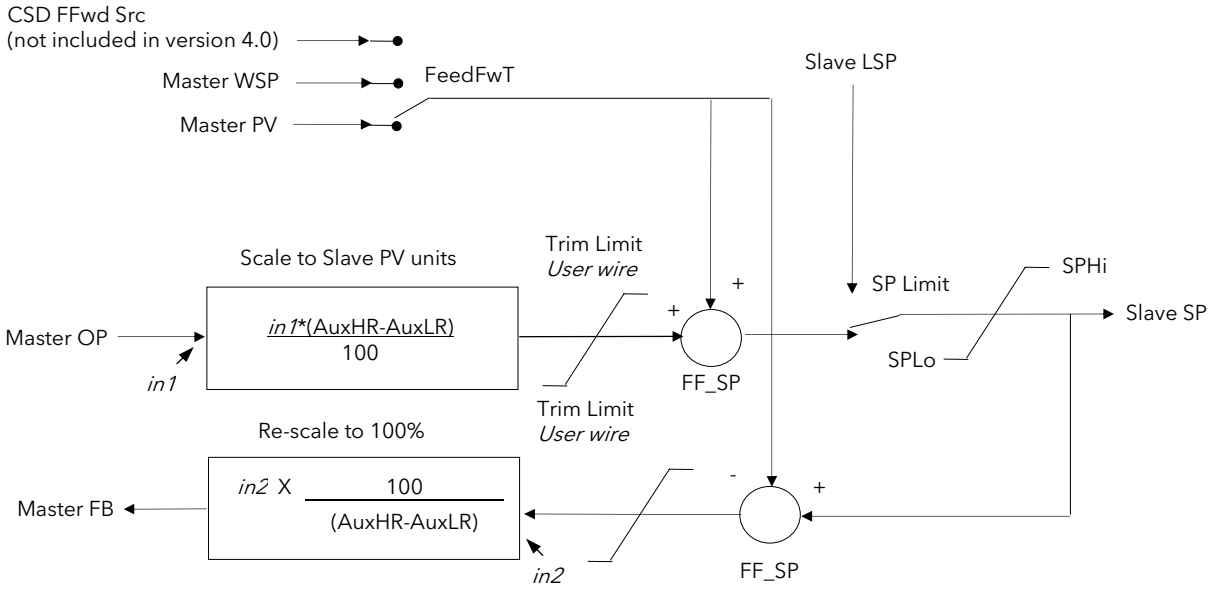


Figure 12-3: Cascade Controller in Trim Mode

The formula in the box "Scale to Slave PV units" simply normalises the masterOP to the slave range, for example, here a masterOP of 0% will produce a trim value of 0 units and an output of 100% a trim value of 200 units. A 50% master OP will produce 100. So if masterOP is 10% this will provide a trim value of 20 that will be added to the fed forward SP providing a working slave setpoint of 70.

It should also be noted if masterOP is 20% this should provide a trim value of 40, but because the trim limit is set a 25, instead of the slave setpoint going to 90 it will be limited to 75.

The feedback path via the parameter MasterFB ensures that the master loop will not go into integral saturation whilst the slave setpoint is being limited.

12.6.2.1 Tuning the Loop

Details of configuration

Master(LP1) loop range	= 0-100
Slave loop(LP1A) range	= 0-200
Cascade mode	= Trim SPFF(Setpoint feedforward)
CSDTrim lo	= -50(slave SP trim lo limit)
CSDTrim hi	= +50(slave SP trim hi limit)

Step 1. Tune slave

Disable cascade and tune the slave at a setpoint that you expect the slave to be operating at. In this case it is done at 70.

After tune is complete you must allow the slave to settle at its setpoint with no oscillations. This is very important.

Step 2 Tune Master

The master OP is normalised to the slave range. So in this configuration, if the master OP is 0%, the slave SP is also 0. If the master OP is 50% the SP is 100 and if the OP is 100% the setpoint is 200.

You need to inspect the value of the slave proportional band calculated by the slave autotune. In this case it was 36 (eng units).

To tune the master loop the autotune limits need to be set so that the slave SP is allowed to alter by half its proportional band. In this case, $\pm$18 units. To achieve this 'Tune OP low' is set to -9% and 'Tune OP high' to 9%. With a master SP of 70 this allows the slave to go to a high value of 88 and a low value of 52. Please note, during autotune the 9% is applied in addition to the Slave PV, not the slave setpoint when the master loop tune starts, therefore it is important that the slave has settled at its local SP.

After you have set the tune limits start the master(LP1) autotune and only after that enable cascade mode. When complete the controller can be operated in cascade mode.

Step 3 Normal Operation

Adjust the master SP to the required process value and observe control response.

13. CHAPTER 13 CONTROLLER APPLICATIONS

The 2704 controller contains control blocks specifically designed to suit a number of different applications.
Examples are:-
Carbon Potential, Oxygen or Dew Point control using Zirconia probes
Humidity control using wet and dry platinum resistance thermometers
Vacuum Control

About this chapter

This chapter gives general descriptions (which are not intended to be of a particular installation) of the use of the 2704 controller in the above applications.

- ◊ Brief description and terminology applications using zirconia probes
- ◊ An example wiring diagram for carbon potential control
- ◊ Viewing and adjusting the parameters for a carbon potential controller
- ◊ An example of soft wiring for a carbon potential control loop
- ◊ Brief description of humidity control
- ◊ An example wiring diagram for humidity control
- ◊ Viewing and adjusting the parameters for a humidity controller
- ◊ An example of soft wiring for a humidity control loop
- ◊ Brief description of vacuum control
- ◊ An example wiring diagram for vacuum control
- ◊ Viewing and adjusting the parameters for a vacuum controller
- ◊ An example of soft wiring for vacuum control

13.1 ZIRCONIA - CARBON POTENTIAL CONTROL

A dual loop 2704 controller is required to control temperature of the process on one loop and carbon potential on the other. The controller is often a programmer which generates temperature and carbon potential profiles synchronised to a common timebase. In this section it is assumed that a programmer is used.

13.1.1 Temperature Control

The sensor input of the temperature loop may come from the zirconia probe but it is common for a separate thermocouple to be used. The controller provides a heating output which may be connected to gas burners or thyristors to control electrical heating elements. In some applications a cooling output may also be connected to a circulation fan or exhaust damper.

13.1.2 Carbon Potential Control

The zirconia probe generates a millivolt signal based on the ratio of oxygen concentrations on the reference side of the probe (outside the furnace) to the amount of oxygen in the furnace.

The controller uses the temperature and carbon potential signals to calculate the actual percentage of carbon in the furnace. This second loop generally has two outputs. One output is connected to a valve which controls the amount of an enrichment gas is supplied to the furnace. The second output controls the level of dilution air.

13.1.3 Sooting Alarm

In addition to other alarms which may be detected by the controller (see also Chapter 10 'Alarm Configuration'), the 2704 can trigger an alarm when the atmospheric conditions are such that carbon will be deposited as soot on all surfaces inside the furnace.

13.1.4 Automatic Probe Cleaning

The 2704 has a probe clean and recovery strategy that can be programmed to occur between batches or manually requested. A short blast of compressed air is used to remove any soot and other particles that may have accumulated on the probe. Once the cleaning has been completed the time taken for the probe to recover is measured. If the recovery time is too long this indicates that the probe is ageing and replacement or refurbishment is due. During the cleaning and recovery cycle, the %C reading is frozen thereby ensuring continuous furnace operation.

13.1.5 Endothermic Gas Correction

A gas analyser may be used to determine the CO concentration of the endothermic gas. If a 4-20mA output is available from the analyser, it can be fed into the 2704 to automatically adjust the calculated % carbon reading. Alternatively, this value can be entered manually.

13.1.6 Example of Carbon Potential Controller Connections

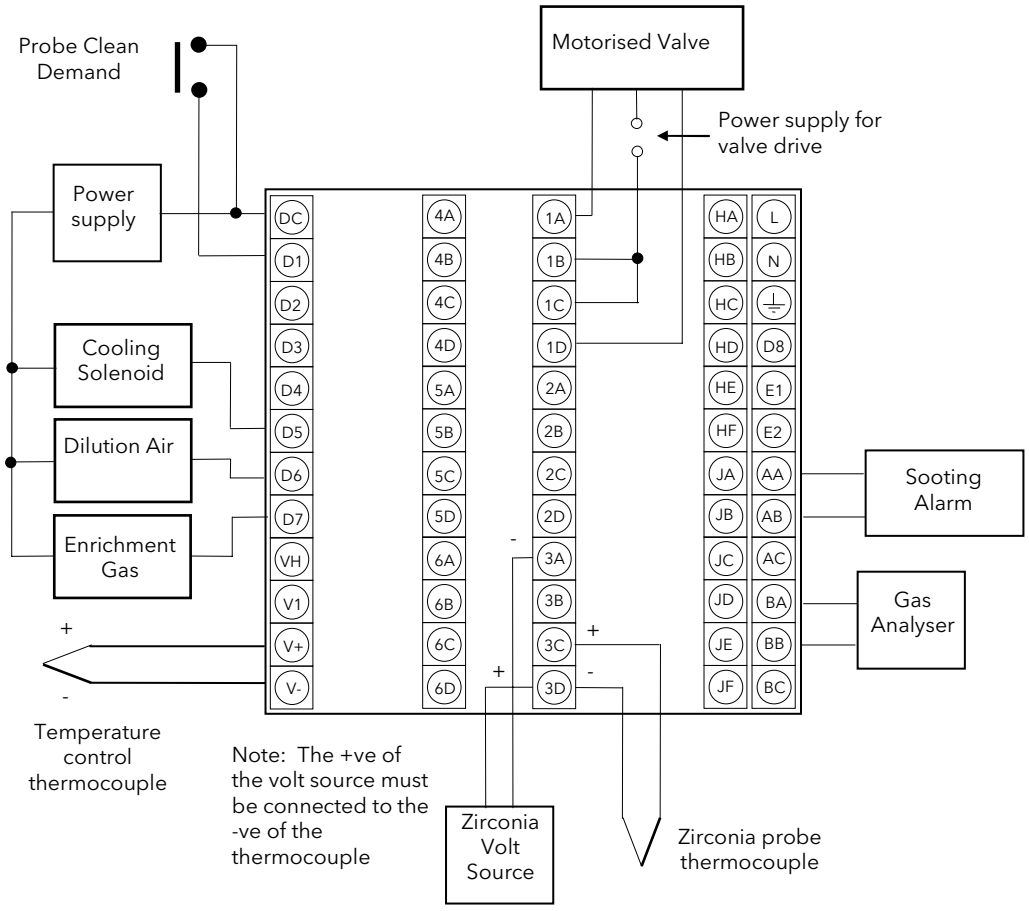
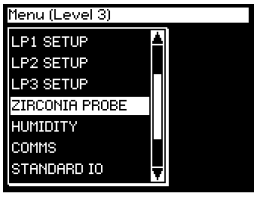
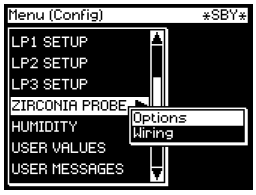
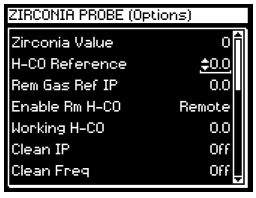


Figure 13-1: An Example of 2704 Wiring for Carbon Potential Control

The above diagram is a generalised connection diagram, for further information refer to 'INSTALLATION' Chapter 2, and to the instructions supplied by the probe manufacturer.
In the above example the following modules are fitted. This will change from installation to installation:

Module 1	Dual triac or relay to drive motorised valve
Module 3	Dual PV Input Module
Standard Digital I/O	Used as logic input for manual probe clean and outputs for solenoid valve drives
Standard PV Input	For the temperature control thermocouple input
Standard Analogue Input	For gas analyser
Standard Relay Output	For sooting alarm

13.2 TO VIEW AND ADJUST ZIRCONIA PARAMETERS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'ZIRCONIA PROBE'**		This page is only available if 'Zirconia' is Enabled in the INSTRUMENT (Options) page
3. Press [↵] to display sub-headers		Options Configure and adjust zirconia parameters. Wiring Soft wires zirconia parameters
4. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the required sub-header 5. Press [↵] to select the parameter list for the required sub-header		

The full list of parameters available under these list headers is shown in the following tables ⇓

13.2.1 Zirconia Parameters

Table Number: 13.2.1.	This table allows you to view or adjust zirconia probe parameters		ZIRCONIA PROBE (Options Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Zirconia Value	Zirconia control process value The O2 or dew point value derived from temperature and remote gas ref inputs	Range units		R/O
Probe Type	Zirconia probe equation	See note 1 for types supported		Conf
Units	Zirconia display units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf
Resolution	Zirconia display resolution	XXXXX to XX.XXX		Conf
Oxygen Exp (Note 2)	Oxygen units Only available for 'Probe Type' = 'Log Oxygen'	0 to 19		Conf
The following 10 parameters are not relevant to 'Probe Type' = 'Oxygen'				
H-CO Reference	Gas reference	0.0 to 999.0	20.0	L3
Rem Gas Ref IP	Remote gas reference	0.0 to 999.0		L3
Enable Rem H-CO	Remote gas enable. This can be an internal value from the user interface or remote from an external source.	Internal Remote	Internal	L3
Working H-CO	Working gas reference or process factor	0.0 to 999.0		L3 R/O
Process Factor	Process Factor is used in some zirconia probes to provide compensation for the	0.0 to 999.0		L3

Table Number: 13.2.1.	This table allows you to view or adjust zirconia probe parameters			ZIRCONIA PROBE (Options Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
	varying abilities of different alloys to absorb carbon. Applies to MMI probes only			
Clean Mode	Clean probe input	Off On	Off	L3
Clean Freq	Zirconia probe cleaning interval	Off to 99:54:00.0	4:00:00:0	L3
Clean Duration	Sets the cleaning time	0:00:06.0 to 1:39:54.0	0:10:00:0	L3
Max Recvy Time	Maximum recovery time after purging	0:00:06.0 to 1:39:54.0	0:10:00:0	L3
Min Recvy Time	Minimum recovery time after purging	0:00:06.0 to 1:39:54.0	0:10:00:0	L3
Min Cal Temp	Minimum calculation temp.	-999.0		L3
Probe Offset	Zirconia mV offset	to	0.0	L3
Temp Offset	Sets the temperature offset for the probe	2000.0	0.0	L3
The following 4 parameters are not relevant to 'Probe Type' = 'Oxygen'				
Next Clean	Time to next cleaning. (counts down to 0:00:00.0)	0:00:00.1		R/O L1
Clean State	The burn off state of the zirconia probe	Inactive Cleaning Recovering		R/O L1
Clean Output	Clean valve output	Off/On	Off	R/O L3
Probe Status	Probe requires cleaning	Good/Bad		R/O L1
Probe SBrk	Probe sensor break	No/Yes		R/O L1
The following parameter is not relevant to 'Probe Type' = 'Oxygen'				
Sooting Alarm	Probe sooting alarm output	Good/Bad		R/O L1
SootVal Scalar	Sooting value scalar	0.0 to 100.0	1.0	L3
Probe IP	Zirconia probe mV input	-0.100 to 2.000		R/O
Temp IP	Zirconia probe temp input val	Temp range		R/O L3
PV Invalid	PV Invalid	No/Yes		L3
This is a boolean which is true when the temperature is below that set by 'Min Cal Temp'. It may have been wired in configuration mode, for example, to disable the gas valve				
The following parameter is not relevant to 'Probe Type' = 'Oxygen'				
PV Frozen	PV Frozen	No/Yes		L3
This is a boolean which freezes the PV during a purging cycle. It may have been wired in configuration mode, for example, to disable control output during purging				

Note 1 Probe types supported: Probe mV, Bosch Carbon, Barber-Colman, MMI Carbon, MMI Dewpoint, AACC, Drayton, ACP, SSI, MacDhui, Oxygen, Log Oxygen, Bosch Oxygen, Dewpoint.

Note 2 To configure Oxygen in ppm, select 'Probe Type' = 'Oxygen' and 'Oxygen Exp' = '4'

13.2.2 Wiring Page

Table Number: 13.2.2.	These parameters configure zirconia probe block wiring.		ZIRCONIA PROBE (Wiring Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
mV Src	Zirconia probe mV input source	Modbus address		Conf
Temp Src	Zirconia probe temperature input source	Modbus address		Conf
Clean Src	Zirconia clean probe input source Not available for Oxygen Probe Types	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Gas Src	Remote gas reference/Process factor source Not available for Oxygen Probe Types	Modbus address		Conf.

13.3 ZIRCONIA WIRING EXAMPLE

13.3.1 The Zirconia Function Block

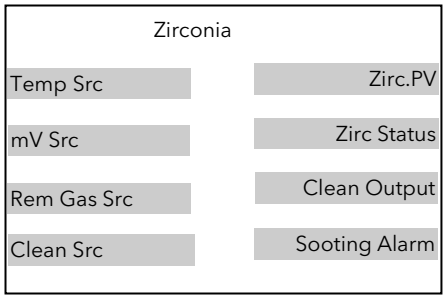


Figure 13-2: Zirconia Function Block

13.3.1.1 Main Features

Calculation of PV: The Process Variable can be carbon potential, Dewpoint or Oxygen concentration. The PV is derived from the probe temperature input, the probe mV input and remote gas reference input values. Various probe makes are supported.

Endothermic Gas Correction: This enables the user to set the percentage of carbon monoxide (%CO) present in the Endothermic Gas. This value can be measured via a gas analyser and fed into the controller as an analogue value.

Probe Clean: As these sensors are used in furnace environments they require regular cleaning. Cleaning (Burn Off) is performed by forcing compressed air through the probe. Cleaning can be initiated either manually or automatically using a timed period. During cleaning the PV output is frozen.

Health Alarm (Zirconia Probe Status): After cleaning an alarm output is generated if the PV does not return to 95% of its value within a specified time. This indicates that the probe is deteriorating and should be replaced.

Sooting Alarm: An output is generated which indicates that the furnace is about to soot.

13.3.2 Configuration of a Carbon Potential Control Loop

This example assumes that the probe temperature (Type K) input is connected to module 3 and the milli-volt input to module 6. Loop 1 normally controls temperature, so the carbon loop will be Loop 2. Carbon control and alarm outputs are relays and configured as On/Off.

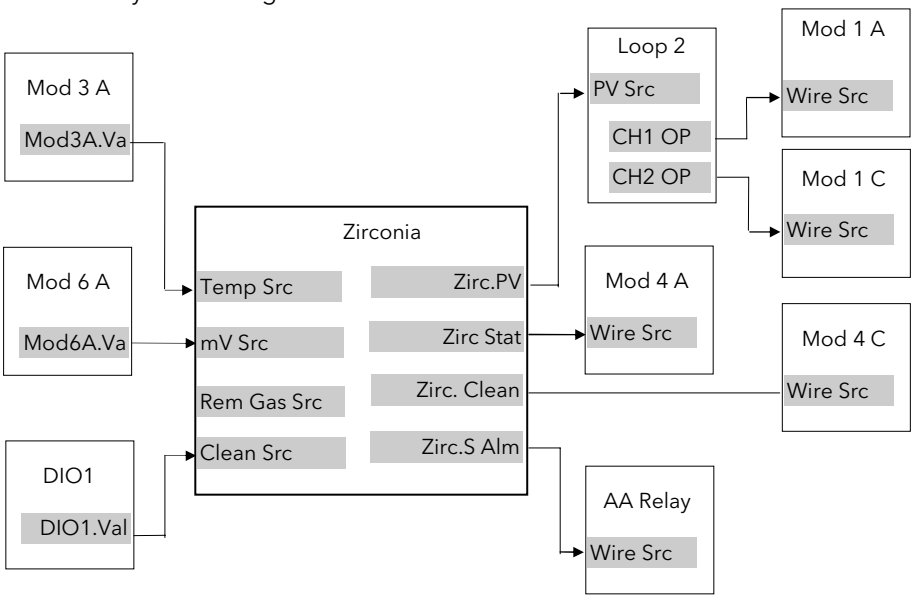


Figure 13-3: Zirconia Wiring for Carbon Potential

13.3.2.1 Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/Options Page (section 7.2.1),
   set 'Num of Loops' = 2
   set 'Zirconia' = Enabled

2. In MODULE IO/Module 3A Page (section 23.3.9)
   set 'Channel Type' = Thermocouple
   set 'Linearisation' = K-Type
   set 'Units' = °C/°F/°K
   set 'Resolution' = XXXXX
   set 'SBrk Impedance' = Low
   set 'SBrk Fallback' = Up Scale
   set 'CJC Type' = Internal
   This configures Module 3 to measure temperature.

3. In MODULE IO/Module 6A Page (section 23.3.9)
   set 'Channel Type' = HZVolts
   set 'Linearisation' = Linear
   set 'Units' = mV
   set 'Resolution' = XXXXX
   set 'SBrk Impedance' = Off
   set 'SBrk Fallback' = Up Scale
   set 'Electrical Lo' = 0.00
   set 'Electrical Hi' = 2.00
   set 'Eng Val Lo' = 0.00
   set 'Eng Val Hi' = 2000
   This configures Module 6 to measure probe mV.

4. In STANDARD IO/Dig IO1 Page (section 22.7.1)
   set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
   This configures DIO1 to be a digital input.

5. In ZIRCONIA PROBE/Options Page (section 113.2.1)
   set 'Probe Type' = *Type of probe in use*
   set 'Units' = %CP
   set 'Resolution' = XXX.XX
   set 'H-CO Reference' = *Required Value*

	This value defines the % carbon monoxide (%CO) in the gas used for carburising This configures the zirconia probe
6. In ZIRCONIA PROBE/Wiring Page (section 0)	set 'Clean Src' = 05402:DI01.Val set 'mV Src' = 04948:Mod6A set 'Temp Src' = 04468:Mod3A This connects inputs to the Zirconia block
7. In LP2 SETUP/Options Page (section 11.1.1)	set 'Loop Type' = Single set 'Control Type' = OnOff→Ch1&2
8. In LP2 SETUP/Wiring Page (section 11.2.1)	set 'PV Src' = 11059:Zirc.PV This connects the PV to Loop 2 PV
9. In MODULE IO/Module 1A Page (section 23.3.2)	set 'Channel Type' = On/Off set 'Wire Src' = 01037:L2.Ch1OP This connects LP2 Ch1 output to module 1
10. In MODULE IO/Module 1C Page (section 23.3.2)	set 'Channel Type' = On/Off set 'Wire Src' = 01038:L2.Ch2OP This connects LP2 Ch2 output to module 1
11. In MODULE IO/Module 4A Page (section 23.3.2)	set 'Channel Type' = On/Off set 'Wire Src' =11066:Zirc.Stat This connects the health (probe status) to module 4A
12. In MODULE IO/Module 4C Page (section 23.3.2)	set 'Channel Type' = On/Off set 'Wire Src' = 11067: Zirc.Clean This connects the clean outputs to module 4C
13. In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page (section 22.5.1)	set 'Channel Type' = On/Off set 'Wire Src' = 11068: Zirc.SAlm This connects the sooting alarm to the fixed relay output

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 5.

13.3.3 Probe Impedance

Probe impedance can be read by the parameter 'SBrk Trip Imp'. This parameter is found in the Standard IO or Module IO, PV or Analogue Inputs. It is, however, normal to use the Dual PV Input module for use with a Zirconia probe, so the 'SBrk Trip Imp' parameter will be found in MODULE IO/Module 3 or 6 page.

The units for this parameter is % and depends upon the setting of the 'SBrk Impedance' parameter found in the same page, as follows:-

If 'SBrk Impedance' = 'Low'	then a 'SBrk Trip Impedance reading of 100% is approximately 100KΩ
If 'SBrk Impedance' = 'High'	then a 'SBrk Trip Impedance reading of 100% is approximately 500KΩ

For a Zirconia probe the normal setting for 'SBrk Impedance' = 'High'

13.4 HUMIDITY CONTROL

13.4.1 Overview

Humidity (and altitude) control is a standard feature of the 2704 controller. In these applications the controller may be configured to generate a setpoint profile (see Chapter 8 'PROGRAMMER CONFIGURATION').

Also the controller may be configured to measure humidity using either the traditional Wet/Dry bulb method (Figure 13-4) or it may be interfaced to a solid state sensor.

The controller output may be configured to turn a refrigeration compressor on and off, operate a bypass valve, and possibly operate two stages of heating and/or cooling

13.4.2 Example Of Humidity Controller Connections

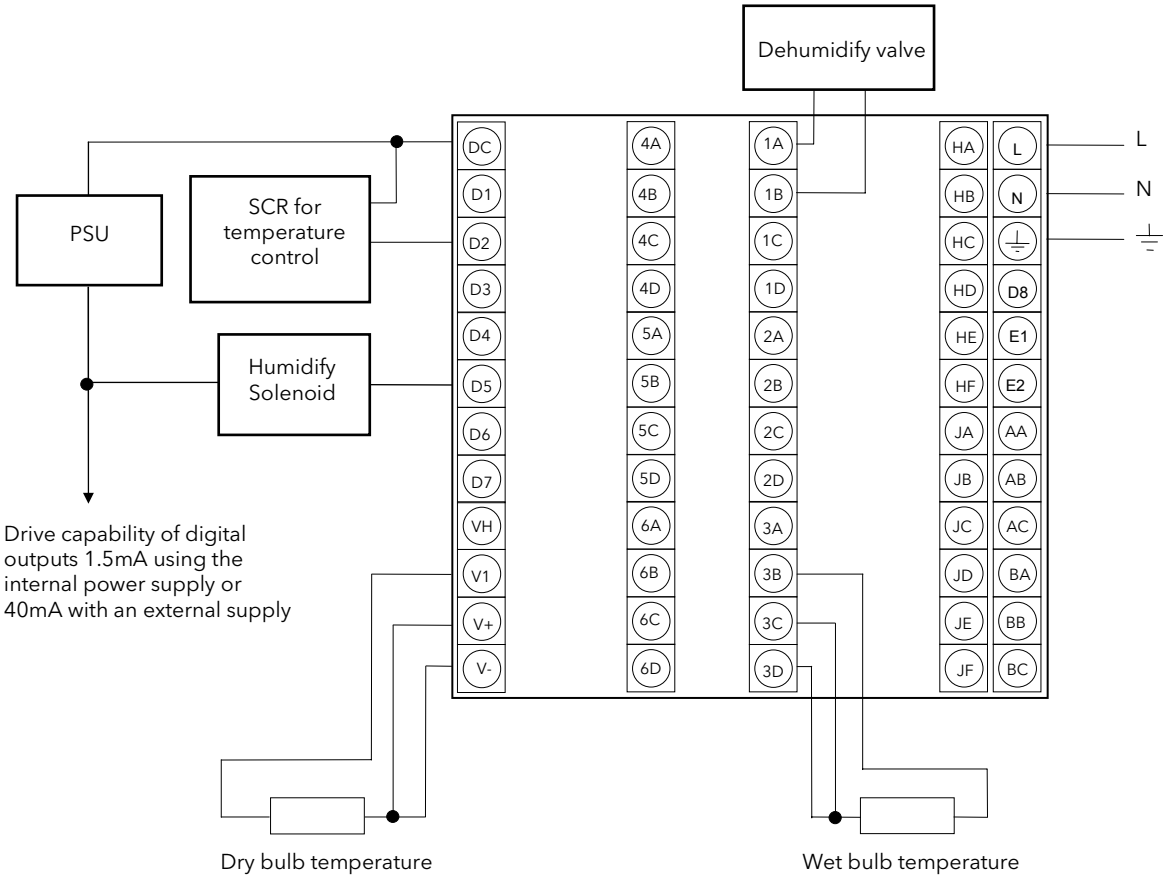


Figure 13-4: Example of Humidity Controller Connections

In the above example the following modules are fitted. This will change from installation to installation:

Module 1	Analogue or relay to drive dehumidify valve
Module 3	PV input module for wet bulb temperature RTD
Standard Digital I/O	Used as logic outputs for humidify solenoid valve and temperature control SCR
Standard PV Input	For the dry bulb RTD used for the temperature control and humidity calculation

13.4.3 Temperature Control Of An Environmental Chamber

The temperature of an environmental chamber is controlled as a single loop with two control outputs. The heating output time proportions electric heaters, usually via a solid state relay. The cooling output operates a refrigerant valve which introduces cooling into the chamber. The controller automatically calculates when heating or cooling is required.

13.4.4 Humidity Control Of An Environmental Chamber

Humidity in a chamber is controlled by adding or removing water vapour. Like the temperature control loop two control outputs are required, i.e. Humidify and Dehumidify.

To humidify the chamber water vapour may be added by a boiler, an evaporating pan or by direct injection of atomised water.

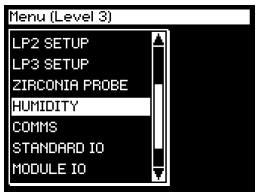
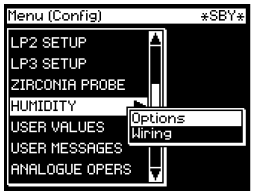
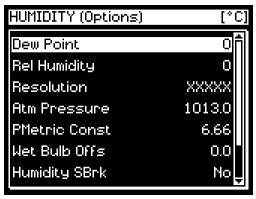
If a boiler is being used adding steam increases the humidity level. The humidify output from the controller regulates the amount of steam from the boiler that is allowed into the chamber.

An evaporating pan is a pan of water warmed by a heater. The humidify output from the controller humidity regulates the temperature of the water.

An atomisation system uses compressed air to spray water vapour directly into the chamber. The humidify output of the controller turns on or off a solenoid valve.

Dehumidification may be accomplished by using the same compressor used for cooling the chamber. The dehumidify output from the controller may control a separate control valve connected to a set of heat exchanger coils.

13.5 TO VIEW AND ADJUST HUMIDITY PARAMETERS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [ ] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'HUMIDITY'**		This page is only available if 'Humidity' is Enabled in the INSTRUMENT (Options) page
3. Press [ ] to display sub-headers		Options Configure and adjust zirconia parameters. Wiring Soft wires zirconia parameters
4. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the required sub-header 5. Press [ ] to select the parameter list for the required sub-header		

The full list of parameters available under these list headers is shown in the following tables ⇓

13.5.1 Humidity Options Parameters

Table Number: 13.5.1.	These parameters allow you to view or adjust the parameters for humidity control		HUMIDITY	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Dew Point	Wet/Dry temperature measurement of dew point	-999.9 to 999.9		L1 R/O
Rel Humidity	Relative Humidity	0.0 to 100.0		L1 R/O
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX		L3
Atm Pressure	Atmospheric Pressure	0.0 to 2000.0	1013 mbar	L3
PMetric Const	Psychrometric Constant	0.0 to 10.0	6.66	L3
Wet Bulb Offs	Wet bulb temperature correction	-100.0 to 100.0	0.0	L3
Humidity SBrk	Sensor break action for humidity control	No Yes		L1 R/O
Dry Bulb Temp	Dry Bulb Temperature	Range units		L1 R/O
Wet Bulb Temp	Wet Bulb Temperature	Range units		L1 R/O

13.5.2 Wiring Page

Table Number: 13.5.2.	These parameters configure humidity block wiring.		HUMIDITY (Wiring Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Dry Bulb Src	Dry bulb temperature source	Modbus address.		Conf
Wet Bulb Src	Wet bulb temperature source			Conf
Atm Press Src	Atmospheric pressure source			Conf
PMtric Cst Src	Psychrometric Constant source		6.66	Conf

13.6 HUMIDITY WIRING EXAMPLE

13.6.1 The Humidity Function Block

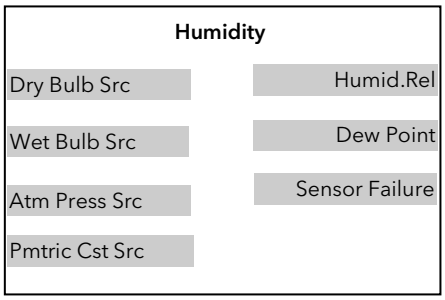


Figure 13-5: Humidity Function Block

13.6.1.1 Main Features

Calculation of PV: The Process Variable can be Relative Humidity or Dewpoint. The PV is derived from the wet and dry bulb inputs and atmospheric pressure.

Pressure Compensation: This value can be measured via a transmitter and fed into the controller as an analogue value. Alternatively, it can be set as a fixed parameter.

13.6.2 Configuration of a Humidity Control Loop

This example assumes that the dry temperature (Pt100) input is connected to the main PV and the wet input (Pt100) to module 3. Loop 1 normally controls temperature, so the humidity loop will be Loop 2. Humidity control outputs are relays and configured as time proportioning.

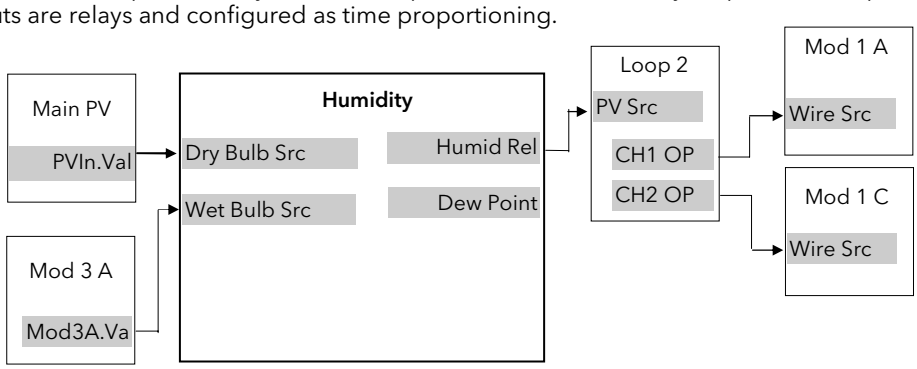


Figure 13-6: Humidity Control Loop

13.6.2.1 Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/Options Page (section 7.2.1),
   set 'Num of Loops' = 2
   set 'Humidity' = Enabled
2. In STANDARD IO/PV Input Page (section 22.2)
   set 'Channel Type' = RTD
   set 'Linearisation' = PT100
   set 'Units' = °C/°F/°K
   set 'Resolution' = XXXX.X
   set 'SBrk Impedance' = Low
   set 'SBrk Fallback' = Up Scale
   This configures the PV Input to measure dry temperature
3. In MODULE IO/Module 3A Page (section 23.3.9)
   set 'Channel Type' = RTD
   set 'Linearisation' = PT100
   set 'Units' = °C/°F/°K
   set 'Resolution' = XXXX.X
   set 'SBrk Impedance' = Off
   set 'SBrk Fallback' = Up Scale
   This configures Module 3 to measure wet temperature
4. In HUMIDITY/Options Page (section 13.5.1)
   set 'Atm Pressure' = 1013.0 (for sea level)

5. In HUMIDITY/Wiring Page (section 13.5.2)	set 'Dry Bulb Src = 05108:PVIn.Val set 'Wet Bulb Src = 04468:Mod3A.Val This connects the sensors to the humidity block
6. In LP2 SETUP/Options Page (section 11.1.1)	set 'Control Type' = PID→Ch1 PID→Ch2
7. In LP2 SETUP/Wiring Page (section 11.2.1)11.1.1	set 'PV Src' = 11105:Humid.Rel Note: For Dewpoint select 11106 This connects the %RH output to Loop 2 PV
8. In LP2 SETUP/Output Page (section 11.6.1)	set 'OP Low Limit' = -100.0 set 'OP High Limit' = 100.0
9. In MODULE IO/Module 1A Page (section 23.3.2)	set 'Channel Type' = Time Proportion set 'Wire Src' = 01037:L2.Ch1OP This connects LP2Ch1 output to Module 1A
10. In MODULE IO/Module 1C Page (section 23.3.2)	set 'Channel Type' = Time Proportion set 'Wire Src' = 01038:L2.Ch2OP This connects L21Ch2 output to Module 1C

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 5.

13.7 VACUUM CONTROLLER

The 2704 Vacuum Controller is designed for a variety of applications including:-

- Melting/Casting furnaces
- Annealing/Sintering furnaces
- Brazing/CVD furnaces
- Freeze Dryers
- Diffusion/MBE furnaces
- Autoclaves

It can be used for vacuum control only and can be supplied for use with one vacuum gauge or three gauges. Alternatively, the vacuum block can be used together with another control loop, such as temperature control, in the same unit.

Analogue and digital IO is achieved using the fixed IO and plug in modules described in the above handbooks.

Note:

- For measurement of temperature use the standard PV Input (terminals V- to VH) or the PV Input module (part no. HA026359)
- For measurement of vacuum use the standard PV Input, the PV Input module or the Analogue Input module (part no. HA026686).
- Additional analogue and digital IO can be achieved with further plug in modules or the IO Expander unit.

13.7.1 Vacuum Chamber Example

Figure 13-7 shows a diagrammatic representation of a vacuum furnace or freeze drier using a diffusion and roughing pump to achieve the required vacuum levels. The roughing pump is used to achieve the first level of vacuum in the region of 10^{-2} mBar. At this point the diffusion pump is switched on to remove the atmosphere down to a 10^{-5} mBar region. Valves, used in conjunction with the pumps, are also switched by the 2704 vacuum controller. When the vacuum reaches the required level it is possible to start a temperature profile.

There are other variations to this system, for example, a cryogenic pump may be used in place of the diffusion pump with appropriate changes to pipe and valve layout.

The 2704 vacuum controller allows for the use of up to three measurement gauges. Typically these are low vacuum gauges such as the Pirani, or higher vacuum gauges such as the Penning or Inverted Magnetron. It is generally required to turn the power off to the higher vacuum level gauge when the vacuum is below its working range.

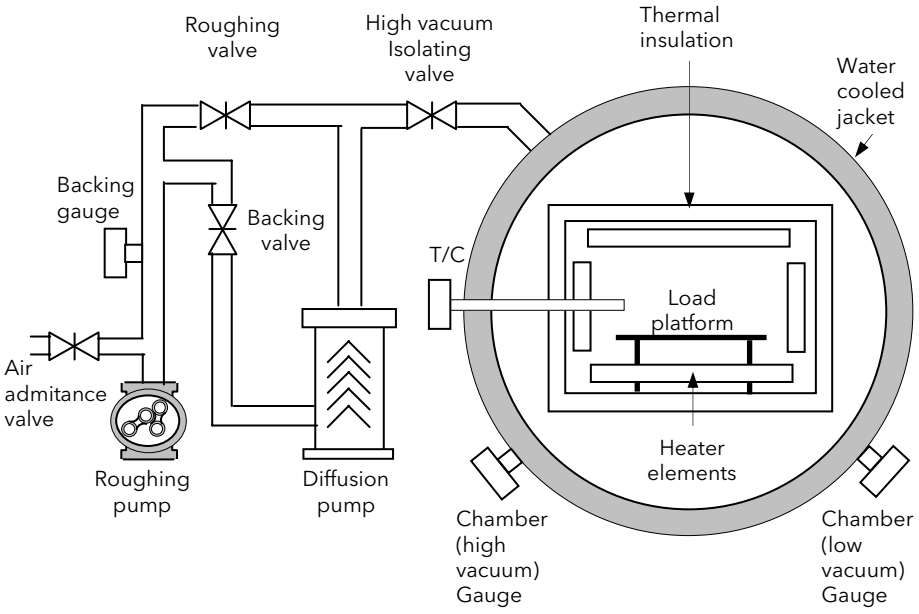


Figure 13-7: Representation of a Vacuum Chamber

13.8 VACUUM CONTROLLER FUNCTIONALITY

The 2704 vacuum controller provides on/off outputs to the vacuum system, but, used in conjunction with the existing PID loops, provides the ability to control the temperature within the chamber or furnace. It provides the following features

1. Vacuum probe switchover
2. High vacuum gauge power up when required vacuum level is achieved
3. Backing chamber pressure measurement and setpoint output
4. Gauge status inputs
5. Leak detection
6. Roughing pump timeout
7. Gauge calibration

13.8.1 Setpoints

Six setpoint outputs are provided. These can be used to turn on and off vacuum gauges or other external devices or to set up internal conditions such as temperature program wait signals. Each setpoint may be configured with an on and off value. The two values are used to provide switching hysteresis on the setpoint output.

For example:-

1. If On SP< Off SP
   Output = True if Input < On SP
   Output = False if Input > Off SP
2. If On SP > Off SP
   Output = True if Input > On SP
   Output = False if Input < Off SP

Figure 13-8 shows the first case. The On SP is a lower vacuum than the Off SP or in other words the SP is On when the vacuum is larger than the On SP. Vacuum values are given for reference purposes only.

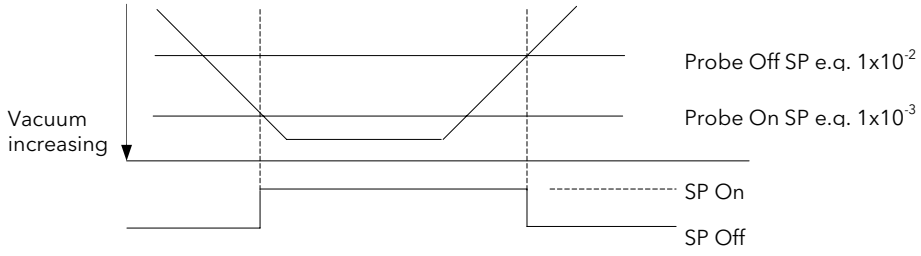


Figure 13-8: Setpoint Output Status when On SP < Off SP

Each setpoint is also provided with a user text string. This is displayed in the vacuum setpoint message box, shown in Figure 13-11. If more than one setpoint output is 'On' the message box cycles the messages.

13.8.2 Low Vacuum Gauge

The block will accept an input from a low vacuum gauge, typically used to measure vacuum in the range 10^{1} to 10^{-4} mBar.

A probe status logic input is also provided. When the probe status is bad or the probe measurement is bad, the fault output from the block will be set and Sensor Break displayed.

13.8.3 High Vacuum Gauge

The block will accept an input from a low vacuum gauge, typically used to measure vacuum in the range 10^{-2} to 10^{-9} mBar.

A probe enable input is provided in the form of two setpoints and a logic output, and is operationally the same as the setpoint feature described in section 13.8.1. When the probe status is bad or the probe measurement is bad, the fault output from the block will be set and 'Sensor Break' displayed.

13.8.4 Gauge Linearisation

This uses the linearisation ability of the analogue inputs described in Chapter 14. Three linearisation curves are available which can be downloaded for each type of probe using iTools configuration software. The curve downloaded must correspond to the atmospheric gas being used. If further customised curves are required contact your supplier with details of the gauge characteristics.

13.8.5 Roughing Pump Timeout

When starting the chamber the roughing pump is run to get the chamber down to an initial level before the high vacuum pump is started. If a level of vacuum is not reached in a time (both of which are settable by the user) then the roughing pump timeout status is set.

The roughing pump timeout can be configured such that the vacuum measurement used for the timeout can be either the low vacuum gauge or the backing vacuum gauge.

When the roughing pump is started the **PUMP TOUT** (Figure 13-11) indicator flashes and continues to flash until the timeout is complete. If at the end of the timeout the required vacuum level is not reached the indicator stays permanently on.

13.8.6 Leak Detection

Vacuum chamber leaks are typically categorised into two areas, virtual leaks and real leaks. A virtual leak is a decrease in vacuum caused by outgassing of the workpiece and the chamber material/gaskets, etc. Therefore, in order for a leak to be detected, the reduction in vacuum must be monitored over a period of time with the pumps turned off. If there is a real leak the vacuum will continue to reduce, whereas if a virtual leak is present the vacuum will appear to decrease at a constant rate but then level off to give a steady vacuum reading.

The leak detection provides a measure of the rate of change of vacuum in vacuum-units/min. This is compared with an acceptable leak rate value after a timeout period. If the leak rate is not acceptable a leak fault will be indicated using the leak status parameter. When the measurement is being made the **LEAK DET** (Figure 13-11) indicator on the summary screen flashes. It remains permanently lit if a fault is detected.

13.8.7 Gauge Switchover

Gauge switchover allows the chamber vacuum measurement to transfer from one gauge to another in a controlled (bumpless) way. The switchover block, described in Chapter 14 performs this. Figure 13-9 below gives an example of how the gauge outputs relate to the switch over settings. Vacuum values are given for reference purposes only.

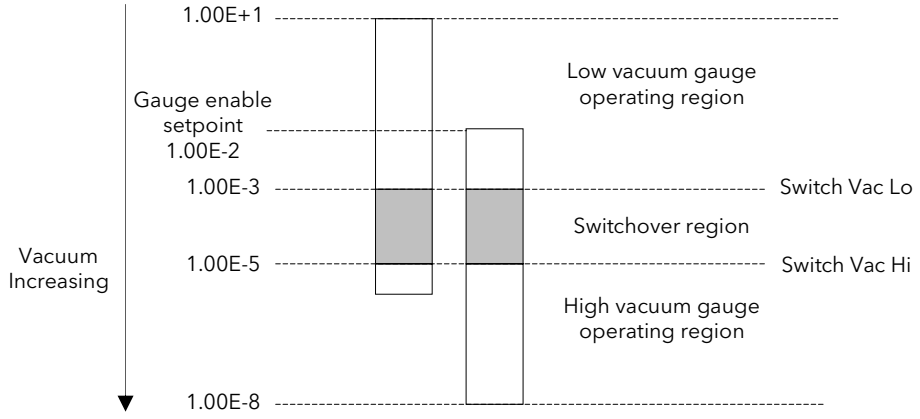


Figure 13-9: Gauge Switchover

The operating regions of each gauge must be chosen such that the gauge output is guaranteed. The switchover region should be selected such that both readings are valid and the error is minimal. The high gauge must be enabled before the lowest setting of the switchover point.

The gauge enable setpoint consists of a pair of gauge on and gauge off values. These should be chosen to give sufficient hysteresis such that the gauge output has a decisive on/off action. Both gauges read outside the switchover region even though the output has switched to the other gauge. This region of the gauge is usually very non-linear and typically has a high degree of error. This area of operation is only selected if the currently selected gauge goes into sensor break. The minimum vacuum and maximum vacuum values are defined as the total operating range of the two gauges and define the total range of the chamber.

13.9 WIRING CONNECTIONS

The actual wiring of the vacuum controller depends upon the number and type of modules fitted. Figure 13-10 below shows wiring for the following configuration:-

- Fixed PV Input assigned as Thermocouple Input
- PV Input module fitted in slot 3 assigned as High Vacuum Input
- PV Input module fitted in slot 4 assigned as Backing Gauge Input
- PV Input module fitted in slot 6 assigned as Low Vacuum Input
- SP 1 turns on/off the roughing pump via fixed digital output 1
- The AA Relay turns on/off an external power supply to the high vacuum gauge
- Module 1 fitted as an analogue output to drive a thyristor unit for temperature control

Before proceeding further, please read Appendix B, Safety and EMC Information.

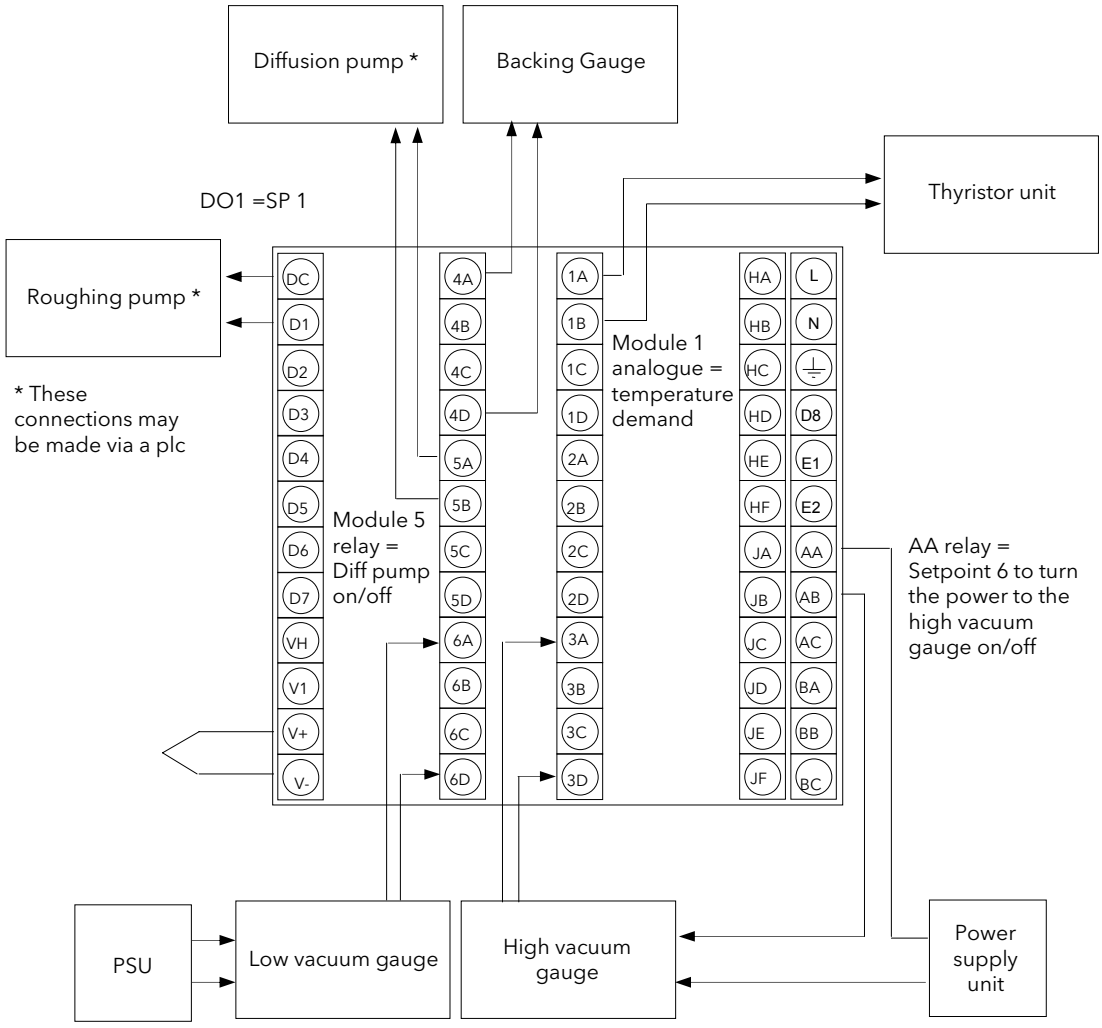


Figure 13-10: Example Wiring Connections

13.10 SWITCH ON

Install and wire up the controller in accordance with the types of modules fitted and the configuration of the controller and switch on. A short self-test sequence takes place during which the controller identification is displayed together with the version number of the software fitted. For the vacuum controller the version number must be greater than 3.0.

Figure 13-11: Operator View

This display is configurable by the user. The following may differ on your controller:-

Chamber vacuum	Either switchover output or low vacuum outputs
Chamber text	Selected from a user text string
Second display	Only shown if a second function is configured, e.g. a temperature control loop.
Resolution	Decimal point may be selected as appropriate
Pump Timeout	Only shown if configured, (Vacuum Select ≠ None, section 13.12.6)
Leak Detect	Only shown if configured, (Vacuum Select ≠ None, section 13.12.6.)

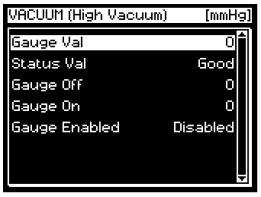
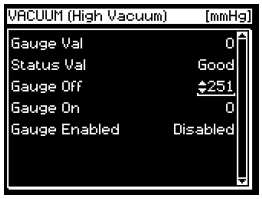
13.11 OPERATION

On a new instrument the vacuum controller can only be operated in access level 3. To enter access level 3 see Chapter 6.

However, it is possible to promote commonly used parameters to level 1. If this has been done the principle of operation in level 1 is the same as described below. To promote parameters, see section 7.2.5.

13.11.1 To Access the Vacuum Controller Parameters

The vacuum controller parameters are grouped under page headings in exactly the same way as other parameters.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'VACUUM'**		
3. Press [↵] to display the list of sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll through the list of sub-headings and to select the one required		The parameters are grouped by subject under the following sub-headings:- High Vacuum gauge Low Vacuum gauge Backing Vacuum gauge Gauge Switch Setpoint Pump Control Leak Detect Display These are listed in section 13.12
5. Press [↵] to display the parameter list 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll through the list of parameters associated with the chosen subject		
7. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the required parameter 8. Press [↵] to underline the parameter 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to change its value	**To change the parameter value** 	

13.12 PARAMETER TABLES

The following tables list all parameters, which are available in all levels (including configuration level). They are accessed using the principle described in the previous section.

13.12.1 High Vacuum Parameter Tables

Table Number: 13.12.1.	These parameters allow you to set up and configure the high vacuum gauge parameters. See also section 13.8.3.		*High Vacuum* or takes a user name	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Gauge Src	The source from which the high vacuum gauge is wired	Modbus address		Config
Gauge Val	The value read by the high vacuum gauge	Vacuum Display range		L3 R/O
Status Src	The source from which the gauge status is wired	Modbus address	None	Config
Status Val	The status condition	Good Bad		L3 R/O
Enable Select	The source from which the gauge enable is wired	Low Vac Backing Vac	Low Vac	Config
Gauge Off	The value at which the high vacuum gauge is switched off	Vacuum Display range		L3
Gauge On	The value at which the high vacuum gauge is switched on	Vacuum Display range		L3
Gauge Enabled	High vacuum gauge setpoint output	Enabled Disabled	Disabled	L3 R/O
Gauge Name	A user defined name for the high vacuum gauge	Usr 01 to 50	Default Text	Config

13.12.2 Low Vacuum Parameter Tables

Table Number: 13.12.2.	These parameters allow you to set up and configure the low vacuum gauge parameters. See also section 13.8.2		*Low Vacuum* or takes a user name	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Gauge Src	The source from which the low vacuum gauge is wired	Modbus address		Config
Gauge Val	The value read by the low vacuum gauge	Vacuum Display range		L3 R/O
Status Src	The source from which the gauge status is wired	Modbus address	None	Config
Status Val	The status condition	Good Bad		L3 R/O
Gauge Name	A user defined name for the low vacuum gauge	Usr 01 to 50	Default Text	L3

13.12.3 Backing Vacuum Parameter Tables

Table Number: 13.12.3.	These parameters allow you to set up and configure the backing vacuum gauge parameters		*Back Vacuum* or takes a user name	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Gauge Src	The source from which the backing vacuum gauge is wired	Modbus address		Config
Gauge Val	The value read by the backing vacuum gauge	Vacuum Display range		L3 R/O
Status Src	The source from which the gauge status is wired	Modbus address	None	Config
Status Val	The status condition	Good Bad		L3 R/O
Gauge Name	A user defined name for the backing vacuum gauge	Usr 01 to 50	Default Text	L3

13.12.4 Gauge Switching Parameter Tables

Table Number: 13.12.4.	These parameters allow you to set up the conditions for transfer from one gauge to another. See also section 13.8.7.			Gauge Switch	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**		**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Active Gauge	Selected input		High Vac Low Vac Both		L3 R/O
Min Vac	Display high		Vacuum Display range		L3
Max Vac	Display low				L3
Switch Vac Lo	High switch over	See Figure 13-9			L3
Switch Vac Hi	Low switch over	See Figure 13-9			L3
Enable Switch	Enable gauge switching		Off On	Off	L3
Chamber Vac	Current chamber vacuum		Vacuum Display range		L3 R/O
Op Status	Gauge status		Good Bad		L3 R/O

13.12.5 Setpoint Parameter Tables

Table Number: 13.12.5.	These parameters allow you to set up and configure the six setpoints. See also section 13.8.1.		Setpoint
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Setpoint 1 Sel	Select the source of the vacuum value for SP1	None Low Vac High Vac Backing Vac Chamber Vac	None	L3
Setpoint 1 Off	Value to turn off output	Vacuum Display range		L3
Setpoint 1 On	Value to turn on output			L3
Setpoint 1 Out	Current value of setpoint 1 output	Off On		L3 R/O
Setpoint 1 Str	Name for setpoint 1	Usr 01 to 50	Default Text	Config
The above parameters are repeated for setpoints 2 to 6				

13.12.6 Pump Control Parameter Tables

Table Number: 13.12.6.	These parameters allow you to set up and configure the pump parameters such as timeout. See also section 13.8.5.		Pump Control
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Vacuum Select	Select the source of the vacuum	None Low Vac High Vac Backing Vac Chamber Vac	None	L3
Pump Running Src	Select the source to turn the pump on	Modbus address		Config
Pump Running	To turn the pump on	No Yes	No	L3
R Pump TimeOut	To set the timeout period	0:00:00.0	0:00:00.0	L1
R Pump TimeRem	Time remaining	0:00:00.0		L1 R/O
R Pump SP	To set the target vacuum for the timeout alarm	Vacuum Display range	0.000E+0	L1
R Pump Status	Pump Timed Out	Good Bad		L3

13.12.7 Leak Detect Parameter Tables

Table Number: 13.12.7.	These parameters allow you to set up and configure the leak detection criterion. See also section 13.8.6.		Leak Detect	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Vacuum Select	Select the source of the vacuum	None Low Vac High Vac Backing Vac Chamber Vac	None	Config
Vac Rate	Rate of change of vacuum	Vacuum	0.00E+0	L3 R/O
Tgt Leak Rate	To set the target leak rate	Display range	0.00E+0	L3
Turn Off Pump	Turn pump off during leak detection	Off On	Off	L3 R/O
Leak Status	Leak detected	Off On		L3 R/O
Leak Test Src	Leak test source	Modbus address		Config
Leak T Start	Start leak test	No Yes	No	L3
Leak T Time	To set the leak test time	0:00:00.0	0:00:00.0	L3
Leak T Rem	Leak time remaining	0:00:00.0		L3 R/O

13.12.8 Vacuum display Parameter Tables

Table Number: 13.12.8.	These parameters allow you to set up the vacuum overview display. See also section 13.7.		Display	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Show Sec Val	To configure the second display	Yes No		Config
Second Value	The current value of the above source	Display range		L3
Sec Val Src	To configure the source of the value shown on the second display	Modbus address		Config
Sec Val Name	To configure a user defined name for the second display	Usr 01 to 50	Default text	Config
Resolution	This configures the display resolution.	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX SCI = 0.00E±0		Config
Units	To configure the vacuum units	mbar mmHg psi bar		Config
Chamber Status	Chamber fault as determined by ORing the status of each gauge	Good Bad		L3 R/O
Chamber Vac	Current chamber vacuum	Vacuum display range		L3 R/O
Graph Vac Lo	High point for graph scaling	Vacuum display range		L3
Graph Vac Hi	Low point for graph scaling	Vacuum display range		L3
Chamber Name	A user defined name for the chamber	Usr 01 to 50	Default Text	Config

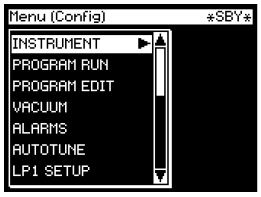
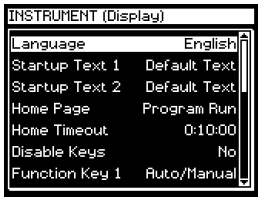
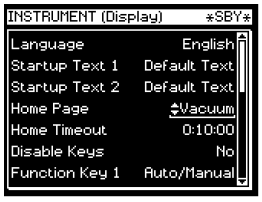
Note:- Text shown in *italics* is the default which may be changed by the user.

13.13 CONFIGURATION LEVEL

In configuration level you can choose the way in which you want the controller to operate, the format of the operator display, the name of the chamber in use and the names of the gauges. The parameters available have already been listed in the preceding tables. This section includes some examples of the configuration of a vacuum controller.

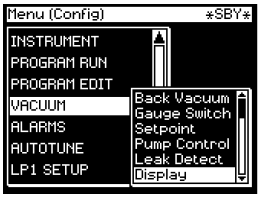
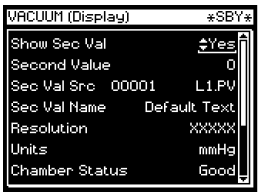
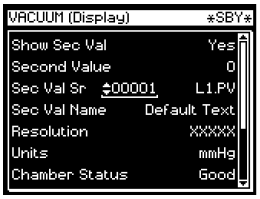
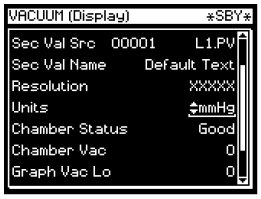
13.13.1 To Configure the Vacuum Summary as the HOME Page

The vacuum summary display, shown in Figure 13-11, can be configured to be the start up page when the controller is powered up or when entering a new access level from configuration level.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'INSTRUMENT'**		
3. Press [↵] to select sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to **'Display'**		Note: The vacuum block can be Enabled or Disabled in the INSTRUMENT/Options menu. If it is disabled none of the vacuum parameters are shown.
5. Press [↵] to enter the 'INSTRUMENT/Display' parameter list		
6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to **'Home Page'** 7. Press [↵] to underline the parameter 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Vacuum'**		

13.13.2 To Customise the Vacuum Summary Page

The vacuum summary page can be customised using the parameters listed in section 13.12.8.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. Select the **VACUUM/Display** page		
2. Press [↻] to enter the parameter list 3. Press [↻] to select **'Show Sec Val'** 4. . Press [▲] or [▼] to choose **'Yes'** or **'No'**	**To Select the Second Display** 	If 'Yes' is selected the operator view will show the second display, as shown in Figure 13-11.
5. Press [↻] to display '**Sec Val Src'** 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the source of the second value	**To Select the Source of Second Display** 	The value which will be displayed on the vacuum summary display is sourced from the PV Input. In the examples given in this supplement this is chamber temperature.
7. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to **'Units'** 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the units which will be displayed in the Status bar	**To Select Vacuum Units** 	. Units which can be selected are: mmHg, psi, bar, mbar,

Other parameters which can be customised in the summary display include:
A Name for the Second Display, chosen from User Text
Resolution of the values displayed
A Name for the Chamber, chosen from User Text

13.13.3 Vacuum Function Block

A description of function blocks is given in Chapter 4. The function block for the vacuum controller is shown in Figure 13-12 below and allows the user to soft wire to other devices within the controller to produce an individual control strategy.

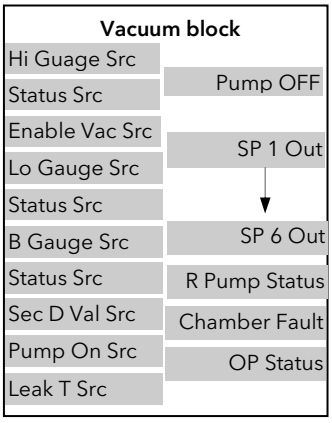


Figure 13-12: Vacuum Function Block

13.14 VACUUM CONTROLLER WIRING EXAMPLES

The vacuum function block may be internally wired in software to control specific applications. Soft Wiring is described in Chapter 5.

13.14.1 Simple Temperature and Vacuum Control

The following example is included to show the principle of wiring between function blocks. It is not necessarily intended to be a complete solution to an application.

The vacuum function block has inputs from three vacuum gauges. A number of outputs are available as listed in the parameter tables. The example shows wiring from three of the setpoint outputs and a digital output used to turn the pump off. This example corresponds to the physical wiring diagram, Figure 13-10. The principle of wiring to other outputs is the same. A PID control block is used for temperature control receiving its setpoint from a programmer function block. The output from the PID block typically drives an analogue output to a thyristor unit. Further examples of PID block wiring are given in Chapter 11.

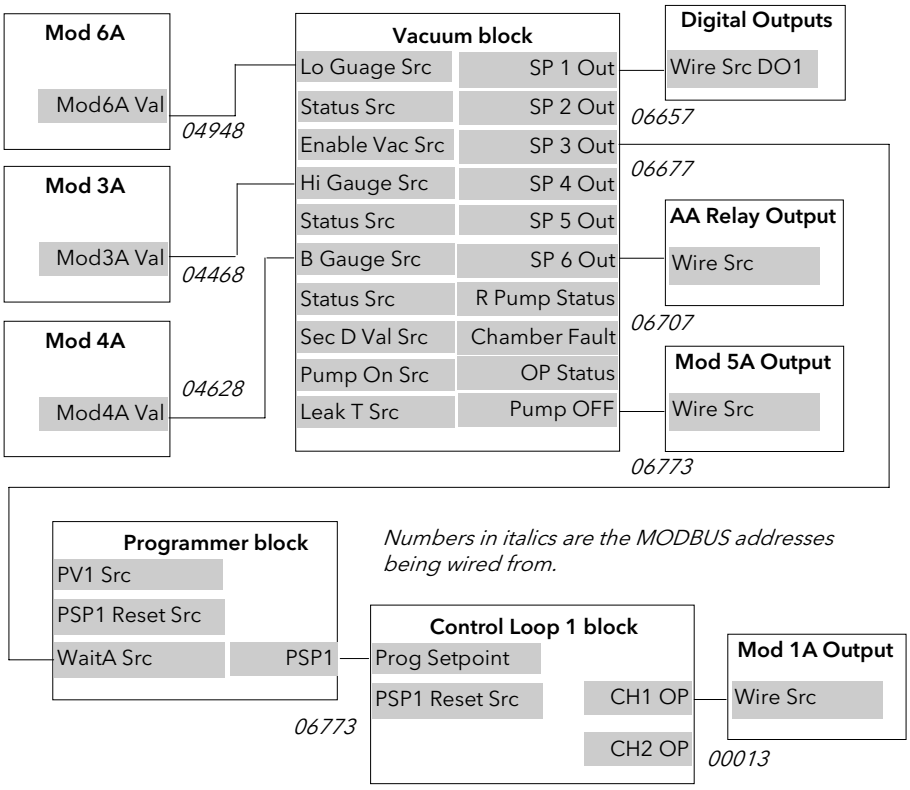


Figure 13-13: Vacuum/Temperature Control Wiring Example

13.14.1.1 Implementation

1. In VACUUM/Low Vacuum Page (section 13.12.2)	set 'Gauge Src' = 04948: Mod6A.Val This connects the low vacuum gauge, connected to module 3 input, to low vacuum gauge source
2. In VACUUM/High Vacuum Page (section 13.12.1)	set 'Gauge Src' = 04468: Mod3A.Val This connects the high vacuum gauge, connected to module 6 input, to high vacuum gauge source
3. In VACUUM/Back Vacuum Page (section 13.12.3)	set 'Gauge Src' = 04628: Mod4A.Val This connects the backing vacuum gauge, connected to module 4 input, to high vacuum gauge source
4. In STANDARD IO/Dig IO) 1 Page (section 22.6.1)	set 'Channel Type' = On/Off set 'Wire Src' = 06657 This configures Dig IO1 as a digital output and connects it to setpoint 1 output
5. In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page (section 22.5.1)	set 'Channel Type' = On/Off set 'Wire Src' = 06707 This configures the AA relay as an on/off output and connects it to setpoint 6 output
6. In MODULE IO/Module 5A Page (section 23.3.2)	set 'Channel Type' = On/Off set 'Wire Src' = 06773 This configures module 5 relay as an on/off output and connects it to the pump off output
7. In LP1 SETUP/Options Page (section 11.1.1)	set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP1 set 'Wire Src' = 06773 Connects PSP1 to become the program setpoint for loop 1
8. In MODULE IO/Module 1A Page (section 23.3.1)	set 'Channel Type' = Volts (or mA) set 'Wire Src' = 00013:L1.Ch1.OP This configures module 1 analogue output to volts (or mA) output and connects it to the Loop 1 PID output
9. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page (section 8.12.2)	Set 'WaitA Src' = 06677 This connects Setpoint 3 output to the Wait A input of the programmer block

13.14.2 To Scale Vacuum Readout in Other Units

The vacuum units in the software version covered by this supplement are mbar only. To scale to alternative units use 'Analogue Operators' described Chapter 18.

In a two gauge system it is necessary to scale both gauges independently. In a single gauge system the low vacuum gauge is taken as the reference.

The following example shows a two gauge system, as wired in the previous section. The units conversion will be from mbar to mmHg, where 1mmHg = 1.333mbar

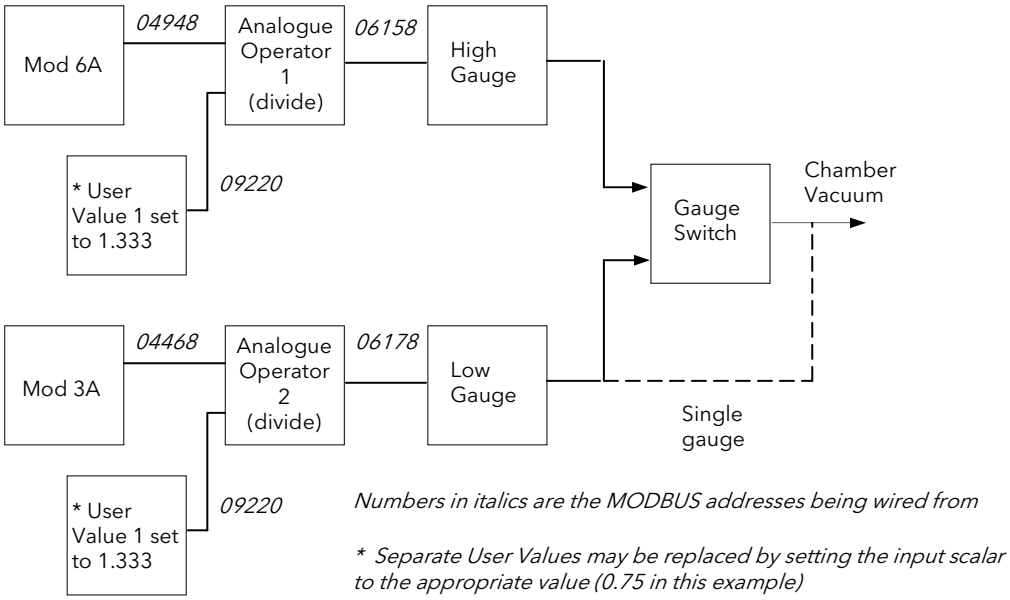


Figure 13-14: Scaling units in a two gauge system

13.14.2.1 Implementation

1. In USER VALUES/User Val 1* Page (section 16.3.2) * Or use any unused User Val	set 'Resolution' = X.XXXX set 'User 1 Value' = 1.333 (It may also be necessary to set the High Limit to > 1.333) Copy the Modbus address of this parameter by pressing the MAN button
2. In ANALOGUE OPERS/An 1* Page (section 18.2.1) * Or use any unused analogue operator	set 'Input 2 Src' = 09220: UVal1.Val The LOOP button will paste this value from the previous copy procedure. set 'Input 1 Src' = 04948: Mod6A.Val set 'Operation' = Divide This will divide the high level gauge signal by 1.333 to convert to mmHg.
3. In ANALOGUE OPERS/An 2* Page (section 18.2.1) * Or use any unused analogue operator	set 'Operation' = Divide set 'Input 1 Src' = 04468: Mod3A.Val set 'Input 2 Src' = 09220: Uval1.Val This will divide the low level gauge signal by 1.333 to convert to mmHg.
4. In VACUUM/*High Vacuum* Page (section 13.12.1.)	set 'Gauge Src' = 06158 AnOp1.OP This connects the high vacuum gauge PV from the analogue operator 1 output
5. In VACUUM/*Low Vacuum* Page (section 13.12.2)	set 'Gauge Src' = 06178 AnOp2.OP This connects the low vacuum gauge PV from the analogue operator 2 output
6. In VACUUM/Display (section 13.12.8.)	set 'Units' = mmHg This configures the units shown on the banner to mmHg.

Text shown in *italics* may be customised

14. CHAPTER 14 INPUT OPERATORS

14.1 WHAT ARE INPUT OPERATORS

The 2704 controller can have three control loops. Each loop can be independently configured to the process to be controlled. This has been described in Chapters 12 and 13 for PID, Cascade, Ratio, Override, Humidity Control, etc. It is also possible to apply custom linearisation to the inputs of each loop. This is a 16 point straight line linearisation and the parameters can be made available at Levels 1, 2 and 3 so that scaling can be carried out during commissioning. There are three Custom linearisation pages.

Also included in this section are parameters which allow you to switch inputs between different thermocouple types or between a thermocouple and pyrometer when the process is a high temperature furnace.

The page headers are:

INPUT OPERS ▶	Cust Lin 1 Page	These parameters set up the custom linearisation for input 1
	Cust Lin 2 Page	These parameters set up the custom linearisation for input 2
	Cust Lin 3 Page	These parameters set up the custom linearisation for input 3
	Switch 1 Page	These parameters provide switch over between thermocouple types or pyrometer
	Monitor 1 Page	Logs maximum and minimum, counts time above threshold
	BCD Input	Monitors the Digital Inputs when configured for BCD switch

The Input Operators page is only available if Input Operators has been enabled in configuration level.

Note:
In addition to linearising the controller inputs channels, it is equally valid to customise other sources such as Output Channels. This allows you, for example, to compensate for non linear control valve characteristics.

14.2 CUSTOM LINEARISATION

The linearisation uses a 16 point straight line fit.

Figure 14-1 shows an example of a curve to be linearised and is used to illustrate the terminology used for the parameters found in the **INPUT OPERS (Cust Lin *1* Page)**.

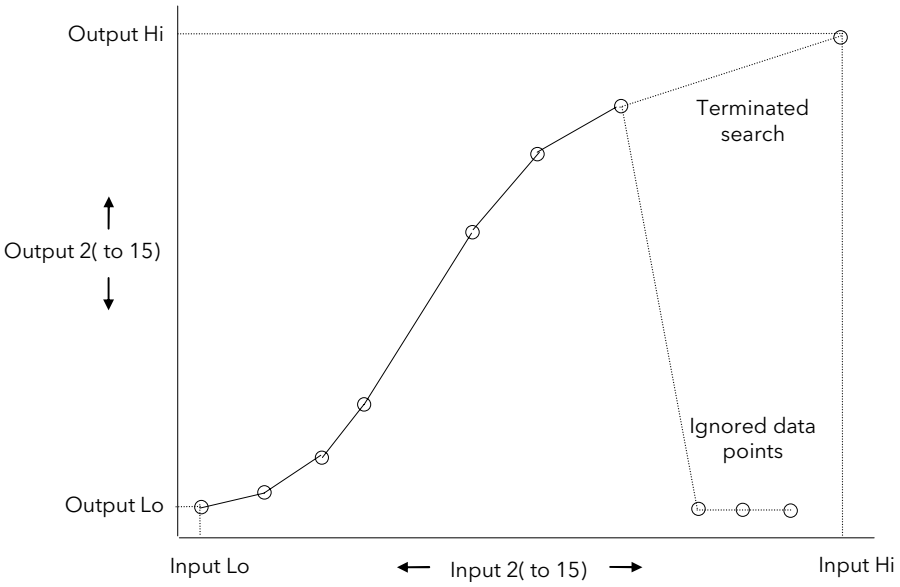


Figure 14-1: Linearisation Example

Notes:

1. The linearisation block works on rising inputs/rising outputs or rising inputs/falling outputs. It is not suitable for outputs which rise and fall on the same curve.
2. Input Lo/Output Lo and Input Hi/Output Hi are entered first to define the low and high points of the curve. It is not necessary to define all 15 intermediate points if the accuracy is not required. Points not defined will be ignored and a straight line fit will apply between the last point defined and the Input Hi/Output Hi point.

14.2.1 Compensation for Sensor Non-Linearities

The custom linearisation feature can also be used to compensate for errors in the sensor or measurement system. The intermediate points are, therefore, available in Level 1 so that known discontinuities in the curve can be calibrated out. Figure 14-2 shows an example of the type of discontinuity which can occur in the linearisation of a temperature sensor.

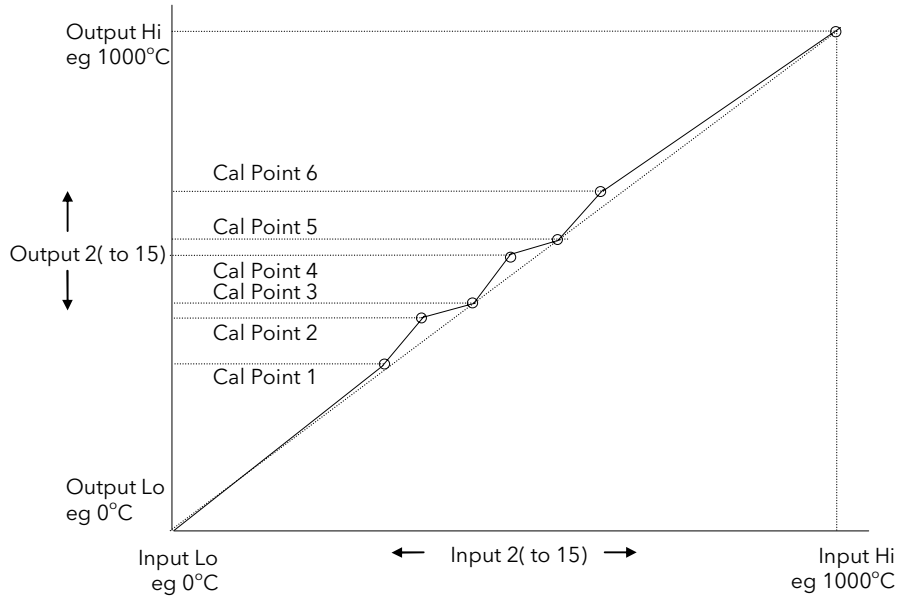
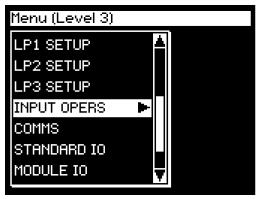
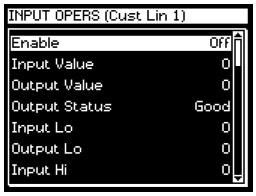


Figure 14-2: Compensation for Sensor Discontinuities

The calibration of the sensor uses the same procedure as described above. Adjust the output (displayed) value against the corresponding input value to compensate for any errors in the standard linearisation of the sensor.

14.3 TO VIEW AND ADJUST INPUT OPERATOR PARAMETERS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'INPUT OPERS'**		This page is only available if 'Input Opers' is Enabled in the INSTRUMENT (Options) page
3. Press [↵] to show Sub-headers		Cust Lin 1 Custom Cust Lin 2 linearisation Cust Lin 3 of inputs 1, 2 and 3 Switch 1 T/C to pyrometer switch over Monitor 1 Logs max., min. and time above threshold BCD Input For use with external BCD switch
4. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the required sub-header 5. Press [↵] to select the parameter list for the required sub-header		

The full list of parameters available under these list headers is shown in the following tables

14.3.1 Input Operator Custom Linearisation Parameters

Table Number: 14.3.1.	This page allows you to set up a customised linearisation curve			INPUT OPERS (Cust Lin *1*)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Enable	To enable custom linearisation	Off On	Off	L3
Input Src	Custom linearisation input source	Modbus address		Conf
Output Units	Custom linearisation output units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf
Output Resol	Custom linearisation output resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX		Conf
Input Value	The current value of the input	Range		R/O L1
Output Value	The current value of the output	Range		R/O L1
Output Status	The conditions are OK The conditions are bad or out of range	Good Bad		R/O L1
Input Lo	Adjust to the low input value	Range		L3
Output Lo	Adjust to correspond to the low input value	Range		L3
Input Hi	Adjust to the high input value	Range		L3
Output Hi	Adjust to correspond to the high input value	Range		L3
Input 2	Adjust to the first break point	Range		L1
Output 2	Adjust to correspond to input 2	Range		L1
The above two parameters are repeated for all intermediate break points, ie 3 to 14				
Input 15	Adjust to the last break point	Range		L1
Output 15	Adjust to correspond to input 15	Range		L1

The above table is repeated for:

- **INPUT OPERS (Cust Lin 2 Page)**
- **INPUT OPERS (Cust Lin 3 Page)**

14.4 THERMOCOUPLE/PYROMETER SWITCHING

This facility is commonly used in wide range temperature applications where it is necessary to control accurately over the range. A thermocouple may be used to control at lower temperatures and a pyrometer then controls at very high temperatures. Alternatively two thermocouples of different types may be used.

Figure 14-3 shows a process heating over time with boundaries which define the switching points between the two devices. The higher boundary (2 to 3) is normally set towards the top end of the thermocouple range and the lower boundary (1 to 2) set towards the lower end of the pyrometer (or second thermocouple) range. The controller calculates a smooth transition between the two devices.

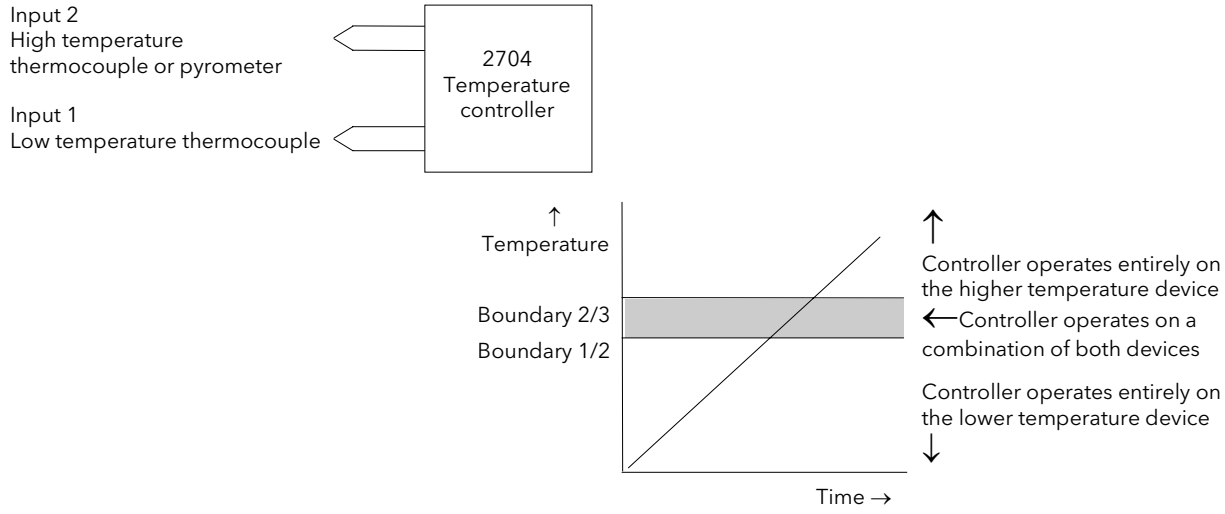


Figure 14-3: Thermocouple to Pyrometer Switching

14.4.1 Input Operators Switch Over Parameters

Table Number: 14.4.1.	This page allows you to set up and inspect Switch Over parameters			INPUT OPERS (Switch 1 Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Enable	To enable switch over	Off On	Off	Conf
Active Input	Selected input	Input 1 Input 2 Both Inputs		
Input 1 Src	Input 1 source	Modbus address		Conf
Input 2 Src	Input 2 source			Conf
Input Lo	Display low limit	Display range		Conf
Input Hi	Display High limit	Display range		Conf
Switch Lo	PV = Input 1 below this value	Display Range		L3
Switch Hi	PV = Input 2 above this value	Display Range		L3
Switch Lo and Hi can be adjusted up to the limit set by 'Input Hi' and 'Input Lo' in configuration level or the limit set by 'Switch Lo' and 'Switch Hi'				
Output Value	The current working value	Display Range		R/O L1
Output Status	The conditions are OK or out of range	Good Bad		R/O L1
Input 1 Value	The current working value Can be adjusted between the limits set by 'Input Lo' and 'Input Hi' in configuration level	Display Range		R/O L1
Input 1 Status	The conditions are correct or out of range	Good Bad		R/O L1
Input 2 Value	The current working value Can be adjusted between the limits set by 'Input Lo' and 'Input Hi' in configuration level	Display Range		R/O L1
Input 2 Status	The conditions are correct or out of range	Good Bad		R/O L1

14.5 TO SET UP INPUT OPERATORS (MONITOR)

The Monitor block:

1. Logs the Maximum and Minimum excursions of the PV. These values are reset when:-
   a) An external logic input, configured as reset, is enabled
   b) The reset parameter, see Table 14.5.1, is changed to Yes
2. Counts the time above a threshold
3. Provides a time alarm

14.5.1 Input Operator Monitor Parameters

Table Number: 14.5.1.	This page allows you to set up Monitor parameters.			INPUT OPERS (Monitor 1 Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Enable	Monitor enable	Disabled Enabled	Off	Conf
Input Src	Input source	Modbus addr		Conf
Reset Src	Reset source	Modbus addr		Conf
Input	Input value	Range		L1
Reset	Reset	No = to run Yes = to reset	No	L3
Maximum	The maximum value recorded by the controller between resets, see 1. above	Range		R/O L1
Minimum	The minimum value recorded by the controller between resets, see 1. above	Range		R/O L1
Trigger	PV threshold for timer log	Range		L3
Day	Days above threshold	0 to 32767		R/O L1
Time	Time above threshold	0:00:00.0		R/O L1
Day Alarm	This sets the alarm threshold for the number of days that the alarm is active	0 to 32767		L3
Time Alarm	This sets the alarm threshold for the time that the alarm is active	0:00:00.0		L3
Alarm Output	Displays an alarm when the number of days and time has been exceeded	Off On		R/O L1

14.6 BCD INPUT

An available option with the 2704 is the Binary Coded Decimal (BCD) function block. This feature is normally used to select a program number by using panel mounted BCD decade switches. A configuration example for this block is given in Section 14.7.2.

14.6.1 Main Features

Calculation of BCD Value: The function calculates a BCD value dependant upon the state of the inputs. Unconnected inputs are detected as off. This value is available as a wireable parameter.

Calculation of Decimal Value: The function calculates a decimal value dependant upon the state of the inputs. Unconnected inputs are detected as off. This value is available as a wireable parameter.

Digit 1 Output: The function calculates the first decade BCD value dependant on the state of inputs 1 to 4. Unconnected inputs are detected as off. This value is available as a wireable parameter.

Digit 2 Output: The function calculates the second decade BCD value dependant on the state of inputs 5 to 8. Unconnected inputs are detected as off. This value is available as a wireable parameter.

2nd Decade	1st Decade	BCD	Decimal	2nd Digit	1st Digit
0011	1001	39	57	3	9
0010	0110	26	38	2	6

14.6.2 BCD Parameters

Table Number: 14.6.2.	This page allows you to configure the BCD input values		INPUT OPERS (BCD Input Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Enable	BCD enable	Off On	Off	Conf
Input1 Src-LSB	Input 1 source (LSB)	Modbus address		Conf
Input2 Src	Input 2 source	Modbus address		Conf
Input3 Src	Input 3 source	Modbus address		Conf
Input4 Src	Input 4 source	Modbus address		Conf
Input5 Src	Input 5 source	Modbus address		Conf
Input6 Src	Input 6 source	Modbus address		Conf
Input7 Src	Input 7 source	Modbus address		Conf
Input8 Src-M	Input 8 source (MSB)	Modbus address		Conf
BCD Value	Reads the value (in BCD) of the switch as it appears on the digital inputs	0-99		R/O L1
Decimal Value	Reads the value(in decimal) of the switch as it appears on the digital inputs	0-255		R/O L1
Digit 1(units)	Units value of the first switch	0-9		R/O L1
Digit 2(Tens)	Tens value of the second switch	0-9		R/O L1

14.7 INPUT OPERATORS WIRING EXAMPLES

14.7.1 Switch Over Loop With Custom Linearised Input

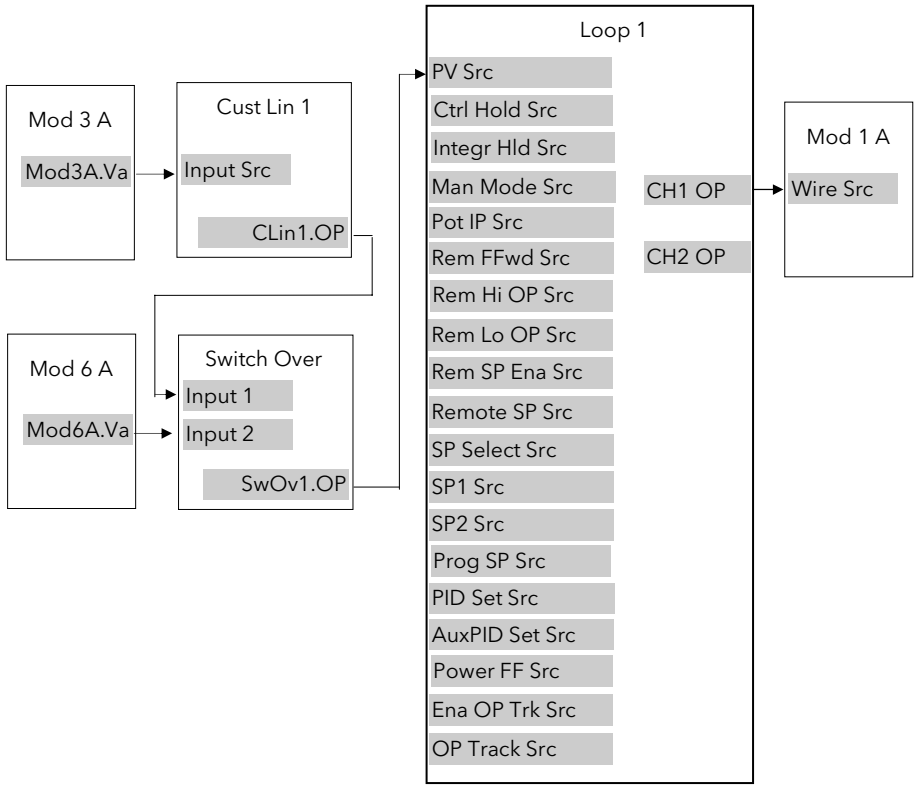


Figure 14-4: Example Wiring, Switch Over Loop with Custom Linearised Input

14.7.1.1 Implementation

1. In INPUT OPERS/Custom Lin 1 (section 14.3.1),
   set 'Input Src' = 04468:Mod3A.Val (Appendix D)
   This connects the input of the custom linearisation block to the output of Module 3A fitted as a PV input module.

2. In INPUT OPERS/Switch 1 Page (section 14.4.1)
   set 'Input 1 Src' = 03365:CLin1.OP (Appendix D)
   This connects input 1 of the switch over block to the output of custom linearisation block 1.

3. In INPUT OPERS/Switch 1 Page (section 14.4.1)
   set 'Input 2 Src' = 04948:Mod6A.Val (Appendix D)
   This connects input 2 of the switch over block to the output of module 6A fitted as an analogue input module.

4. In LOOP SETUP/Wiring Page (section 11.2.1)
   Set 'PV Src' = 03477:SwOv1.OP
   (Appendix D)
   This connects the PV input of Loop 1 to the output of the switch over block.

5. In MODULE IO/Module 1A Page (section 23.3.1 if analogue output)
   Set 'Wire Src' = 00004:L1.Wkg OP
   (Appendix D)
   This connects the input of module 1A to channel 1 output of loop 1. This module may be fitted as an analogue, relay, triac or logic output.

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 5.

14.7.2 Configuring the BCD Input to Select a Program

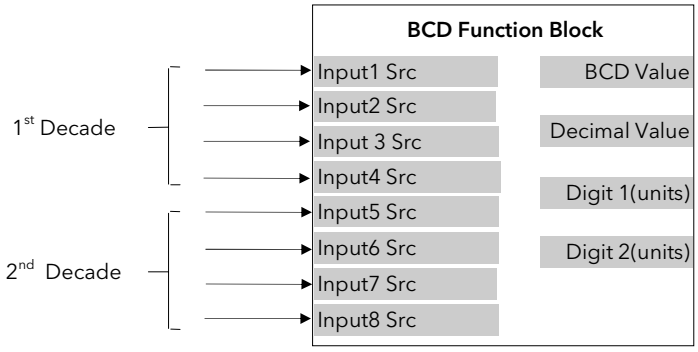


Figure 14-5: BCD Function Block

This example assumes that the digital inputs are connected to the standard IO.

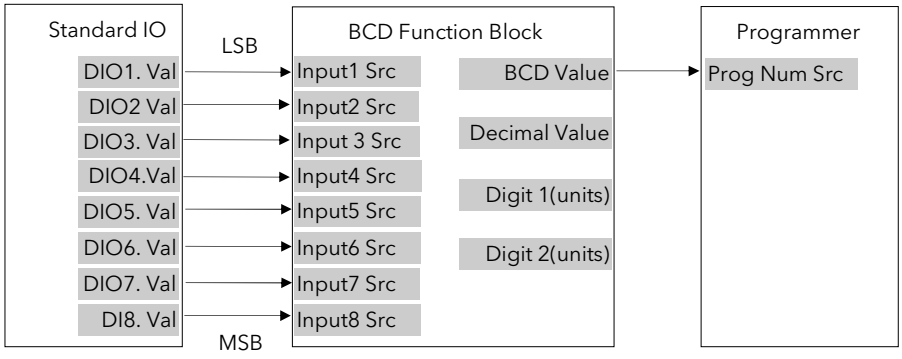


Figure 14-6: Wiring of Digital Inputs to the BCD Function Block

14.7.2.1 Implementation

1. In PROGRAM EDIT/Options Page (section 8.11.1)	set 'BCD Prg Num' = Yes
2. In STANDARD IO/DI01 Page (section 22.6.1)	set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
3. In STANDARD IO/DI02 Page	set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
4. In STANDARD IO/DI03 Page	set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
5. In STANDARD IO/DI04 Page	set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
6. In STANDARD IO/DI05 Page	set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
7. In STANDARD IO/DI06 Page	set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
8. In STANDARD IO/DI07 Page	set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
9. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page (section 14.6.2)	set 'Enable' = On
10. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page	Set 'Input1 Src' = 05402:DIO1.Val
11. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page	Set 'Input2 Src' = 05450:DIO2.Val
12. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page	Set 'Input3 Src' = 05498:DIO3.Val
13. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page	Set 'Input4 Src' = 05546:DIO4.Val
14. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page	Set 'Input5 Src' = 05594:DIO5.Val
15. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page	Set 'Input6 Src' = 05642:DIO6.Val
16. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page	Set 'Input7 Src' = 05690:DIO7.Val
17. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page	Set 'Input8 Src' = 11313:DIO8.Val
18. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page (section 8.12.2)	Set 'Prog Num Src' = 10450 *This connects the output of the BCD block to the program number.*

14.7.3 Holdback Duration Timer

This procedure describes how to configure a 2704 controller, using the Monitor Block, to accumulate the total time that a program has been in holdback within a segment. A holdback timer can be used to inform the user his application is taking longer to heat up than normal, possibly indicating a problem with the heat source or unusually high losses.

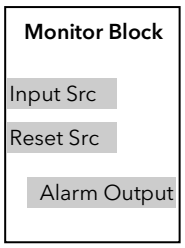


Figure 14-7: Monitor Function Block

The Monitor Block functions are as follows:

1. Logs the maximum and minimum excursions of its input value. These values are reset when:
   a) the controller power is cycled
   b) the block is reset
2. Counts the time above a threshold
3. Provides a time alarm

This example assumes that the controller has already been set up as a single loop programmer, and that program digital output 1 is used to enable the timer during certain segments. This isused to reset the monitor at the end of the segment. The maximum expected holdback time is set to 30 minutes. When this time is exceeded the AA relay is switched on.

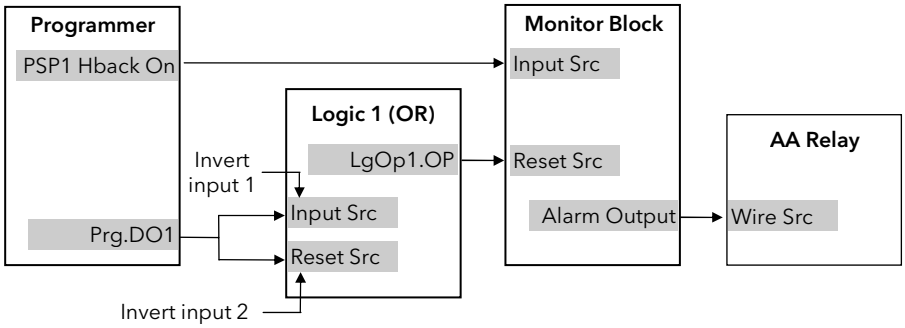


Figure 14-8: Example Wiring, Holdback Duration Timer

14.7.3.1 Implementation

1. In LOGIC OPERATORS/Logic 1 Page (section 19.2.1.)	set 'Operation' = OR set 'Input 1 Src' = 05869:Prg.DO1 set 'Input 2 Src' = 05869:Prg.DO1 set 'Invert' = Invert Both This inverts the sense of Program DO1
2. In INPUT OPERS/Monitor 1 Page (section 14.5.1.)	Set 'Enable' = Enabled Set 'Input Src' = 05804: This connects PSP1 Holdback Status Set 'Reset Src' = 07176:LgOp1.OP This connects Logic 1 Output to the Monitor Reset Set 'Trigger' = 1.0 Set 'Day Alarm' = 0 Set 'Time Alarm' = 0:30:00:0
3. In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page (section 22.5.1.)	Set 'Channel Type' = On/Off Set 'Wire Src' = 03500: This assigns AA Relay to Monitor OP

15. CHAPTER 15 TIMER, CLOCK, TOTALISER, OPERATION

15.1 WHAT ARE TIMER BLOCKS?

Timer Blocks allow the controller to use time/date information as part of the control process. They can be triggered by an event and used to initiate an action. For example, a programmer can be set to RUN at a particular day and time or an action delayed as a result of a digital input signal. The Timer Blocks page is only available if Timer Blocks has been enabled in configuration level. The Timer Blocks fitted in the 2704 controller are:

Four timer blocks	Timer blocks can have four modes of operation which are explained in Section 15.2. The timer type is set in Configuration level. The timer is activated by an event. The event is also defined in Configuration mode or it may be triggered by a parameter in the list. Timing continues for a set time period. The output can be 'wired' in configuration mode to operate a further event.
Clock	This is a real time clock which can be used to operate other time based functions.
Two alarm (clock) blocks	Alarms can be switched on or off at a particular day or time and provide a digital output. The alarm output can be wired in configuration mode to operate an event.
Four totaliser blocks	Totaliser blocks can also be 'wired', in Configuration level, to any parameter. They are used to provide a running total of a parameter and give an output when a pre-set total is reached. An example might be to totalise the flow through a pipe. The output can also be 'wired' in Configuration level to operate an event such as a relay.

Timer Blocks are grouped under page headers as follows:

TIMER BLOCKS ▶	Timer 1 Page	Parameters to set the time period and read elapsed time for timer 1
	Timer 2 Page	Parameters to set the time period and read elapsed time for timer 2
	Timer 3 Page	Parameters to set the time period and read elapsed time for timer 3
	Timer 4 Page	Parameters to set the time period and read elapsed time for timer 4
	Clock Page	To set time and day
	Alarm 1 Page	Parameters to set a time and day alarm and read the alarm output condition for alarm 1
	Alarm 2 Page	Parameters to set a time and day alarm and read the alarm output condition for alarm 2
	Totaliser1 Page	Parameters to read the totalised value, set and monitor an alarm on totalised value.
	Totaliser2 Page	Parameters to read the totalised value, set and monitor an alarm on totalised value.
	Totaliser3 Page	Parameters to read the totalised value, set and monitor an alarm on totalised value.
	Totaliser4 Page	Parameters to read the totalised value, set and monitor an alarm on totalised value.

15.2 TIMER TYPES

Each timer block can be configured to operate in four different modes. These modes are explained below

15.2.1 On Pulse Timer Mode

This timer is used to generate a fixed length pulse from an edge trigger.

- The output is set to On when the input changes from Off to On.
- The output remains On until the time has elapsed
- If the 'Trigger' input parameter recurs while the Output is On, the Elapsed Time will reset to zero and the Output will remain On
- The triggered variable will follow the state of the output

Figure 15-1 illustrates the behaviour of the timer under different input conditions.

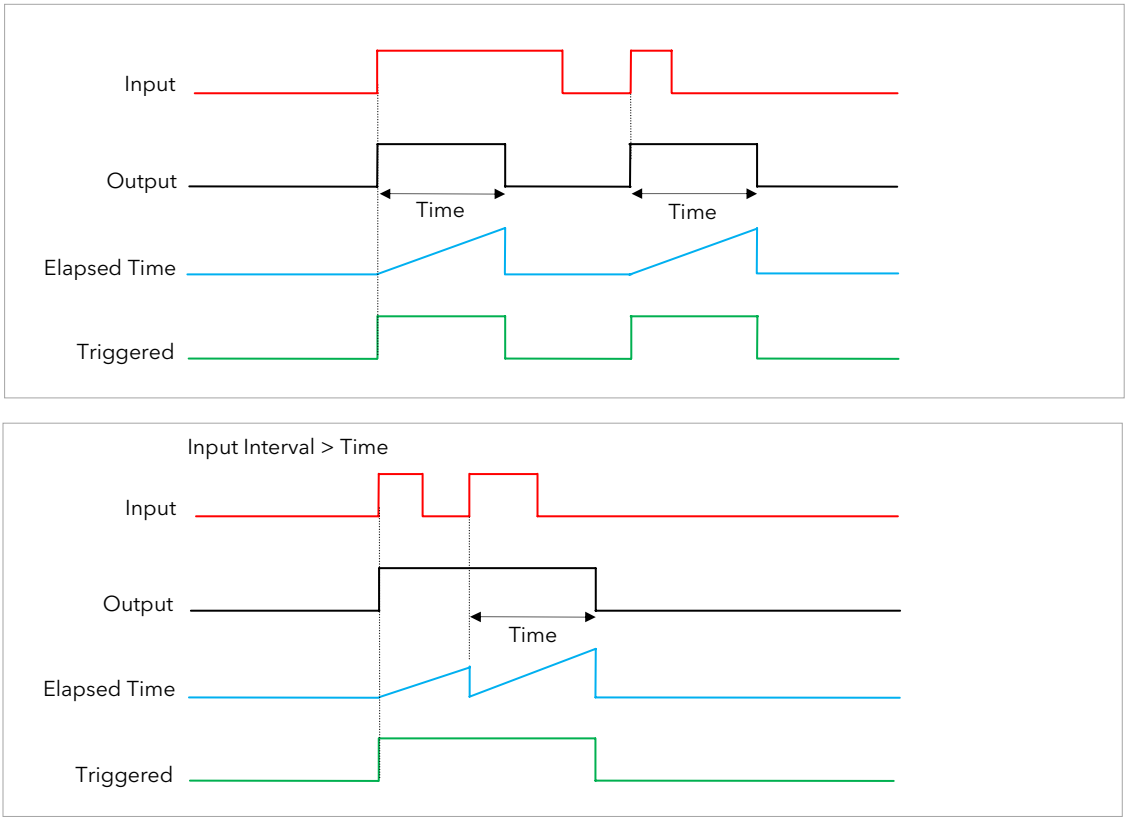


Figure 15-1: On Pulse Timer Under Different Input Conditions

15.2.2 Off Delay Timer Mode

This timer provides a delay between the trigger event and the Timer output. If a short pulse triggers the Timer, then a pulse of one sample time (110ms) will be generated after the delay time.

- The Output is set to Off when the Input changes from Off to On.
- The Output remains Off until the Time has elapsed.
- If the Input returns to Off before the time has elapsed, the Timer will continue until the Elapsed Time equals the Time. It will then generate a pulse of one Sample Time duration.
- Once the Time has elapsed, the Output will be set to On.
- The Output will remain On until the Input is cleared to Off.
- The Triggered variable will be set to On by the Input changing from Off to On. It will remain On until both the Time has elapsed and the Output has reset to Off.

Figure 15-2 illustrates the behaviour of the timer under different input conditions.

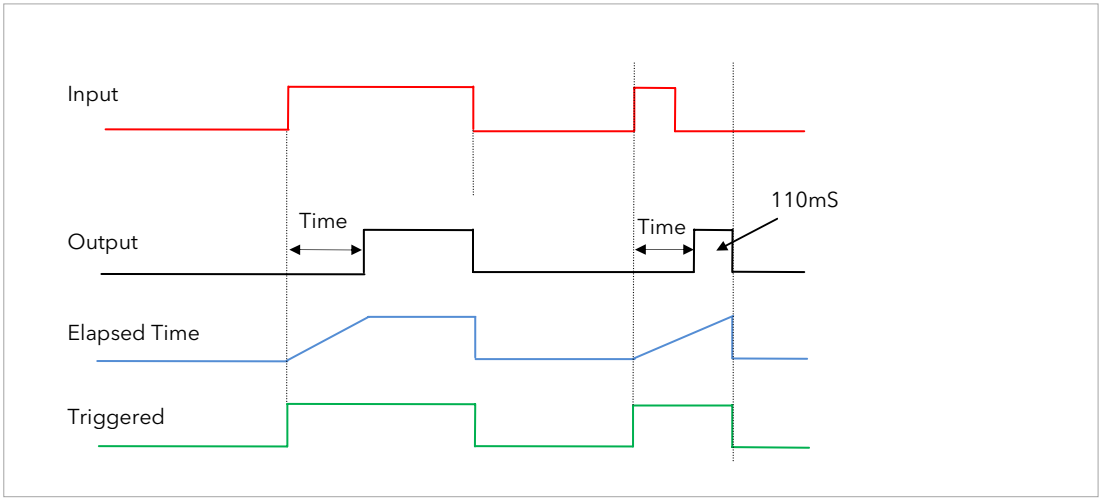


Figure 15-2: Off Delay Timer Under Different Input Conditions

15.2.3 One Shot Timer Mode

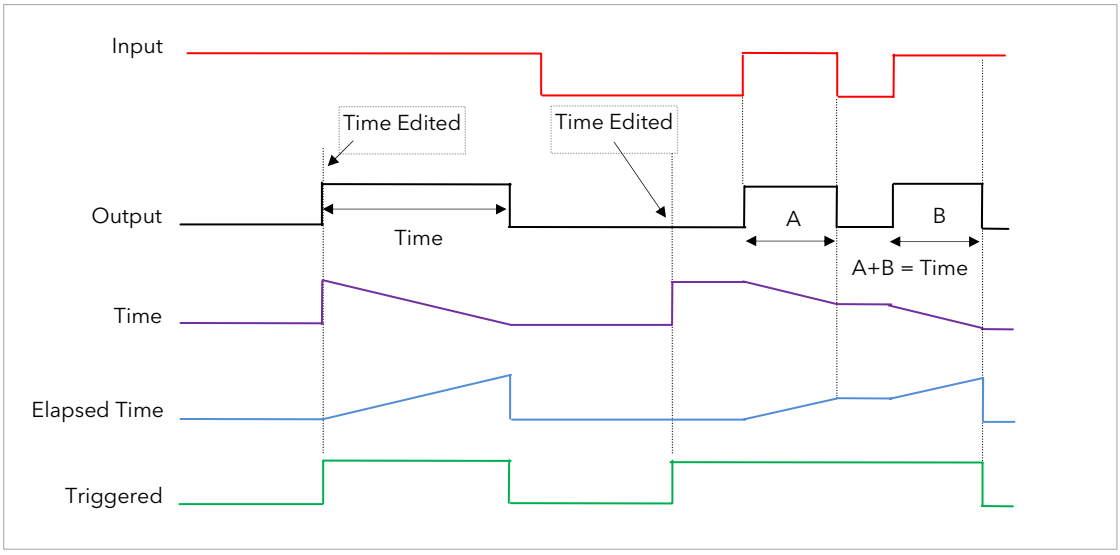
This timer behaves like a simple oven timer.

- When the Time is edited to a non-zero value the Output is set to On
- The Time value is decremented until it reaches zero. The Output is then cleared to Off
- The Time value can be edited at any point to increase or decrease the duration of the On time
- Once set to zero, the Time is not reset to a previous value, it must be edited by the operator to start the next On-Time
- The Input is used to gate the Output. If the Input is set, the time will count down to zero. If the Input is cleared to Off, then the Time will hold and the Output will switch Off until the Input is next set.

Note: since the Input is a digital wire, it is possible for the operator to NOT wire it, and set the Input value to On which permanently enables the timer.

- The Triggered variable will be set to On as soon as the Time is edited. It will reset when the Output is cleared to Off.

The behaviour of the timer under different input conditions is shown below.



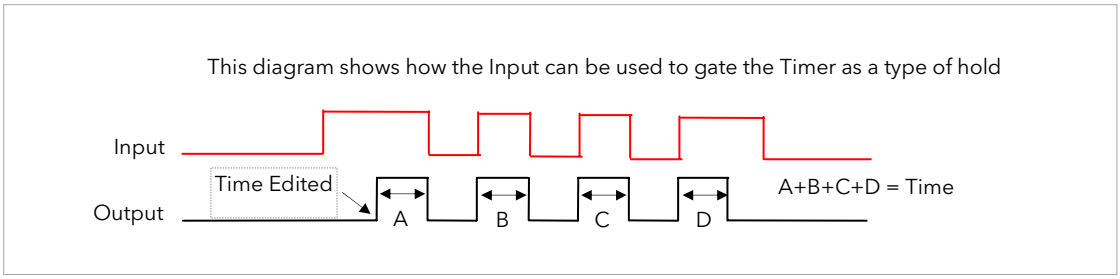


Figure 15-3: One Shot Timer

15.2.4 Compressor or Minimum On Timer Mode

This timer has been targeted at guaranteeing that the output remains On for a duration after the input signal has been removed. It may also be known as an 'Off Delay' timer and may be used, for example, to ensure that a compressor is not cycled excessively.

- The output will be set to On when the Input changes from Off to On.
- When the Input changes from On to Off, the elapsed time will start incrementing towards the set Time.
- The Output will remain On until the elapsed time has reached the set Time. The Output will then switch Off.
- If the Input signal returns to On while the Output is On, the elapsed time will reset to 0, ready to begin incrementing when the Input switches Off.
- The Triggered variable will be set while the elapsed time is >0. It will indicate that the timer is counting.

Figure 15-4 illustrates the behaviour of the timer under different input conditions.

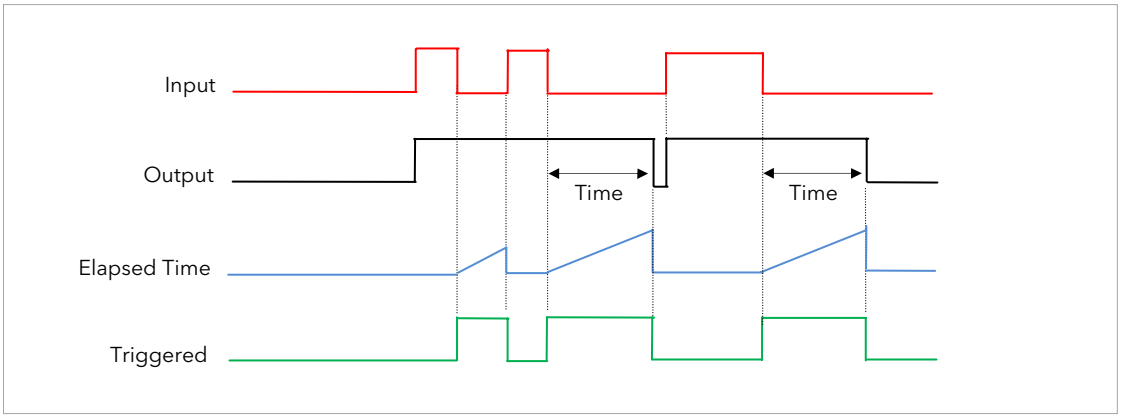
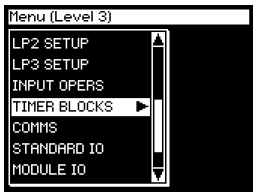
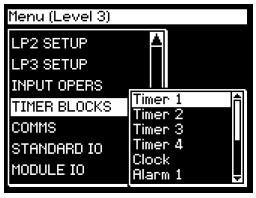
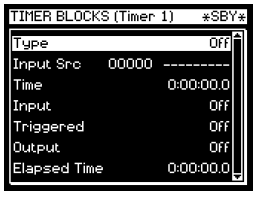


Figure 15-4: Minimum On Timer Under Different Input Conditions

15.3 TO VIEW AND ADJUST TIMER PARAMETERS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [D] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'TIMER BLOCKS'**		This page is only available if 'Timer Blocks is Enabled in the INSTRUMENT (Options) page
3. Press [↻] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the required sub-header		Timer 1 To configure Timer 2 timer types Timer 3 and Timer 4 parameters Clock To set time and day Alarm 1 To wire and Alarm 2 set alarm outputs Totaliser 1 To wire and Totaliser 2 set totaliser Totaliser 3 1, 2, 3 & 4 Totaliser 4 parameters
5. Press [↻] to select the parameter list for the required sub-header		

The full list of parameters available under these list headers is shown in the following tables ⇓

15.3.1 Timer Parameters

Table Number: 15.3.1.	This page allows you to configure timer type and set up Timer Parameters			TIMER BLOCKS (Timer 1 to 4 Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Type	Timer type	Off On Pulse Timer Off Delay Timer One Shot Timer Min-On Timer	Off	Conf
Input Src	Timer input wire source	Modbus address		Conf
Time	Timer Time	0:00:00.0		L1
Input	Trigger/Gate input. Turn On to start timing	Off On	Off	L1
Triggered	Timer triggered (timing)	Off On		R/O L1
Output	Timer output. Occurs when the timer has timed out	Off On	Off	L1
Elapsed Time	Timer elapsed time	0:00:00.0		R/O L1

The above table is repeated for Timers 2 to 4.

i To change hours, minutes and seconds individually, press [↻] and [▲] together. This will highlight each area individually. Then use [▲] or [▼] to change the highlighted value.

The maximum settable time is 99:59:59.9

15.4 THE CLOCK

A real time clock is provided for use with various timer functions in the controller.

15.4.1 Clock Parameters

Table Number: 15.4.1.	This page allows you to configure the clock			TIMER BLOCKS (Clock Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Mode	Real time clock mode	Run Stop Set		L3
Time	Real time clock time	HH:MM:SS		L1 R/O when Mode =Set
Day	Real time clock day	Never Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday Mon-Fri Mon-Sat Sat-Sun Every Day		L1 R/O when Mode =Set

15.5 TIME BASED ALARMS

There are two alarms available which allow an output to be turned **on** or **off** at a set time and day.

15.5.1 Timer Alarm Parameters

Table Number: 15.5.1.	This page allows you to set up Timer Alarm Parameters			TIMER BLOCKS (Alarm 1 or 2 Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Enable Src	Enable input wire source	Modbus address	None	Conf
Enable	RTC Alarm 1 Enable Enables the timer alarm	Off On	Off	L1
On-Day	Sets the day to turn the alarm on	Never Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday Mon-Fri, Mon-Sat Sat-Sun Every Day	Never	L3
On-Time	Sets the time of day to turn the alarm on	0:00:00 to 23:59:59	0:00:00	L3
Off-Day	Sets the day to turn the alarm off	Never Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday Mon-Fri, Mon-Sat Sat-Sun Every Day	Never	L3
Off-Time	Sets the time of day to turn the alarm off	0:00:00 to 23:59:59	0:00:00	L3
Output	Alarm 1 output.	Off On	Off	L1

15.6 TOTALISERS

There are four totaliser function blocks which are used to measure the total quantity of a measurement integrated over time. A totaliser can, by soft wiring, be connected to any measured value. The outputs from the totaliser are its integrated value, and an alarm state. The user may set a setpoint which causes the alarm to activate once the integration exceeds the setpoint.

The totaliser has the following attributes:-

1. Run/Hold/Reset
   In Run the totaliser will integrate its input and continuously test against an alarm setpoint.
   In Hold the totaliser will stop integrating its input but will continue to test for alarm conditions.
   In Reset the totaliser will be zeroed, and alarms will be reset.
2. Alarm Setpoint
   If the setpoint is a positive number, the alarm will activate when the total is greater than the setpoint.
   If the setpoint is a negative number, the alarm will activate when the total is lower (more negative) than the setpoint.
   If the totaliser alarm setpoint is set to 0.0, the alarm will be off. It will not detect values above or below.
   The alarm output is a single state output. It may be cleared by resetting the totaliser, or by changing the alarm setpoint.
3. The total is limited to a maximum of 99999 and a minimum of -9999.

15.6.1 Totaliser Parameters

Table Number: 15.6.1.	This page allows you to set up Totaliser Parameters		TIMER BLOCKS (Totaliser1 (to 4) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Input Src	Totaliser monitored parameter source	Modbus address		Conf
Reset Src	Totaliser reset source	Modbus address		Conf
Run Src	Totaliser run source	Modbus address		Conf
Hold Src	Totaliser hold source	Modbus address		Conf
Units	Totaliser units	See Appendix D2		Conf
Resolution	Totaliser resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX	XXXXX	Conf
Reset	Resets the totaliser	No Yes	No	L1
Run	Runs the totaliser	Run Reset	Reset	L1
Hold	Holds the totaliser at its current value Note: The Run & Hold parameters are designed to be wired to (for example) digital inputs. Run must be 'on' and Hold must be 'off' for the totaliser to operate.	Hold Continue	Hold	L1
Total	This shows the totalised value	99999 t o-9999		L1
Alarm Setpoint	Sets the totalised value at which an alarm will occur			L3
Alarm Output	This is a read only value which indicates the alarm output On or Off. The totalised value can be a positive number or a negative number. If the number is positive the alarm occurs when Total > + Alarm Setpoint If the number is negative the alarm occurs when Total > - Alarm Setpoint	Off On	Off	L1
Input Val	Totaliser monitored value	-9999 to 99999		L1

15.7 APPLICATION EXAMPLE

15.7.1 Compressor Timer

This example uses the Min-On Timer to start a compressor in an environmental chamber. The compressor must be kept running for 5 to 15 minutes after the controller stops calling for cooling. If the controller starts to call for cooling again the "compressor timeout" timer deactivates until the cooling turns off again. The same action is required for dehumidification.

15.7.1.1 Implementation

This example assumes that the controller has already been set up as a 2 loop temperature and humidity controller. The controller will call for the compressor to be switched on when either the cool or de-humidify outputs are switched on. The cool output is DIO1 and the de-humidify output is DIO2. The compressor output is the AA Relay.

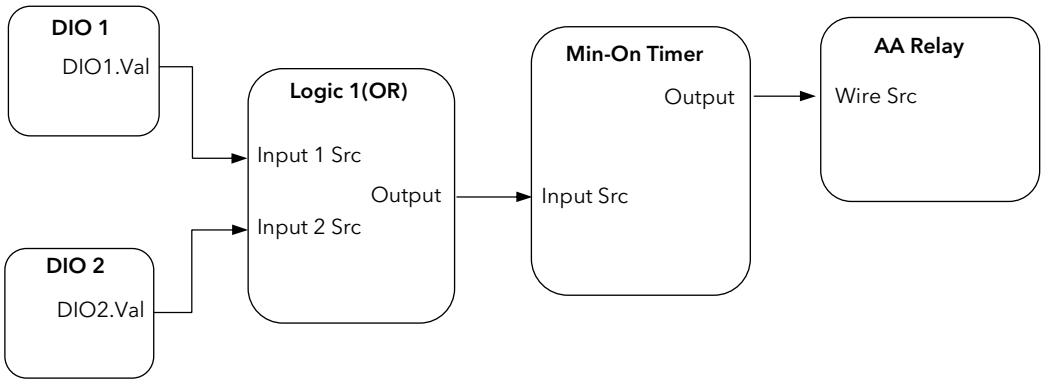


Figure 15-5: Compressor Timer Graphical Wiring

Enter Config Mode

In LOGIC OPERS/Logic 1 Page (section 19.2.1)	Set "Operation" = OR Set "Input 1 Src" = 05402 :------- Set "Input 2 Src" = 05450:-------
	(Connects cool and dehumidify outputs to the logic operator)
In TIMER BLOCKS/Timer 1 Page (section 15.3.1)	Set "Type" = Min-On Timer Set "Input Src" = 07176: LgOp1.OP Set "Time" = 0:10:00:0
	(Uses logic 1 to trigger timer)
In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page (section 22.5.1)	Set "Channel Type" = On/Off Set "Wire Src" = 08963: Tmr1.OP
	(Assigns AA Relay to Timer1 OP)

16. CHAPTER 16 ADVANCED FUNCTIONS

16.1 PATTERN GENERATOR

The pattern generator allows groups of digital values to be selected from a single input number. This number is displayed as **'Pattern'** and may be given a name, using the **'User Text'** feature described in section 7.2.6. This is known as a **'User Enumeration'**.

An example of an application for the Pattern Generator would be to allow fixed output patterns to be applied in different segments of a program. This may be useful where the same pattern is repeated in different segments or in other programs. It is achieved by soft wiring (see Chapter 5) to the **'Pattern Src'** as shown in the example below.

The pattern generator consists of 16 patterns displayed as **'Pattern 0'** to **'Pattern 15**. Each pattern consists of up to 16 digital outputs and any two patterns, displayed as **'Dig Group 1'** and **'Dig Group 2',** can be active at any one time.

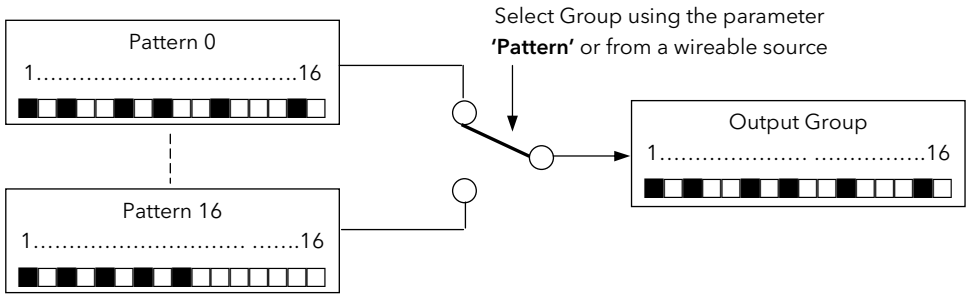


Figure 16-1: Digital Pattern Generator

16.1.1 Example: Programmer Event Outputs

In this example Program User Values are used to select the output pattern. The outputs of the pattern generator are wired to relay outputs of an IO Expander, see also Chapter 25. When Program User Value 1 = 0 then the digital values of pattern 0 will be active. When Program User Value 1 = 1 the digital values of pattern 1 will be active ,and so on.

The patterns can also be enumerated so that each can be assigned a name. This will allow the operator to select, say, the "Heating Pattern" to be active within a program segment.

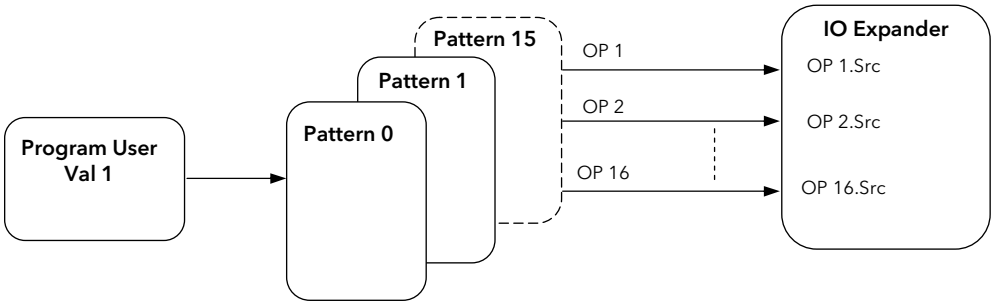
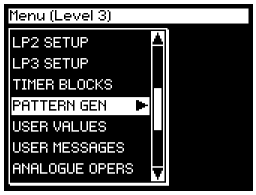
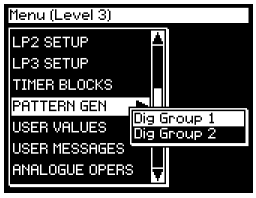
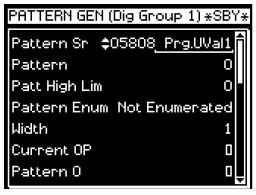
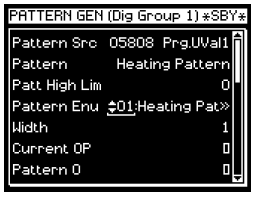
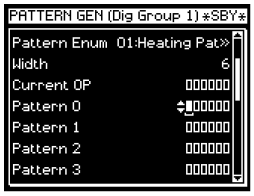
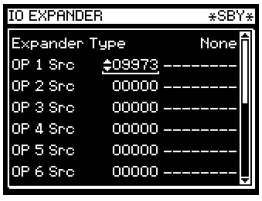


Figure 16-2: Pattern Selected by Programmer User Values

16.1.1.1 To Configure The Pattern Generator

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [Page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'PATTERN GENERATOR'**		The PATTERN GEN page is only available if Enabled as described in section 7.2.
3. Press [↵] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Dig Group 1 (or 2)'**		
5. Press [↵] to show the parameter list 6. Press [↵] again to select **'Pattern Src'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the Modbus address of the parameter you wish to wire to		Programmer User Value 1 is wired to the Pattern Source **'Pattern'** is read only when wired. It can only be used to select the pattern if it is not wired. **'Pattern High Lim'** can be used to limit the number of patterns in any particular application. A limit of 8 allows patterns 0 to 7
8. Press [↵] to show **'Pattern Enu'** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the **'User Text'** which contains the appropriate message		This parameter allows you to select a name (or '**Enumeration**') for the pattern. See also section 7.3 for User Text examples and section 16.6 for enumeration examples.
10. Press [↵] to select the first pattern - **'Pattern 0'** 11. Press [▲] or [▼] to change to change the first digit in the pattern to On (■) or Off (□)		**'Width'** limits the number of digits in each pattern – six in this example. **'Current OP'** displays the currently selected output Repeat the above to set up further patterns

16.1.1.2 To Wire Pattern Generator Outputs to the IO Expander Inputs

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
12. Enable the IO Expander in INSTRUMENT (Options) page 13. Scroll to the IO EXPANDER page 14. Select expander type e.g. 10 in 10 out and confirm as instructed 15. Scroll to OP1 Src 16. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the modbus address of Pattern Generator Digital OP 1	 ☺ Tip: Use the copy and paste procedure described in section 3.1.2. to select these parameters	The modbus addresses of the digital outputs are:] **Group 1** OP 1 — 9973 to — to OP16 — 9988 **Group 2** OP 1 — 10037 to — to OP16 — 10052

16.2 ANALOGUE SWITCHES

Analogue Switches allow groups of analogue values to be selected from a single input number. This number may be provided from a user defined analogue source. or, if not wired, the analogue values can be selected from this number. As with the Pattern Generator the switch can be given a user defined name using the **'User Enumeration'** feature.

There are 8 Analogue Switches, displayed as **'Switch 1'** to **'Switch 7'**, and each switch can store up to 8 values displayed as **'Value 0 '** to **'Value 8'**.

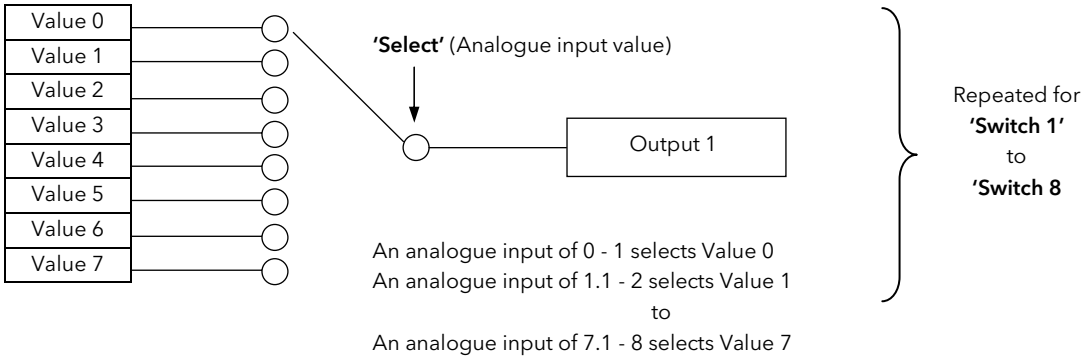
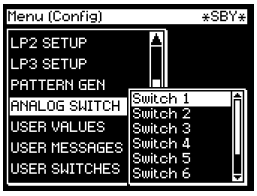
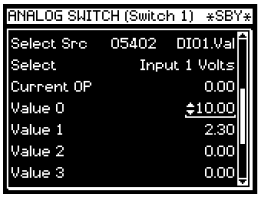


Figure 16-3: Representation of an Analogue Switch

16.2.1 To Set up an Analogue Switch

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu. and [scroll] to show sub-headers 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the required switch, e.g. **'Switch 1'**		The ANALOG SWITCH page is only available if Enabled as described in section 7.2.
3. Using [scroll] button to scroll to the required parameter and [▲] or [▼] buttons to change the value of the parameter set up the values as required	 	The example shown here sets Switch 1 as follows:- Switch 1 is named **'Input 1 Volts'**, and its values can be set between 0.00 and 10.00 volts. **'Select Hi Lim'** = **5** allows the first 6 values to be selected If an out of range 'Select' value is delivered by the 'Select Src' (when wired) 'Current OP' is always set to value 0. i.e. value 0 could be configured as the safe state value.

16.3 USER VALUES

User Values are normally used as constants in analogue or digital operations.

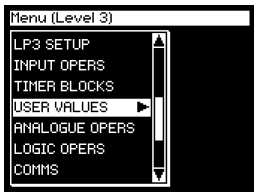
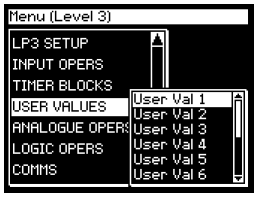
In an analogue operation the User Value may be used as a constant in a calculation.

In a digital operation it may be used to select an event. For example, it could be used to select a pattern from the pattern generator in the same way as the Programmer User Value was used in example 14.1.1. In this example the 'Program User Val 1' would be replaced by the 'User (1 to 12) Value'.

Each User Value can be given a user defined name using the **'User Enumeration'** feature. This feature is generally intended for use when the User Value is used in a digital operation.

The 2704 controller contains up to 12 user values, which are in a single list under the page header **'USER VALUES'**.

16.3.1 To Access User Values

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'USER VALUES'**		The USER VALUES page is only available if Enabled as described in section 7.2.
3. Press [↻] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'User Val 1 (to 12)'**		

The list of User Value parameters available under this list header is shown in the following table ⇓

16.3.2 User Values Parameter Table

Table Number: 16.3.2.	This page allows you to configure User Values		USER VALUES (User Val 1 Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Units	User value units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf
Resolution	User values resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX		Conf
Low Limit	User values low limit	Display min to display max		Conf
High Limit	User values high limit	Display min to display max		Conf
User 1 Value	User 1 value	Low Limit to High Limit		L1
User Val Enu	Allows a name, chosen from User Text, to be given to the User Value	Not Enumerated 01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Not Enum-erated	Conf

The above table is repeated for User Values 2 to 12.

Note: It is often required to generate a User Value = 1, and to wire this from a source. A User Value can be used for this but this takes up one or more of the User Values available.

An alternative is to use the parameter 'Const.1' which is a User Value = 1. This parameter is listed in Appendix D.

☺ When using Custom Enumerations the Resolution should not be set to more than one decimal point since the User Text library is limited to 50 strings. See also Example 16.6.1.3.

16.4 USER MESSAGES

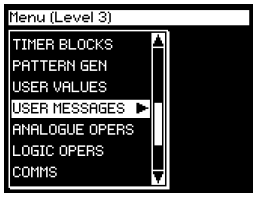
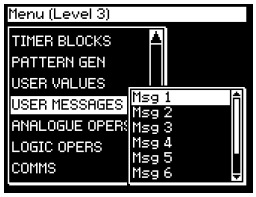
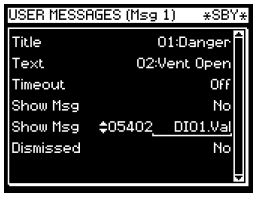
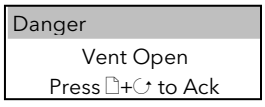
A User Message takes the form of a pop window which will be displayed in operation level as a result of a particular action occurring. The format of this window is shown below:-

This is a similar format to that which occurs, for example, when an alarm occurs. This message, however, can be displayed when a particular event - defined by the user - occurs. For example, a User Message can be displayed if it has been wired to a digital input to alert an operator to a particular event.

User messages can only be set up in configuration level. They can, however, be inspected in Level 1.

Up to eight User Messages can be configured. Message 1 has a higher priority than Message 2 and so on.

16.4.1 To Configure A User Message

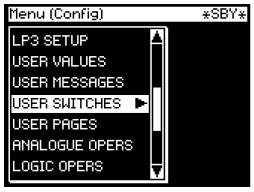
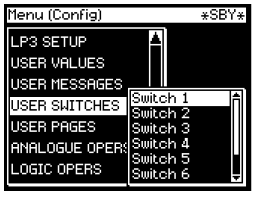
Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [▯] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'USER MESSAGES'**		
3. Press [↺] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Msg 1 (to 8)'**		
5. Press [↺] to show the parameter list 6. Press [↺] again to select **'Title'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose a user defined text set up as described in section 5.2.6. 8. Press [↺] to select **'Text'** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose a user defined text set up as described in section 5.2.6. 10. Press [↺] to select **'Show Msg (Src)'** 11. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the Modbus address of the parameter which will trigger the message when the controller is in operation mode		In operation mode a pop up window, as shown below, will be displayed when digital input 1 is true.  If 'Timeout' is set to a value of:- 5 sec 10 sec 1 min 5 min or 10 min the user message will disappear after this period and will only re-appear when the digital input becomes true once more. The parameters **'Show Msg'** and **'Dismissed'** are intended for use over digital communications.

16.5 USER SWITCHES

User Switches are similar to User Values when the User Value is used in a digital operation. They may, however, be configured as Auto Resetting or Manual Resetting and typically utilised in **'User Pages'** (see Chapter 17) to perform a specified task. A User Switch can be given a user defined name using the **'User Enumeration'** feature described in previous pages.

Up to eight User Switches are available

16.5.1 To Configure User Switches

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [▯] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'USER SWITCHES'**		The USER SWITCHES page is only available if Enabled as described in section 7.2
3. Press [↵] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Switch 1 (to 8)'**		
5. Press [↵] to show the parameter list 6. Press [↵] again to select the required parameter 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the parameter value		In this view the Switch Type is configured as Manual Reset. The alternative choice is Auto Reset. The switch enumeration is chosen from User Text as '01:Open'. The Switch State toggles between User Text 01 and the next User Text 02. In this example User Text 02 is configured as 'closed' so that the switch toggles between Open and Closed.

16.6 CUSTOM ENUMERATIONS

'Custom Enumerations' allow a user to enumerate parameter values with their own text.
Parameters which support custom enumerations are:-

- Program User Values – see section 8.7
- Digital Pattern Generator Inputs – see section 16.1
- Analogue Switches – see section 16.2
- User Switches – see section 16.5
- Digital Programmer Select parameter – see section 9.2.
- Digital IO Status parameters (Enumeration) – see sections 22.5.1, 22.6.1, 23.3.2, 23.3.3, and 23.3.4
- Logic Operator 'Output Value' parameters – see section 19.2.1.

16.6.1 To Configure Custom Enumerations

This consists of two operations:-

1. Define areas of text in the INSTRUMENT/User Text page which are to be used for custom enumerations as follows:-

In INSTRUMENT/ User Text page, (section 7.2.6.)	Set User Text = Enabled Set 'Text Number' (from 1 to 50) to represent the beginning of the text area Configure the 'Text' for the required message using the ▲ or ▼ buttons to change the text and the ↵ button to move to the next character

The full procedure for this is described in section 7.2.6.

User Text 01	Rough Valve Open
User Text 02	Rough Valve Closed
User Text 03	Diff Pump Run
User Text 04	Diff Valve open
User Text 05	Chamber Temp
User Text 06	Start Program
User Text 07	Start
User Text 08	Pre Heat
User Text 09	Stabilise
User Text 10	Heat Ramp
User Text 11	Annealing
User Text 12	Cool Ramp
User Text 13	Complete

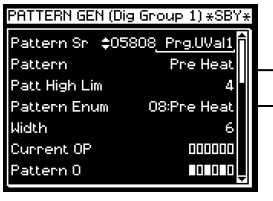
← This table shows an example of a text area

2. Set up a pointer which defines the start point from which the text is to be selected and the range of the user text, as follows:-

a. Choose the parameter to be enumerated, for example, 'Pattern Enum' in the PATTERN GEN (Dig Group 1 page)

b. Define the range of the user text

c. Choose the start point from which the user text is to be taken. Using the table below this user Text 08: Pre-Heat



Start pointer 08

User Text 01	Rough Valve Open
User Text 02	Rough Valve Closed
User Text 03	Diff Pump Run
User Text 04	Diff Valve open
User Text 05	Chamber Temp
User Text 06	Start Program
User Text 07	Start
User Text 08	Pre Heat
User Text 09	Stabilise
User Text 10	Heat Ramp
User Text 11	Annealing
User Text 12	Cool Ramp
User Text 13	Complete
User Text 14	Furnace 1

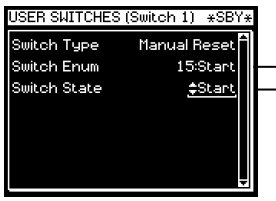
The 'Pattern' name will be selected between User Text 08 (start pointer) and User Text 12 (Pattern High Limit)

Pattern high limit defines the number of enumerations
A Pattern high limit of 4 = 0 to 4 i.e. 5 enumerations

The following examples show how to apply this to different types of parameter.

16.6.1.1 User Switch Example

This is an example of a parameter which has just two states.



Start pointer 15

The enumeration shows two states Start and Stop

User Text 10	Heat Ramp
User Text 11	Annealing
User Text 12	Cool Ramp
User Text 13	Complete
User Text 14	Furnace 1
User Text 15	Start
User Text 16	Stop

The procedure for configuring the above example is as follows

First set up the required user text as described in the previous section

Then:-

In USER SWITCHES/Switch 1 page, (section 16.5)	Set 'Switch Type' = Auto or Manual Reset Set 'Switch Enum' = User Text 15 'Start' Each time the ▲ or ▼ button is pressed the 'Switch State' will toggle between 'Start' or 'Stop'

16.6.1.2 Programmer User Values Example

This example shows the configuration for Programmer User Value 1.

PROGRAM EDIT (Options)
Usr Val1 Enum = 03: Diff Pump Run
Pointer defines start of enumerated text

Range of enumerations is defined by 'Low Lim' and 'High Lim'
If Low lim = 0 and High Lim = 3 range = 4
If Low lim = 1 and High Lim = 3 range = 3
the starting point is unaffected

User Text 01	Rough Valve Open
User Text 02	Rough Valve Closed
User Text 03	Diff Pump Run
User Text 04	Diff Valve open
User Text 05	Chamber Temp
User Text 06	Start Program
User Text 07	Start
User Text 08	Pre Heat
User Text 09	Stabilise
User Text 10	Heat Ramp
User Text 11	Annealing
User Text 12	Cool Ramp
User Text 13	Complete
User Text 14	Furnace 1

16.6.1.3 Enumerated User Value Example

This example enumerates User Value 1 with 1 decimal point resolution.

In USER VALUES/User Val 1 page, (section 16.3)

Set 'Resolution' = XXXX.X
Set 'Low Limit' = 0.0 (for example)
Set 'High Limit' = 1.0 (for example)
Set 'User Val Enum' = User Text 7 (for example)

The 'User 1 Value' will now switch between the next 10 user text values (ie Start to Complete) corresponding to each 0.1 change in the User Value 1.

User Text 01	Rough Valve Open
User Text 02	Rough Valve Closed
User Text 03	Diff Pump Run
User Text 04	Diff Valve open
User Text 05	Chamber Temp
User Text 06	Start Program
User Text 07	Start
User Text 08	Pre Heat
User Text 09	Stabilise
User Text 10	Heat Ramp
User Text 11	Annealing
User Text 12	Cool Ramp
User Text 13	Baking
User Text 14	Open Vent
User Text 15	Stop Fan
User Text 16	Complete

☺ When using Custom Enumerations it is important to remember that there is a maximum of 50 user strings available. The above technique, for example, uses 10 strings from the User Text library.

17. CHAPTER 17 USER PAGES

17.1 WHAT ARE USER PAGES

User pages allow you to place a pre-determined number of parameters onto a set of semi-custom screens. Each of the available screens has a pre-determined structure allowing specific parameter types to be placed directly into empty slots. There are eight screen styles of this type and up to eight user pages may be defined using any combination of these styles.

Each screen may be accessed under the LOOP button or from the Page Menu.

With the exception of the Parameter List Style page, a scroll list of up to 10 parameters may also be configured. These parameters always appear at the bottom of the screen and they are the only parameters which can be made alterable depending upon the access level setting of each parameter.

17.2 USER PAGE STYLES

As stated above there are eight page styles. These are:

1. Single Loop
2. Dual Loop
3. Triple Loop – style 1
4. Triple Loop – style 2
5. Status Grid
6. Bar Graph
7. Blank (this could be used, for example, in a photographic development area)
8. Parameter List

Each of these screens defines a fixed format on which you can place parameters suited to your particular application. The position of each custom parameter is dictated by a number, as shown on each of the screen views which follow. To define the parameter choose the number using **'Custom Param'** in the USER PAGES list followed by **'Custom Ad'**.

'Custom' is used to refer to parameters which are placed on the User Page.

Similarly, 'Promote' is used to refer to parameters which are promoted to the list at the bottom of each screen.

If the selected parameter is a bar graph parameter, two additional parameters **'Custom GraphHi'** and **'Custom GraphLo'** will be available.

17.2.1 Single Loop User Page

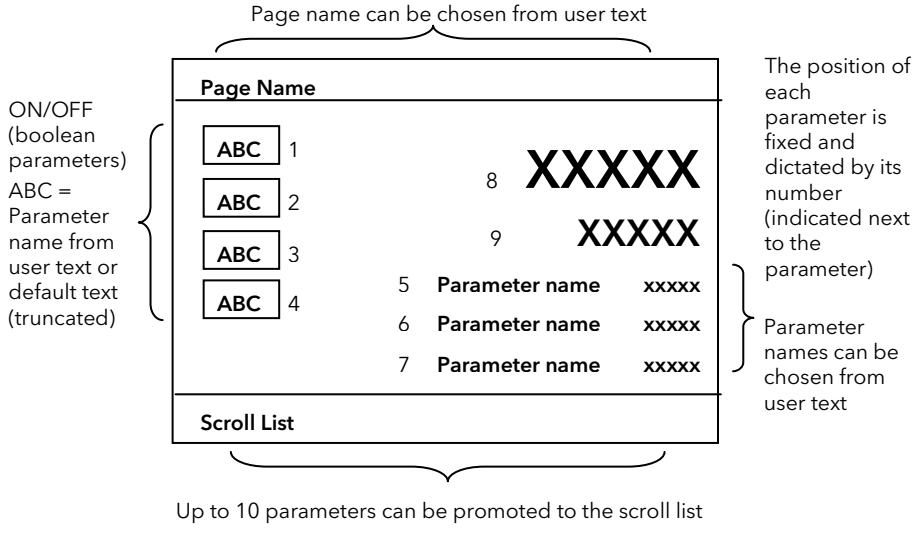

Page name can be chosen from user text
Page Name
ON/OFF (boolean parameters) ABC = Parameter name from user text or default text (truncated)
ABC 1
ABC 2
ABC 3
ABC 4
8 XXXXX
9 XXXXX
5 Parameter name xxxxx
6 Parameter name xxxxx
7 Parameter name xxxxx
The position of each parameter is fixed and dictated by its number (indicated next to the parameter)
Parameter names can be chosen from user text
Scroll List
Up to 10 parameters can be promoted to the scroll list

Figure 17-1: Single Loop User Page

17.2.2 Dual Loop User Page

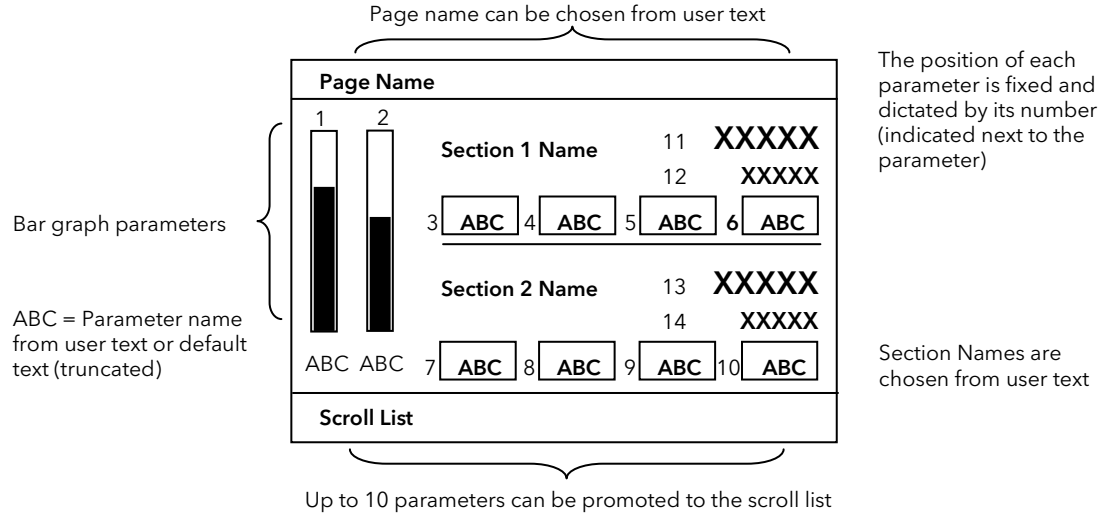

Page name can be chosen from user text
Page Name
1
2
Section 1 Name
11 XXXXX
12 XXXXX
3 ABC 4 ABC 5 ABC 6 ABC
Section 2 Name
13 XXXXX
14 XXXXX
ABC ABC 7 ABC 8 ABC 9 ABC 10 ABC
Scroll List
Up to 10 parameters can be promoted to the scroll list
Bar graph parameters
ABC = Parameter name from user text or default text (truncated)
The position of each parameter is fixed and dictated by its number (indicated next to the parameter)
Section Names are chosen from user text

Figure 17-2: Dual Loop User Page

17.2.3 Triple Loop User Page – Style 1

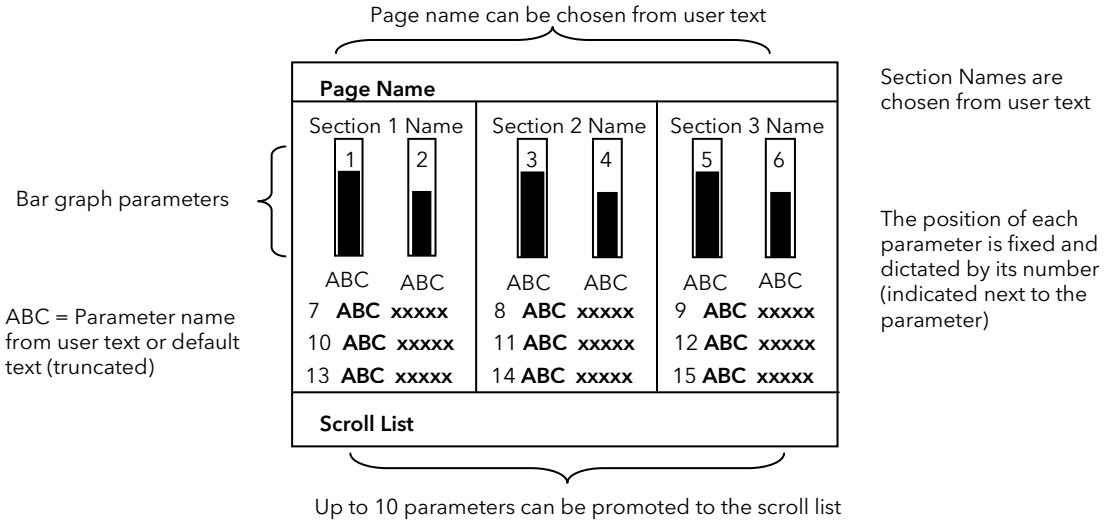

Page name can be chosen from user text
Page Name
Section 1 Name
Section 2 Name
Section 3 Name
1
2
3
4
5
6
ABC ABC ABC ABC ABC ABC
7 ABC xxxxx
8 ABC xxxxx
9 ABC xxxxx
10 ABC xxxxx
11 ABC xxxxx
12 ABC xxxxx
13 ABC xxxxx
14 ABC xxxxx
15 ABC xxxxx
Scroll List
Up to 10 parameters can be promoted to the scroll list
Bar graph parameters
ABC = Parameter name from user text or default text (truncated)
Section Names are chosen from user text
The position of each parameter is fixed and dictated by its number (indicated next to the parameter)

Figure 17-3: Triple Loop User Page 1

17.2.4 Triple Loop User Page – Style 2

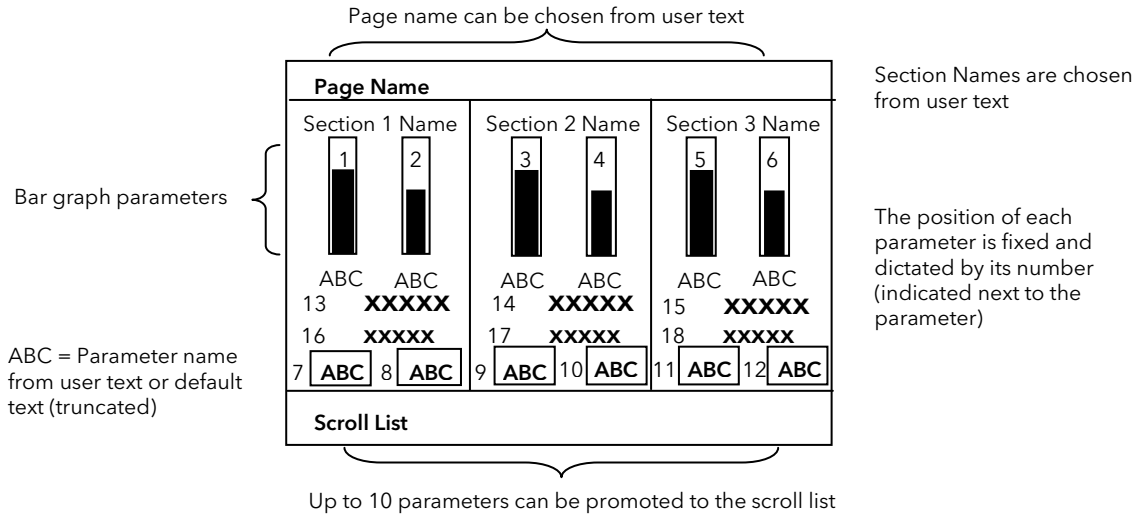


Figure 17-4: Triple Loop User Page 2

17.2.5 Status Grid User Page

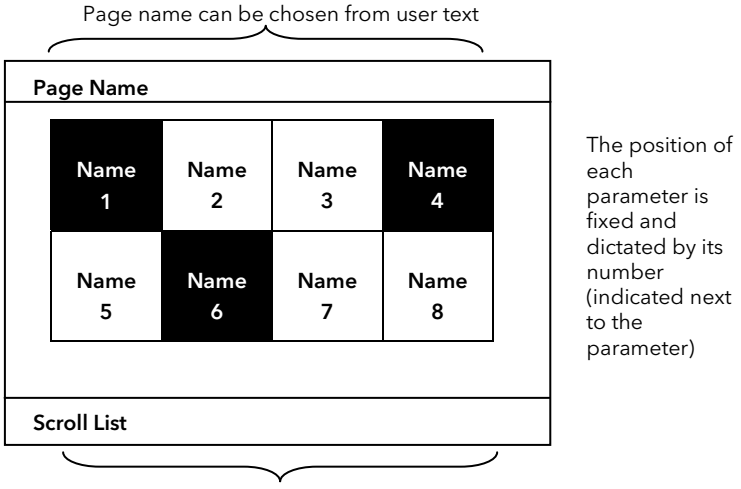

Page name can be chosen from user text
Page Name
Name 1
Name 2
Name 3
Name 4
Name 5
Name 6
Name 7
Name 8
The position of each parameter is fixed and dictated by its number (indicated next to the parameter)
Scroll List
Up to 10 parameters can be promoted to the scroll list

Figure 17-5: Status Grid User Page

The position of the parameters depends upon the number of configured parameters and the status indicators are resized as indicated below. This allows the display of more characters in each status indicator. Up to 12 may be configured in this page.

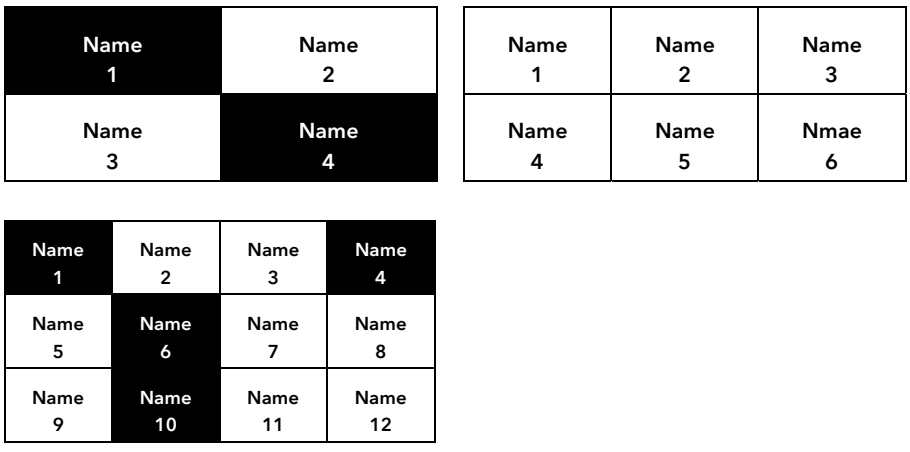


Figure 17-6: Status Indicators for 4, 6 and 12 Parameters

17.2.6 Bar Graph

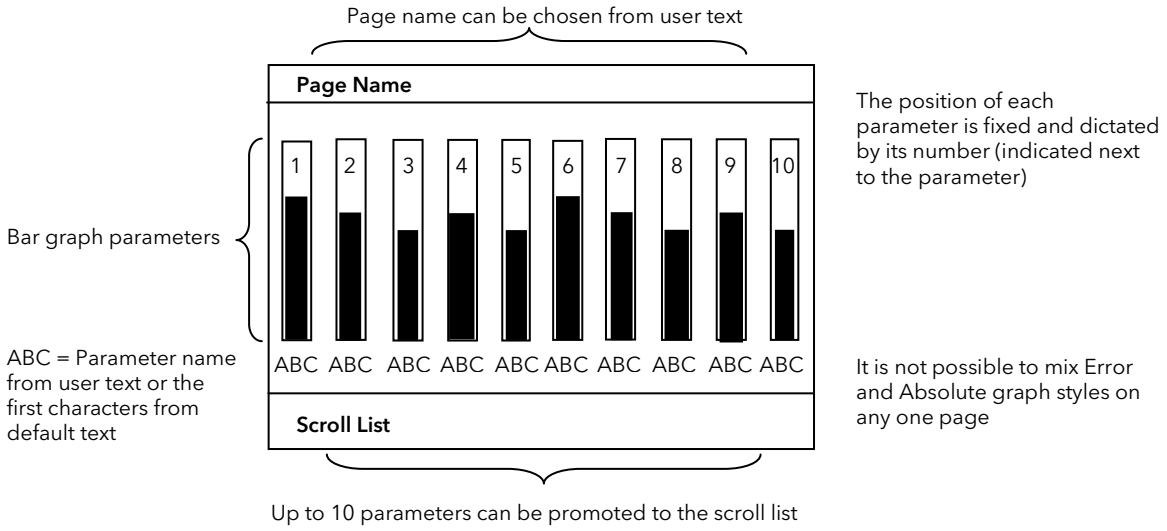

Page name can be chosen from user text
Page Name
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
Bar graph parameters
ABC ABC ABC ABC ABC ABC ABC ABC ABC ABC
Scroll List
The position of each parameter is fixed and dictated by its number (indicated next to the parameter)
ABC = Parameter name from user text or the first characters from default text
It is not possible to mix Error and Absolute graph styles on any one page
Up to 10 parameters can be promoted to the scroll list

Figure 17-7: Bar Graph User Page

Similar to the Status Grid style and the Status Indicators, the position and width of the bar graph will depend on the number of configured parameters. This allows more characters to be printed below each graph. The maximum number of graphs is ten.

17.2.7 Parameter List Style

In addition to the six styles listed above, parameters can be listed in exactly the same way as the Summary Page listed in section 7.2.7. In effect this allows a further eight summary pages to be defined if required. The parameters appear in the order in which they are defined.

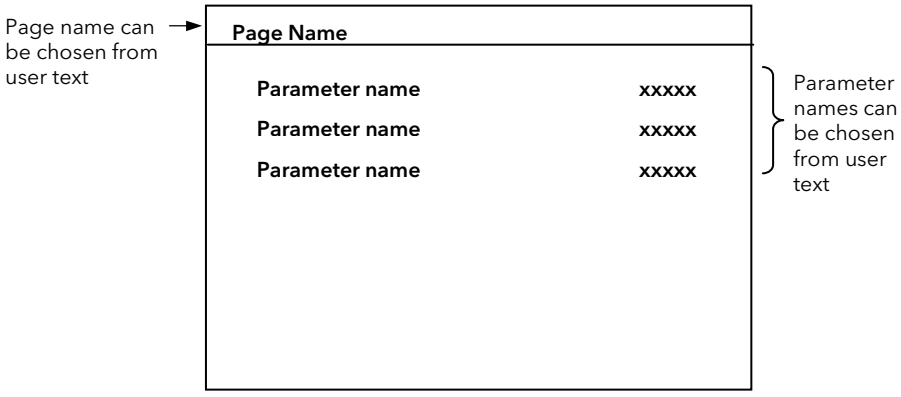
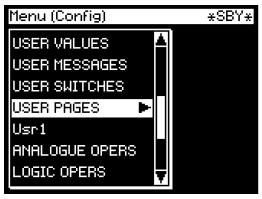
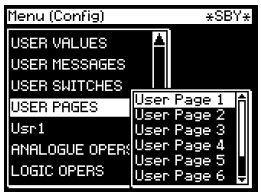
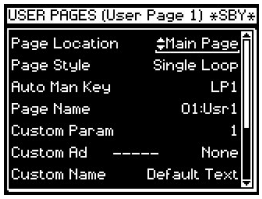
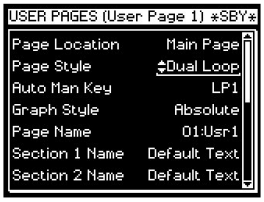
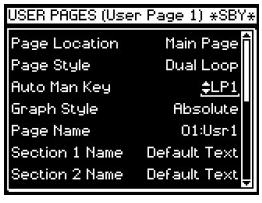
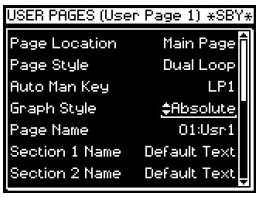

Page name can be chosen from user text
Page Name
Parameter name xxxxx
Parameter name xxxxx
Parameter name xxxxx
Parameter names can be chosen from user text

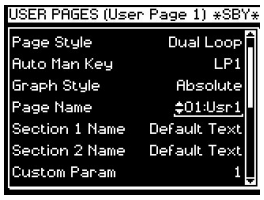
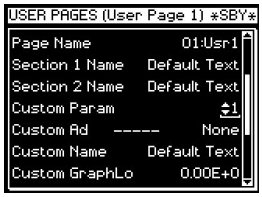
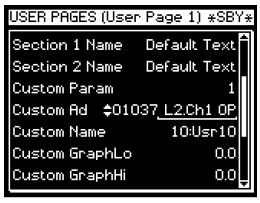
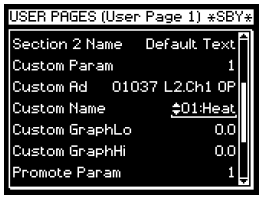
Figure 17-8: Parameter List Style

17.3 TO CONFIGURE A USER PAGE

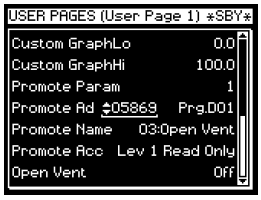
Configuration of the Parameter List style is identical to that described in section 7.2.7.

Configuration of other styles is the same, in principle, for all other pages. The example below configures a Dual Loop style.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'USER PAGES'**		**'Usr1'** is the name which has been given to a User Screen, see paragraph 12. 'Usr1' will normally be replaced by user defined text.
3. Press [↵] to display sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the User Page to be configured		
5. Press [↵] to show the list of parameters in the User Page selected 6. Press [↵] again to choose the parameter 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Main Page', 'Loop Summary'** or **'None'**		**'Page Location'** defines how to access the page. If **'Main Page'** is selected the User Page will appear in the main menu following **'USER PAGES'**. It is available in all access levels. If **'Loop Summary'** is selected the User Page will be found by pressing the LOOP button in Operator access level **'None'** will hide the page until it is required
8. Press [↵] to select **'Page Style'** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Dual Loop'**		Choices are; **Parameter List** **Single Loop** **Dual Loop** **Triple Loop 1** **Triple Loop 2** **Status Grid** **Bar Graph** **Blank Page**
10. Press [↵] to select **'Auto Man Key'** 11. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the loop to be put into auto/manual mode		This parameter is described in more detail in section 17.4.
12. Press [↵] to select **'Graph Style'** 13. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose **'Absolute'** or **'Error'**		**'Absolute'** defines a bar graph which grows from zero at the base. **'Error'** defines a bar graph which grows from zero at the centre. It is scaled by Graph Hi and Graph Lo so that the origin can be offset from the centre

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
14. Press ↵ to select **'Page Name'** 15. Press ↵ to choose the heading which will appear in the top banner of the user page		'The page name can be chosen from **'User Text'** (section 7.2.6) If **'Default Text'** is chosen the page heading will be **'User Page 1 (to 8)'** The following two parameters 'Section 1 (or 2) Name' are selected in the same way and define the text which appears under section 1 (or 2) names in the Dual Loop Page view
16. Press ↵ to select **'Custom Param'** 17. Press ▲ or ▼ to select required the parameter number		The number of the custom parameter should correspond to the position shown in the User Page views, e.g. **1** to **12**
18. Press ↵ to select **'Custom Ad'** 19. Press ▲ or ▼ select the parameter which you wish to display in the nominated position		The parameter can be chosen by its Modbus address or by selecting the parameter by its name from the list of commonly used parameters given in Appendix D
20. Press ↵ to select **'Custom Name'** 21. Press ▲ or ▼ select from User Text the required name of the parameter		The custom text for 01 as defined in section 7.2.6 is **'Heat'**. The number of characters which will be displayed on the user page will be truncated. The following two parameters set the range of the graph. These are set using the same procedure as above

Up to ten parameters can be promoted to the bottom section of the user page. These parameters can be scrolled and adjusted in the User Page view.
The remaining parameters in the User Page configuration list set up these parameters.

22. Press ↵ to select **'Promote Param'** 23. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose required the parameter number		Up to ten parameters may be promoted. The order in which they appear in the User Page is determined by the order in which they are selected here.

The remaining parameters are selected and chosen in exactly the same way as those already described. The display above shows:

- The first parameter (1) in the user page list is Programmer Event Output (DO1)
- The name of this parameter is chosen from User Text (03) which has been given the name 'Open Vent'
- The access level of this parameter is read only
- The state (Off) or value of the parameter is shown

17.3.1 To Display the User Page View

Using the above example, the User Page will be found in both configuration and operator levels in the main menu under its name (Usr1). If the parameter 'Page Location' = 'Loop Summary' the user page is only available in operator level by pressing the Loop button. Further parameters can be added, by selecting 'Custom Param' 2 to 14 and its modbus address, so that it appears as shown in the page view at the beginning of this chapter.

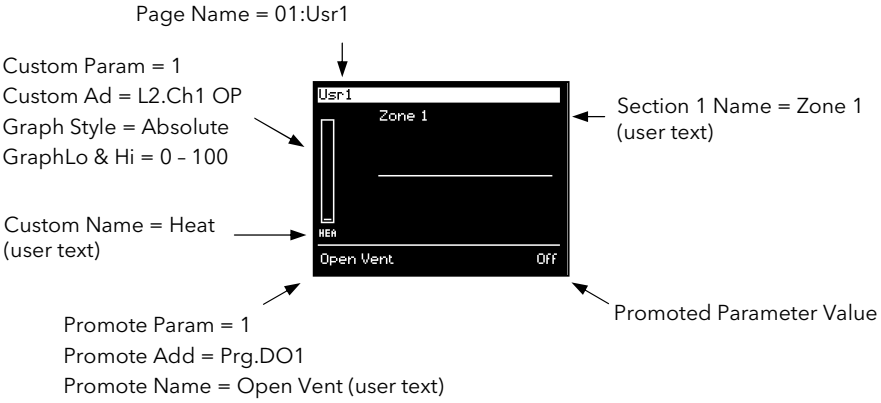


Figure 17-9: Dual Loop User Page Example

17.4 AUTO MANUAL OPERATION FROM A USER PAGE

From software version 6 onwards an additional parameter called 'Auto Man Key' has been made available on all styles of User Page. This means that auto/manual operation can be associated with the user page being displayed. For example, if on 'User Page 1' 'Auto Man Key' = 'LP1', then in operation levels loop 1 can be put into auto or manual mode from User Page 1. Similarly User Page 2 could have 'Auto Man Key' = 'LP2' so that loop 2 can be put into auto or manual mode when User Page 2 is being displayed.

17.5 USER PAGE PARAMETER TABLES

The parameter tables are listed for each type of User Page

17.5.1 Single Loop

Table Number: 17.5.1.	This page allows you to configure a single loop user page		USER PAGES (User Page 1 to 8)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Page Location	Defines where the page is located	None Main Page Loop Summary	None	Conf
Page Style	Defines the style of the page	Parameter List Single Loop Dual loop Triple Loop 1 Triple Loop 2 Status Grid Bar Graph Blank Page		Conf
Auto Man Key	Auto manual button is associated with this user page	None LP1 LP2 LP3	None	Conf
Page Name	Defines the name which appears in the header at the top of the page	Default Text 01:User Text to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Custom Param	Parameter number	1 to 9		Conf
Custom Ad	Parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Custom Name	Parameter name from user text	Default Text 01:User Text to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Promote Param	Promote parameter number	1 to 10		Conf
Promote Add	Promote parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Promote Name	Promote parameter name from user text	Default Text 01:User Text to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Promote Acc	Access level of the promoted parameter	Lev 1 Read Only Lev 1 Alterable Lev 2 Read Only Lev 2 Alterable		Conf
Promote Value	Promoted parameter value	Only appears if a parameter is promoted		

17.5.2 Dual Loop

Table Number: 17.5.2	This page allows you to configure a dual loop user page		USER PAGES (User Page 1 to 8)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Page Location	Defines where the page is located	None Main Page Loop Summary		Conf
Page Style	Defines the style of the page	Parameter List Single Loop Dual loop Triple Loop 1 Triple Loop 2 Status Grid Bar Graph Blank Page		Conf
Auto Man Key	Auto manual button is associated with this user page	None LP1 LP2 LP3	None	Conf
Graph Style	Grows from bottom up Grows from centre	Absolute Error		Conf
Page Name	Defines the name which appears in the header at the top of the page	Default Text 01 to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Section 1 Name	Defines the text which appears in the top section	Default Text 01:User Text to 100: User Text	Default Text	Conf
Section 2 Name	Defines the text in the lower section		Default Text	Conf
Custom Param	Parameter number	1 to 14		Conf
Custom Ad	Parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Custom Name	Parameter name from user text	Default Text 01 to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Custom GraphLo	Graph low point	-999.9 to 9999.9		Conf
Custom GraphHi	Graph high point	-999.9 to 9999.9		Conf
Promote Param	Promote parameter number	1 to 10		Conf
Promote Add	Promote parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Promote Name	Promote parameter name from user text	Default Text 01 to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Promote Acc	Access level of the promoted parameter	Lev 1 Read Only Lev 1 Alterable Lev 2 Read Only Lev 2 Alterable		Conf
Promote Value	Promoted parameter value	Only appears if a parameter is promoted		

17.5.3 Triple Loop 1 and 2

Table Number: 17.5.3	This page allows you to configure a triple loop 1 and 2 user page		USER PAGES (User Page 1 to 8)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Page Location	Defines where the page is located	None Main Page Loop Summary		Conf
Page Style	Defines the style of the page	Parameter List Single Loop Dual loop Triple Loop 1 Triple Loop 2 Status Grid Bar Graph Blank Page		Conf
Auto Man Key	To associate the Auto manual button with this page	None LP1 LP2 LP3	None	Conf
Graph Style	Grows from bottom up Grows from centre	Absolute Error		Conf
Page Name	Defines the name which appears in the header at the top of the page	Default Text 01 to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Section 1 Name	Defines the text which appears in the left section	Default Text 01:User Text to 100: User Text		Conf
Section 2 Name	Defines the text in the mid section		Default Text	Conf
Section 3 Name	Defines the text in the right section		Default Text	Conf
Custom Param	Parameter number	1 to 15 (or 18)		Conf
Custom Ad	Parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Custom Name	Parameter name from user text	Default Text 01 to 100:User T	Default Text	Conf
Custom GraphLo	Graph low point	-999.9 to 9999.9		Conf
Custom GraphHi	Graph high point	-999.9 to 9999.9		Conf
Promote Param	Promote parameter number	1 to 10		Conf
Promote Add	Promote parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Promote Name	Promote parameter name from user text	Default Text 01 to 100:User T	Default Text	Conf
Promote Acc	Access level of the promoted parameter	Lev 1 Read Only Lev 1 Alterable Lev 2 Read Only Lev 2 Alterable		Conf
Promote Value	Promoted parameter value	Only appears if a parameter is promoted		

17.5.4 Status Grid

Table Number: 15.5.4	This page allows you to configure a status grid user page		USER PAGES (User Page 1 to 8)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Page Location	Defines where the page is located	None Main Page Loop Summary		Conf
Page Style	Defines the style of the page	Parameter List Single Loop Dual loop Triple Loop 1 Triple Loop 2 Status Grid Bar Graph Blank Page		Conf
Auto Man Key	Auto manual button is associated with this user page	None LP1 LP2 LP3	None	Conf
Page Name	Defines the name which appears in the header at the top of the page	Default Text 01 to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Custom Param	Parameter number	1 to 12		Conf
Custom Ad	Parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Custom Name	Parameter name from user text	Default Text 01 to 100:User T	Default Text	Conf
Promote Param	Promote parameter number	1 to 10		Conf
Promote Add	Promote parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Promote Name	Promote parameter name from user text	Default Text 01 to 100:User T	Default Text	Conf
Promote Acc	Access level of the promoted parameter	Lev 1 Read Only Lev 1 Alterable Lev 2 Read Only Lev 2 Alterable		Conf
Promote Value	Promoted parameter value	Only appears if a parameter is promoted		

17.5.5 Bar Graph

Table Number: 17.5.5	This page allows you to configure a bar graph user page		USER PAGES (User Page 1 to 8)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Page Location	Defines where the page is located	None Main Page Loop Summary		Conf
Page Style	Defines the style of the page	Parameter List Single Loop Dual loop Triple Loop 1 Triple Loop 2 Status Grid Bar Graph Blank Page		Conf
Auto Man Key	Auto manual button is associated with this user page	None LP1 LP2 LP3	None	Conf
Graph Style	Grows from bottom up Grows from centre	Absolute Error		Conf
Page Name	Defines the name which appears in the header at the top of the page	Default Text 01 to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Custom Param	Parameter number	1 to 10		Conf
Custom Ad	Parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Custom Name	Parameter name from user text	Default Text 01 to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Custom GraphLo	Graph low point	-999.9 to 9999.9		Conf
Custom GraphHi	Graph high point	-999.9 to 9999.9		Conf
Promote Param	Promote parameter number	1 to 10		Conf
Promote Add	Promote parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Promote Name	Promote parameter name from user text	Default Text 01 to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Promote Acc	Access level of the promoted parameter	Lev 1 Read Only Lev 1 Alterable Lev 2 Read Only Lev 2 Alterable		Conf
Promote Value	Promoted parameter value	Only appears if a parameter is promoted		

17.5.6 Parameter List

Table Number: 17.5.6	This page allows you to configure a parameter list user page		USER PAGES (User Page 1 to 8)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Page Location	Defines where the page is located	None Main Page Loop Summary		Conf
Page Style	Defines the style of the page	Parameter List Single Loop Dual loop Triple Loop 1 Triple Loop 2 Status Grid Bar Graph Blank Page		Conf
Auto Man Key	Auto manual button is associated with this user page	None LP1 LP2 LP3	None	Conf
Page Name	Defines the name which appears in the header at the top of the page	Default Text 01 to 100:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Promote Param	Promote parameter number	1 to 10		Conf
Promote Add	Promote parameter address	Modbus Address		Conf
Promote Name	Promote parameter name from user text	Default Text 01 to 50:User Text	Default Text	Conf
Promote Acc	Access level of the promoted parameter	Lev 1 Read Only Lev 1 Alterable Lev 2 Read Only Lev 2 Alterable		Conf
Promote Value	Promoted parameter value	Only appears if a parameter is promoted		

17.5.7 Blank Page

The blank page is available for those applications which require the controller to operate but with the display switched off. A typical application may be for use in a photographic dark room. The Parameter 'Auto Man Key' can still be associated with the Blank Page.

Remember, however, to ensure that the parameter 'Home Timeout' (INSTRUMENT/Display Page) is set to 'None'.

18. CHAPTER 18 ANALOGUE AND MULTIPLE OPERATORS

18.1 WHAT ARE ANALOGUE OPERATORS?

Analogue Operators allow the controller to perform mathematical operations on two input values. These values can be sourced from any available parameter including Analogue Values, User Values and Digital Values. Each input value can be scaled using a multiplying factor or scalar as shown in Figure 18-1.

The parameters to use, the type of calculation to be performed and the acceptable limits of the calculation are determined in Configuration level. In access level 3 you can change values of each of the scalars. In Access levels 2 & 3, provided the Analogue Operators page has been promoted, the input values and the result of the calculation can be read.

The Analogue and Multiple Operators pages are only available if the Toolkit Functions options have been ordered and Analogue and Logic Operators have been enabled in configuration level as described in section 7.2.

Up to 32 separate operations can be performed and a separate page header is provided for each one.

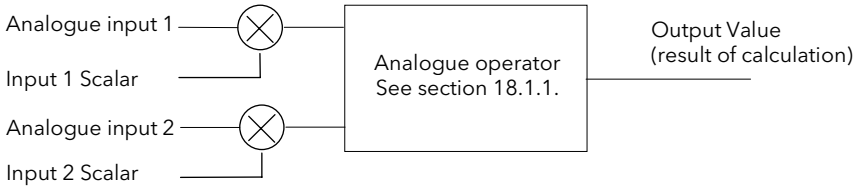
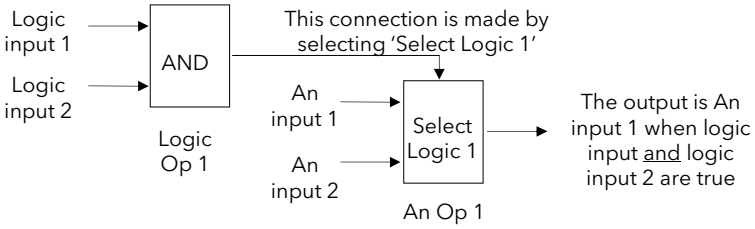


Figure 18-1: Analogue Operators

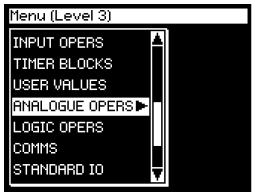
18.1.1 Analogue Operations

The following operations can be performed:

Off	The selected analogue operator is turned off
Add	The output result is the addition of Input 1 and Input 2
Subtract	The output result is the difference Input 1 and Input 2 where Input 1 > Input 2
Multiply	The output result is the multiplication of Input 1 and Input 2
Divide	The output result is Input 1 divided by Input 2
Absolute Difference	The output result is the absolute difference between Input 1 and 2
Select Max	The output result is the maximum of Input 1 and Input 2
Select Min	The output result is the minimum of Input 1 and Input 2
Hot Swap	Input 1 appears at the output provided input 1 is 'good'. If input 1 is 'bad' then input 2 value will appear at the output. An example of a bad input occurs during a sensor break condition.
Sample and Hold	Normally input 1 will be an analogue value and input B will be digital. The output tracks input 1 when input 2 = 1 (Sample). The output will remain at the current value when input 2 = 0 (Hold). Input 2 can be an analogue value and must change from 0 to 100% to provide a sample and hold at the output.
Power	The output is the value at input 1 raised to the power of the value at input 2. I.e. input $1^{input\ 2}$
Square Root	The output result is the square root of Input 1. Input 2 has no effect.
Log	The output is the logarithm (base 10) of Input 1. Input 2 has no effect
Ln	The output is the logarithm (base n) of Input 1. Input 2 has no effect
Exp	The output result is the exponential of Input 1 ($e^{input\ 1}$). Input 2 has no effect
10x	The output result is 10 raised to the power of Input 1, ($10^{input\ 1}$). Input 2 has no effect
Select Logic 1 up to Select Logic 32	Logic Operator 1 to 32 is used to control which Analogue Input is switched to the output of the Analogue Operator. If the output from the logic operator is true input 1 is switched through to the output. If false input 2 is switched through to the output. See example below:-


Logic input 1
Logic input 2
AND
Logic Op 1
This connection is made by selecting 'Select Logic 1'
An input 1
An input 2
Select Logic 1
An Op 1
The output is An input 1 when logic input and logic input 2 are true

18.2 TO CONFIGURE ANALOGUE OPERATORS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [ ] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'ANALOGUE OPERS'**		
3. Press [ ] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'An 1 (to 32)'**		
5. Press [ ] to show the parameter list 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the required parameter 7. Press [ ] to edit the parameter 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value or state		The first parameter is **'Operation'**. The choices are: Off, Add, Subtract, Multiply, Divide, Absolute Difference, Select Max, Select Min, Hot Swap, Sample Hold, Square Root, Log, Ln, Exp, 10x, Select Logic 1 to Select Logic 32.

Remaining parameters in the Analogue Operators list are accessed and adjusted in the same way.

The list of parameters available is shown in the following table

18.2.1 Analogue Operator Parameters

Table Number: 18.2.1.	This page allows you to configure Analogue Operators 1 to 32			ANALOGUE OPERS (Analogue 1 Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Operation	The operation to be performed	See 16.1.1	Off	L1
Input 1 Src	Input 1 source	Modbus address		Conf
Input 1 Scalar	Input 1 scalar	Range depends on Input 1 Src		L3
Input 2 Src	Input 2 source	Modbus address		Conf
Input 2 Scalar	Input 2 scalar	Range depends on Input 2 Src		L3
OP Units	Output units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf
OP Resolution	Output resolution	XXXXX, XXXX.X, XXX.XX, XX.XXX		Conf
Low Limit	Output low limit	Display min to display max		Conf
High Limit	Output high limit	Display min to display max		Conf
Default Enable	Enable fall back	Clip (Bad) Fallback (Bad) Clip (Good) Fallback (Good)		Conf
Default OP	Fall back value	Display min to display max		Conf
Input 1 Value	Input 1 Value	Display min to display max		L1
Input 2 Value	Input 2 Value	Display min to display max		L1
Output Value	output Value	Display min to display max		L1
Status	Status	Good/Bad		L1

The above table is repeated for Analogue Operators 2 to 24.

18.3 MULTIPLE OPERATORS

The multiple input operator block performs analogue operations on up to six inputs. It can be used to find the average, maximum value, minimum value or summation of the inputs. The block will output either the operation result (which may be clipped) or a user-defined Default value depending upon the number and status of the wired inputs and whether they are within a user specified range.

The Casc NumIps Src is a wire that indicates to the block the number of inputs cascaded from a previous block (this is required for a valid average calculation when in cascade). If this input is wired it is assumed that the block is in cascade and that input 1 is used as the cascade input. If the block is in cascade and the status of input1 wire is bad the value given by the Casc NumIps Src wire will not be used in any calculations or added to the Num Ips output.

The select operation input, the Casc NumIps input and the six data inputs are wireable.

The block outputs the result of the operation, the number of inputs used in the calculation and status.

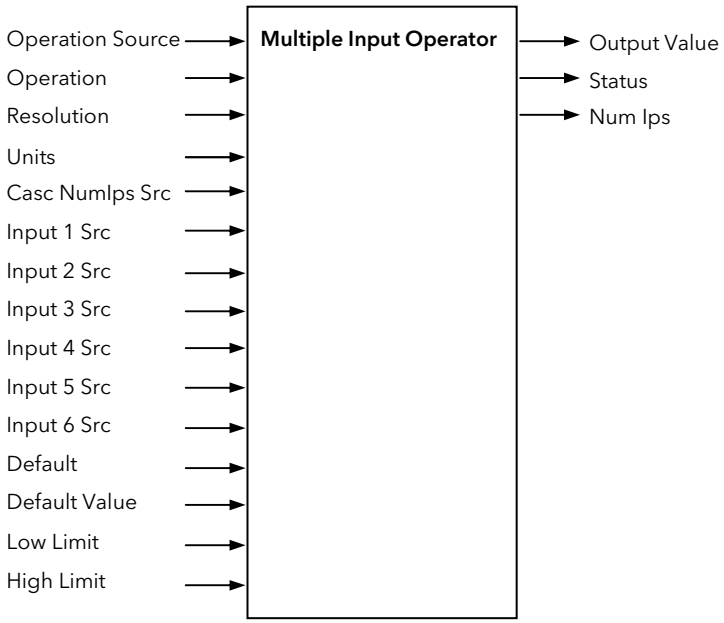


Figure 18-2: Multiple Input Operator Block

18.3.1 Cascading Multiple Input Blocks

If the block is to be used to find an average of more than 6 inputs it can be cascaded to allow this to happen. The correct way to cascade blocks for average is to perform sum operations and then cascade into an Average block at the end of the chain.

The diagram below indicates how to implement an average of more than six values.

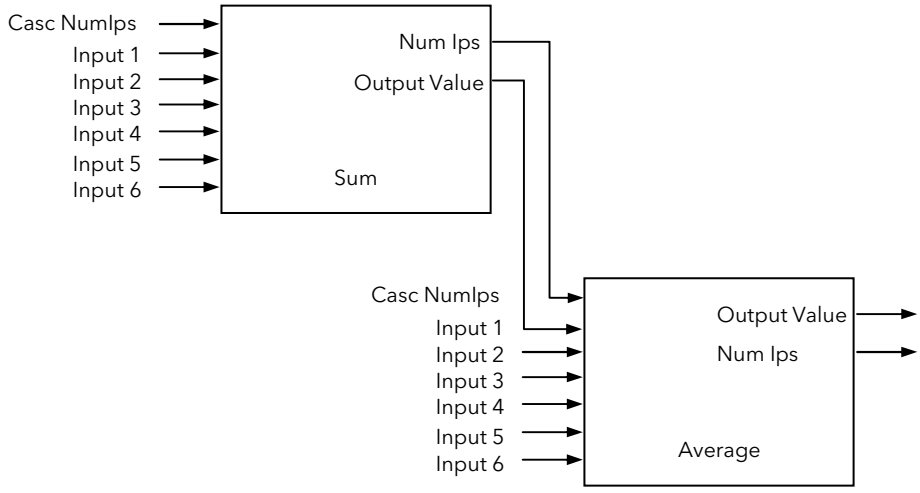


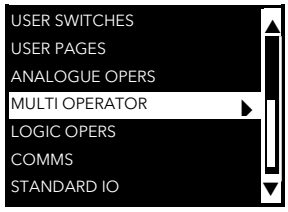
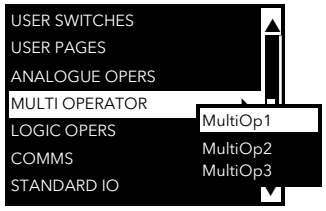
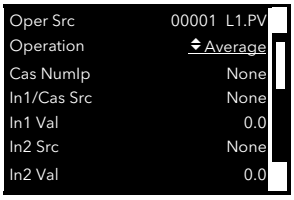
Figure 18-3: Cascading More Than Six Inputs

To average more than eleven inputs two sum blocks can be cascaded into each other and then into an average block.

18.4 TO ENABLE MULTI OPERATORS

In INSTRUMENT OPTIONS Page, enable 'An/Logic Opers'.

18.5 TO LOCATE MULTI OPERATOR PARAMETERS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [ ] to access the page header menu. 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to '**MULTI OPERATOR**'		The actual view may vary depending on options enabled
3. Press [ ] to display sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select the '**MultiOp**' block required		
5. Press [ ] to display parameters 6. Press [▼] or [▼] to scroll to the required parameter 7. Press [ ] to edit the parameter 8. Press [▼] or [▼] to change its value		

The following table lists further parameters in this page ⇓

18.5.1 MULTI OPERATOR MultiOp1 (to 3) Page

Table Number: 18.5.1.	**These parameters allow you to configure the selected multi operator** Press ↻ to select each parameter		**MULTI OPERATOR MultiOp1 (to 3) Page**	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Oper Src	Source for Operation	Modbus address	----- None	Conf
Operation	Selected operation	None	None	Conf
	The output will be the average of up to six inputs	Average		R/O L1
	The output will be the sum of up to six inputs	Sum		
	The output will be the maximum of up to six inputs	Max		
	The output will be the minimum of up to six inputs	Min		
Casc NumIp	Address of the Num Ips parameter in the previous block of a cascade. If not wired, not in a cascade.	Modbus address	----- None	Conf
In1/Cas Src	Source for cascade input. If not in a cascade, Source for input 1	Modbus address	----- None	Conf
In1 Val	Value of input 1			L3
In2 Src	Source for input 2	Modbus address	----- None	Conf
In2 Val	Value of input 2			L3
In3 Src	Source for input 3	Modbus address	----- None	Conf

Table Number: 18.5.1.	These parameters allow you to configure the selected multi operator Press ↻ to select each parameter		MULTI OPERATOR MultiOp1 (to 3) Page

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
In3 Val	Value of input 3			L3
In4 Src	Source for input 4	Modbus address	----- None	Conf
In4 Val	Value of input 4			L3
In5 Src	Source for input 5	Modbus address	----- None	Conf
In5 Val	Value of input 5			L3
In6 Src	Source for input 6	Modbus address	----- None	Conf
In6 Val	Value of input 6			L3
OP Units	Units	See note 1	None	Conf
OP Resolution	Resolution	0 to 4 decimal places or SCI (scientific)	XXXXXX	Conf
Low Limit	Output Low Limit			Conf
High Limit	Output High Limit			Conf
Default	To define the fallback condition See section 18.5.2.	Clip (Bad) Fallback (Bad) Clip (Good) Fallback (Good)	Clip (Bad)	Conf
Default OP	Fallback Value			Conf
Num IPs	Number of inputs used in the calculation			L3
Output value	Result of operation			L3
Status	Determined by Default type.	Good Bad		L3

Note 1 – Units None, °C/°F/K, V, mV, A, mA, PH, mmHg, psi, Bar, mBar, %RH, %, mmWG, inWG, inWW, Ohms, PSIG, %O2, PPM, %CO2, %CP, %/sec, °C/°F/K (rel), Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3, Custom 4, Custom 5, Custom 6, mBar/Pa/Torr, sec, min, hrs, HH:MM:SS.S, HHH:MM:SS, °C,°F,K,/sec,/min,/hr

The above table of parameters is repeated for MultiOp2 and 3.

18.5.2 Use of Default

The table below shows how the default type affects the output result

	Clip (Bad)		Fallback (Bad)		Clip (Good)		Fallback (Good)	
	In range	Out of range	In range	Out of range	In range	Out of range	In range	Out of range
No inputs wired	Output = Default value Status = Bad				Output = Default value Status = Good			
One or more inputs OK	Output = Operation Status = Good	Output = Clip Status = Bad	Output = Operation Status = Good	Output = Default Status = Bad	Output = Operation Status = Good	Output = Clip Status = Good	Output = Operation Status = Good	Output = Default Status = Bad
All wired inputs bad	Output = Default value Status = Bad				Output = Default value Status = Good			

Note

The default value must be within the blocks limits or it will be clipped to those limits

19. CHAPTER 19 LOGIC OPERATORS

Logic Operators allow the controller to perform logical calculations on two input values. These values can be sourced from any available parameter including Analogue Values, User Values and Digital Values.

The parameters to use, the type of calculation to be performed, input value inversion and 'fallback' value are determined in Configuration level. In levels 1 to 3 you can view the values of each input and read the result of the calculation.

The Logic Operators and Patch Wiring pages are only available if the Toolkit Functions options have been ordered and Analogue and Logic Operators have been enabled as described in section 7.2.

Up to 32 separate calculations can be performed and a separate page header is provided for each one.

19.1.1 Logic Operations

The following calculations can be performed:

Off	The selected logic operator is turned off
AND	The output result is ON when both Input 1 and Input 2 are ON
OR	The output result is ON when either Input 1 or Input 2 is ON
XOR	Exclusive OR. The output result is true when one and only one input is ON. If both inputs are ON the output is OFF.
Latch	The output is ON when input 1 turns ON. The output remains ON when input 1 turns OFF. The output is reset to OFF by turning input 2 ON.
Equal	The output result is ON when Input 1 = Input 2
Greater	The output result is ON when Input 1 > Input 2
Less than	The output result is ON when Input 1 < Input 2
Greater or Equal	The output result is ON when Input 1 $\geq$ Input 2
Less or Equal	The output result is ON when Input 1 $\leq$ Input 2

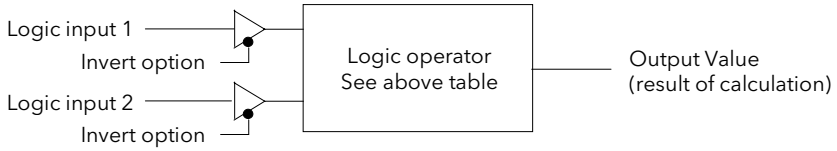
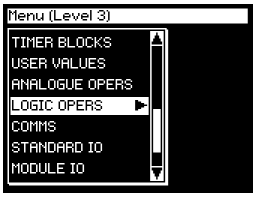
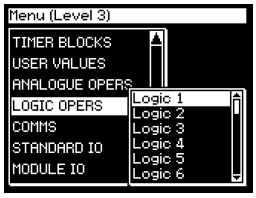
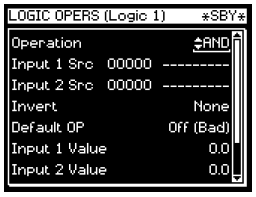


Figure 19-1: Logic Operators

19.2 TO CONFIGURE LOGIC OPERATORS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [Page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'LOGIC OPERS'**		
3. Press [↵] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Logic 1 (to 32)'**		
5. Press [↵] to show the parameter list 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the required parameter 7. Press [↵] to select the parameter 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value or state		The first parameter is **'Operation'**. The choices are: Off, AND, OR, XOR, Latch, Equal, Not Equal, Greater, Less Than, Great or Equal, Less or Equal.

Remaining parameters in the Analogue Operators list are accessed and adjusted in the same way.

The list of parameters available is shown in the following table ⇓

19.2.1 Logic Operator Parameters

Table Number: 19.2.1.	This page allows you to configure Logic Operators 1 to 31			LOGIC OPERS (Logic 1 Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Operation	The logical operation to be performed	See section 19.1.1.	Off	L1
Input 1 Src	Input 1 source	Modbus address		Conf
Input 2 Src	Input 2 source	Modbus address		Conf
Invert	Invert inputs	None Invert Input 1 Invert Input 2 Invert Both		Conf
Default OP	Fall back value (Does not appear if 'Operation' = Off)	0 or 1		Conf
Input 1 Value	Input 1 Value	Off On		L3
Input 2 Value	Input 2 Value	Off On		L3
Output Value	Output Value	Off On Enumerated if 'OP Enum' = User defined text		L3
Status	Status	Good Bad		L3
OP Enum	User string for the first enumeration of the Output Value	Not Enumerated or choose from User Text	Not Enumerated	Conf

The above table is repeated for Logic Operators 2 to 31.

19.3 PATCH WIRING

Patch wiring consists of blocks that allow the user to wire from any parameter to another. Each block consists of a 'Source', 'Destination' and 'Status' element. Each wire status indicates the success / failure of the connection (successful writing of the value or not – failure could be due to the source being outside of the limits of the destination or a type incompatibility etc).

The 2700 controller includes 32 of these wires.

The parameters for the point to point wiring are available for viewing / editing only when the unit is in configuration level access mode, in all other access levels the parameters are only viewable and not editable.

An example of where patch wiring is useful is to be able to wire to a parameter which cannot otherwise be wired – a User Value to an output for example:-

for wire 1…

Wire 1 Src09225 Uval2.val

Wire 1 Dest 00004 L1.Wkg Op

Wire 1 Status Ok

19.3.1 Patch Wiring Parameters

Table Number: 19.3.1.	This page allows you to wire from any parameter to another			PATCH WIRING (Wire 1 Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Wire 1Src	Source address of the parameter to be wired	Modbus address	----- None	Conf
Wire 1 Dest	The destination for Wire 1	Modbus address	----- None	Conf
Wire 1 Status	Wire 1 Status	No Wire Failed OK	No Wire	Conf

The above parameters are repeated for Wire 2 to Wire 32.

20. CHAPTER 20 DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS

20.1 WHAT IS DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS?

Digital Communications (or 'comms' for short) allows the controller to communicate with a PC or a networked computer system. A choice of comms protocol is available and can be selected in configuration level. For standard serial comms, the protocols are MODBUS (or JBUS), or EIBisynch, and modules can be fitted in both the H or J slots. For Profibus, Devicenet and Ethernet, modules can be fitted in the H slot only

For standard serial comms modules can be fitted use which EIA232, EIA485 or EIA422 Transmission Standards. A full description of these standards is given in the 2000 series Communications Handbook, part number HA026230.

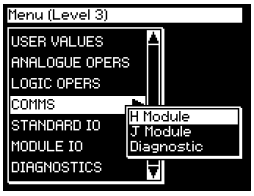
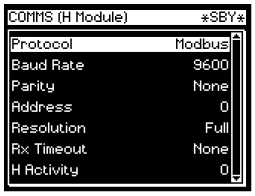
These modules can be fitted into either or both of two positions referred to as the H slot and the J slot which correspond to the rear terminal connections, see also Installation section of the User Guide. Both slot positions may be used at the same time. An example is to allow a multi-drop connection between a number of controllers and a computer running, say, a SCADA package on one comms position, and a separate PC used for configuration purposes on the second comms position. In this example an EIA485 module may be fitted for the multi-drop/SCADA requirement and EIA232 in the second position for the single PC/configuration requirement.

Notes:

1. **When the controller is placed into Configuration Level it is taken 'off line' and placed into a standby state. In this state it no longer monitors or controls the plant.**
2. **EIA232 etc is also commonly known as RS232 etc.**

20.2 TO CONFIGURE COMMUNICATIONS PARAMETERS

The operation of the H and J Modules is the same.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [ ] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'COMMS'**		
3. Press [ ] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'H Module'**		Digital communications modules may be fitted in either one or both positions.
5. Press [ ] to show the parameter list 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the required parameter 7. Press [ ] to select the parameter 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value or state		The first parameter is **'Protocol'**.

Remaining parameters in the Analogue Operators list are accessed and adjusted in the same way.

The list of parameters available is shown in the following table ⇓

20.2.1 H Module Parameters

Table Number: 20.2.1.	This page allows you to configure Digital Communications fitted in slot H.			COMMS (H Module Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Protocol	Comms protocol	Modbus El Bisynch or Profibus [1] Ethernet Devicenet		L3
Baud Rate	Baud rate (not shown if Profibus)	Modbus/ Bisynch: 9600, 19200, 4800 Devicenet: 125K, 250K, 500K	9600	Conf
Parity	Parity (Modbus only)	None Even Odd	None	Conf
Address	Controller address	Devicenet 0 - 63 Bisynch 1 - 99 Modbus 1 -254 Profibus 0 -127 Ethernet 1 - 253	1	L1
Resolution	Comms resolution (Modbus only)	Full Integer	Full	L3
Delay	This introduces a short delay between messages to allow some 'intelligent' RS485 converters to switch between Rx and Tx modes. (not applicable if Ethernet)	No = 0ms Yes = 10ms	No	Conf
Rx Timeout	H Comms timeout value (not shown if Devicenet)	None to 1:00:00		Conf
H Activity	Comms activity in H module	0 or 1		L3 R/O

Note 1 :Profibus replaces EIBisynch if this option has been ordered. For Profibus instruments, only 'Address', 'Protocol' and 'Rx Timeout' parameters are displayed.

20.2.1.1 Ethernet Parameters

Table Number: 20.2.1.1.	These parameters are displayed if Protocol = Ethernet		COMMS (H Module Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Protocol	Comms protocol	Ethernet		L3
Address	Controller address	1 - 253	1	
H Activity	Comms activity in H module	0 or 1		L3 R/O
DHCP enable	See section 20.4	Fixed	Fixed	
		Dynamic		
IP address 1	See section 20.4	0 - 255	192	
IP address 2		0 - 255	168	
IP address 3		0 - 255	111	
IP address 4		0 -255	222	
Subnet mask 1		0 - 255	255	
Subnet mask 2		0 - 255	255	
Subnet mask 3		0 - 255	255	
Subnet mask 4		0 - 255	0	
Default gateway			0	
Default gateway			0	
Default gateway			0	
Default gateway			0	
Pref mstr IP add			0	
Pref mstr IP add			0	
Pref mstr IP add			0	
Pref mstr IP add			0	
MAC address 1			00-00	
MAC address 2			00-00	
MAC address 3			00-00	

20.2.2 J Module Parameters

Table Number: 20.2.2.	This page allows you to configure Digital Communications fitted in slot J.		COMMS (J Module Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Protocol	Comms protocol	Modbus EI Bisynch		L3
Baud Rate	Baud rate	Modbus/ Bisynch: 2400, 4800 and 9600	9600	Conf
Parity	Parity (Modbus only)	None Even Odd	None	Conf
Address	Controller address	Bisynch 1-99 Modbus 1-254	1	L1
Resolution	Comms resolution (Modbus only)	Full Integer	Full	L3
Rx Timeout	J Comms timeout value	None to 1:00:00		Conf
J Activity	Comms activity in J module	0 or 1		L3 R/O

20.3 DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS DIAGNOSTICS

Digital communications diagnostics is available under the Comms page menu. Two parameters are displayed. The H Rx and J Rx messages increments each time a valid message is received via the H Comms Module or J Comms module respectively. The Timed Out messages indicate a comms time out.

They are displayed as follows:

Table Number: 20.3.	This page allows you to monitor the number of times that a particular comms module has received a message			COMMS (Diagnostic Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
H Rx Messages	Valid H comms messages received			L3 R/O
H Rx Timed Out	H Comms timeout			L3 R/O
J Rx Messages	Valid J comms messages received			L3 R/O
J Rx Timed Out	J Comms timeout			L3 R/O
Program Error (1)	Programmer Error codes	0 - 9	0	L3
Network Status (2)	Network status Only shown if the Profibus or Devicenet option is configured in the H Module	Running Initialising Ready Offline Bad GSD (Profibus only)		L3 R/O

Note 1

If an invalid entry is made when setting up programs through the front panel, a pop up error message appears. If the program is set up over digital communications the error messages are displayed as a 'Program Error' as follows:-

Value	Mnemonic Reference	Meaning
0	PRG_ADV_EDIT_NOERROR_MR	No Error
1	PRG_ADV_EDIT_SEGOVER_MR	Not enough segments to perform the PASTE. This error appears if an attempt is made to copy and paste a program which has more segments than the controller has left.
2	PRG_ADV_EDIT_PWRFAIL_MR	The PASTE operation was interrupted by a power fail prior to completion.
3	PRG_ADV_EDIT_NOCOPYPROG_MR	Paste Program: The COPY program has not been selected.
4	PRG_ADV_EDIT_NOPASTEPROG_MR	Paste Program: Paste Program is the same as COPY program.
5	PRG_ADV_EDIT_PROG_RUNNING_MR	Paste Program: Program to be edited is currently running
6	PRG_ADV_EDIT_PROFILE_LOCKED_MR	Paste Program: Edits are not allowed to the program - it is locked.
7	PRG_ADV_EDIT_POOL_INIT_MR	Paste Program: Segment or Program Pool is being initialised (e.g. after a change is made to program mode i.e. ramp rate to time to target or vice versa)
8	PRG_ADV_EDIT_PROGFULL_MR	Program already has the maximum number of allowed segments.
9	PRG_ADV_EDIT_RANGE_ERROR_MR	Segment number is not valid for the program i.e. beyond the end of the program.

Note 2

If Profibus is selected from the previous page, it will be necessary, either to power cycle the controller, or to switch to operation level before this parameter is displayed.

20.4 ETHERNET TECHNICAL NOTE

20.4.1 MAC address display

Each Ethernet module contains a unique MAC address, normally presented as a 12 digit hexadecimal number in the format "aa-bb-cc-dd-ee-ff".

In the **2704** instrument MAC addresses are shown as 3 separate values in the "COMMS" page, each representing 2 pairs of MAC address digits. The first (MAC1) shows the first two pairs of digits (example "AA-BB"), MAC2 shows to the third and fourth pair of MAC digits and MAC3 shows the fifth and sixth pairs of MAC digits. Under iTools these will appear as an integer value, e.g. 3A-E7 will display as 15079.

The MAC address can be found by powering up the instrument and navigating to the "**COMMS**" page.

20.4.2 DHCP Settings

You need to consult with your network administrator to determine if the IP Addresses for the instruments should be fixed or Dynamically allocated by a DHCP server.

If the IP Addresses are to be dynamically allocated then all MAC addresses must be supplied to the network administrator.

For fixed IP Addresses the Network Administrator will provide the IP address as well as a SubNet Mask. These must be configured into the instrument during set-up through the "COMMS" page. Remember to note the allocated addresses.

20.4.3 Instrument setup

Note1: It is recommended that you setup the communications settings for each instrument *before connecting it to any Ethernet network*. This is not essential but network conflicts may occur if the default settings interfere with equipment already on the network. By default the instruments are set to a fixed IP address of 192.168.111.222 with a default SubNet Mask setting of 255.255.255.0.

Note2: IP Addresses are usually presented in the form "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx". Within the instrument *each element of the IP Address are shown and configured separately*.

"**IP address 1**" relates to the first set of three digits, IP address 2 to the second set of three digits and so on. This also applies to the SubNet Mask, Default Gateway and Preferred master IP Address.

20.4.4 Network Connection

Screw the "RJ45" adapter into the instrument "H" port, as shown in the Appendix F.4.3. Use standard CAT5 cable to connect to the Ethernet 10BaseT switch or hub. Use cross-over cable only if connecting one-to-one with a PC acting as network master.

20.4.5 Dynamic IP Addressing

Within the "**Comms**" page of the instrument set the "**DHCP enable**" parameter to "**Dynamic**". Once connected to the network and powered, the instrument will acquire its "IP address", "SubNet Mask" and "Default gateway" from the DHCP Server and display this information within a few seconds.

20.4.6 Fixed IP Addressing

Within the "**Comms**" page of the instrument ensure the "**DHCP enable**" parameter is set to "**Fixed**", then set the IP address and SubNet Mask as required (and defined by your network administrator).

20.4.7 Additional notes

1. The "**Comms**" page also includes configuration settings for "**Default Gateway**", these parameters will be set automatically when Dynamic IP Addressing is used. When fixed IP addressing is used these settings are only required if the instrument needs to communicate wider than the local area network i.e. over the internet.
2. The "**Comms**" page also includes configuration settings for "**Preferred Master**". Setting this IP address to the IP Address of a particular PC will guarantee that one of the 4 available Ethernet sockets will always be reserved for that PC (reducing the number of available sockets for anonymous connections to 3).

20.4.8 iTools Setup

iTools configuration package, version V5.64 or later, may be used to configure Ethernet communications.
The following instructions configure Ethernet.
To include a Host Name/Address within the iTools scan:-

1. Ensure iTools is **NOT** running before taking the following steps
2. Within Windows, click **'Start'**, the **'Settings'**, then '**Control Panel'**
3. In control panel select **'iTools'**
4. Within the iTools configuration settings select the **'TCP/IP'** tab
5. Click the **'Add'** button to add a new connection
6. Enter a name for this TCP/IP connection
7. Click the '**Add'** button to add the host name or IP address (details from your network administrator) in the '**Host Name/ Address'** section
8. Click '**OK'** to confirm the new Host Name/IP Address you have entered
9. Click '**OK'** to confirm the new TCP/IP port you have entered
10. Click '**OK'** again and you should now see the TCT/IP port you have configured within the TCP/IP tab of the iTools control panel settings
11. iTools is now ready to communicate with an instrument at the Host Name/Ip Address you have configured

20.5 ADDENDUM:- 2704 CONTROLLER SPECIALS NUMBER EU0678

APPLIES TO 2704 CONTROLLER FITTED WITH ETHERNET COMMUNICATIONS .

A parameter has been added to 2704 controllers fitted with Ethernet Communications.
The parameter is 'Unit Ident' and appears in the Ethernet Parameters List in the table below.

Unit Ident

The Modbus TCP Specification includes the 'normal' Modbus address as part of the packaged Modbus message – where it is called the Unit Identifier. If such a message is sent to an Ethernet to Serial gateway, the 'Unit Ident' is essential to identify the slave instrument on the serial port. When a stand alone Ethernet instrument is addressed, however, the 'Unit Ident' is not required since the IP address fully identifies the instrument. To allow for both situations the 'Unit Ident Enable' parameter is used to enable or disable checking of the Unit Ident received from TCP. The enumerations produce the following actions:-

- 'Instr': The received Unit Ident must match the Modbus address in the instrument or there will be no response.
- 'Loose': The received Unit Ident value is ignored, thus causing a reply regardless of the received 'Unit Ident.
- 'Strict': The received Unit Ident value must be 0xFF or there will be no reply

The complete parameter list is shown below:-

Table Number: 20.5.1.	**These parameters are displayed if Protocol = Ethernet**			**COMMS (H Module Page)**
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Protocol	Comms protocol	Ethernet		L3
Address	Controller address	1 - 253	1	
Unit Ident	**Unit Identifier enable/disable. See previous section for further explanation**	**Strict Loose Instr**		**Strict**
H Activity	Comms activity in H module	0 or 1		L3 R/O
DHCP enable		Fixed	Fixed	
		Dynamic		
IP address 1		0 - 255	192	
IP address 2		0 - 255	168	
IP address 3		0 - 255	111	
IP address 4		0 -255	222	
Subnet mask 1		0 - 255	255	
Subnet mask 2		0 - 255	255	
Subnet mask 3		0 - 255	255	
Subnet mask 4		0 - 255	0	
Default gateway			0	
Default gateway			0	
Default gateway			0	
Default gateway			0	
Pref mstr IP add			0	
Pref mstr IP add			0	
Pref mstr IP add			0	
Pref mstr IP add			0	
MAC address 1			00-00	
MAC address 2			00-00	
MAC address 3			00-00	

21. CHAPTER 21 2704 MASTER COMMUNICATIONS

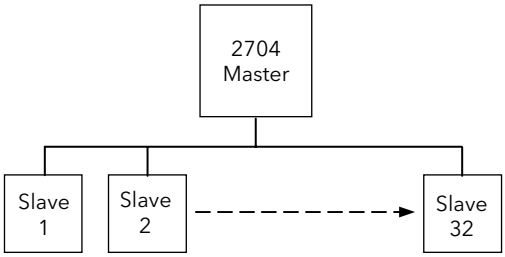
21.1 INTRODUCTION

Software version 5 and above of the 2704 controller supports Master Communications. The objective of the master communications is to allow the 2704 to communicate with any instrument using ModBus interface as a master device, that is, without the need for a supervisory PC. This allows the 2704 to link through digital communications with other products to create a small system solution. There are two methods of communication:-

1. Broadcast Communications
2. Direct Read/Write

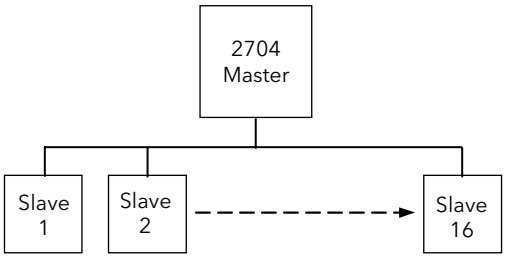
21.1.1 Broadcast Communications

The 2704 master can be connected to up to 32 slaves. The master sends a unit address of 0 followed by the address of the parameter which is to be sent. A typical example might be a multi zone oven where the setpoint of each zone is required to follow, with digital accuracy, the setpoint of a master.



21.1.2 Direct read/write

The 2704 master can be connected to up to eight (sixteen from software version 6 onwards) slaves. Each slave has its own unit address. The master can send data to each slave by sending a unit address followed by the parameter address. It can also request data from a slave. This data may be displayed on the 2704 or used as part of a 2704 control strategy.



21.2 WIRING CONNECTIONS

Before proceeding further, please read Appendix B, Safety and EMC information, in the above handbooks.

The Digital Communications module for the master is fitted in Communications Module slot J and uses terminals JA to JF.

The Digital Communications module for the slave is fitted in either slot J or slot H

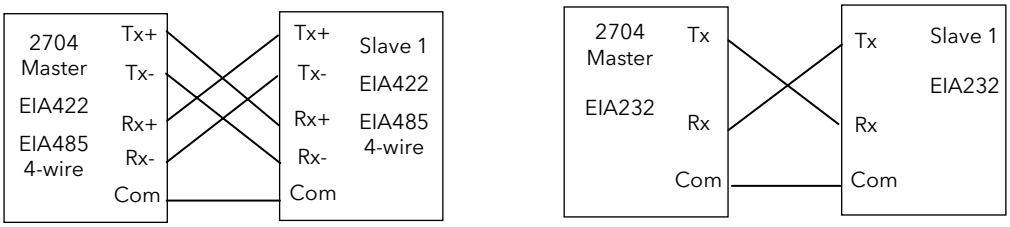
i

EIA422, EIA485 4-wire or EIA232

Rx connections in the master are wired to Tx connections of the slave

Tx connections in the master are wired to Rx connections of the slave

This is shown diagrammatically below



i

EIA485 2-wire

Connect A (+) in the master to A (+) of the slave

Connect B (-) in the master to B (-) of the slave

This is shown diagrammatically below

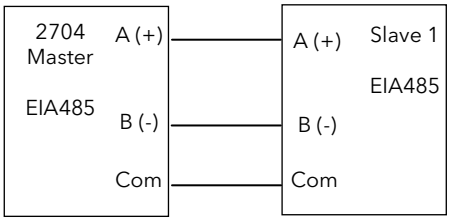
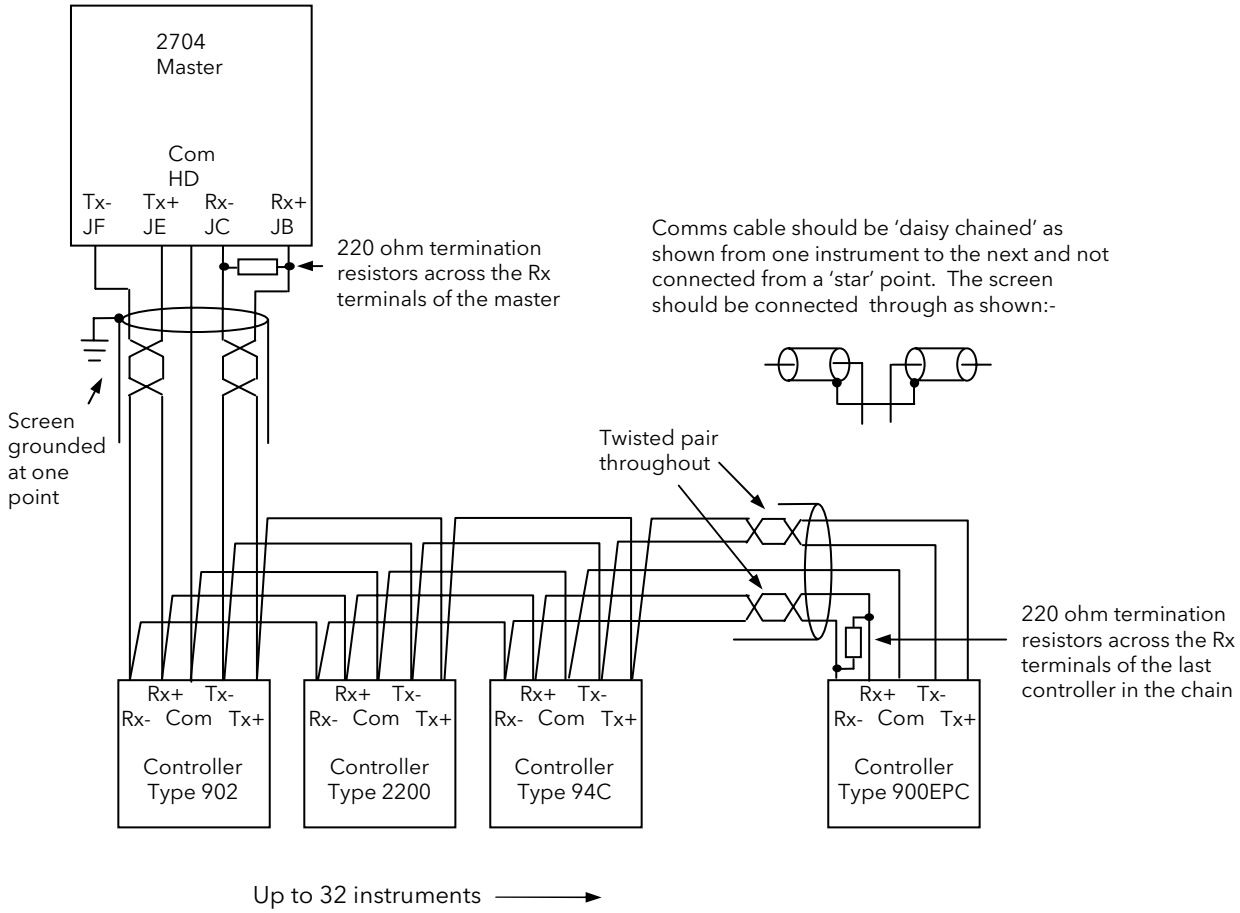


Figure 21-1: Master/Slave Connections

21.2.1 Example Wiring Diagrams for Different Slaves

The following diagrams show connections for a range of different controllers using EIA422. These are representative of typical slaves which may be used but could also include third party products using Modbus protocol.

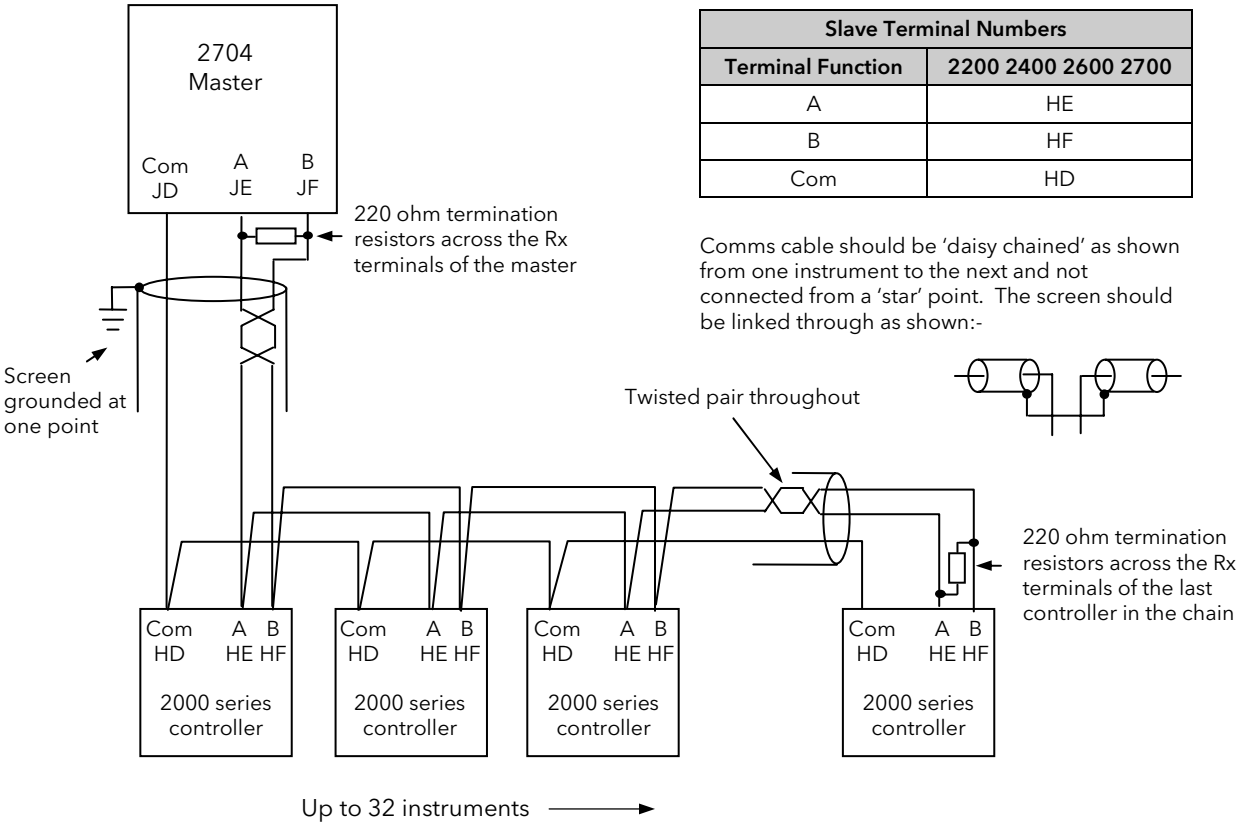
EIA422 or EIA485 4-wire



Slave Terminal Numbers for Different Instruments					
Terminal Function	**2200 2400 2600 2700**	**902/3/4**	**94C**	**900EPC**	**818/5**
Tx+	HE	F1	11	X1	15
Tx-	HF	F2	12	X2	16
Rx+	HB	F3	13	X3	13
Rx-	HC	F4	14	X4	14
Com	HD	F5	15	X5	17

Figure 21-2: Example Wiring RS422 or RS485 4-wire for Different Slaves

EIA485 2-wire



Slave Terminal Numbers	
Terminal Function	**2200 2400 2600 2700**
A	HE
B	HF
Com	HD

Comms cable should be 'daisy chained' as shown from one instrument to the next and not connected from a 'star' point. The screen should be linked through as shown:-

Figure 21-3: Example Wiring RS485 2-wire for 2000 Series Instruments

EIA232

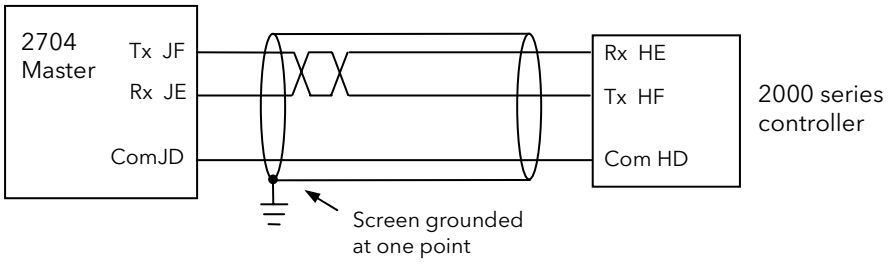


Figure 21-4: Example Wiring RS232 for 2000 Series Instruments

21.3 CROSS-BOARD VERSION

If master communications is fitted as an upgrade, check also the cross-board version before configuring master comms. This parameter can be found in configuration level in 'INSTRUMENT (Info Page) 'CBC Version' and must be greater than 4.7 (displayed as 47).

To configure the controller for master communications it will be necessary to navigate to configuration access level (see Engineering Handbook). A summary of navigation is shown below.

21.4 BASIC NAVIGATION

Parameters are organised into pages. Each page is given a name or header which describes a particular subject – in this case 'MASTER COMMS'	- press [page].to access the page - press [▲] or [▼] to select the header
The MASTER COMMS page is divided into sub-headings, for example 'Parameters', 'Slave 1', etc	- press [scroll].to access - press [▲] or [▼] to select the header
Parameters for the chosen subject are found in these pages	- press [scroll]. again
To change the value of alterable parameters	- press [▲] or [▼]

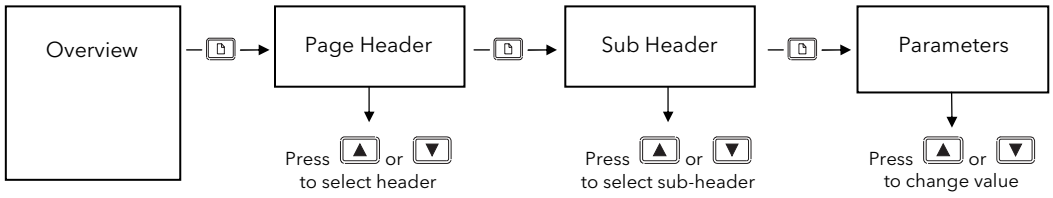


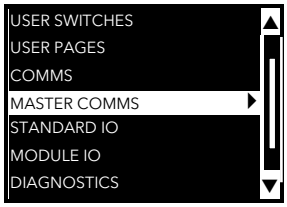
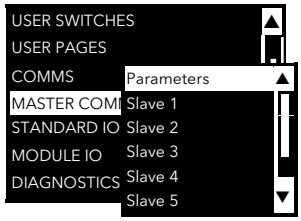
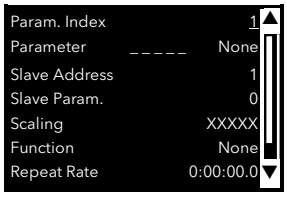
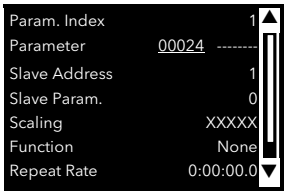
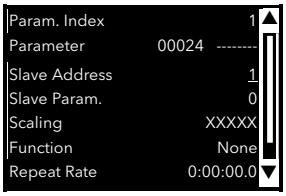
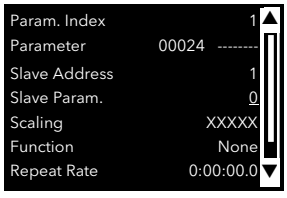
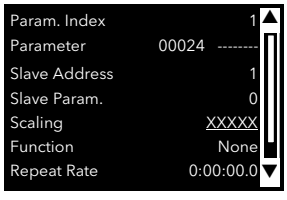
Figure 21-5: Summary of Basic Navigation

Examples are shown in the following two sections

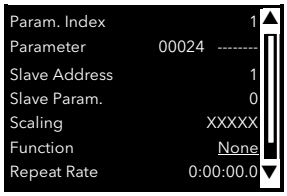
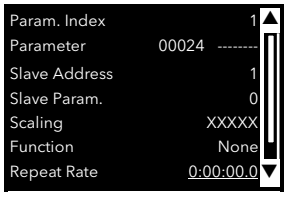
21.5 TO CONFIGURE PARAMETERS

Set controller access level to **'Config'** as described in Chapter 6.

The parameters required to configure a transaction between a local parameter in the master and a parameter in the slave are shown in section 21.7. To configure these parameters:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
5. From any display press [Page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to 'MASTER COMMS'		
7. Press [↵] to display master comms sub-headings 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll around the list and choose 'Parameters'		These parameters configure a transaction between a local parameter in the 2704 and a parameter in a slave.
9. Press [↵] to select the parameters in this list 10. Press [↵] again to edit the required parameter, in this case 'Param Index' 11. Press [▲] or [▼] to index the parameter 1 to 100		The flashing underline indicates the value can be changed
12. Now press [↵] to select the 'Parameter' in the master 13. Press [▲] or [▼] to set the Modbus address of the parameter		Commonly used parameters (see App. D -Engineering Handbook) are followed by a short description. To edit the parameter using this description press [↵] followed by [▲] or [▼]
14. Now press [↵] to select the address of the slave in which to send (or receive) the parameter. 15. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		In this example the slave address is 1. For broadcast comms set this value to 0
16. Now press [↵] to select **'Slave Param**eter' address 17. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		Range 0 to 65535. This full range is only necessary for IEEE. It is necessary to give the full IEEE address to get true floating point. For example in Eurotherm controllers PV = 8002 Hex or 32770. (See also section 21.8.1.)
18. Now press [↵] to select **'Scaling'** for the parameter 19. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		The choices are shown in the Master Comms Parameter Table section 21.7.

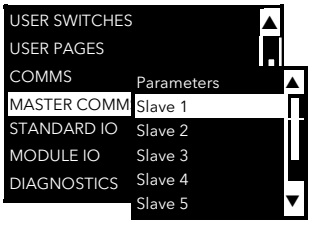
To Configure Parameters (Continued)

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
20. Now press [↵] to select **'Function'** 21. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		This sets the function to be read or write. See section 21.7 for full list of choices
22. Now press [↵] to select **'Repeat Rate'** 23. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		This sets the time between transmissions. 0 = continuous

21.6 TO CONFIGURE SLAVES

The controller must be in 'config' mode.

The parameters required to configure the characteristics of the slaves are shown in section 21.7. To configure the slave parameters:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the sub-headers menu press [▲] or [▼] to select the required slave		Up to eight (sixteen from software version 6 onwards) slaves can be configured
2. Press [↵] to select the parameters in this list 3. Press [↵] again to edit **'Address'** 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		The flashing underline indicates the value can be changed. The slave address is in the range 0 to 254 and does not necessarily have to be the same as the slave number. 0 is reserved for broadcast comms.
Repeat 3 and 4 to set up following parameters.		See section 21.7 for a description of the parameters and settings

21.7 PARAMETER TABLES

Table Number: 21-7a	These parameters configure a transaction between a local parameter in the 2704 and a parameter in a slave.			MASTER COMMS (Parameters)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Param. Index	Select up to 100 parameters to read or write to. (Increased from 38 from version 6 onwards)	1 to 100		
Parameter	The address of the parameter in the 2704 which is to be sent to a slave. OR the address in the 2704 in which a parameter sent from a slave is stored.	modbus address shown as 'address' followed by 'name of commonly used parameter'		
Slave Address	The address of the slave where the parameter is to be sent or received. 0 is broadcast mode in which the parameter is sent to all slaves	0 to 254		
Slave Param.	The parameter address in the slave	0 to 65535		
Scaling	Scaling of the parameter in the slave No. of decimal points Time transmitted as seconds Time transmitted as minutes Time transmitted as hours Time transmitted as tenths of seconds Time transmitted as tenths of minutes Time transmitted as tenths of hours IEEE Float 32 bit (see section 21.8.1) Time transmitted as 32 bit msec	 XXXXX to X.XXXX sss mmm hhh ss.s mm.m hh.h Euro REAL Euro TIME		
Function See Note below	Disables the transaction Set to Read(3) for parameters with modbus function code 3 Set to Read(4) for parameters with modbus function code 4 Set to Write to write at a repeat rate Set to Change Write to write only if the parameter value has changed	None Read(3) Read(4) Write Change Write		
Repeat Rate	Time between transmissions. 0 is continuous	0 to 99:59:59.9		
Status	Set to good on leaving config Slave returned illegal address Slave returned illegal value Slave returned Modbus exception Error in message returned by slave Value read was out of limits or the parameter is unalterable Parameter is OEM secured and will not be transmitted No response from slave The master has no parameter associated with the specified modbus address. Config only Parameter value unchanged since last transmit. Relevant to change write only. The slave does not support block write	Good Addr Error Data Error Error Failed Store Error Secured Timed Out No Parameter Unchanged No Block Write		

Note:-

Function codes are a single byte instruction to the slave describing the action to perform.

Function code 3 – Read Output Registers - allows the binary contents of holding registers to be obtained from the addressed slave.

Function code 4 – Read Input Registers – obtains the contents from input registers of the addressed slave.

For the 2000 range of controllers either function code can be used. For other slaves refer to the manufacturers documentation.

Table Number: 21-7b	These parameters configure the characteristics of the slaves		MASTER COMMS (Slave1 to 8 Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Address	The modbus address of the slave	0 to 254		
Resolution	To set resolution configured in the slave to Full or Integer	Full Integer	Full	
Timeout(msecs)	Time to wait for a response from a slave	20 to 2000	100mS	
Retries	Number of times to retry before the status goes to 'Timed Out'	1 to 100	1	
Status	Offline and Online are user selectable. If the transaction is not completed in the time set by the 'Timeout' parameter in the specified number of 'Retries' the message 'Timeout' will be displayed. The message 'Recovering' appears fleetingly	Offline Online Timed Out Recovering		
Block Write	Set to the maximum block size supported by the slave. For IEEE this must be set to >0 (see also section 21.8.1)	0 to 100	0	

21.8 ADDITIONAL NOTES

21.8.1 IEEE in 2000 Series

This section applies specifically to 2000 series instruments. If the slave is not a series 2000 instrument, a knowledge of the communications format for the slave is required.

One of the main limitations of Modbus is that only 16 bit integer representations of data can normally be transferred. In most cases, this does not cause a problem, since appropriate scaling can be applied to the values without losing precision. If the slave is a series 2000 instrument, where all values are shown on a 4 digit display, values may be transferred in this way. However this has the significant drawback that the scaling factor to be applied needs to be known at both ends of the communications link.

One further problem is that certain 'time' parameters, notably those used for the programmer function can be returned over the communications link in tenths of seconds, minutes or hours. It is possible. therefore, for long durations to overflow the 16 bit Modbus limit.

To overcome these problems, a sub protocol has been defined, using the upper portion of the Modbus address space (8000h and upwards), allowing full 32 bit resolution floating point and timer parameters. This upper area is known as the IEEE region.

This sub-protocol provides two consecutive Modbus addresses for all parameters. The base address for any given parameter in the IEEE region can easily be calculated by taking its normal Modbus address, doubling it, and adding 8000h. For example, the address in the IEEE region of the Target Setpoint (Modbus address 2) is simply

2 x 2 + 8000h = 8004h = 32772 decimal

This calculation applies to any parameter in a series 2000 slave that has a Modbus address.

Access to the IEEE area is made via block reads (Functions 3 & 4) and writes (Function 16). Attempts to use the 'Write a Word' (Function 6) operation will be rejected with an error response. Furthermore, block reads and writes using the IEEE region should only be performed at even addresses, although no damage to the instrument will result in attempting access at odd addresses. In general, the 'number of words' field, in the Modbus frame, should be set to 2 times what it would have been for 'normal' Modbus.

The rules governing how the data in the two consecutive Modbus addresses are organised depending on the 'data type' of the parameter.

See also 'Series 2000 Communications Handbook Part No HA026230..

21.8.2 Configuration mode

The Master does not communicate in configuration mode.

During configuration, if there is no parameter in the master with the specified modbus address the Status is set to 'No Parameter' and on exit from configuration mode all parameters defining that transaction are set to their cold start values.

Parameter Name	Cold Start Value
Parameter	None
Slave Address	1
Slave Parameter	0
Repeat Rate	0:00:00.0
Function	None
Scaling	XXXXX
Status	Good

22. CHAPTER 22 STANDARD IO

22.1 WHAT IS STANDARD IO?

Standard IO refers to the fixed Input/Output connections as listed in Table 22-1 below. Parameters such as input/output limits, filter times and scaling of the IO can be adjusted in the Standard IO pages.

This chapter also describes **User Scaling** of the standard IO.

The controller is calibrated for life against known reference standards during manufacture, but user scaling allows you to offset the 'permanent' factory calibration to either:-

1. Scale the controller to your reference standards
2. Match the calibration of the controller to an individual transducer or sensor
3. To compensate for known offsets in process measurements

These offsets can be made to parameters in the Standard IO pages.

STANDARD IO ▸	(*PV Input* Page)	Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed Process Variable Input connected to terminals VH, VI, V+ and V-. This is, generally, the PV input for a single loop controller.
	(*An Input* Page)	Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed Analogue Input connected to terminals BA, BB and BC. This is the high level input from a remote source.
	(*AA Relay* Page)	Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed Relay output connected to terminals AA, AB and AC. This relay may be used as an alarm relay. a time proportioning control output or valve raise or lower..
	(*Dig IO1* Page) to (*Dig IO7* Page)	Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed digital IO connected to terminals D1 to D7 and DC.
	(Diagnostic Page)	Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed digital Input connected to terminal D8 and DC.

Note:-

Names shown in *italics* can be customised.

Table 22-1: Standard I/O

22.2 PV INPUT

Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed Process Variable Input connected to terminals VH, VI, V+ and V-. This is the PV input for a single loop controller.

22.2.1 To Scale the PV Input

Scaling of the PV input applies to linear process inputs only, eg linearised transducers, where it is necessary to match the displayed reading to the electrical input levels from the transducer. PV input scaling is not provided for direct thermocouple or RTD inputs.

Figure 22-1 shows an example of input scaling. where an electrical input of 4-20mA requires the display to read 2.5 to 200.0 units.

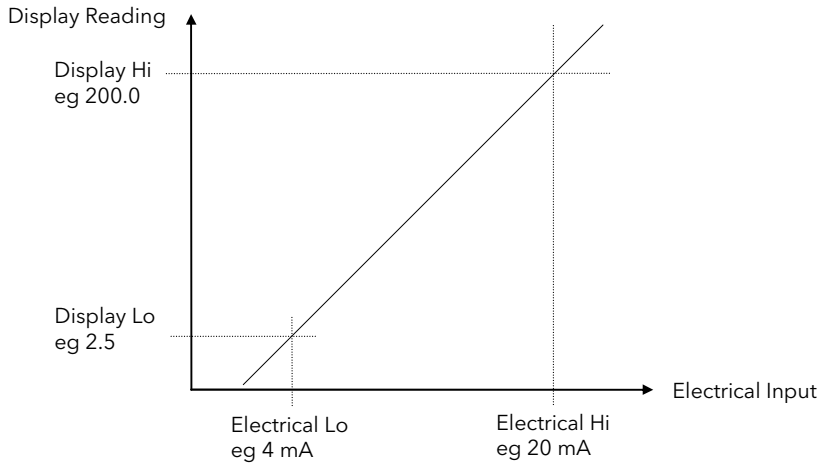
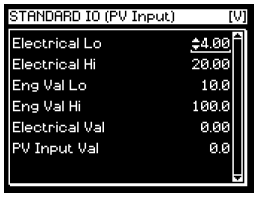
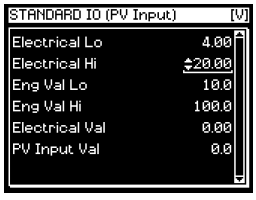
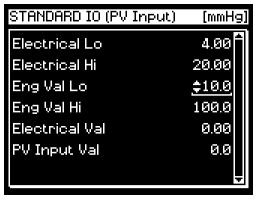
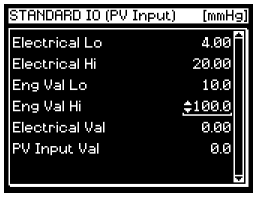


Figure 22-1: Input Scaling (Standard IO)

22.2.2 Offset

Offset has the effect of moving the whole curve, shown in Figure 22-1, up or down about a central point. The 'Offset' parameter is found in the STANDARD IO (PV Input) page as shown in the controller view in Section 22.2.4.

To scale a linear PV Input proceed as follows: (This may be carried out at Access Level 3)

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'STANDARD IO'**		The PV Input is connected to terminals VH, V+, V-.
3. Press [↵] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'PV Input'** (if necessary)		
5. Press [↵] to show '**Electrical Lo'** 6. Press [↵] again to select '**Electrical Lo'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust the value		Set this value to the lowest level of the input, eg 4mA. The units displayed here may be mV, V, mA or Ohms depending on what type of input is configured.
8. Press [↵] to select '**Electrical Hi'** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust the value		Set this value to the highest level of the input , eg 20mA.
10. Press [↵] to select '**Eng Value Lo'** 11. Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust the value		Set up the displayed value (instrument minimum span) which corresponds to the Electrical Lo input, eg 2.50
12. Press [↵] to select '**Eng Value Hi'** 13. Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust the value		Set up the displayed value (instrument maximum span) which corresponds to the Electrical Hi input, eg 200.00

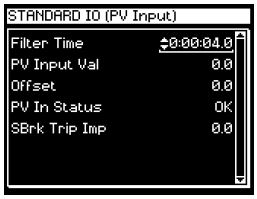
22.2.3 To View and Change Input Filter Time

An input filter provides damping of the input signal. This may be necessary to prevent the effects of excessive noise on the PV input.

The filter may be turned off or set in steps of 0.1sec up to 10mins

If the input is configured to accept process levels, eg 4-20mA, as in the above example, the parameter which follows 'Eng Value Hi' is 'Filter Time'.

For thermocouple and RTD inputs the first parameter to be displayed is the Input Filter Time, since the input scaling parameters do not appear for specific linearised inputs.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the previous display press [⟳] to select '**Filter Time'** 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust the **Filter Time** between Off and 10mins		

The following table gives the full list of parameters available under the PV Input list header. This list of parameters set up the fixed Process Variable Input connected to terminals VH, VI, V+ and V-. This is the PV input for a single loop controller.

⇓

22.2.4 Standard IO PV Input Parameters

Table Number: 22.2.4.	This page allows you to configure the PV Input Parameters		STANDARD IO (*PV Input* Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Channel Type	Input/Output type	RTD, ThermocouplePyrometer 40mV, 80mV, mA, Volts, HZVolts, Log 10		Conf
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
Units	Engineering units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf
CJC Type	CJC type Only shown if 'Channel Type' = 'Thermocouple'	Internal 0°C 45°C 50°C None	Internal	Conf
SBrk Impedance	Sensor break enable for certain high output impedance sensors	Off Low High	Off	Conf
SBrk fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Down scale Up Scale		Conf
The following four parameters do not appear for 'Channel Type' = 'Thermocouple' or 'RTD'				
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range		L3.
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	Input range		L3
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Display		L3
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	range		L3
Filter Time	PV input filter time.	⇕ Off to 0:10:00.0		L3
Emissivity	Emissivity. Only appears if the PV input is configured as a pyrometer	Off to 1.00		L3

Table Number: 22.2.4.	This page allows you to configure the PV Input Parameters		STANDARD IO (*PV Input* Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the PV input	Input range		R/O L1
PV Input Val	The current value of the PV input in engineering units.	Display range		R/O L1
Offset	Transducer scaling offset.	Display range		R/O L3
CJC Temp	CJC Temperature. Only appears if the PV input is configured for thermocouple	Display Range		R/O L1
PV In Status	PV input status	See Appendix D		R/O L1
SBrk Trip Imp	Sensor break value	0 to 100% See section 22.3.3.		R/O L1
PV Input Name	User defined name for PV input. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.	User text	Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Calibration state	See Chapter 27		Conf
Rear Term Temp	Temperature at the rear terminals	Auto See note 2		Conf

Notes:

1. **Input Linearisation**

   J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type, PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3.

2. **Rear Terminal Temperature**

Auto means that the controller automatically measures the temperature at the rear terminals for use with cold junction compensation. The temperature of the rear terminals can be measured externally, if required, and this measured value can then be entered manually when calibrating CJC.

22.3 ANALOGUE INPUT

Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed Analogue Input connected to terminals BA, BB and BC. This is the high level input from a remote source.

22.3.1 To Scale the Analogue Input

The procedure is the same as that described in section 22.2.1.

22.3.2 Standard IO *Analogue Input* Parameters

Table Number: 22.3.2.	This page allows you to configure the Analogue Input Parameters			STANDARD IO (*An Input* Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Channel Type	Input/Output type	Volts mA		Conf
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
SBrk fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Down scale Up Scale		Conf
SBrk Impedance	Sensor break enable for certain high output impedance sensors	Off Low High	Off	Conf
Units	Engineering units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range. Units depend on configuration		L3.
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level			L3
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Display range. Units depend on configuration		L3
Eng Value Hi	High display reading			L3
Filter Time	PV input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		L3
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the PV input	Input range		R/O
An Input Val	The current value of the Analogue input in engineering units *An Input* can be a user defined name.	Display range		R/O
Offset	Transducer scaling offset.			
An In Status	Status of the analogue input	OK Diagnostic messages are displayed to show the state of the Input if not OK. See Appendix D		R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Sensor break value	0 to 100% See section 22.3.3.		R/O
An Input Name	User defined name for the analogue input. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Calibration state	See Chapter 27		Conf

Notes

1. **Input Linearisation**

   J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type, PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3.

22.3.3 Sensor Break Value

The controller continuously monitors the impedance of a transducer or sensor connected to any analogue input (including plug in modules described in the following chapter). This impedance, expressed as a percentage of the impedance which causes the sensor break flag to trip, is a parameter called 'SBrk Trip Imp' and is available in the parameter lists associated with both Standard and Module inputs of an analogue nature.

The table below shows the typical impedance which causes sensor break to trip for various types of input and high and low 'SBrk Impedance parameter settings. The impedance values are only approximate (±25%) as they are not factory calibrated.

PV Input (Also applies to PV Input module and Dual PV Input module)		**Analogue Input**	
mV input (±40mV or ±80mV)		**Volts (±10V)**	
SBrk Impedance – High SBrk Impedance - Low	~ 10KΩ ~ 3KΩ	SBrk Impedance – High SBrk Impedance - Low	~ 50KΩ ~ 10KΩ
Volts input (-3V to +10V) and HZ Volts input (-1.5 to 2V)			
SBrk Impedance – High SBrk Impedance - Low		~ 500KΩ ~ 100KΩ	

22.4 FIXED RELAY OUTPUT

Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed Relay output connected to terminals AA, AB and AC. This relay may be used as an alarm relay. or a time proportioning control output.

22.4.1 TO SCALE THE FIXED RELAY OUTPUT

If the relay is used as a time proportioning control output this means that the relay will, by default, be fully off for 0% power demand, fully on for 100% power demand and equal on/off times at 50% power demand.

As with input scaling you can change these limits to suit the process. It is important to note, however, that these limits are set to safe values for the process. For example, for a heating process it may be required to maintain a minimum level of temperature. This can be achieved by applying an offset at 0% power demand which will maintain the relay on for a period of time. Care must be taken to ensure that this minimum on period does not cause the process to overheat

These offsets can be made to parameters in the 'AA Relay' pages. The above example is shown in Figure 22-2

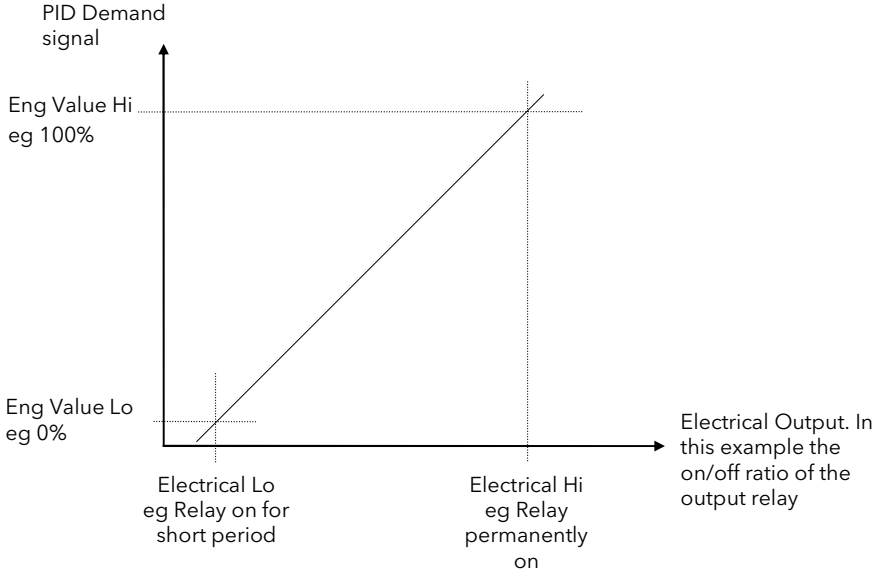
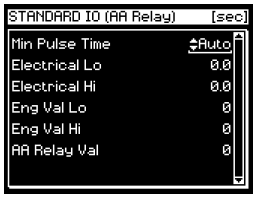
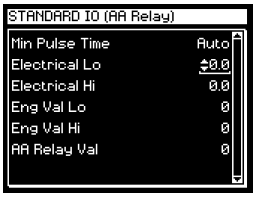
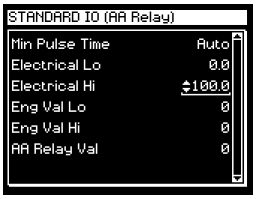
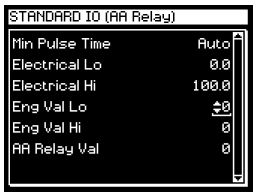
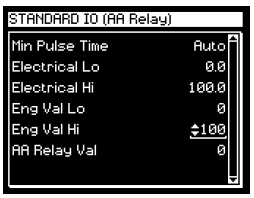

PID Demand signal
Eng Value Hi eg 100%
Eng Value Lo eg 0%
Electrical Output. In this example the on/off ratio of the output relay
Electrical Lo eg Relay on for short period
Electrical Hi eg Relay permanently on

Figure 22-2: Fixed Relay Scaling

To set up and scale the Fixed Relay Output proceed as follows: (This can be done in Level 3)

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'STANDARD IO'**		The AA Relay is connected to terminals AA,AB and AC
3. Press [↵] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the **AA Relay Page**		
5. Press [↵] to show the AA Relay parameter list 6. Press [↵] again to select **'Min Pulse Time'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose **'Auto'** or a minimum on/off time for the relay		This parameter applies to time proportioning outputs only. Auto = 0.05sec
8. Press [↵] to select '**Electrical Lo'** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust the value		If the relay is wired to the PID output demand signal, as shown in Figure 20-2, set this to a low value, normally 0.
10. Press [↵] to select '**Electrical Hi'** 11. Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust the value		If the relay is wired to the PID output demand signal, as shown in Figure 20-2, set this to a high value, normally 100.
12. Press [↵] to select '**Eng Value Lo'** 13. Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust the value		Set up this value so that the relay switches fully off corresponding to the Electrical Low setting
14. Press [↵] to select '**Eng Value Hi'** 15. Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust the value		Set up this value so that the relay switches fully on corresponding to the Electrical High setting

The following table gives the full list of parameters available under this list header ⇓

22.5 THE FIXED RELAY OUTPUT PARAMETERS

These parameters configure the fixed relay output connected to terminals AA, AB and AC. This relay may be used as an alarm, time proportioning or On/Off control output.

22.5.1 Standard IO *AA Relay* Parameters

Table Number: 22.5.1	This page allows you to configure the Fixed Relay Parameters		STANDARD IO (*AA Relay*)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Channel Type	Function of the relay	On/Off Time Proportion Valve Lower Valve Raise	As order code	Conf
Wire Src	AA relay source	Modbus address		Conf
Invert	Relay energised Relay de-energised	Normal Inverted		Conf
The following five parameters only appear if 'Channel Type' = 'Time Proportion'				
Min Pulse Time	Minimum relay on or off time	Auto = 0.05s or 0.1 to 999.9	20sec	L3
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range		L3
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	Input range		L3
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Display		L3
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	range		L3
AA Relay Value [1] *AA Relay* can be user text.	Status of the relay output See note 1	-100 to 100 -ve values not used	(editable if not wired)	R/O L3
Electrical Val	The current (analogue) value of the output			R/O L3
Channel Name	A name which replaces *AA Relay* from User Text			Conf
Relay AA Val Enu See also section 16.6.	Enumeration for the relay AA value on/off only	Not Enumerated	Not Enumerated	Conf
Elec Value Enum See also section 16.6.	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off only	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50		Conf

Note 1:

If the relay is wired to a source such as a loop output (Ch1 or Ch2) the 'value' will read in a positive direction only, i.e. it does not signify heating or cooling but just the position of the relay.

If configured for control 0 = Relay off; 100 = on; 1 to 99 = time proportioning

If configured as On/Off 0 = Relay Off; Any other value (+ or -) = Relay On

22.6 STANDARD IO DIG I/OPARAMETERS

This page allows access to parameters which set up the fixed digital IO connected to terminals D1 to D7 and DC.

The standard digital IO1 to 7 can either be input or output and is set up in configuration level. The choices are:-

1. Digital Input IO configured as a digital input
2. On/Off IO configured as a digital output
3. Time Proportion IO configured as a control output
4. Valve Lower IO configured to raise the output of a motor valve controller
5. Valve Raise IO configured to lower the output of a motor valve controller

The parameters which appear in the Dig IO pages depend upon the function of the digital IO configured. These are shown in the following section.

When the logic outputs are configured as time proportioning outputs, they can be scaled as described in section 22.4.1.

22.6.1 Standard *Digital IO* Parameters

Table Number: 22.6.1.	**This page allows you to configure the Digital I/O Parameters**			**STANDARD IO (*Dig IO1 to 7* Page)**
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Channel Type	Input/Output type	Digital Input On/Off Time Proportion Valve Lower Valve Raise		Conf
Wire Src	Source of the signal to operate a digital output. This parameter does not appear for digital input	Modbus address		Conf
Invert	Normal/inverted I/O	Normal Inverted		Conf
The following five parameters only appear if 'Channel Type' = 'Time Proportioning'				
Min Pulse Time	Minimum logic on or off time.	Auto = 0.05s or 0.1 to 999.9s	20sec	L3
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range		L3
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	Input range		L3
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Display		L3
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	range		L3
Dig IO1 Val (1)	If Channel Type = Digital Input this reads the state of the input	0 = Off 1 = On		R/O L1
	If configured as an output this reads the desired output value	or -100 to 100		
Electrical Value (1)	If Channel Type = Digital Input this value does not appear			R/O L3
	If configured as an output this reads the actual electrical value.	0 or 1		
Channel Name	A name which replaces *Dig IOx* from User Text			Conf
Dig IO Enum See also section 16.6.	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off output or Digital Input only	Not Enumerated	Not Enumerated	Conf
Elec Value Enum See also section 16.6.	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off only	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50		Conf

Note 1:

Only settings between 0 & 100 are valid for Dig IO-Val. The corresponding Electrical value is shown in the following table:-

Channel Type	Dig IO- Val	Electrical Value
On/Off	0 to 100	0 to 1
Time Proportion	0 to 100	0.00 (off) to 1.00 (on). Time proportions between 0.00/1.00 for other positive settings of Dig IO- Val
Valve Raise/Lower	0 to 100	0.00 to 100.00

22.7 STANDARD IO DIAGNOSTIC PARAMETERS

This page allows you to configure a name for the digital input and to inspect its status or that of the IO Expander if fitted. The parameters are shown in the following table.

22.7.1 Standard IO Diagnostic Parameters Table

Table Number: 22.7.1.	This page allows you to inspect Digital Input 8 or IO Expander status	STANDARD IO (Diagnostic Page)		
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Dig In8 Val	Status of digital input 8	Off On		R/O
Dig In E1 Val	Status of IO expander input	Off On		R/O
Bad Channels	A bad input or output will be displayed as ■ and will occur if the I/O is either a short or open circuit	□□□□□□□ to ■■■■■■■		R/O
Dig In 8 Name	A name which replaces *Dig In8* from User Text			Conf

23. CHAPTER 23 MODULE IO

23.1 WHAT IS MODULE IO?

Additional analogue and digital IO is provided by plug in IO modules, which can be fitted in any of five slots (see also 'Introduction' Chapter 1).

The type and position of any modules fitted in the controller is shown in the order code printed on the label on the side of the controller. This can be checked against the order code in Appendix A.

The module part number is printed on the side of the plastic case of the module.

Modules are available as single channel, two channel or three channel IO as listed below:-

Module	Order Code	Idents Displayed As	Number of Channels	Module Part No.
Change over relay 2 pin relay Dual relay	R4 R2 RR	Form C Relay Form A Relay Dual Relay	1 1 2	AH025408U002 AH025245U002 AH025246U002
Triac Dual triac	T2 TT	Triac Dual Triac	1 2	AH025253U002 AH025409U002
DC control	D4	DC Control	1	AH025728U003
DC retransmission	D6	DC Retrans	1	AH025728U002
PV input	PV	PV Input	1	AH026359U002
Triple logic input Triple contact input	TL TK	Tri-Logic IP Tri-Contact IP	3 3	AH025317U002 AH025861U002
Triple logic output	TP	Tri-Logic OP	3	AH025735U002
24V transmitter supply	MS	Transmitter PSU	1	AH025863U002
5VdcTransducer power supply	G3	Transducer PSU	1	AH026306U002
10VdcTransducer power supply	G5	Transducer PSU	1	AH026306U002
Potentiometer input	VU	Pot Input	1	AH025864U002
Analogue input module (2604/2704 dc Input)	AM	DC Input	1	AH025686U004
Dual PV input (Dual Probe Input)	DP	Dual PV In	2	AH026359U003
Isolated single logic output	LO	Sin-Logic OP	1	AH025735U002
Dual DC output	DO	Dual DC Out	2	AH027249U002
High resolution DC retransmission output	HR	HR DC Out	2	AH027249U003
TDS Input *		TDS Input	1	AH027720U002
4-wire Pt100 Input	PH	4Wire PT100	1	AH028494U002
4-wire Pt25 Input	PL	4Wire PT25	1	AH028494U003

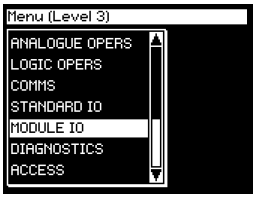
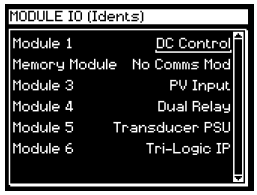
*** The TDS Input Module is designed primarily for use in boiler control applications and is described in Chapter 28.**

Table 23-1: I/O Modules

Parameters for the above modules, such as input/output limits, filter times and scaling of the IO, can be adjusted in the Module IO pages. The procedures are very similar to those covered in Chapter 22 'STANDARD IO'.

23.2 MODULE IDENTIFICATION

To identify which module is fitted into which slot:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'MODULE IO'**		
3. Press [↵] to show Sub-headers		Idents — Summary of modules fitted *Module XA* — X = Module number *Module XB* — A, B, C = *Module XC* — Single, Two, Three, channels respectively The above is repeated for every module fitted. The name of the module is user configurable
4. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the required sub-header 5. Press [↵] to select the parameter list for the required sub-header		This view shows the 'Ident' page which is read only. If a module is fitted in any module position, it's type, as listed in Table 23-1, is displayed. 'No Module' is displayed if the slot is empty.

The full list of parameters available under these list headers is shown in the following tables ⇓

23.2.1 Idents Page

Table Number: 23.2.1.	This page allows you to read the type of module fitted.	MODULE IO (Idents Page)		
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Module Message**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Module 1	Actual module fitted	See note 1		L1 R/O
Memory Module	Memory module position	No Module		L1 R/O
Module 2	Actual module fitted	See note 1		L1 R/O
Module 3	Actual module fitted	See note 1		L1 R/O
Module 4	Actual module fitted	See note 1		L1 R/O
Module 5	Actual module fitted	See note 1		L1 R/O
Module 6	Actual module fitted	See note 1		L1 R/O

The module name is configurable by the user

Note 1:-

Module Messages

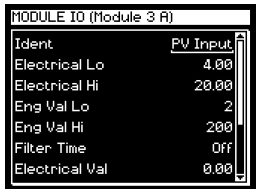
No Module	Bad Ident	Form C Relay	Form A Relay	Triac
Dual Relay	Dual Triac	DC Control	DC Retrans	PV Input
Tri-Logic IP	Tri-Contact IP	Tri-Logic OP	Transmitter PSU	Transducer PSU
DC Input	Dual PV Input	Sin-Logic OP	Pot Input	Diff Input
DC Control	HR DC Out	Dual DC Out	4W PT100	4W PT25

These are also listed in Table 23-1.

23.3 MODULE IO PARAMETERS

Each module has a unique set of parameters which depend on the function of the module fitted.

To view and alter parameters associated with each module:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the MODULE IO sub-header display press ▲ or ▼ to choose the required module		If a module is not fitted in the selected position the sub header is not displayed (A), (B), (C) refer to the output channel of a single, dual or triple module respectively The name of the module is user configurable
2. Press ↵ to show the list of parameters for the selected module 3. Press ↵ again to select the first parameter 4. Press ↵ again to scroll to a parameter which you wish to change 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to change its value		If the channel is not used the message 'No Parameters' is displayed

Tables in the following pages show the parameters available for different module types

23.3.1 DC Control and DC Retransmission

Table Number: 23.3.1.	This page allows you to configure a DC Output module for control or retransmission. This does not apply to the Dual DC or High Resolution Retransmission output modules	MODULE IO (Module *1*(A))

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Ident	Module identification	DC Output		R/O
Channel Type	I/O type	Volts mA		Conf
Wire Src	Source to which the channel is wired	Modbus address		Conf
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range		L3. See output scaling
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range		
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range		
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range		
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	0 to 10.00V or 0 to 20mA		R/O L3
Module 1A Val	The current output value in operation mode. *'Module 1A'* can be a user defined text.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3
Cal Trim	Analogue output calibration trim. Only available in calibration mode. See section 27.5.1.			Conf
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Calibration status	See Chapter 27		R/O
This module has a single output. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

23.3.2 Relay Output

Table Number: 23.3.2.	This page allows you to configure a Relay Output module. Types included:- Form C Relay; Form A Relay; Dual Relay.			MODULE IO (Module *1*(A) Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident	Module identification	Relay		R/O
Channel Type	Channel/Module Type	On/Off Time Proportion Valve Lower Valve Raise		Conf
Wire Src	Wire source	Modbus address		Conf
Invert	Relay energised Relay de-energised	Normal Inverted		Conf
The following five parameters only appear if Channel Type is set to Time Proportion.				
Min Pulse Time	Minimum relay on or off time	Auto = 0.05s or 0.07 to 150.00	5 sec	L3 Only shown for time prop. O/Ps
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range		
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range		
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range		
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range		
Elect Val Enum	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off only. See also 'Custom Enumerations section 16.6	Not Enumerated	Not	Conf
Eng Value Enum	Enumeration for the engineering value on/off only. See also 'Custom Enumerations section 16.6	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Enum-erated	Conf
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	0.00 or 1.00 (time prop)		R/O L3
Module 1A Val	The current output value in operation mode. *'Module 1A'* can be user text.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6		Default Text	Conf
The changeover relay and 2 pin relay are single output modules. The parameters above are displayed under 'channel' (A) only. Dual Relay has two outputs. The parameters above are displayed under Channel A and C.				

23.3.3 Triac Output

Table Number: 23.3.3.	This page allows you to configure a Triac Output module. Types included:- Triac; Dual Triac			MODULE IO (Module *1*(A) Page)
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident	Module identification	Triac		R/O
Channel Type	Channel/Module Type	On/Off Time Proportion Valve Lower Valve Raise		Conf
Wire Src	Wire source	Modbus address		Conf
Invert	Invert triac operation	Normal Inverted		Conf
The following five parameters only appear if Channel Type is set to Time Proportion.				
Min Pulse Time	Minimum triac on or off time	Auto = 0.05s or 0.07 to 150.00	5 sec	L3 Only shown
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range		for
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range		time
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range		prop.
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range		O/Ps
Elect Val Enum See	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off only. See also 'Custom Enumerations section 16.6	Not Enumerated	Not	Conf
Eng Value Enum	Enumeration for the engineering value on/off only. See also 'Custom Enumerations section 16.6	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Enum-erated	Conf
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	0.00 or 1.00 (time prop)		R/O L3
Module 1A Val	The current output value in operation mode. *'Module 1A'* can be user defined text.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6		Default Text	Conf
The triac output is a single output module. The parameters above are displayed under 'channel' (A) only. Channel (B) and channel (C) show 'No IO Channel'. The dual triac has 2 outputs. The parameters above are displayed under Channel (A) & (C)				

23.3.4 Triple Logic Output and Single Isolated Logic Output

Table Number: 23.3.4.	This page allows you to configure a Logic Output module.		MODULE IO (Module *1*(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident	Module identification	Logic Output		R/O
Channel Type	Channel/Module Type	On/Off Time Proportion Valve Lower Valve Raise		Conf
Wire Src	Wire source	Modbus address		Conf
Invert	Invert logic operation	Normal Inverted		Conf
The following five parameters only appear if Channel Type is set to Time Proportion.				
Min Pulse Time	Minimum on or off time	Auto = 0.05s or 0.07 to 150.00	Auto	L3 Only shown for time prop. O/Ps
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range		
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range		
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range		
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range		
Elect Val Enum	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off only. See also 'Custom Enumerations section 16.6	Not Enumerated to 01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Not Enum-erated	Conf
Eng Value Enum .	Enumeration for the engineering value on/off only. See also 'Custom Enumerations section 16.6		Not Enum-erated	Conf
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	0.00 or 1.00 (time prop)		R/O L3
Module 1A Val	The current output value in operation mode. *'Module 1A'* can be user defined text.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
This module has three outputs. Each output is found under Module *1*(A), (B) and (C).				

23.3.5 Triple Logic and Triple Contact Input

Table Number: 23.3.5.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a Triple Logic Input module.		MODULE IO (Module *1*(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident	Module identification	Logic Input		R/O
Channel Type	Channel/Module Type	Digital Input	Digital Input	Conf
Invert	Invert input operation	Normal Invert		Conf
Eng Val Enum	Enumeration for the Module 1A Val. See also 'Custom Enumerations section 16.6	Not Enumerated 01:Usr01 50:Usr50	Not Enumerated	Conf
Module 1A Val	The current input value. *'Module 1A'* can be user defined text.	0 = Off 1 = On		R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
This module has three inputs. Each input is found under Module *1*(A), (B) and (C).				

23.3.6 Transmitter Power Supply

Table Number: 23.3.6.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a Transmitter Power Supply module.		MODULE IO (Module *1*(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident	Module identification	Transmitter PSU		R/O
Channel Type	Input/Output type	Transmitter PSU	Transmitter PSU	Conf
Module 1A Val	The current value in engineering units. *'Module 1A'* can be user defined text.			R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
This module has a single output providing 24Vdc at 20mA. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

23.3.7 Transducer Power Supply

Table Number: 23.3.7.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a Transducer Power Supply module.		MODULE IO (Module *x*(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident	Module identification	Transducer PSU		R/O
Voltage	Voltage select	5 Volts 10 Volts		
Shunt	Selects calibration resistor fitted internally within the controller or externally (eg in the transducer)	External Internal		
Wire Src	Wire source	Modbus address		
Electrical Value	The current output electrical value in operation mode	0.00 to 10		
Module 1A Val	The current value in engineering units. *'Module 1A'* can be a user defined name.			R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
This module has a single output. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

23.3.8 Potentiometer Input

Table Number: 23.3.8.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a Potentiometer Input module.		MODULE IO (Module *x*(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident	Pot Input			R/O
Units	Engineering units.	See section 32.2.		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI (scientifc)		Conf
SBrk Fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Downscale Upscale		Conf
Eng Val Lo	Engineering value low	Display		L3
Eng Val Hi	Engineering value high	range		L3
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		L1
Module 1A Val	The current value in engineering units. *'Module 1A'* can be a user defined name.			R/O
Module Status	Module status	See section 32.3.		R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Allows the potentiometer to be calibrated.	Idle Pot Low Pos Pot High Pos Restore Fact	Idle	L3
This module has a single input. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

23.3.9 PV Input

Table Number: 23.3.9.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a PV Input module. This module can only be fitted in slots 3 or 6.		MODULE IO (Module *3 or 6* (A) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident	Module identification	PV Input		R/O
Channel Type	Input/Output type	RTD Thermocouple Pyrometer 40mV 80mV mA Volts HZVolts Log10		Conf
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
Units	Engineering units	See section 32.2.		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf
SBrk Impedance	Sensor break enable for high output impedance sensors. See section 23.6.3	Off Low High	Off	Conf
SBrk fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Down scale Up Scale		Conf
CJC Type	CJC type Only shown if Channel Type = thermocouple	Internal 0°C 45°C 50°C None	Internal	Conf

Table Number: 23.3.9.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a PV Input module. This module can only be fitted in slots 3 or 6.		MODULE IO (Module *3 or 6* (A) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
The following four parameters are only shown for 'Channel Type' = mV, Volts, mA, and HZVolts				
Electrical Lo [units]	Electrical low input level	Input range. units depend on channel type		L3. Only shown for mV, V, mA
Electrical Hi [units]	Electrical high input level			
Eng Val Lo	Low display reading	Display range.		
Eng Val Hi	High display reading			
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		L1
Emissivity	Emissivity Ch Type = pyrometer only	Off to1.00		
Electrical Val [units]	The current electrical value of the input	Input range		R/O L3
Module 3A (or 6A) Val	The current value in engineering units. *'Module 3(6)A'* can be user defined text.			R/O
CJC Temp	Temperature read at the rear terminals °C Ch Type = thermocouple only			R/O
Offset	To apply a simple offset over the whole input range	Display range		L3
Module Status	Module status See Appendix D3	OK or message		R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Sensor break value Read as a % of the SBrk Impedance configured	See section 23.6.3.		R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Calibration state Not shown for Pyrometer or mA inputs	See Chapter 27		Conf
Rear Term Temp	Allows a user measured offset to be entered for CJC calibration Ch Type = thermocouple only	Auto to 50.00°C		
This module has a single input. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

Notes:

1. **Input Linearisation**

   J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type, PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3, PT 25.5.

23.3.10 DC Input

Table Number: 23.3.10.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a DC Input module. This module can only be fitted in slots 1, 3, 4 or 6.		MODULE IO (Module *x*(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident	Module identification	DC Input		R/O
Channel Type	Input/Output type	RTD Thermocouple Pyrometer mV mA Volts HZVolts Log10		Conf
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
Units	Engineering units	See section 32.2.		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf
SBrk Impedance	Sensor break enable for high output impedance sensors	Off Low High	Off	Conf
SBrk fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Down scale Up Scale		Conf
CJC Type	CJC type Only shown if Channel Type = thermocouple	Internal 0°C 45°C 50°C None	Internal	Conf
The following four parameters are only shown for 'Channel Type' = mV, V, mA, and HZVolts				
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range units depend on channel type		L3. See **'To Scale the PV Input'**
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level			
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Display range		
Eng Value Hi	High display reading			
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		L3
Emissivity	Emissivity (Pyrometer input only)	Off to 1.00		L3
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the input	Input range units as configured		R/O
Module 3A Val *(or 1,4 or 6A)*	The current value in engineering units. *'Module 3A (1,4 or6A)'* can be user defined text.			R/O
Offset	Transducer scale offset	Display range	0	L3
CJC Temp	Temperature read at the rear terminals °C Thermocouple inputs only			R/O
Module Status	Module status	See section 32.3.		R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Current sensor break value Read as a % of the SBrk Impedance configured	See section 22.3.3.		R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Allows input to be calibrated. Not shown for Pyrometer or mA inputs	See Chapter 27	Idle	Conf
Rear Term Temp	Allows a user measured offset to be entered for CJC calibration Ch Type = thermocouple only	Auto to 50.00°C		
This module has a single input. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

Note1 Input Linearisation

J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type, PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3, PT 25.5 .

23.3.11 Dual PV Input

The dual PV input module accepts two inputs - one from a high level source (channel A) and one from a low level source (channel C). The two inputs are not isolated from each other and have an update rate of 5Hz. One application for the module is for a zirconia probe input.

The module can also be configured for a single input when the update rate becomes 10Hz.

Table Number: 23.3.11.	**This page allows you to set the parameters for Channel A of a Dual PV Input module. This module can only be fitted in slots 3 or 6.**		**MODULE IO (Module *3*(A) Page)**	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
This module has two inputs. Parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A) and 'channel' (C) Channel A is the high level input, channel C is the low level input. This assumes that 'En Dual Mode' = 'Yes' in the Channel C menu. If 'En Dual Mode' = 'No', then this module will behave as a single PV Input module, see section 23.3.9. This table shows Module 3 (or 6)A parameters				
Ident	Channel identification	High Level Inp		R/O
Channel Type	Input/Output type	HZ Volts Volts		Conf
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
Units	Engineering units	See section 32.2.		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI (scientific)		Conf
SBrk Impedance	Sensor break impedance for sensors with high output impedance	Off Low High	Off	Conf
SBrk Fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Downscale Upscale		Conf
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range units depend on channel type		L3 See 'To Scale the PV Input' L3
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level			
Eng Val Lo	Low display reading	Display range		
Eng Val Hi	High display reading			
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the input	Input range units as configured		R/O
Module 3A Val *(or 6A Val)*	The current value in engineering units. *'Module 3A (or 6A)'* can be user defined text.			R/O
Offset	Transducer scale offset	Range limits		
Module Status	Module status	See section 32.2.		R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Current sensor break value Read as a % of the SBrk Impedance configured	See section 22.3.3.		R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Allows input calibration Only shown when 'En Dual Mode' = 'No' (section 23.3.11c)	See Chapter 27	Idle	Conf

Notes:

1. **Input Linearisation**
   J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type, PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3, PT 25.5 .

Table Number: 23.3.11c.	This page allows you to set the parameters for Channel C of a Dual PV Input module. This module can only be fitted in slots 3 or 6.		MODULE IO (Module 3(C) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
This module has two inputs. Parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A) and 'channel' (C) Channel A is the high level input, channel C is the low level input. This table shows Module 3 (or 6)C parameters				
Ident	Channel identification	Low Level Input		R/O
Channel Type	Input/Output type	DC Input	DC Input	Conf
En Dual Mode	Enable dual mode See note 2	Yes No		
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
Units	Engineering units	See Appendix D		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI (scienfific)		Conf
SBrk Impedance	Sensor break impedance for high impedance output sensors	Off Low High	Off	Conf
SBrk Fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Downscale Upscale		Conf
CJC Type	CJC type Only shown if Channel Type = Thermocouple	Internal 0°C 45°C 50°C None	Internal	Conf
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		L3
Emissivity	Emissivity Only shown if Channel Type = Pyrometer	Off to 1.00		L3
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the input	Input range units depend on channel type		R/O
Module 3 (or 6)A Val	The current value in engineering units. *'Module 3A (or 6A)'* can be user defined text.			R/O
Offset	Transducer scale offset	Range limits		
CJC Temp	Temperature read at the rear terminals °C Thermocouple inputs only			R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Current sensor break value Read as a % of the SBrk Impedance configured	See section 22.3.3		R/O
Channel Name	Channel name		Default Text	R/O

Note 2: The parameters in the above two tables are displayed when **'En Dual Mode'** = **'Yes'**

If **'En Dual Mode'** = **'No'**, then the module can be used as a single input with an update rate of 10Hz. Channel C parameters are then not applicable and the list of Channel A parameters becomes identical to the parameter list for the single PV Input module, see section 23.3.9

To calibrate the module it is necessary to set **'En Dual Mode'** = **'Yes'**

23.3.12 4-Wire RTD Input

Two special input modules for PRT type sensors are available that can satisfy basic requirements of metrology applications in terms of stability and resolution. Module code PH is optimised to work with Pt100 and module code PL is optimised to work with Pt25.5.

It is possible to use module PL with Pt100 in order to obtain ±0.5mK input resolution but then the maximum measurable temperature would be reduced to less than 50°C.

Table Number: 23.3.12.	**This page allows you to set the parameters for 4-Wire (PT100 or PT25) Modules. These module can only be fitted in slots 3 or 6.**			**MODULE IO (Module *3 or 6* (A) Page)**
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident	Module identification	4W PT100 or 4W PT25		R/O
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
Units	Engineering units	See section 32.2.		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI	XX.XXX	Conf
SBrk Impedance See section 22.3.3.	Sensor break enable a.c. type (i.e. no errors)	Off Low High	Off	Conf
SBrk fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Down scale Up Scale	Off	Conf
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0	0:00:01.6	L1
Electrical Val [units]	The current electrical value of the input	Input Reading in [Ohms]		R/O L3
Module 3A (or 6) Val	The current value in engineering units. *'Module 3 (6)A'* can be user defined text.			R/O
Offset	To apply a simple offset over the whole input range	Display range		L3
Module Status	Module status See Appendix D	OK or message		R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Sensor break % of the threshold impedance that sets SB			R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 7.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Calibration state	See Chapter 27.		Conf
This module has a single input. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

Note1: **Input Linearisation**

J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type, PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3, PT 25.5 .

23.3.13 Dual DC Output

This module (order code DO) can be fitted in slots 4, 5 and 6 with a maximum of three in any single controller. It contains two output channels. Each channel can be either 4-20mA control output, with 12 bit resolution, or a 24Vdc (20 to 30Vdc) transmitter supply. The module provides full 240Vac isolation.

This module may be used if:-

- extra analogue outputs are required to implement the control functionality
- extra precision and stability of control is desired. This because the module is power efficient and, therefore, does not cause significant temperature fluctuation inside the instrument
- extra power sources (fully isolated) are needed for passive current transmitters, active transducers requiring 20V to 30V source or I/Os of open collector type.

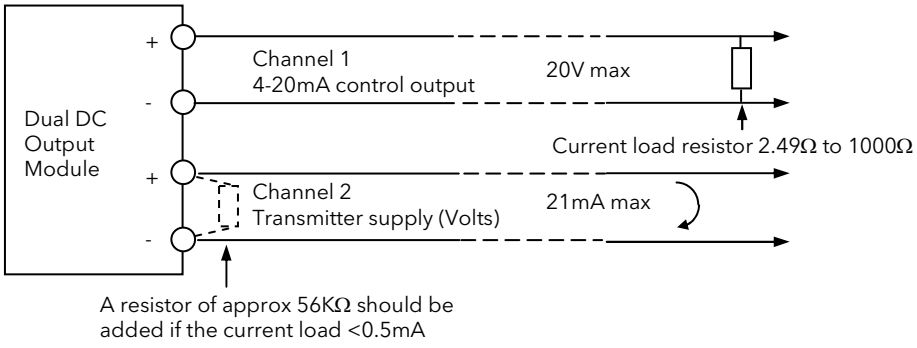
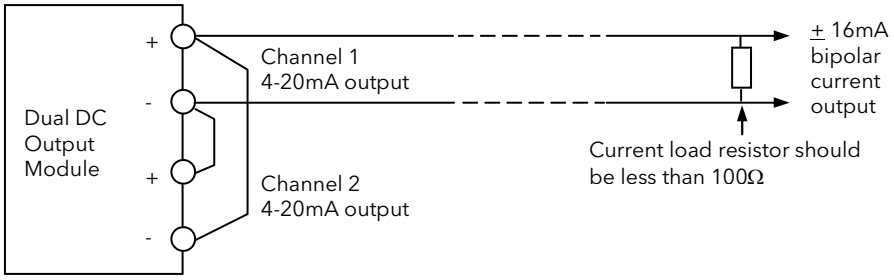


Figure 23-1: Ch1 & Ch2 Configured as Current Control & PSU



Channel 1 & 2 set up:-

Eng Val Lo	-100%	Alternatively one channel can be used with fixed 4mA while the other is varied between 4 and 20mA.
Eng Val Hi	100%	
Elec Lo	4mA	The polarity of the desired signal depends on which channel is fixed
Elect Hi	20mA	

Figure 23-2: Connections to Obtain a Bipolar (±16mA) Current Output

23.3.14 Dual DC Output Module IO Parameters

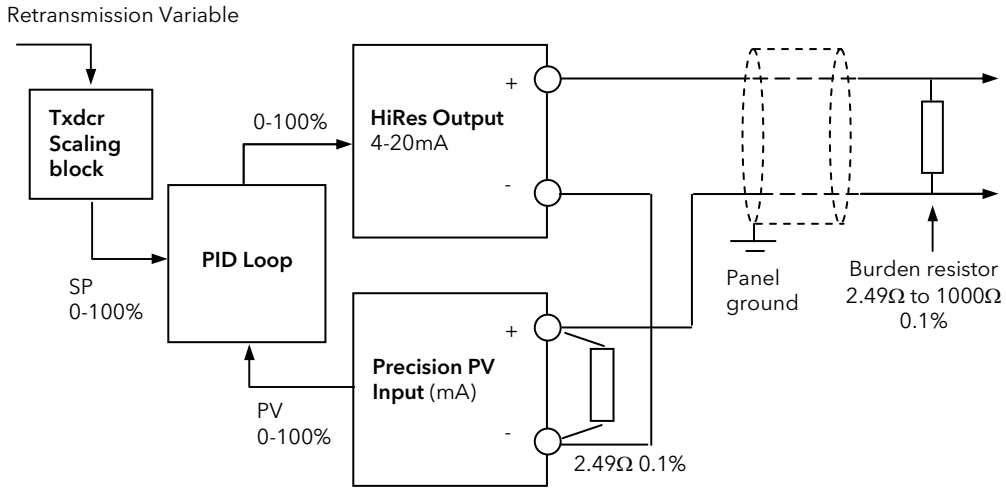
Table Number: 23.3.14.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a Dual DC Output module. This module can only be fitted in slots 1, 4, and 5.		MODULE IO (Module 4(C) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
This module has two outputs. Parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A) and 'channel' (C). C can be 4-20mA or PSU outputs.			Channel A and channel	
Ident	Channel identification	DC Out		R/O
Channel Type	Output type mA = analogue output Volts = transmitter PSU	 mA Volts		Conf
Module Status	Module status	See section 32.3.		L3
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text page, section 7.2.6		Default text	Conf
The following parameters are shown for Channel Type = mA only				
Wire Src	Source to which the channel is wired	Modbus address		Conf
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range	4.00 min	L3. See output scaling
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range	20.00 max	
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range		
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range		
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	4 to 20mA		R/O L3
Module 1 (4 or 5)A Val *(*can be user defined text).	The current output value in operation mode.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3
Cal state	Allows the module to be calibrated	Idle Cal Low Confirm Go Now Trim O/P Accept Cal High Restore Factory Save	Idle	Conf
Cal Trim	Output calibration trim Only appears when Cal State = Now Trim O/P			Conf

23.3.15 High Resolution Retransmission Output

This module (order code HR) can be fitted in slots 1, 4, and 5 with a maximum of three in any single controller. It contains two output channels. The first channel provides a high resolution, 15 bit, 4-20mA or 0-10Vdc retransmission signal. The second provides 24Vdc (20 to 30Vdc) transmitter supply. The module provides full 240Vac isolation.

This unit has been designed for use as a conditioning circuit for complex passive sensors/transducers such as may be found in a carbon potential control system.

The high resolution is achieved in feedback mode using a PID control loop. The retransmission variable provides the setpoint for the PID loop. The output from the module provides the PV input to the loop which corrects for any variations in the output signal.



Precision PV Input set up:-		PID Loop set up	
Elec Lo	4mA	Proportional band (PB)	125%
Elect Hi	20mA	Integral time (Ti)	0.4sec
Filter time	0.2sec	Derivative time (Td)	Off

All the internal variables of the loop and their limits are set to 0 –100% range.

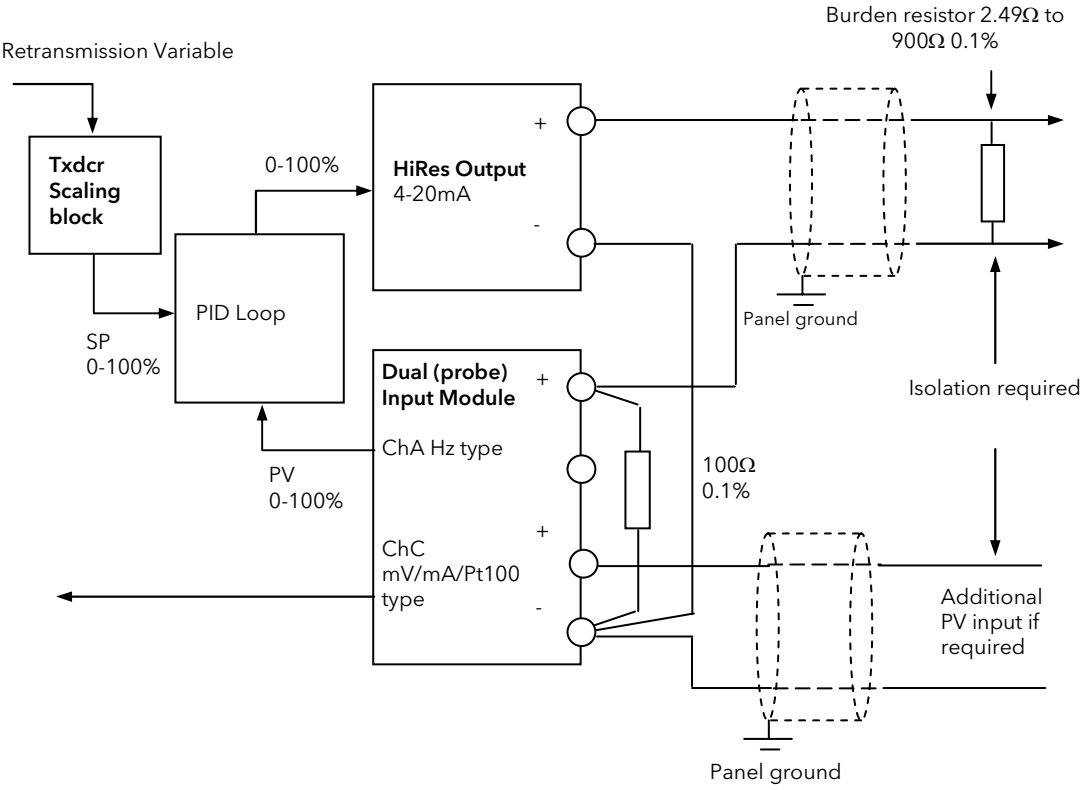
Figure 23-3: Precision 4-20mA Current Loop Retransmission (15bit)
using a single precision PV input module.

Notes:

1. To guarantee that the 4-20mA range is fully covered the channel output is calibrated at 3.8mA (cal low) and 20.5mA (cal High).
2. To utilise the full potential for high accuracy/resolution extra care should be taken to ensure low levels of EM interference as follows:-
   - keep connecting cables away from power cables
   - ground 'Dig Common' of the controller to local panel ground
   - use shielded cables with the shield connected to local panel ground

Precise 4-20mA Current Loop Retransmission (14bit)

Using Dual (probe) module and a feedback loop with input from cannel A



Channel A Input set up:-		PID Loop set up	
Elec Lo	0.4V	Proportional band (PB)	145%
Elect Hi	2V	Integral time (Ti)	0.6sec
Filter time	0.4sec	Derivative time (Td)	Off

All the internal variables of the loop and their limits are set to 0 –100% range.

Figure 23-4: Precision 4-20mA Current Loop Retransmission (14bit)

i

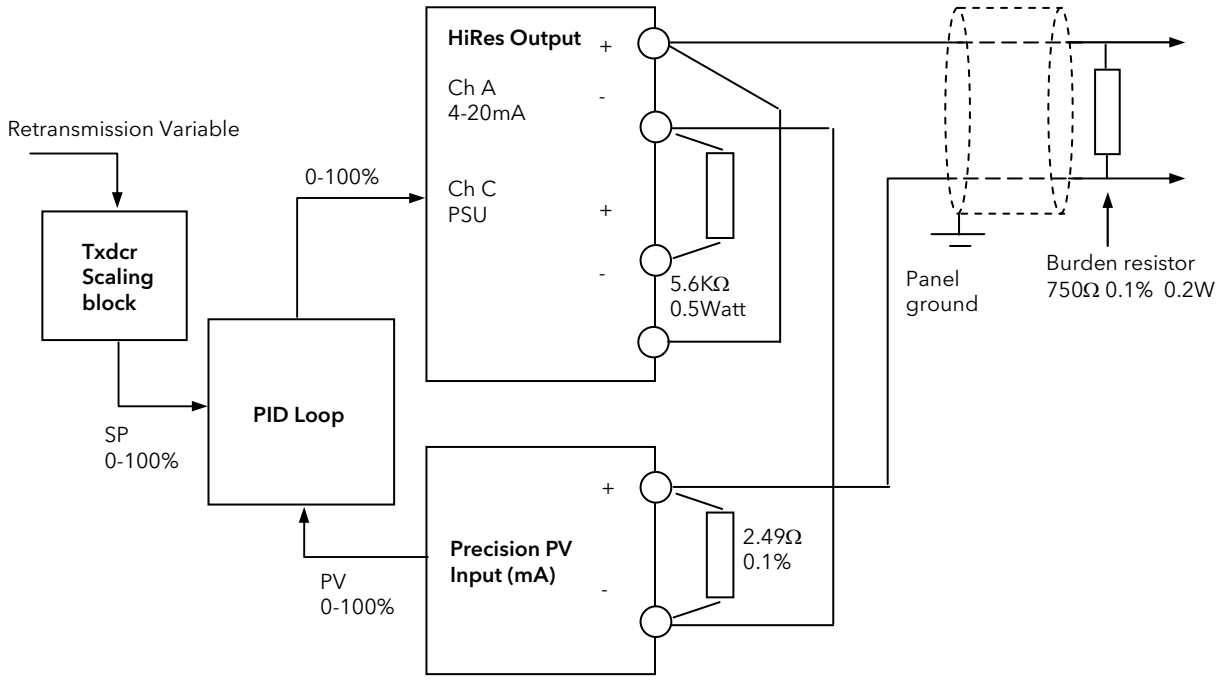
Channel C input and the retransmitted 4-20mA output must be connected together at the (-) terminal of the Dual (probe) input. The receiving instrument 4-20mA input and the other end of the channel C input should be isolated from each other. It is the installers responsibility to ensure the appropriate isolation when using the Dual (probe) module.

Notes:

1. To guarantee that the 4-20mA range is fully covered the channel output is calibrated at 3.8mA (cal low) and 20.5mA (cal High).
2. To utilise the full potential for high accuracy/resolution extra care should be taken to ensure low levels of EM interference as follows:-
   - keep connecting cables away from power cables
   - ground 'Dig Common' of the controller to local panel ground
   - use shielded cables with the shield connected to local panel ground

Precise 0-10V Voltage Retransmission (15bit)

Using a single precision PV input, PSU output and a feedback loop



Precision PV Input (mA) set up:-		PID Loop set up	
Elec Lo	0mA	Proportional band (PB)	125%
Elect Hi	13.333mA	Integral time (Ti)	0.4sec
Filter time	0.2sec	Derivative time (Td)	Off

All the internal variables of the loop and their limits are set to 0 –100% range.

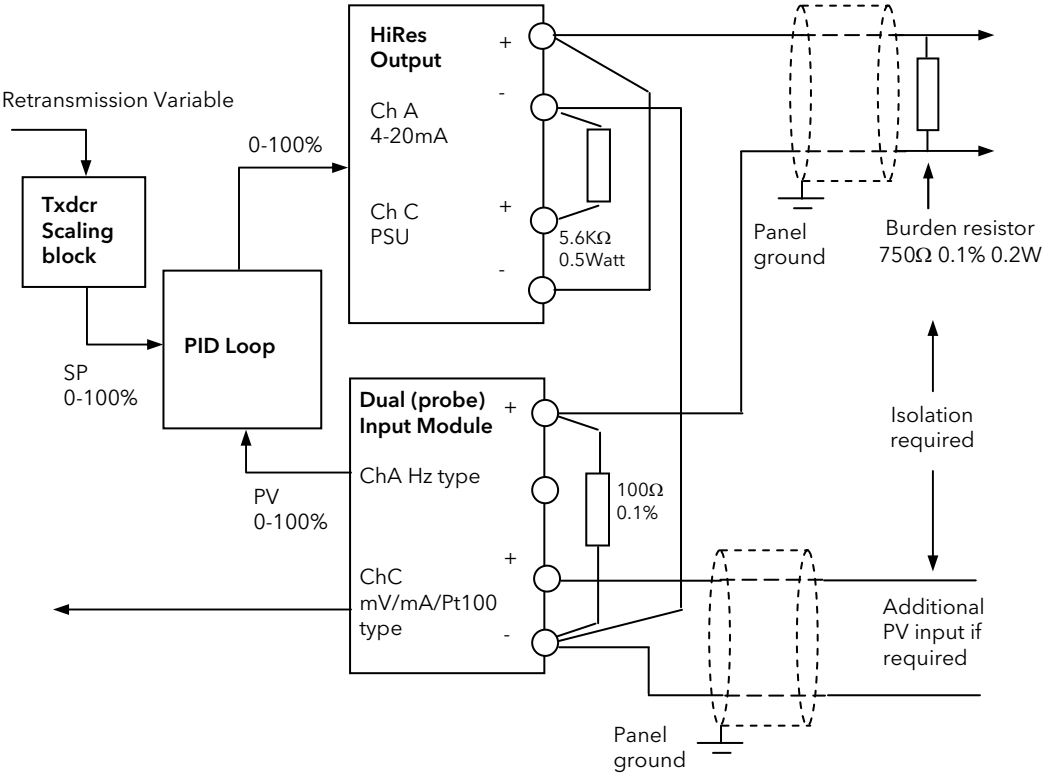
Figure 23-5: 0 – 10V Voltage Retransmission (15bit)

Notes:-

1. Range of the retransmitted voltage can be scaled by using different burden resistors:-
   - 150Ω will produce 0-2V range
   - 100Ω will produce 0-1.333V range
2. To guarantee that the 4-20mA range is fully covered the channel output is calibrated at 3.8mA (cal low) and 20.5mA (cal High).
3. To utilise the full potential for high accuracy/resolution extra care should be taken to ensure low levels of EM interference as follows:-
   - keep connecting cables away from power cables
   - ground 'Dig Common' of the controller to local panel ground
   - use shielded cables with the shield connected to local panel ground

Precise 0-10V Voltage Retransmission (14bit)

Using a Dual (probe) input, PSU output and a feedback loop with input from channel A.



Precision PV Input (mA) set up:-		PID Loop set up	
Elec Lo	0V	Proportional band (PB)	145%
Elect Hi	13.333V	Integral time (Ti)	0.6sec
Filter time	0.4sec	Derivative time (Td)	Off

All the internal variables of the loop and their limits are set to 0 –100% range.

Figure 23-6: Precision 0-10V Voltage Retransmission (14bit)

i

Channel C input and the retransmitted 4-20mA output must be connected together at the (-) terminal of the Dual (probe) input. The receiving instrument 4-20mA input and the other end of the channel C input should be isolated from each other. It is the installers responsibility to ensure the appropriate isolation when using the Dual (probe) module.

Notes on the previous page apply

23.3.16 High Resolution Output Module Parameters

Table Number: 23.3.16.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a High Resolution Output module. This module can only be fitted in slots 1, 4 and 5.		MODULE IO (Module 4(C) Page)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
This module has two outputs. Parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A) and 'channel' (C) Channel A can be 4-20mA output or transmitter PSU, channel C is the PSU.				
Ident	Channel identification	Hi Res Out		R/O
Channel Type	Output type	mA (not Ch C) Volts		Conf
Module Status	Module status	See section 32.3.		L3
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text page, section 7.2.6		Default text	Conf
The following parameters are shown for Channel Type = mA only				
Wire Src	Source to which the channel is wired	Modbus address		Conf
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range	4.00 min	L3. See output scaling
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range	20.00 max	
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range		
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range		
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	4 to 20mA		R/O L3
Module 1 (4 or 5)A Val *(*can be a user defined name).	The current output value in operation mode.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3
Cal state	Allows the module to be calibrated	Idle Cal Low Confirm Go Now Trim O/P Accept Cal High Restore Factory Save	Idle	Conf
Cal Trim	Output calibration trim Only appears when Cal State = Now Trim O/P			Conf

23.4 TDS INPUT MODULE

The TDS module is specific to TDS measurement and provides a hardware interface with a TDS probe. It can be fitted into any module slot except slot 2. A 1KHz ac signal is produced at terminal A with respect to terminal D as earth. The driver sense terminal B and the earth sense terminal C measures the return voltage and automatically compensates for cable resistance and other sources of voltage drop. The module returns **Conductance** directly produced by the probe as the main variable. The module software provides signal conditioning such as filtering, cable capacitance compensation, over range, calibration and error trapping and diagnostic variable 'Driver O/P' and 'SBrk' flags.

23.4.1 TDS Input Module Parameters

Table Number: 23.4.1.	This list allows you to set up the parameters for the TDS input module		MODULE IO (Module *A Page) * = 1,3,4,5,6	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Ident *A	Module type * shows the slot in which the module is fitted	TDS Input		L3
Channel Type	Used to select the probe type	2 elec.Prob 3 / 4 elec.Prob		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX	XXXXX	Conf
SBrk Cond	Sensor break value in mS. Used to set the level that triggers a sensor break. See also Note 1	Off to 99.999mS	Off	L3
SBrk Fallback	Sensor break fallback state	Off Down Scale Up Scale	Off	Conf
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0	0:00:00.1	L3
Module *A Val	The measured conductance * shows the slot in which the module is fitted			L3
Module Status	Module status See section 32.3.	OK or message		L3
Cable Offset	Compensation for length of cable capacitance. See next section for further details		0.000 to 99.999	L3
Driver O/P	Percentage usage of the module's driving capabilities for driving TDS probe and its wiring A value >110% causes SBrk			L3
Channel Name	Name for the channel selected from 'User Text'		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Calibration state See Calibration Chapter 27 for further details	Idle Low – O/C High – 22 ohm Confirm Go Abort Restore Factory Save to User	Idle	Conf

Note 1

Sensor break detection on the sensing wires is not available. Disconnecting these wires may cause a step change in the read value depending on the length of the wires.

Ground or driver wire disconnection can be detected by the near zero conductance reading.

23.4.2 Cable Offset

Cable offset is used to compensate for cable conductance of the installation. It is only important if the desired range of measurements extends to a conductance of less than five times the conductance of the cable.

For example, a typical 60m of 4wire screened cable produces 170uS reading. Therefore, the compensation will only be required if the measured conductance is expected to fall below 1mS.

It is worth noting that the cable compensation is only effective for 2 electrode type probes.

23.4.2.1 To Calibrate Cable Offset

- Enter 'Configuration' level and select the particular Module Slot where the TDS Module resides. It is a single channel module so the slot number will be followed by letter A.
- Disconnect the wires from the probe at the probe end and short circuit A to B and C to D at that end

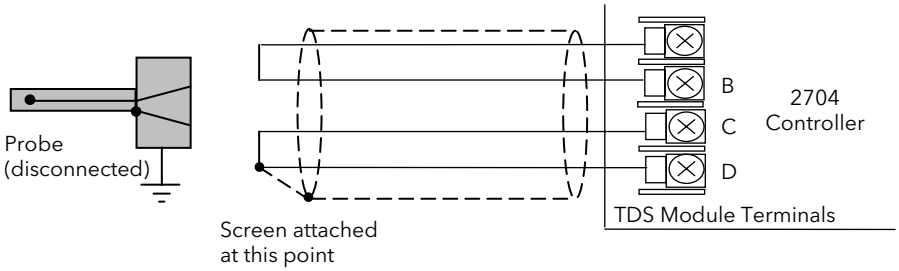


Figure 23-7: Terminal Connections for Calibration

- Make sure that 'Cable Offset' Compensation parameter is set to 0.000 so that the conductance reading, (Module *A Val) is only due to cable capacitance itself. It may be helpful to make a note of this value.
- Adjust 'Cable Offset' parameter to equal that read by the Module *A Val. Stopping adjustment for more than 2 seconds will activate the compensation.
- Check that the compensated conductance reading is very close to zero. Note that PV noise (i.e. variation in reading) may cause the reading to flip between positive and negative values. On average these should add up to zero. If this is not the case readjust, in small steps, 'Cable Offset' until the above is reached. The noise increase around zero is particularly pronounced if large cable capacitance (20-40nF) is compensated.
- Reconnect the probe.

23.5 MODULE SCALING

The IO modules are scaled as already described in Chapter 23 for the fixed inputs and outputs. The procedures are repeated below:-

23.5.1 The PV Input

Scaling of the PV input applies to linear process inputs, eg linearised transducers, where it is necessary to match the displayed reading to the electrical input levels from the transducer. PV input scaling is not provided for direct thermocouple or RTD inputs.

Figure 23-8 shows an example of input scaling where an electrical input of 4-20mA requires the display to read 2.5 to 200.0 units.

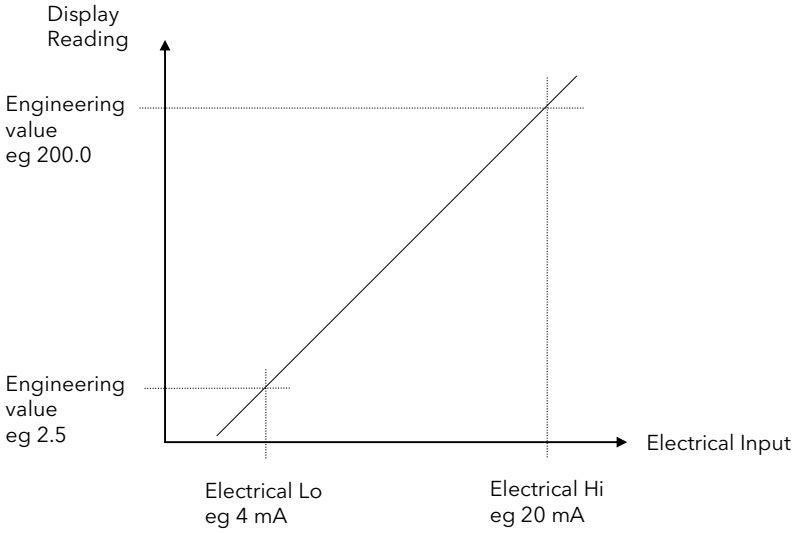
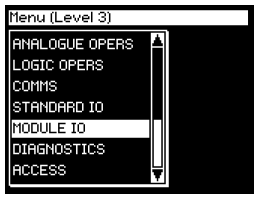
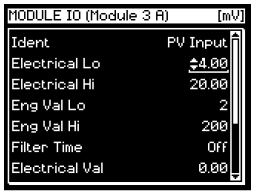
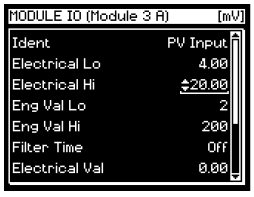
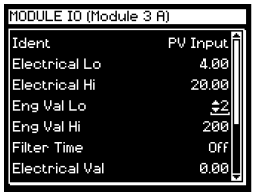
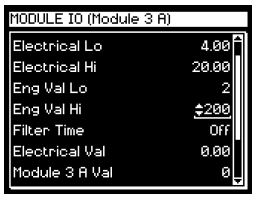


Figure 23-8: Input Scaling (Modules)

23.5.2 To Scale The PV Input:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Module IO'**		
3. Press [↵] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the slot in which the PV Input module is fitted		
5. Press [↵] to show the list of parameters. 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to **'Electrical Lo'** 7. Press [↵] to edit **Electrical Lo**. 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		Set this value to the lowest level of the input, eg 4mA.
9. Press [↵] to select the '**Electrical Hi'**. 10. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		Set this value to the highest level of the input , eg 20mA.
11. Press [↵] to select the **Eng Val Lo**. 12. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		Set up the displayed value (instrument minimum span) which corresponds to the Electrical Lo input, eg 2
13. Press [↵] to select the **Eng Val Hi**. 14. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value		Set up the displayed value (instrument maximum span) which corresponds to the Electrical Hi input, eg 200.00

23.5.3 Output modules

If the output module is DC or if it is a relay, triac or logic used as time proportioning control, it can be scaled such that a lower and upper level of PID demand signal can limit the operation of the output value. This is shown in Figure 23-9 applied to a relay output or any time proportioning output..

By default, the relay will be fully off for 0% power demand, fully on for 100% power demand and equal on/off times at 50% power demand. You can change these limits to suit the process. It is important to note, however, that these limits are set to safe values for the process. For example, for a heating process it may be required to maintain a minimum level of temperature. This can be achieved by applying an offset at 0% power demand which will maintain the relay on for a period of time. Care must be taken to ensure that this minimum on period does not cause the process to overheat

These offsets can be made to parameters in the relevant Module IO pages.

If the output is DC the electrical low and electrical high parameters are analogue values and can be set as in the example given for DC Output Retransmission, section 23.5.5.

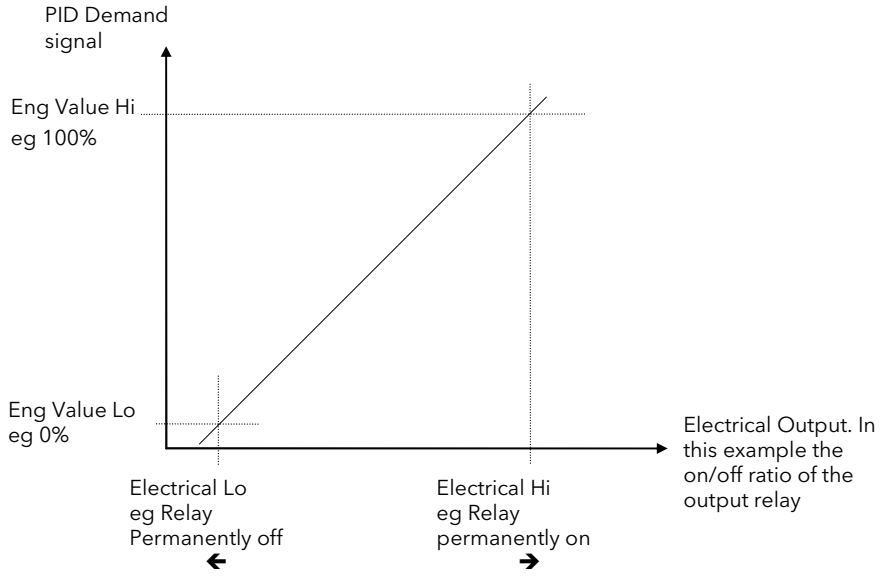
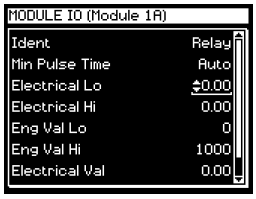
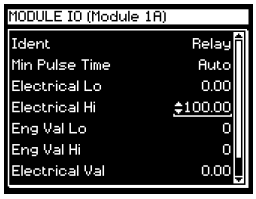
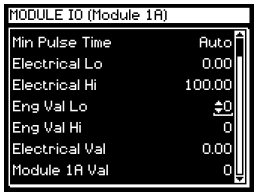
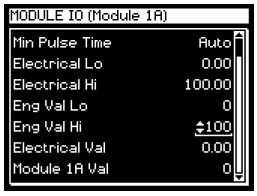

PID Demand signal
Eng Value Hi eg 100%
Eng Value Lo eg 0%
Electrical Output. In this example the on/off ratio of the output relay
Electrical Lo eg Relay Permanently off
Electrical Hi eg Relay permanently on

Figure 23-9: Time Proportioning Relay, Triac or Logic Output

23.5.4 To Scale A Control Output:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the MODULE IO sub-header display, Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the slot in which the Output module is fitted		
2. Press ↵ to show the list of parameters. 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to scroll to **'Electrical Lo'** 4. Press ↵ to select the **Electrical Lo**.		Set this to a low value, normally 0. 11. Press ↵ to select the **Eng Val Hi**. 12. Press ▲ or ▼ to change the value
5. Press ↵ to select the **Electrical Hi**. 6. Press ▲ or ▼ to change the value		Set this to a high value, normally 100.
7. Press ↵ to select the **Eng Val Lo**. 8. Press ▲ or ▼ to change the value		Set up this value so that the relay (triac or logic) switches fully off corresponding to the Electrical Low setting. If the module is Analogue 0 = 0% output
9. Press ↵ to select the **Eng Val Hi**. 10. Press ▲ or ▼ to change the value		Set up this value so that the relay (triac or logic) switches fully on corresponding to the Electrical High setting. If the module is Analogue 100 = 100% output

23.5.5 Retransmission Output

The retransmission output can be scaled so that the output value corresponds to range of the signal to be retransmitted.

Figure 23-10 shows an example where the retransmitted signal is PV or SP and an electrical output of 4-20mA represents 20.0 to 200.0 units.

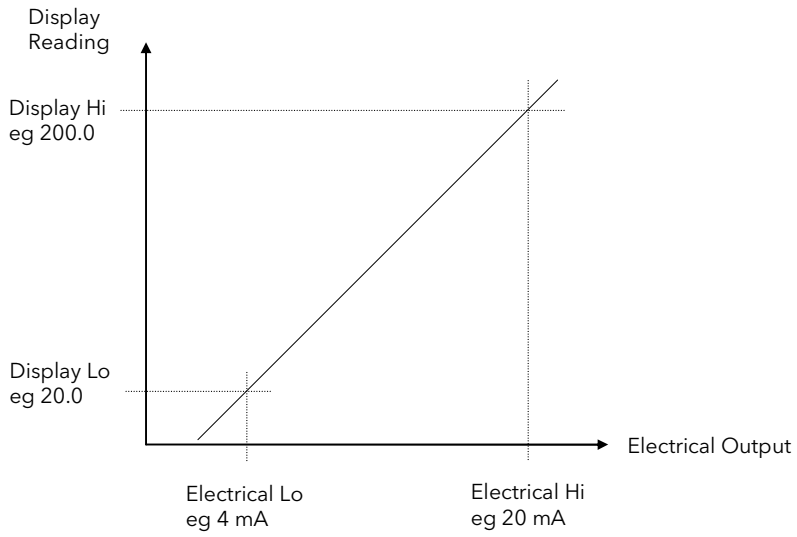


Figure 23-10: Scaling a Retransmission Output

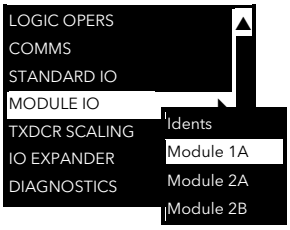
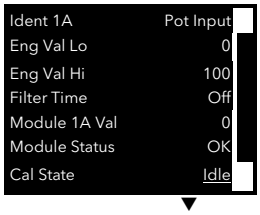
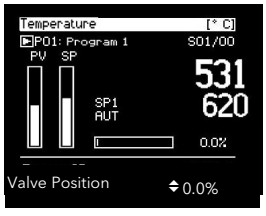
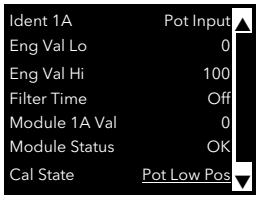
23.5.5.1 To Scale A Retransmission Output:-

The procedure is the same as scaling a Control Output as described in section 23.5.4.

23.5.6 To Scale the Potentiometer input

When using the controller in bounded valve position control mode, it is necessary to calibrate the feedback potentiometer to correctly read the position of the valve. The value of the potentiometer input is read by the parameter 'Module xA Val', where x is the number of the slot in which the Pot Input module is fitted.

To calibrate the potentiometer input, it is necessary to carry out this procedure in access level 3:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
	Enable Potentiometer Calibration	
1. From the relevant LOOP SETUP page header select **'Motor'** 2. Press [↵] to select Motor Parameters 3. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to **'Enable Pot Cal'** 4. **'** Press [↵] to select edit 5. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'On'**	 	*LP1* is a user definable name and may be different in your controller
	Select the slot in which the Pot Input Module is fitted	
6. Press [🗋] as many times as necessary to select the page header menu 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'MODULE IO'** 8. **'** Press [↵] to select the module sub-header list 9. To confirm, press [▲] or [▼] to select the module in which the Pot Input Module is fitted		The view shown here is an example and depends upon the functions enabled in the controller This example also assumes the Pot Input Module is fitted in slot 1
	Calibrate the Potentiometer Minimum Position	
10. Press [↵] to show the Pot Input parameters 11. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to **'Cal State'** 12. Press [↵] to edit		**'Eng Val Lo'** and **'Eng Val Hi'** will normally be set to 0 and 100 respectively to represent a fully closed to fully open position of the valve These parameters do not limit the travel of the valve but provide an indication of the pot position
13. Now press LOOP ◉ to return to an Overview page and select the **'Valve Position'** parameter 14. Press [▼] to close the valve 15. Press [🗋] to return to the VP parameters 16. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Pot Low Pos'** 17. To confirm, press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Go'.** 18. **(**You can also select **'Abort'** at this point)	 	This is a typical Overview page To calibrate follow the instructions on the display. When the controller is calibrating the message **'Doing Fine Cal'** appears. When the controller has finished the message **'Passed'** appears. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'Accept'.** After approx 3 seconds the display will revert to **'Idle'** completing the procedure. You can also '**Abort'** at this stage.

Calibrate the Potentiometer Maximum Position

Repeat the above steps to adjust the valve fully open and select the parameter **'Pot Hi Pos'**

i

The Potentiometer Input Module can be used simply so that the resistance value represents an engineering value. For example 35 to 780 mm or 0-1000Ω. The parameters **'Eng Val Lo'** and **'Eng Val Lo'** are then set to these values.

The procedure to calibrate for these readings is the same as above but, of course, it is not necessary to revert to the Overview display since the potentiometer can be adjusted manually.

When the pot position parameter is highlighted, the units are displayed in the upper right of the display banner.

The units and resolution will have been set in configuration level.

An Out of Range signal will be displayed if the pot measurements lay outside the calibrated range.

23.6 MODULE IO WIRING EXAMPLES

23.6.1 To Configure Module 1 Channel A to Run a Program

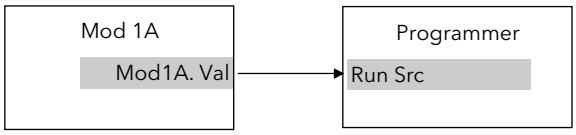


Figure 23-11: External Run/Hold Switch

This example assumes a Triple Logic module fitted in module slot 1. No configuration of the Module 1A function block is required but the output of the block must be wired to the Run Source in the Programmer block.

23.6.1.1 Implementation

1. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page (section 8.12.2)
   set 'Run Src' = 04148:Mod1A.Val
   This connects the output of module 1A to the Run Source wire in the Programmer block.

23.6.2 To Operate a Relay from a Digital Input

This example assumes that a Relay Module is fitted in module slot 2, and it is required to operate when Digital Input 1 is true.

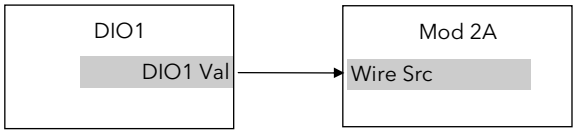


Figure 23-12: To Operate a Relay from a Digital Input

23.6.2.1 Implementation

1. In STANDARD IO/Dig IO1 Page (section 22.6.1.)
   set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
   This configures DIO1 to be digital input
2. In MODULE IO/Module 2 A Page (section 22.5.1)
   set 'Channel Type' = On/Off
   set 'Wire Src' = 05402:DIO1.Val
   This configures Module 2A to On/Off relay and connects DIO1 to operate this relay.

23.6.3 Zirconia Probe Impedance Measurement

The impedance of Zirconia probes can increase with age. The 2704 controller can be used to monitor this impedance using the 'Sensor Break Value' parameter. An alarm on this parameter can be provided if required.

The controller continuously monitors the impedance of a transducer or sensor connected to any analogue input (see also section 22.3.3.). This impedance, expressed as a percentage of the impedance which causes the sensor break flag to trip, is a parameter called 'SBrk Trip Imp' and is available in the parameter lists associated with both Standard and Module inputs of an analogue nature.

The table below shows the typical impedance which causes sensor break to trip for HZ Volts input and High and Low 'SBrk Impedance parameter settings.

HZ Volts (-1.5 to 2V) (applies to Standard PV Input, PV Input module and Dual PV Input module	
SBrk Impedance – High	~ 500KΩ
SBrk Impedance - Low	~ 100KΩ

The graph below shows the approximate relationship between the actual sensor impedance, in ohms, and the measured 'SBrk Trip Imp' parameter, in %, for HZ Volts input type using Standard PV Input, PV Input Module and Dual PV Input module.

Please note that the relationship is not linear, particularly above 30% of the parameter value on High setting. Also that the 'SBrk' reading has a large manufacturing spread and is not factory calibrated. It is recommended, therefore, that the 'SBrk Trip Imp' is calibrated against a known resistor in the range 50 to 100kΩ.

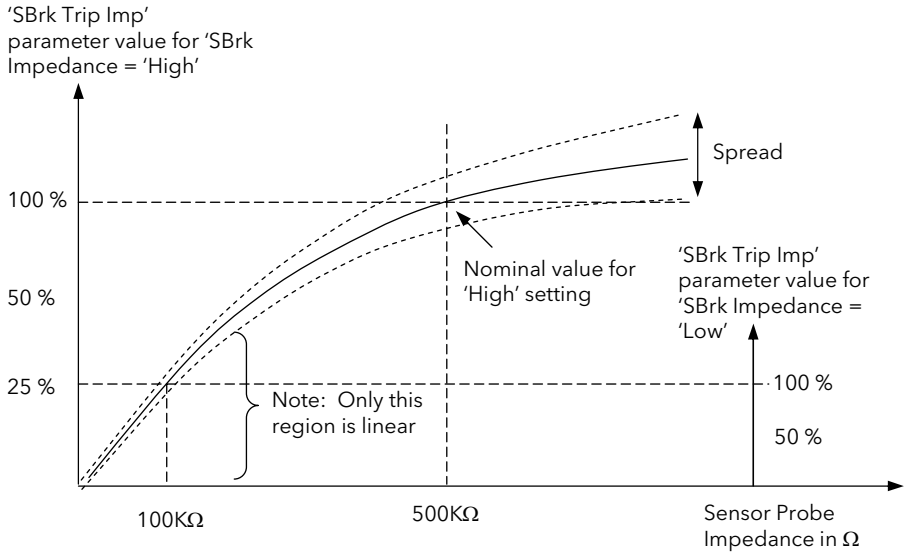
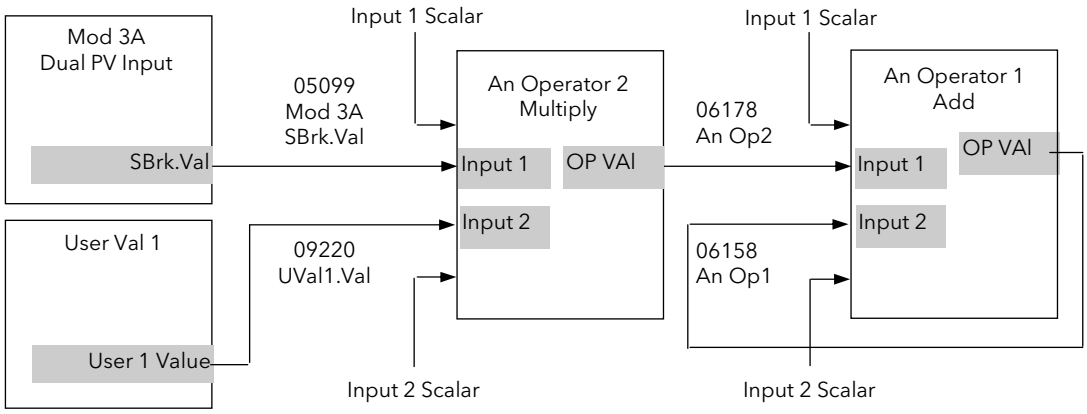


Figure 23-13: Relationship between sensor impedance and measured impedance

23.6.3.1 Implementation

This example assumes the Zirconia inputs is connected to the Dual PV Input module, Mod 3.
Analogue Operator 2 acts as a scalar to convert % to a calibrated value of impedance.
User Value 1 is used as a convenient way to calibrate the sensor break value against a known resistor.
Since the signal can be noisey, Analogue Operator 1 acts as a simple filter.



1.	In MODULE IO/Module 3A (or 6A)	set 'SBrk Impedance' = High
2.	In ANALOGUE OPERS/An 2 Page	set Operation = Multiply set Input 1 Src = 05099 (Sensor break value) set Input 1 scalar = 1.0 set Input 2 Src = 09220 (User value 1 output) set Input 1 scalar = 1.0
3.	In ANALOGUE OPERS/An 1 Page	set Operation = Add set Input 1 Src = 06178 (Analogue Operator 2 Output value) set Input 1 scalar = 0.01 set Input 2 Src = 06158 (Analogue Operator 1 Output value) set Input 1 scalar = 0.99 These settings of input scalar will ensure that the Output Value reaches the same value as Input 1 Value

23.6.3.2 Calibration

1. Connect a known value of resistor (between 50 and 100KΩ) in place of the probe
2. Adjust User 1 Value so that Analogue Operator 2 Output Value reads the value of the resistor
3. The output from Analogue Operator 2 should ramp to the same value. This value can be promoted to a User Screen or used to provide an alarm.

24. CHAPTER 24 TRANSDUCER SCALING

24.1 WHAT IS TRANSDUCER SCALING?

Transducer scaling is a software function block which provides a method of offsetting the calibration of the controller input when compared to a known input source. Transducer scaling is often performed as a routine operation on a machine to take out system errors. In the case of a load cell, for example, it may be necessary to zero the scale when a load is removed.

Transducer scaling can be applied to any input or derived input, i.e. the PV Input, Analogue Input or Modules 1, 3, 4, 5, or 6. In practice, however, it is unlikely that transducer scaling would be required on every input and so the 2704 controller includes three transducer calibration function blocks. These can be wired in configuration level to any three of the above inputs.

Four types of calibration are explained in this chapter:-

1. Shunt Calibration
2. Load Cell Calibration
3. Comparison Calibration
4. Auto-tare

24.2 SHUNT CALIBRATION

Shunt calibration is so called since it refers to switching a calibration resistor across one arm of the four wire measurement bridge in a strain gauge transducer. It also requires the use of a Transducer Power Supply.

The strain gauge transducer is calibrated as follows:

1. Remove any load from the transducer to establish a zero reference.
2. Enter 'Scale Low' and 'Scale High' values which are normally set at 0% and 80% of the span of the transducer.
3. Start the procedure using the low point calibration parameter 'Start Pnt1 Cal', or a digital input wired to this parameter.

The controller will automatically perform the following sequence:

1. Disconnect the shunt resistor
2. Calculate the low point calibration value by continuously averaging two lots of 50 measurements of the input until stable readings are obtained
3. Connect the shunt resistor
4. Calculate the high point calibration value by averaging two lots of 50 measurements of the input

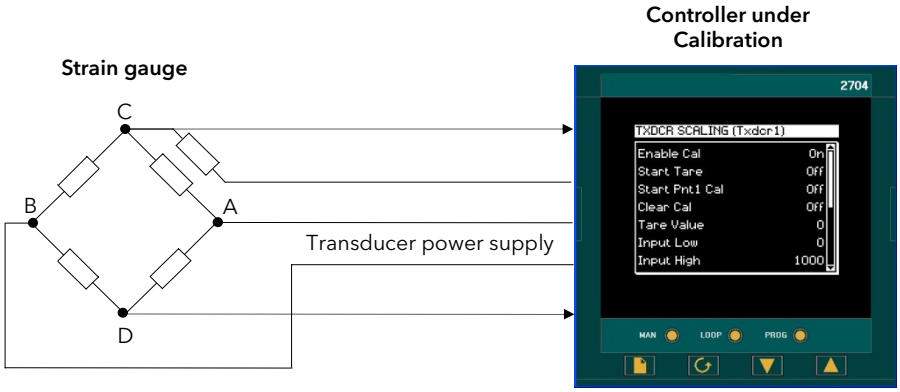
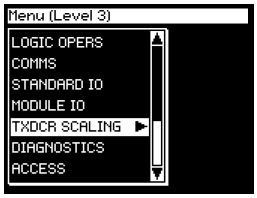
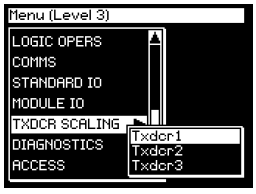
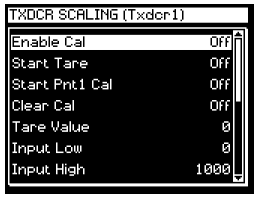
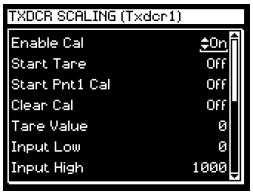
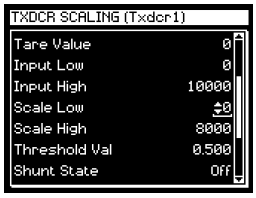
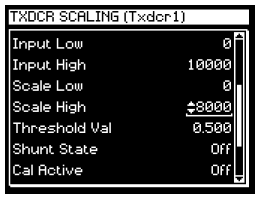
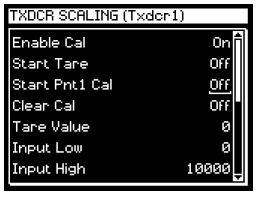


Figure 24-1: Strain Gauge Calibration

24.2.1 To Calibrate a Strain Gauge Bridge Transducer

The controller must have been configured for Cal Type = Shunt, and the transducer connected as shown in, Figure 2-18 using the 'Transducer Power Supply'. Then:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
It is first necessary to enable calibration as follows:-		
1. From any display press [▯] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'TXDCR SCALING'**		
3. Press [↵] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Txdcr 1' (or 2 or 3)**		The choices are : *Txdcr 1* *Txdcr 2* *Txdcr 3* This text can be user defined
5. Press [↵] to show the parameter list		
6. Press [↵] again to select **Enable Cal** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to **On**		This parameter remains 'On' once it has been set. It requires to be switched 'Off' manually. It may be wired to an external digital input source such as a key switch
Set the strain gauge bridge to its 'zeroed' condition		
8. Press [↵] as many times as necessary to scroll to **Scale Low** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to enter the low end calibration value		This will normally be zero
10. Press [↵] to scroll to **Scale High** 11. Press [▲] or [▼] to enter the high end calibration value		In this example a value of 8000 is chosen which may represent 80% of the 0 -10,000psi range of a pressure transducer.
12. Press [↵] to scroll to **Start Pnt 1 Cal** 13. Press [▲] or [▼] to enter **On**		This parameter can be configured to be initiated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch. An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter

☺ Tip: To backscroll hold down and press

The controller automatically performs the procedure described in Section 24.2. During this time the **Cal Active** parameter will change to **On.** When this parameter value changes back to **Off** the calibration is complete.
The **Shunt State** parameter will also change during the procedure to show when it is being connected (On = connected, Off = disconnected).

Note:-
It is possible to start the calibration procedure before the system has settled at a stable value. The controller continuously takes blocks of 50 samples. When the average value between two consecutive blocks is within the **'Threshold Value'** the controller will then calibrate. The Threshold Value defaults to 0.5 but can be adjusted in configuration level. If the readings are not stable within this period the controller will abort the calibration.

24.3 LOAD CELL CALIBRATION

A load cell with V, mV or mA output may be connected to the PV Input, Analogue Input or Modules 1, 3, 4, 5, 6 supplied as analogue inputs. The wiring connections are shown in Chapter 2 'INSTALLATION'.

The load cell is calibrated as follows:

1. Remove any load and start the procedure using the low point calibration parameter 'Start Pnt1 Cal', or a digital input wired to this parameter. The controller will calculate the low calibration point
2. Place a reference weight on the load cell and turn on the high point calibration parameter 'Start Pnt2 Cal', or a digital input wired to this parameter. The controller will then calculate the high calibration point.

Note:-

If 'Start Pnt1 Cal' = 'On', 'Start Pnt2 Cal' cannot be turned to 'On'.

If 'Start Pnt2 Cal' = 'On', 'Start Pnt1 Cal' cannot be turned to 'On'.

Either must complete before the other can be set to 'On'.

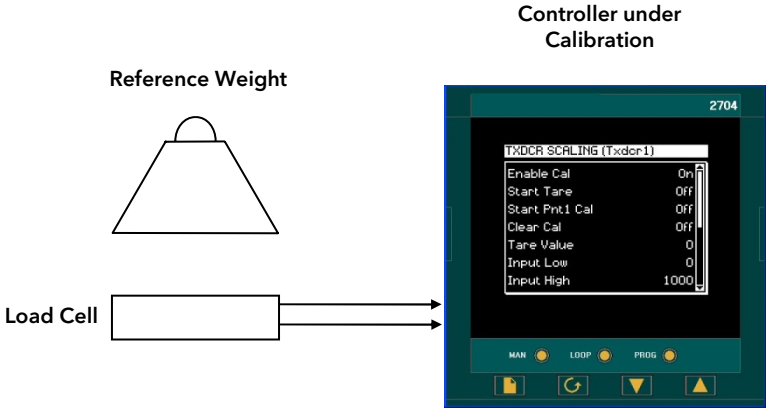
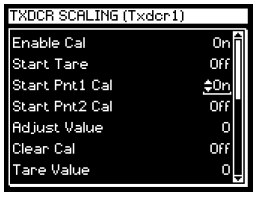
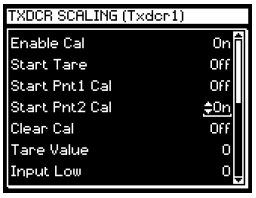


Figure 24-2: Load Cell Calibration

24.3.1 To Calibrate a Load Cell

The controller must have been configured for Cal Type = Load Cell, and the transducer connected as shown in, Chapter 2 'INSTALLATION'. Then:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
Enable calibration as described in steps 1-7 of section 24.2.1.		
Then set the load cell to its 'zeroed' condition		
1. Press [⟳] as many times as necessary to scroll to '**Start Pnt1 Cal'** 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to '**On'**		This parameter can be configured so that it is activated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch. An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter During the time taken for the controller to calculate the low point calibration value, the **Cal Active** parameter will be **On**.
When the Calibration low procedure is complete, place the reference load on the load cell		
3. Press [⟳] to scroll to **Start Pnt2 Cal** 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to **On**		It can be configured to be initiated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch. An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter

Note:-

'Scale High' is the high calibration point and 'Scale Low' is the low calibration point. These should be set to the range over which calibration is required. 'Threshold Value' applies as in the previous section.

24.4 COMPARISON CALIBRATION

Comparison calibration is most appropriate when calibrating the controller against a second reference instrument.

In this case the process calibration points are not entered ahead of performing the calibration. The input may be set to any value and, when the system is stable, a reading is taken from the reference measurement device and entered into the controller. The controller stores both this new target value and the actual reading taken from its input.

The process is repeated at a different value, with the controller storing both the new target value and the reading taken from its input.

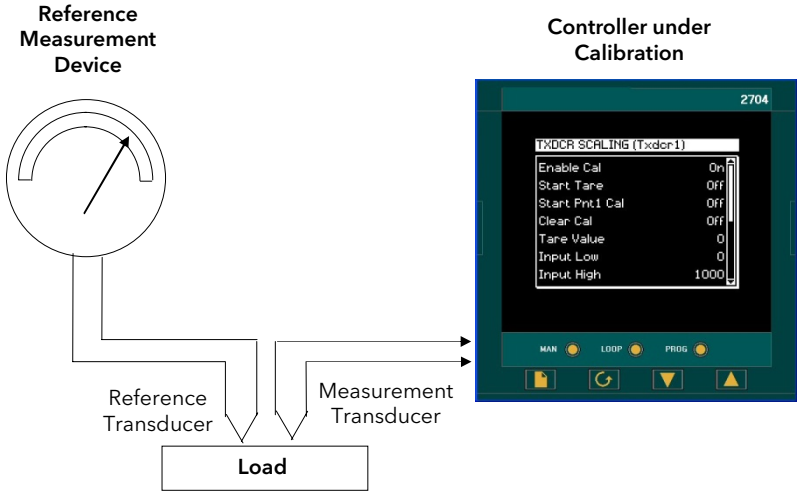
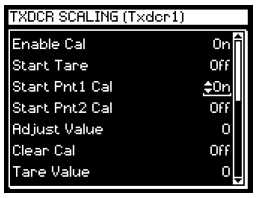
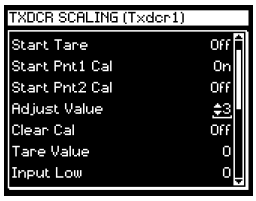
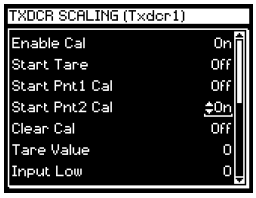
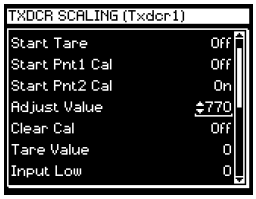


Figure 24-3: Comparison Calibration

24.4.1 To Calibrate a Controller Against a Second Reference

The controller must have been configured for Cal Type = Comparison, and the transducer connected as shown in the User Guide Chapter 2. Then:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
Enable calibration as described in steps 1-7 of section 24.2.1. **Then allow the process to settle at the low calibration point**		
1. Press [↻] as many times as necessary to scroll to **'Start Pnt1 Cal'** 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'On'**		This parameter can be configured to be activated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch. An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter
3. Press [↻] as many times as necessary to scroll to **'Adjust Value'** 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to enter the value indicated on the reference instrument 5. Press [↻] to confirm or [🗋] to cancel as instructed		The confirm message does not appear unless 'Adjust Value' is changed. If the displayed value is acceptable change it momentarily then back to the value to step to the next stage. On confirm the current input value is stored as 'Input Low' and the value entered by the user is stored in the 'Scale Low' parameter.
Allow the Process to settle at the high calibration point		
6. Press [↻] to **'Start Pnt2 Cal'** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'On'**		This parameter can be initiated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch. An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter
8. Press [↻] as many times as necessary to scroll to **'Adjust Value'** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to enter the value indicated on the reference instrument 10. Press [↻] to confirm or [🗋] to cancel as instructed		The confirm message does not appear unless 'Adjust Value' is changed. If the displayed value is acceptable change it momentarily then back to the value to step to the next stage. On confirm the current input value is stored as 'Input High' and the value entered by the user is stored in the 'Scale High' parameter.

It is possible to perform either low or high points in isolation, or to calibrate both points consecutively as described above.

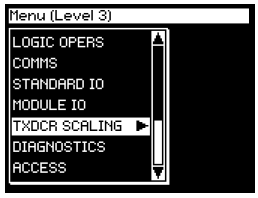
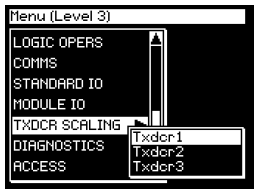
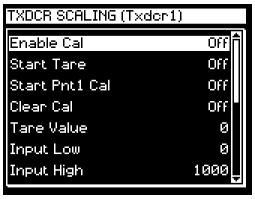
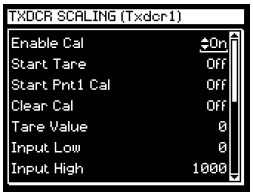
24.5 AUTO-TARE CALIBRATION

The auto-tare function is used, for example, when it is required to weigh the contents of a container but not the container itself.

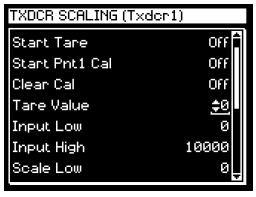
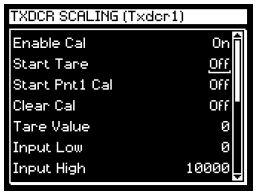
The procedure is to place the empty container on the weigh bridge and 'zero' the controller. Since it is likely that following containers may have different tare weights the auto-tare feature is always available in the controller at access level 1.

24.5.1 To Use the Auto-Tare Feature

Firstly, access the transducer scaling parameters as follows:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [▯] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'TXDCR SCALING'**		
3. Press [↵] to show Sub-headers 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Txdcr 1' (or 2 or 3)**		The choices are : *Txdcr 1* *Txdcr 2* *Txdcr 3* This can be user defined text
5. Press [↵] to show the parameter list		
6. Press [↵] again to edit **Enable Cal** 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to **On** (if necessary)		This parameter remains 'On' once it has been set. It requires to be switched 'Off' manually. It may be wired to an external digital input source such as a key switch.

The auto-tare calibration is then as follows:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
Set the equipment at the normal tare point, eg place the empty container on the weigh bridge		
1. Press [↵] to **'Tare Value'** 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to enter the required value		This will normally be zero. When once set it will only be necessary to access this parameter again if a new tare value is required.
3. Press [↵] as many times as necessary to scroll to **'Start Tare'** 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to **'On'**		This parameter can be initiated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch. An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter.

The effect of auto-tare is to introduce a DC bias to the measurement, as shown in Figure 24-4 below.

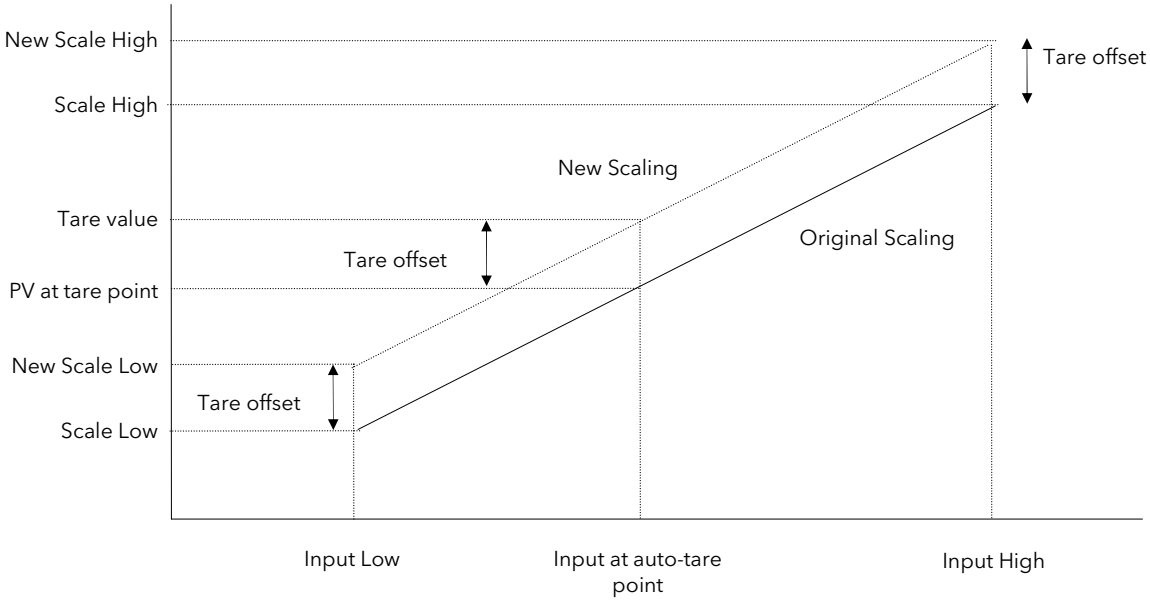


Figure 24-4: Effect of Auto-Tare

Note:-
A Tare calibration will change the values of 'Scale High' and 'Scale Low'.

24.6 TRANSDUCER SCALING PARAMETERS

The parameters listed in the table below allow you to soft wire to sources within the controller to provide, for example, operation of calibration procedure via external switches.

24.6.1 Transducer Scaling Parameter Table

Table Number: 24.6.1.	This page shows the Transducer Scaling parameters.		TXDCR SCALING (*Txdcr* 1)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Cal Type	Type of calibration	Off Shunt Load Cell Comparison	Off	Conf
Input Src	Pre-scaled value source	Modbus Address	None	Conf
Enable Cal Src	Enable calibration source			Conf
Clear Cal Src	Clear calibration source			Conf
Start Pnt 1 Src	Start calibration point 1 source			Conf
Start Pnt 2 Src	Start calibration point 2 source			Conf
Start Tare S	Start auto tare calibration source			Conf
Range Min	Minimum scale value			Conf
Range Max	Maximum scale value			Conf
Txdcr Name	Transducer name	From User Text	Default Text	Conf
Enable Cal [1]	Enable calibration	Off On	Off	L3
Start Tare [2]	Start auto-tare calibration	Off On	Off	L1
Start Pnt1 Cal [3]	Start the calibration at point 1, normally the low point	Off On	Off	L1
Start Pnt2 Cal [4]	Start the calibration at point 2, normally the high point	Off On	Off	L1
Clear Cal [5]	Clear previous calibration values	Off On	Off	L3
Tare Value	Sets the value that the controller will read after an auto-tare calibration	Display range		L3
Input Low	Sets the scaling input low point			L3
Input High	Sets the scaling input high point			L3
Scale Low	Sets the scaling output low point			L3
Scale High	Sets the scaling output high point			L3
Threshold Val [6]	The allowed difference between two consecutive averages during calibration	0 - 99.999 mins		L3
Shunt State [7]	Indicates that the shunt resistor is connected or not	Off On		L3 R/O
Cal Active	Indicates calibration in progress	Off On		L3 R/O
Input Value	Pre-scaled input value	-100 to 100	0	L1
Scaled Value	Output from the scaling block.			R/O
Adjust Value	Sets the value read by the reference source in comparison calibration only			L1
OP Status	Output status based on input status and scaled PV	Good Bad		R/O

24.6.2 Parameter Notes

1. Enable Cal

   This may be wired to a digital input for an external switch. If not wired, then the value may be changed.

   When enabled the transducer parameters may be altered as described in the previous sections. When the parameter has been turned On it will remain on until turned off manually even if the controller is powered cycled.

2. Start Tare

   This may be wired to a digital input for an external switch. If not wired, then the value may be changed.

3. Start Pnt1 Cal

   This may be wired to a digital input for an external switch. If not wired, then the value may be changed.

   It starts the calibration procedure for:

   1. Shunt Calibration
   2. The low point for Load Cell Calibration
   3. The low point for Comparison Calibration

4. Start Pnt2 Cal

   This may be wired to a digital input for an external switch. If not wired, then the value may be changed.

   It starts the calibration procedure for:

   1. The high point for Load Cell Calibration
   2. The high point for Comparison Calibration

5. Clear Cal

   This may be wired to a digital input for an external switch. If not wired, then the value may be changed.

   When enabled the input will reset to default values. A new calibration will overwrite the previous calibration values if Clear Cal is not enabled between calibrations.

6. Threshold Val

   The input needs to settle within a range which has been set in configuration level. The threshold value sets the required settling time for shunt, load cell and auto-tare calibration.

7. Shunt

   This parameter is an output from the function block which can be wired to a transducer scale module to close the shunt circuit and introduce the calibration resistor. It may be used in copy and paste wiring.

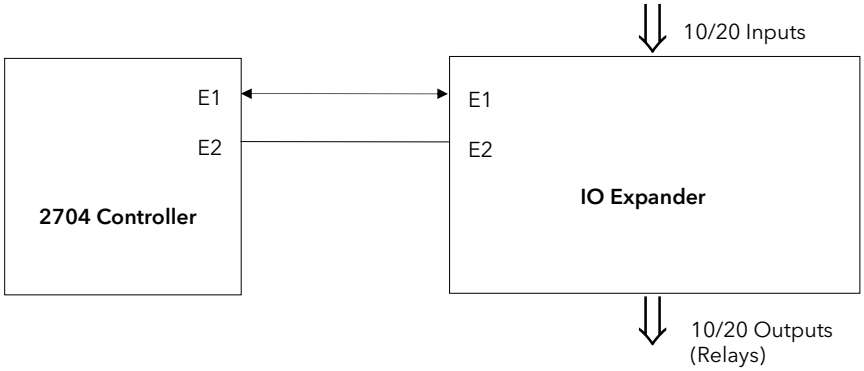
25. CHAPTER 25 IO EXPANDER

25.1 WHAT IS IO EXPANDER?

The IO Expander is an external unit which can be used in conjunction with the 2704 controller to allow the number of digital IO points to be increased. There are two versions:-

1. 10 Inputs and 10 Outputs
2. 20 Inputs and 20 Outputs

Each input is fully isolated and voltage or current driven. Each output is also fully isolated consisting of four changeover contacts and six normally open contacts in the 10 IO version and four changeover and sixteen normally open contacts in the 20 IO version.
Data transfer is performed serially via a two wire interface as shown in Figure 25-1.



E1 and E2 are the terminal numbers on both Controller and IO Expander. It is recommended that a cable length of 10 metres is not exceeded, however, no shielding or twisted pair cable is required.

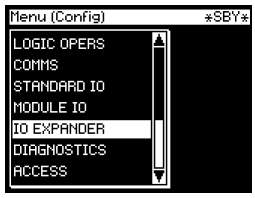
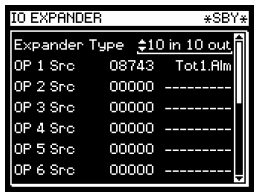
Figure 25-1: IO Expander Data Transfer

Wiring connections are shown in section 2.5.5 and further details of the IO Expander are given in the IO Expander Handbook, Part No. HA026893.

When this unit is connected to the controller it is necessary to set up parameters to determine its operation. These parameters can be set up in Operation Level 3 and are repeated here for information.

The IO Expander is enabled in INSTRUMENT/Options Page, see section 7.2.1.

25.2 TO CONFIGURE IO EXPANDER

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'IO EXPANDER**		
5. Press [↻] to show the parameter list 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to the required parameter 7. Press [↻] to select the parameter 8. Press [▲] or [▼] to change the value or state		In this view the IO Expander type has been configured as **10 In and 10 Out'** and parameter **'OP 1 Src'** has been connected to the **'Totaliser 1 Alarm Output'**. The IO Expander output 1 will operate when Totaliser 1 alarm output is exceeded.

Remaining parameters in the Analogue Operators list are accessed and adjusted in the same way.

The list of parameters available is shown in the following table ⇓

25.2.1 IO Expander parameters

Table Number: 25.2.1	This page allows you to configure the IO Expander.			IO EXPANDER
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Expander Type	Expander type	None 10 in 10 out 20 in 20 out	None	Conf
OP 1 Src	Output 1 source Source of the signal to operate relay 1 in the IO Expander.	Modbus address		Conf
The above parameter is repeated for all 20 outputs available in the IO Expander				
Status	IO Expander status	Good Bad		L1 R/O
In Stat 1-10	Status of the first 10 digital inputs □□□□□□□□□□ to ■■■■■■■■■■	□ = Off ■ = On		L1 R/O
In Stat 11-20	Status of the second 10 digital inputs □□□□□□□□□□ to ■■■■■■■■■■	□ = Off ■ = On		L1 R/O
OP Stat 21-30	Status of the first 10 digital outputs. Press ↻ to select outputs in turn. The flashing underlined output can be changed using ⇕ buttons. ⇕□□□□□□□□□□ to ⇕■■■■■■■■■■	□ = Off ■ = On		L1
OP Inv 1-10	To change the sense of the first 10 outputs.	□ = direct ■ = Inverted		L3
Out Stat 31-40	Status of the second 10 digital outputs. Press ↻ to select outputs in turn. The flashing underlined output can be changed using ⇕ buttons. ⇕□□□□□□□□□□ to ⇕■■■■■■■■■■	□ = Off ■ = On		L1
OP Inv 31-40	To change the sense of the second 10 outputs.	□ = direct ■ = Inverted		L3

26. CHAPTER 26 DIAGNOSTICS

26.1 WHAT IS DIAGNOSTICS?

Diagnostics are displayed in Access Level 3 and Configuration level, and provide information on the internal state of the controller. The parameters are intended for use in advanced fault finding situations. Up to eight error messages can be listed and each error message displays a message showing the state of the controller. The error messages are shown in Note 1.

The diagnostic parameters are listed below:-

26.1.1 Diagnostics Parameters

Table Number: 26.1.1	This page allows you to inspect diagnostic information		DIAGNOSTICS	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Error Count	Number of errors recorded			Read only
Error 1	Historical errors where 1 is the most recent	See Note 1		Read only
Error 2				
Error 3				
Error 4				
Error 5				
Error 6				
Error 7				
Error 8				
Clear Err Log?	Error log reset	No Yes	No	Conf
CPU % Free	A measure of the loading on the CPU			Read only
Con Task Ticks	A measure of the activity of the algorithm			Read only
UI Task 1 Ticks				
UI Task 2 Ticks				
Power FF	Power feedback. Measures the supply voltage to the controller			Read only
Power Failures	A count of the number of power failures			Read only

Note 1.
Possible error messages:-

OK	SPI Locked
Bad Ident	SPI Queue Full
Bad Fact Cal	HighP Lockout
Module Changed	Pro Mem Full
DFC1 Error, DFC2 Error, DFC3 Error	Invalid Seg
Module N/A	Program Full
CBC Comms Error	Invalid Prog
Cal Store Error	Bad Logic 1 to Bad Logic 7
CBC Cal Error	CPU Add Err
Bad PV Input	Calc CRC Err
Bad Mod3 Input, Bad Mod4 Input, Bad Mod6 Input,	Bad Cal Restore
Bad An Input	Bad Cust Lin
Bad NVOL Check	Bad Instruct
Bad X Board	Bad Slot Instr
Bad Res Ident	DMA Addr Err
Bad SPI SemRel	Reserved Int
Bad CW EETrans	Undefined Int
Bad Prog Data	SPC Init Err
Bad Prog Csum	H Rx Timeout
SegPool Over	J Rx Timeout

27. CHAPTER 27 CALIBRATION

The 2704 controller is calibrated in three ways. These are:-

1. **Factory Calibration.** The controller is calibrated to very high accuracy during manufacture and the calibration values are permanently stored within the controller. Factory calibration is not available to the user, but it is always possible to revert to the factory values if required.
2. **Transducer Scaling.** This is described in Chapter 24. Transducer scaling allows offsets to be entered to compensate for errors or differences in the process measurement system.
3. **User Calibration.** This allows the instrument to be calibrated against a certified field calibration source. This chapter describes User Calibration.

27.1 USER CALIBRATION

The following inputs can be calibrated:

1. **PV Input.** This is the fixed PV input on terminals VH, V1, V+, V-. The PV Input can be configured for Thermocouple, Platinum Resistance Thermometer (RTD), Pyrometer, mV, Volt, High Impedance Input Volts or mA inputs. Pyrometer and mA ranges are included in the mV range. Thermocouple calibration involves calibrating the temperature offset of the CJC sensor only. Other aspects of thermocouple calibration are also included in mV calibration.
2. **Analogue Input.** This is the fixed input on terminals BA, BB, BC, and is intended for volt or current sources.
3. **Analogue I/O Modules.** These are inputs which can be connected to terminals A, B, C, D of the module I/O. Any input type listed above can be connected to these modules.

See also the 'Installation' chapter in the User Guide for details on terminal connections.

27.2 PRECAUTIONS

Before starting any calibration procedure the following precautions should be taken:-

1. When calibrating mV inputs make sure that the calibrating source outputs less than 250mV before connecting it to the mV terminals. If accidentally a large potential is applied (even for less than 1 second), then at least one hour should elapse before commencing the calibration.
2. RTD calibration is incomplete without mV calibration. A strict procedure, presented in section 27.3.5. must be followed to avoid calibration errors being up to an order of magnitude greater than that specified for this input. This particularly concerns the linearity specification.

A pre-wired jig built using a spare instrument sleeve may help to speed up the calibration procedure especially if a number of instruments are to be calibrated. This can be built using a spare instrument sleeve available by quoting Part No. SUB26/SLE.

It is very important that power is turned on only after the controller has been inserted in the sleeve of the pre-wired circuit. Power should also be turned off before removing the controller from its sleeve.

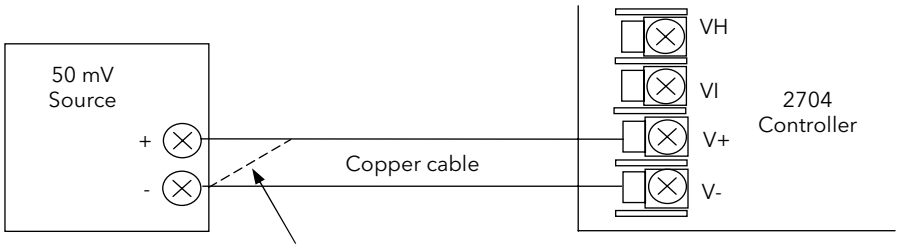
Allow at least 10 minutes for the controller to warm up after switch on.

Failure to observe these precautions will result in the controller not being calibrated to its full capability.

27.3 PV INPUT

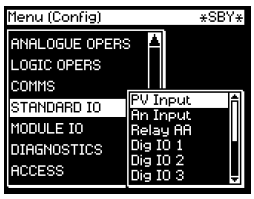
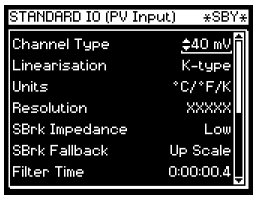
27.3.1 To Calibrate mV Range

Calibration of both 40 and 80 mV ranges for the PV Input is carried out using the same 50 milli-volt source. Pyrometer and mA calibration is included in this procedure. To calibrate thermocouples it is first necessary to calibrate the 40mV and 80mV ranges followed by CJC described in section 27.3.2.



For best results 0mV should be calibrated by disconnecting one of the copper wires from the mV source and short circuiting it to the other wire. This is particularly important to obtain best accuracy for RTD calibration

Figure 27-1: Connections for mV Range

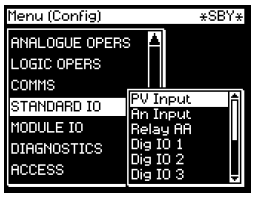
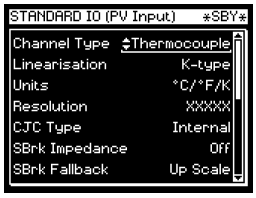
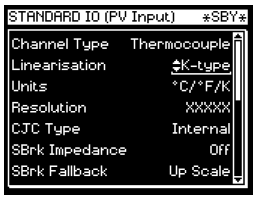
Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary until the '**STANDARD IO'** page header is displayed. 2. Press [scroll] to select sub-headers and **'PV Input'**		To choose PV Input
3. Press [scroll] to select the parameter list 4. Press [scroll] again to select **'Channel Type'** 5. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the 40mV or 80mV range		To choose mV input range
6. Press [scroll] until the parameter '**Cal State'** is displayed		

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
Calibrate at 0mV		
7. Set mV source to 0mV **(or better by linking the two copper wires as described in the previous section)**		
8. Press ▲ to choose '**Low - 0mV'**		Calibration commences 3 seconds after (**Go**) is selected and 4 seconds later progresses to '◆ Passed'.
9. Press ▲ to choose '**Go'**		If the message ◆ **Failed** appears this usually indicates that the input is not connected. At any point in this process press ▲ to select **Abort.**
10. Press ▲ to choose '**Accept'**		3 seconds after selecting 'Accept' the 0mV calibration becomes valid Alternatively press ▲ to 'Abort'
Calibrate at 50mV		
11. Set mV source to 50mV		
12. Press ▲ to choose **'High - 50mV'**		
13. Repeat steps 9 & 10		
At this point the new calibration values are used by the controller. They will, however, be lost when the power to the controller is turned off. Complete the following step to store the values to the User Calibration area.		
14. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose '**Save to User'**		3 seconds after selecting 'Save to User' the 0mV and 50 mV calibration values are stored and used by the controller. To return to factory calibration press ▲ to '**Restore Factory'**, then choose **'Save to User'**

27.3.2 Thermocouple Calibration

Thermocouples are calibrated, firstly, by following the previous procedure for the 40mV and 80mV ranges, (both ranges should be calibrated to cover all types of thermocouple) then calibrating CJC.

This can be carried out using an external CJC reference source such as an ice bath or using a thermocouple mV source. Replace the copper cable shown in Figure 27-1 with the appropriate thermocouple compensating cable. Set the mV source to internal compensation for the thermocouple in use and set the output for 0mV. Then:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. Access the PV Input sub-header from **STANDARD IO** menu as described in the previous section		To choose PV Input
2. Press [↵] to show the parameter list. 3. Press [↵] again to select **'Channel type'** 4. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose **'Thermocouple'**		To choose input type.
5. Press [↵] to select '**Linearisation'** 6. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the linearisation curve for the thermocouple in use		To choose thermocouple linearisation curve Ensure that **'Rear Term Temp'** is set to **'Auto'**. If not it will be necessary to accurately measure the temperature at the rear terminals and set this value accordingly
7. Press [↵] until the parameter '**Cal State'** is displayed		
8. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose '**CJC'**		Press [▲] to 'Go'. Then **Accept** and **Save to User** as described in Section 27.3.1. steps 10 and 14.

27.3.3 Voltage Calibration

The procedure is identical to mV calibration with the exception that the low calibration point is 0V and the high point is 8V.

Note:- The voltage input terminals are VH and V- as detailed in the User Guide.

27.3.4 High Z Voltage Calibration

The procedure is identical to mV calibration with the exception that the low calibration point is 0V and the high point is 1V.

Note:- The voltage input terminals are VH and V- as detailed in the User Guide.

27.3.5 3-Wire RTD Calibration

The two points at which RTD is calibrated are 150.00Ω and 400.00Ω.

Before starting RTD calibration:

- A decade box with total resistance lower than 1K must be connected in place of RTD as indicated on the connection diagram **before the instrument is powered up**. If at any instant the instrument was powered up without this connection then at least 1 hour must elapse from the time of restoring this connection before RTD calibration can take place.
- The instrument should be warmed up (powered up) for at least 10 minutes.

Before using or verifying RTD calibration:

- The above two points must be satisfied if the full accuracy is to be expected – see Note 2.
- The mV ranges must be calibrated – particularly the 0mV point. RTD calibration is incomplete without accurately calibrated mV ranges. Each instrument (or module) is calibrated to high standard in factory before shipment, therefore, the user does not need to perform mV calibration. If for any reasons this calibration was altered then 'Restore Factory' calibration and 'Save' facilities of mV ranges can be used. If on the other hand the RTD linearity is of a particular importance and the mV calibration was not checked/performed for several years than see Note 1.

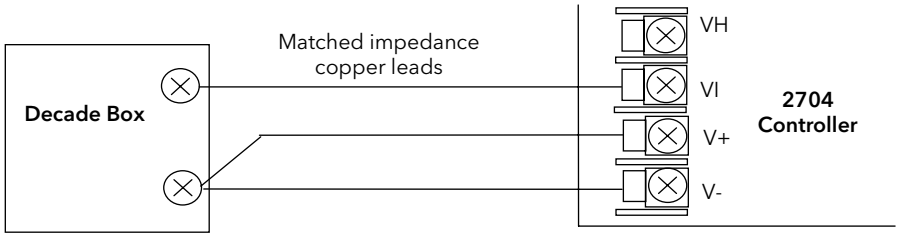
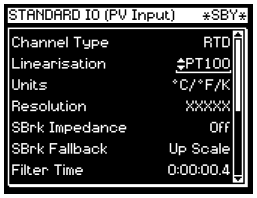
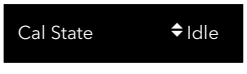
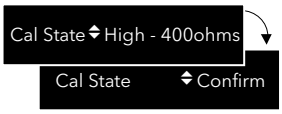


Figure 27-2: Connections for RTD

Note 1: - Proceed with mV calibration as described in section 27.3.1making sure that 0mV is calibrated by short-circuiting the connecting copper wires and the same 50 mV source is used to calibrate high point on both 40 and 80 mV ranges. Also the calibration of both mV range should take place within short period of each other. As mV calibration requires disconnecting RTD or decade box it may be quicker to do RTD calibration first. However, do remember about 1-hour delay before being able to verify the calibration.

Note 2: - Typical extra errors to expect: ~0.5 °C within the first minute, ~0.2 °C within first 15 minutes, ~0.1 °C within first 1 hour.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. For a controller calibrated for RTD type PT100, the view on the display should be as shown.		
2. Press ↻ until the parameter '**Cal State'** is displayed		
3. Set the decade box for 150.00Ω 4. Repeat procedure 25.3.1. steps 9 to 10	**Calibrate at 150 ohms**. 	'Doing Fine Cal' for RTD takes about 30 seconds. This is about seven times longer than when calibrating mV
5. Set the decade box for 400.00Ω 6. Repeat procedure 27.3.1. steps 11 to 14	**Calibrate at 400 ohms**. 	

27.4 ANALOGUE INPUT

Calibration of the Analogue input is carried out using an 8 volt (±2mV) source. mA calibration is included in Volt calibration and assumes 100Ω burden resistor across terminals BA & BB.

There are three conditions to be calibrated - **Offset, Common Mode Rejection** and **Gain.**

The use of a pre-wired jig is recommended assuming that all three conditions are to be calibrated. The connections for this are shown in Figure 27-3.

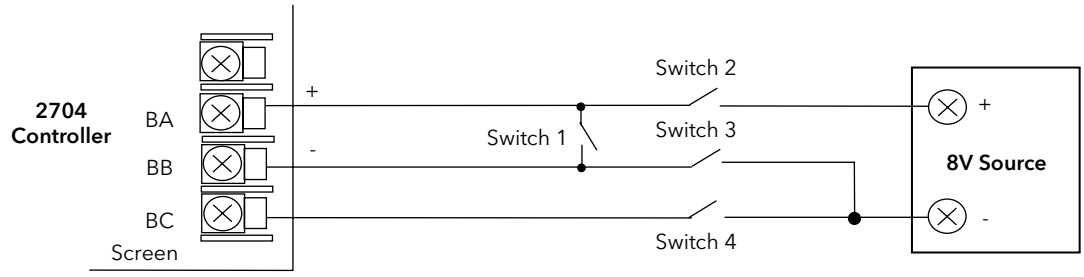
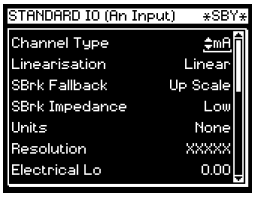


Figure 27-3: Analogue Input Calibration Connections

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [ ] as many times as necessary until the '**STANDARD IO'** page header is displayed. 2. Press [ ] to select sub-headers and **'An Input'**		
3. Press [ ] to select the parameter list 4. Press [ ] again to edit **'Channel Type'** if necessary		The Channel Type may be mA or Volts. The calibration procedure is the same.
5. Press [ ] until the parameter '**Cal State'** is displayed		

To calibrate Offset

Connect + and - terminals together by closing switch 1. Open switches 2, 3 and 4 to allow the short circuited inputs to float.

6. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose '**Offset'**		The procedure is now the same as paragraphs 9, 10 and 14 for mV calibration.

To calibrate Common Mode Rejection Ratio

Close switches 2 and 4, while switch 1 remains closed and switch 3 remains open, so that 8V is applied to both + and - input terminals with respect to the Screen terminal.

7. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose '**CMRR Enhance'**		The procedure is now the same as paragraphs 9, 10 and 14 for mV calibration.

To calibrate Gain

Open switches 1 and 4 and close switches 2 and 3 so that 8V is connected to both + and - input terminals while the screen is floating.

8. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose '**Gain'**		The procedure is now the same as paragraphs 9, 10 and 14 for mV calibration.

27.5 MODULE I/O

27.5.1 DC Output Module

The DC output module is calibrated in the factory at 10% and 90% of output level.

This is 1 and 9V for 0 to 10Vdc output; 2mA and 18mA for a 0 to 20mA output; 4mA and 18mA for A dual DC output.

The factory calibration can be modified by the user by adjusting the '**Cal Trim'** parameter, i.e. Actual Output = Factory Cal (Low & High) Value + User Cal (Low & High) Trim Value. The user trim value can be accepted and saved as for input calibration data.

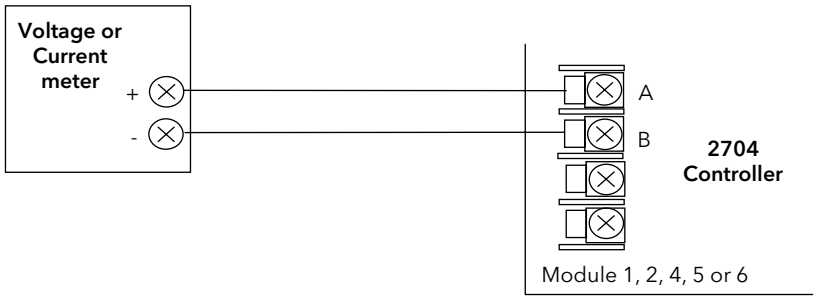
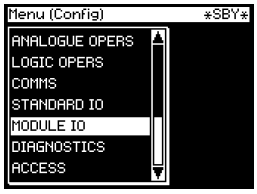
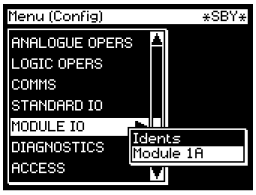


Figure 27-4: DC Module Connections Volts or Current Output

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary until the **MODULE IO** page header is displayed		
2. Press [page] to show sub-headers 3. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose the module in which the DC Output module is fitted		
4. Press [page] until the parameter '**Cal State'** is displayed		Other choices are: Cal Low Cal High Restore Factory Save (only appears after cal procedure complete.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
	Now Calibrate at 10% Output	
5. Press ▲ to choose **'Cal Low'**	Cal State ⇕ Cal Low → 3 Sec Cal State ⇕ Confirm	3 seconds after selecting 'Cal Low' the confirm message will appear. The other choice is 'Abort'
6. Press ▲ to choose '**Go'**	Cal State ⇕ Go → 3 Sec Cal State ⇕ Now Trim O/P	
7. Press ↻ to scroll to '**Cal Trim'** 8. Press ▲ or ▼ to achieve the required output value read by the multimeter - 1.00 Vdc or 2.00mA	Cal Trim ⇕ 0	The adjustment is between -9999 and +9999. These numbers do not have units and are used for indication only.
9. Press **and hold** ↻ while pressing ▲ twice to return to '**Cal State'**	Cal State ⇕ Go → 3 Sec Cal State ⇕ Now Trim O/P	You can also scroll forward using the ↻ button only. This, however, means that you will need to scroll through all parameters in the list.
10. Press ▲ to choose '**Accept'**	Cal State ⇕ Accept → 3 Sec Cal State ⇕ Idle	3 seconds later the calibration is accepted
	Calibrate at 90% Output	
11. Press ▲ to choose **'Cal High'**	Cal State ⇕ Cal High → 3 Sec Cal State ⇕ Confirm	

12. Repeat steps 6 to 10 to calibrate at 90% output. 9.00Vdc or 18mA

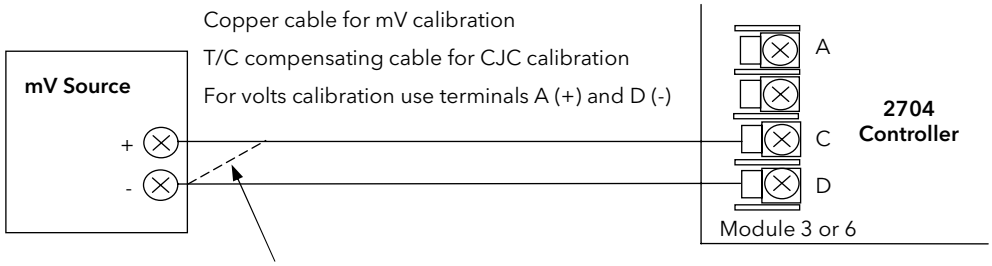
At this point the calibration values are used by the controller. They will, however, be lost when the power to the controller is turned off. From **Cal State/Idle:**

13. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose **Save**	Cal State ⇕ Save → 3 Sec Cal State ⇕ Idle	The 10% and 90% calibration values are stored and used by the controller. To return to factory calibration press ▲ to '**Restore Factory'**. When '⇕ Idle' appears choose **'Save'**

27.5.2 PV Input Module

PV Input modules can be fitted in positions 3 and 6. These modules can provide inputs for thermocouple, 3-wire RTD, mV, Volts or mA. The wiring connections for these inputs are shown below.

The calibration procedure is identical to that described in Section 27.3, but the **Cal State** parameter will be found under the page header **MODULE IO/Module 3 A Page** or **Module 6 A Page.**



For best results 0mV should be calibrated by disconnecting one of the copper wires from the mV source and short circuiting it to the other wire. This is particularly important to obtain best accuracy for RTD calibration

Figure 27-5: Volt, mV and Thermocouple Connections to Modules 3 & 6

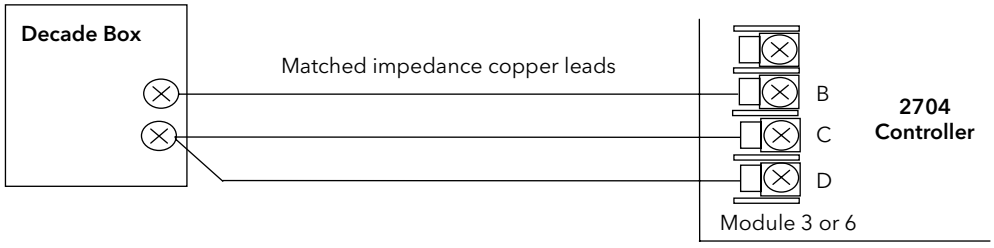


Figure 27-6: 3-Wire RTD Connections to Modules 3 & 6

27.5.3 Dual PV Input Module

The procedure is the same as the PV Input module above, but the parameter **'En Dual Mode'** in the Channel C parameter list must be set to **'No'. 'Cal State'** is accessed from Channel A when enable dual mode is set to '**No'**.

27.5.4 DC Input Module

The procedure is the same as the PV Input module above except that only a single mV range is available.

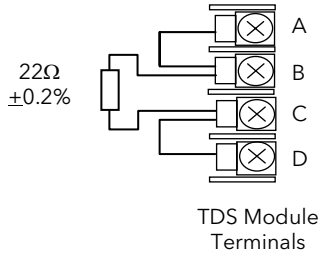
27.5.5 TDS Input Module – Conductance Calibration

Since the module is factory calibrated it is very unlikely that it will be necessary to recalibrate the conductance reading in the field. However, should this become necessary the procedure in this section should be followed.

The TDS module is calibrated at two conductance points:-

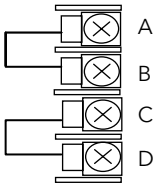
- 0mS (i.e. the probe connections open circuit)
- 45.455mS (i.e. at 22Ω resistance)

At the 22Ω calibration point use a resistor that is within ±0.2% of 22Ω to calibrate the module to its specification. Connect the resistor directly to the terminals as shown below or use four short wires less than 1.5m long.



TDS Module Terminals

At the open circuit Calibration point take care that outside noise does not contribute to the calibration reading. Keep wires very short or replace them with links connected directly to the controller terminals.



Using the same general procedure as described in the previous sections, proceed as follows:-

- Enter Configuration level and select the particular module slot where the TDS module is fitted. It is a single channel so the slot number will be followed by the letter A.
- Connect 22Ω (±0.2%) resistor as shown above.
- Select the 'Cal State' parameter (initially set to 'Idle')
- Press ▲ or ▼ button to select 'High – 22ohm'. 'Confirm' this by selecting 'Go'. The controller will automatically calibrate, as described in previous sections
- Assuming the reading falls within the expected range the 'Cal State' parameter will show 'Pass'. Use ▲ or ▼ button to 'Accept'
- Next open circuit the probe connections and set the 'Cal State' parameter to 'Low – O/C' and repeat the above procedure
- Finally, set the 'Cal State' parameter to 'Save to User' to save the new calibration values

27.5.6 4-Wire RTD Module Calibration

To achieve the specified accuracy 4-Wire RTD Modules must be calibrated using 4-wire resistance reference sources with a recommended 10ppm accuracy. If absolute accuracy is required and the appropriate 4-wire resistance source is not available the user is advised to return the controller to Eurotherm for calibration.

Each module is calibrated at two points, that is, 'Low Calibration' at 0Ω, which effectively is the mV offset calibration for the input, and 'High Calibration' at 200Ω for PT100 Module or 50Ω for PT25 Module.

Low and High calibration should be carried out consecutively using the resistance reference connections shown in the diagrams below.

27.5.6.1 Calibration Procedure

1. Connect a reference source as shown below and allow the instrument to warm up for at least 30 minutes. Note; *this connection retains the test (bulb) current and yet ensures that no voltage is developed across the measured resistance. Do not attempt to calibrate this point by just short circuiting the 4-wire resistance!*

Figure 27-7: Low Point Calibration Connections

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
2. In the relevant MODULE IO page (3 or 6), press [↻] until the parameter **'Cal State'** is displayed	Cal State ⇕ Idle	
3. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Cal Low**'	Cal State ⇕ Cal Low → 3 Sec → Cal State ⇕ Confirm	'Confirm' will automatically appear
4. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Go**'	Cal State ⇕ Go → 3 Sec → Cal State ⇕ Passed	The controller will automatically calibrate and the display will either show 'Passed' or 'Failed'. If 'Failed' check the connections and repeat the procedure
5. Press [▲] to '**Accept**'	Cal State ⇕ Accept → 3 Sec → Cal State ⇕ Idle	

6. Re-connect the 'A' terminal wire as shown in Figure 27-8 and allow at least 4 minutes for the instrument to stabilise. Refer to section 27.5.6.4.

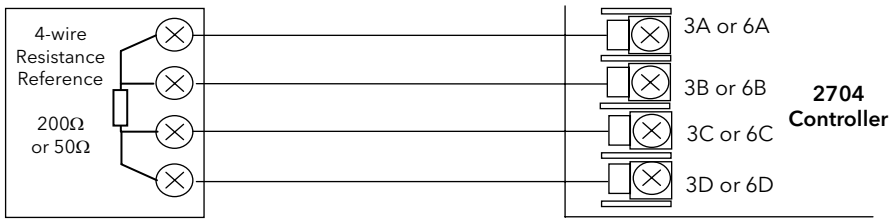


Figure 27-8: High Point Calibration Connections

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
7. Press [↻] until the parameter '**Cal State'** is displayed	Cal State ◆ Idle	
8. Press [▲] or [▼] to select '**Cal High'**	Cal State ◆ Cal High → 3 Sec Cal State ◆ Confirm	'Confirm' will automatically appear
9. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Go'**	Cal State ◆ Go → 3 Sec Cal State ◆ Passed	The controller will automatically calibrate and the display will either show 'Passed' or 'Failed'. If 'Failed' check the connections and repeat the procedure It may also fail if the reference resistance is more than ±3% out of that specified. Values must be saved otherwise they will be lost when the controller is powered down.
10. Press [▲] to **'Accept'**	Cal State ◆ Accept → 3 Sec Cal State ◆ Idle	
11. Press [▲] or [▼] to select **'Save'**	Cal State ◆ Save → 3 Sec Cal State ◆ Idle	

27.5.6.2 Cable Connection Errors

Thermally induced e.m.f. along any non copper connection may contribute to reading errors. It is worth remembering, however, that a significant error can only be induced by the net e.m.f. on inner (B & C) cable connections – see Figure below.

The 2704 rear terminal connector is made of beryllium-copper alloy which minimizes thermally induced e.m.f. at the instrument end. The user must ensure that any non-copper connections between the RTD and the instrument are either eliminated or the temperature gradients along both the inner connections are identical. Nevertheless, at thermal equilibrium, any net e.m.f. can be calibrated out by doing 'Low Point Calibration' (see Figure 27-7).

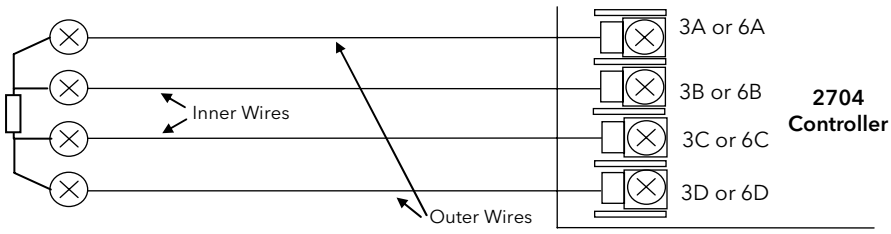


Figure 27-9: Thermally Induced E.M.F's in RTD Connections

27.5.6.3 Maximum Resistance of Outer Wires

The maximum resistance of outer wires is the difference between the total maximum resistance connected between A and D terminals and the expected maximum resistance of the RTD. Therefore, the maximum resistance of each outer wire for guaranteed operation up to the maximum of PV resistance reading is 30Ω for Pt100 module and 5.5Ω for Pt25 module. However, using the appropriate RTD for the appropriate module up to a typical measuring temperature of 800°C will permit the cable resistance limit to increase to 60Ω and 18Ω per cable respectively. Resistance of any connecting wire, within specified limit, does not contribute to reading errors.

27.5.6.4 Detaching RTD Sensor With Instrument Powered ON

All inputs available in the instrument are primarily designed to remain wired to their appropriate input sensors while the instrument is powered on. However, disconnecting and re-connecting any input with the instrument on is possible but a temporary reduction in reading accuracy should be expected. The error magnitude and its recovery time to within specified limits are input type specific, and depend on the length of time the input was disconnected as well as the way in which is was disconnected or re-connected.

The 4-wire RTD input will stabilise/recover to the specified limits within 5 minutes of re-connecting the input, provided that:

- **The terminal A, which sources the sense current is disconnected first and re-connected last (i.e. B, C and D are connected to the RTD sensor before connecting A terminal).**
- The B, C and D inputs are not disconnected for more than two hours
- No static discharge between B, C and D terminals has just occurred (i.e. static precautions should be observed)
- No external source of more than 200mV was applied between the above three terminals

Otherwise recovery may take up to a few hours.

27.6 TO RESTORE FACTORY CALIBRATION VALUES

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. Press [⟳] until the parameter '**Cal State**' is displayed	Cal State ◆ Idle	
2. Press [▲] or [▼] to choose '**Restore Factory**'	Cal State ◆ Restore Factory	The factory calibration values are restored for the input selected, i.e. if the Analogue Input is selected the PV Input and Module input values are not affected.

28. CHAPTER 28 BOILER CONTROL

The 2704 contains function blocks and hardware that are primarily designed for use in controlling water impurities in shell type industrial Boilers. Other aspects of Boiler Control such as level and pressure control can be set up using standard PID blocks and this is covered in other chapters.

28.1 INTRODUCTION

Water admitted in a boiler system is heated and taken out as steam. Dissolved solids are in the water that are added to the system and these solids are left behind when the water is converted to steam. At high parts per million (PPM) levels 'foaming' on the surface of the water occurs which may then cause loss of efficiency of the boiler or blockage in the outlet pipes. It is therefore essential, although costly in terms of energy and money, to drain away some of the boiler water and top it up with less contaminated fresh water. This draining process is known as "Continuous Blowdown" or as "Continuous TDS Control". TDS (Total Dissolved Solids) is normally controlled at a value of about 2500PPM. When the TDS is high the controller opens a valve to bleed water from the boiler with the effect of reducing the water level. The level controller compensates for this by introducing water with a low TDS value thus reducing the overall TDS. Water treatment and high temperatures cause some of the contaminates to precipitate. To remove sludge and precipitated solids that accumulate at the bottom of a boiler an intermittent blowdown method called "Bottom Blowdown" is used. This is performed periodically by opening a large valve at the bottom of the boiler for a short period of time.

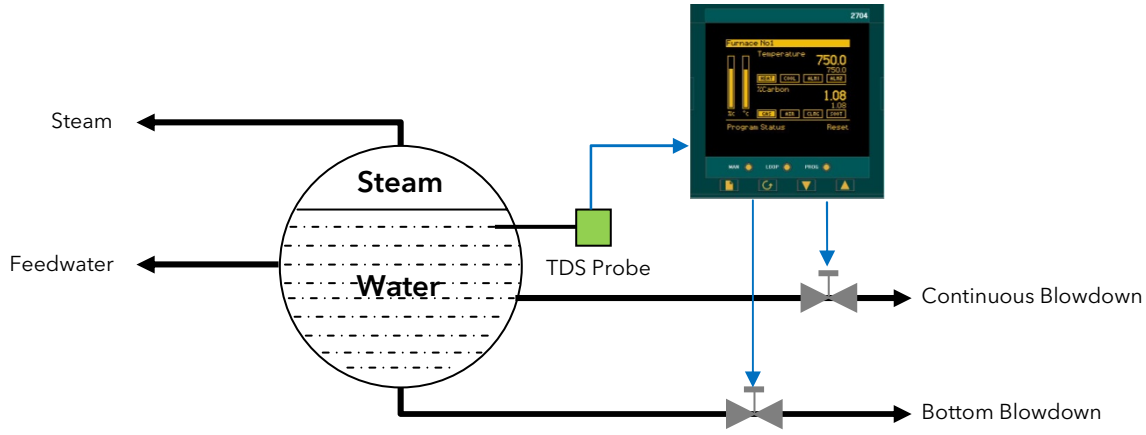


Figure 28-1: 2704 Control of TDS and Precipitated Solids in a Boiler

28.2 WHAT IS TDS?

TDS (Total Dissolved Solids) is the measurement of the amount of solids dissolved in water.

The measurement is often expressed in **PPM** (parts per million). This PPM value directly indicates the mass of dissolved solid molecules in the fluid as a proportion of the total mass of the solution i.e. 200PPM indicates that for every million grams of the solution there are 200g that are not water. The most reliable way of measuring TDS is to evaporate water from a unit volume of a solution and to weigh the solid residue (commonly referred as **TDR** - total dry residue). Fortunately, the solids dissolved in naturally occurring water are of the type which cause water ionisation, and hence, have a direct influence on its electrical conductivity. By measuring conductive properties of such solution a relatively accurate estimate can be made of its TDS.

28.3 HOW IS TDS MEASURED?

There are several factors to take into account when measuring TDS electronically. The following sections describe these factors.

28.3.1 'Specific Conductance'

Specific conductance is a measure of the ability of a fluid to conduct an electrical current as measured using a 1-cm cell and is expressed in units of electrical conductance, i.e., micro-Siemens per centimetre. Specific conductance is related to the type and concentration of ions in a solution and can be used for calculating the dissolved-solids content of the water. Commonly, the concentration of dissolved solids in PPM is from 55 to 75 percent of the specific conductance in micro-Siemens/cm at 25°C. This relationship is not constant and it may vary with changes in the composition of the water, in particular its pH level. We refer to this relationship as **PPM conversion factor** with a default value of 0.7 (i.e. 70%) for a typical water solution with neutral pH.

Increasingly often **µS /cm@25°C** (micro-Siemens/cm at 25°C) are used as alternative units for TSD indication as they are independent of the chemical constituents of the fluid and can be directly compared with readings of a calibrated conductance meter.

As the fluid under test may not be at 25°C, particularly boiler fluid, the conductance reading will have to be temperature compensated to hold relationship to TDS.

In the 2704 controller this is usually automatically done by sensing liquid temperature and applying an appropriate correction factor to each reading of conductance. In cases where the temperature sensing is not available the user must estimate this temperature (derived from boiler pressure – for example) and enter it manually.

28.3.2 Temperature Correction Factor – $TCF_{25}(T_{Liquid})$

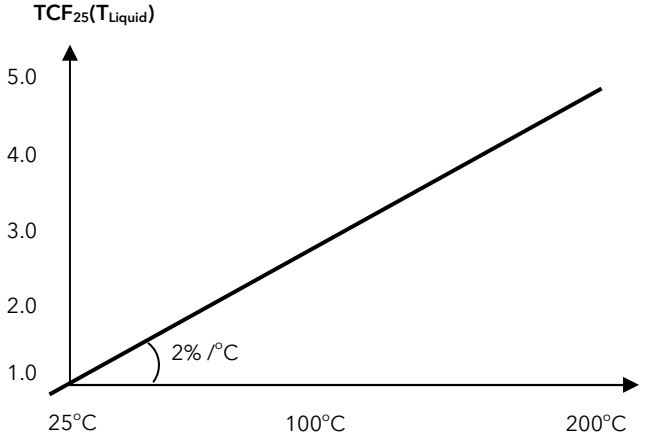
If the actual temperature of the fluid under examination is different to that of the reference temperature of 25°C the readings need to be temperature compensated to derive a valid TDS estimate. Almost always, hotter fluid will conduct better than the same fluid at a cooler temperature. Therefore, it is usual to measure the temperature of the fluid and divide the conductance reading by a number that represents the fractional change of the conductance. This number is called "Temperature Correction Factor" and conveniently noted as **$TCF_{25}(T_{Liquid})$** - where T_{Liquid} is the temperature of the liquid and the subscript 25 signifies the reference temperature for which the reading is to be adjusted.

- **Linear Temperature Compensation – 'Temp Coef'**

Most common way of deriving TCF is by applying linear temperature compensation which is determined by a single parameter, called Temperature Coefficient – 'Temp Coef' (typically 2% /°C) and calculated according to:

$$TFC_{25}(T_{Liquid}) = 1 + \frac{2\%/\mathrm{C}}{100\%} * (T_{Liquid} - 25)$$

Diagrammatically this is represented as:



- **TCF Calibration**

As the temperature coefficient may vary according to chemical constituent of the fluid and the temperature itself the most reliable way of determining TCF is by calibrating TCF at a range of temperatures, tabulating it and deriving the actual **$TCF_{25}(T_{Liquid})$** by interpolating the tabulated values. The 2704 controller can perform this calibration automatically.

28.3.3 Probe Factor (K)

The 'Probe Factor', or 'K', indicates a relationship between the conductance measured with the probe and the specific conductance of the fluid.

Fluid conductance probes are based on a 'model probe' that has two electrodes exactly $1cm^2$ in area and spaced exactly 1cm apart. In practice these dimensions vary from probe to probe so the probe factor converts the conductance read by the probe to the value that would be read if the model probe were used. The K factor is measured in units of 1/cm – therefore:

'**Specific Conductance**' *(in* µS/cm*)* = **K** *(in* 1/cm*)* ***** '**Measured Conductance**' *(in* µS*)*

For most boiler probes K is in range 0.1 to 1 and the value is affected by installation.

28.3.4 Probe Design and TDS Module Operation

TDS probes are usually characterised according to the number of electrodes that are present. A 2-electrode design is the most commonly used in boiler installations although both 3 and 4-electrodes are also found. The basic construction of the 2-electrode is shown below where the boiler metal work is used as one of the electrodes. The conductance is, therefore, measured between the centre electrode and the probe casing or the boiler's body shell.

The 2704 TDS Module delivers a 1Khz alternating signal of ~0.4Vpp (peak to peak amplitude) from the driver terminal A. The driver sense terminal B and ground sense terminal C measures the return voltage and automatically compensates for cable resistance by adjusting the driver voltage to obtain 0.4Vpp at the probe. The PV is a conductance (a reciprocal of resistance in units of Siemens [S] = [1/Ω]) measured between terminals A/B & C/D from which the water specific conductivity and hence TDS is derived.

Normally a temperature sensor, usually Pt100, is included within the probe construction and connected to another 2704 module. This allows the conductance to be compensated for temperature fluctuations.

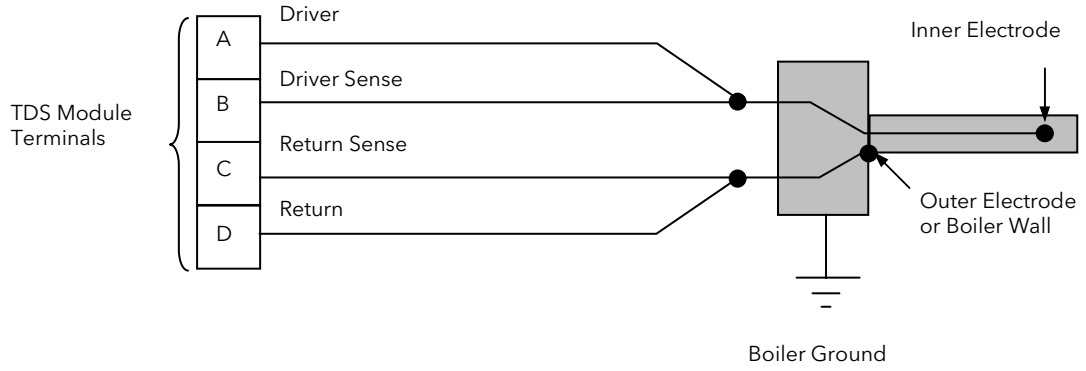


Figure 28-2: Two Electrode TDS Probe

28.3.5 Probe Deterioration

When a probe is immersed in a fluid a certain amount of solids will bind to the probe. This can be seen as 'scaling' on the probe itself.

In case of only two electrode probes any scaling or deterioration of these electrodes will affect the conductance reading. For example, with the probe immersed in water, lime-scale will collect on the measuring electrodes. That lime-scale has a high resistance and will inhibit the probe from making an accurate reading. This problem, however, is largely overcome by making a regular calibration of the system against a reading from the water sample - i.e. titration.

The calibration directly affects K factor which tend to be larger for the scaled probes than the initial (clean) probe factor established during the system installation. The 2704 makes a distinction between the initial probe factor calibration – called 'TDS Cal' and the subsequent probe factor calibrations called – 'Probe Cal'. The difference between the latter and the former K factor values is a measure of the probe deterioration that is monitored by the instrument, alerting user of the potential problems.

In case of 3 or 4 electrode probes the effect of scaling is largely compensated by the hardware of the instrument producing consistently accurate reading despite the scale and so the subsequent 'Probe Cal' and the initial 'TDS Cal' should produce very similar K value. There is a limit to that compensation, however, and so the instrument monitors the extent of scaling by measuring the signal strength required to drive the probe, - called 'Driver O/P'. Monitoring of scaling has also a benefit of providing a diagnostic about the internal state of the boiler and an effectiveness of the feedwater treatment.

28.3.6 Driver O/P

The level of the driver signal (i.e. the ac voltage between terminals A and D) is monitored by the controller and displayed as a % of the maximum possible signal, ~ 5Vpp.

In order to retain 0.4Vpp at the probe, the driver signal will always be sufficiently greater than this to compensate for the voltage drop along the wires and the losses in the probe itself. The compensation for probe losses applies only when 3 or 4 electrodes are employed and monitoring of Driver O/P can be used to indicate the extent of probe scaling. With 2 electrode probes, provided the wire losses are relatively small, the Driver O/P will remain at less than 10%, whereas with clean 2 or 3 electrode probes it will be somewhere between 10% and 20% depending on probe geometry. The latter may easily exceed 100% for heavily soiled electrodes. A value > 110% causes Sensor Break.

28.3.7 Bubbles

When measuring TDS in an environment where the liquid is hot (for example a boiler system) there is always the chance that bubble's are going to be generated and will interfere with the signal. This is because the conductance of steam, for example, is less than that of water. Therefore, when bubbles come in contact with the electrodes of the TDS probe the effective conductance will drop. If this were viewed on a graph the bubbles would appear as negative going spikes on an otherwise smooth graph.

28.4 TDS FUNCTION BLOCK

All the factors influencing derivation of the TDS PV described in section 28.3are taken into account and incorporated into TDS Function Block. The TDS Function Block takes the 'Conductance' reading from TDS Input Module as well as a temperature from another input and performs certain calculations to derive a TDS value. The calculations are based on number of set parameters and various calibration procedures performed through this Block.

The TDS Function Block is enabled using the 'Boiler' feature code. The 'Boiler' feature code also enables the Bottom Blowdown Function Block.

28.4.1 Installation versus Operation Modes

The Function Block has two distinct modes of operation. The first mode is the Installation Mode that deals with setting up all the necessary parameters of the system to provide TDS readings. This includes those determined by the calibration procedures that can only take part with the system running and hence they could not be obtained at configuration level. The second mode is the system Operation Mode which permits for regular re-calibration of TDS readings against titration readings. Disabling the possibility of easily modifying the installation mode parameters is important because they form a reference against which the system deterioration is measured at subsequent system calibrations. For this reason 'set-up' parameter was introduced – see section 28.4.4.3

28.4.2 Probe Deterioration / Scaling

The performance of TDS probes (particularly the 2 electrode) may deteriorate during use due, for example, to scaling.

Probe deterioration (scaling) is determined and compensated for by performing a periodic live calibration specifically designed for this task, called - 'Probe Cal'. This calibration mechanism, together with the current readings generates an 'Apparent K' or 'Current probe factor' that includes any deterioration of the probe. This value can then be compared to the initial probe factor to determine the amount of deterioration that has taken place. Limits can be set on Apparent K using 'Max Apparent K' parameter and warnings given when exceeded indicating that the probe may require a service. The warning is given by the flag called 'Clean Probe Rq'. This means of detecting probe scaling is only useful for 2 electrode type probes.

28.4.3 TDS Function Block Parameters

The TDS Function block has input and output parameters as well as key internal variables as shown in the table shown below.

Table Number: 28.4.3.	This list allows you to set up the parameters for boiler control		BOILER (TDS)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
TDS Status	Indicates the overall status of the TDS function block. See section 28.4.3 for more information.	OK No Temp Calibrating Confirm Change FAIL		L3
Units	Function block output units (i.e. TDS PV units)	µS/cm@25°C PPM	µS/cm@ 25°C	L3
PPM Conversion	Conversion factor for calculating PPM from µS/cm @25°C. Shown when 'Units' = 'PPM'	0.000 to 1.000	0.7	L3
Resolution	This defines the resolution of 'specific conductance' output. For a 'units' setting of PPM, the resolution should be set to xxxxx.	xxxxx xxxx.x xxx.xx xx.xxx x.xxxx		L3
FallBack	Fallback setting which the controller will take if the calculation is invalid. ie 'Invalid PV' = 'True'	Off Low = OP set to 0 High = OP set to 500.000		L3
Bubble Filter t	Bubble Filter time constant limiting the rate at which the signal is allowed to fall while not limiting the rate at which it is allowed to rise	HH:MM:SS.s	0.4sec	L3
TDS PV	TDS output either in terms of temperature compensated specific conductance or PPM	µS/cm@25°C PPM		L3
Invalid PV	Flag indicating the validity of the function block output	True = Invalid output False = Valid output		L3
mS Src	Source address of TDS input, typically wired from TDS Module Eng Val (i.e. Conductance)	Modbus address		Conf
Temp Src	Source address of temperature PV input. Should be wired to a valid temperature input or alternatively wired to a user value	Modbus address		Conf
Setup Params	When enabled allows parameters to be available in level 3 (including this parameter). It also changes the options available in the calibration state. This is to allow for the installation set-up to be completed while the system is active without always giving access from level 3. See section 28.4.4.3	Disabled Enabled		Conf and L3 if set to enable
K-Factor ***	Probe constant, entered by the user Units are 1/cm	Auto = 0.3 or 0.001 to 99.999	Auto	L3
K-Factor val ***	The actual value for K_Factor being used by the system.			L3
Temp Coef ***	Temperature coefficient for deriving linear temperature compensation	Auto = 2.0 or 0.1 to 100.0	2.0%/°C	L3
Temp Coef val ***	The actual value being used by the controller.			L3
Use Table	Select to use the TCF table for deriving temperature compensation. The table will only be available if a TCF calibration has been done, otherwise this parameter is NOT shown.	Yes No		

Table Number: 28.4.3.	This list allows you to set up the parameters for boiler control		BOILER (TDS)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Confirm Change	This parameter is used when the settings of 'K-Factor' and 'Temp Coef' are changed and conflict with the TDScal. It is only available if there is a need to confirm a change, is used to indicate the problem and guide the user through the possible options (Override TDScal, cancel change etc). See section 28.4.4.2			
TDScal Status	Status of TDS calibration. 'Overridden' is used to override previous calibration due to manual settings. See section 28.4.4.2	Default Valid Overridden		L3
Calibration	Calibration state machine controls. See section 28.4.4.4 for more details and to enable probe calibration.			L3
Probe Cal	Periodic calibration following titration. See section28.4.4.4 for further information and how to enable this parameter.	Off On	Off	L3 if Setup Params=Disabled
TCF Cal	Establishing a set of Temperature Correction Factors (every 10 °C) for a particular water type. See section 28.4.4.4 for further information			
Cal State	Indicates whether calibration is active and the type of calibration being carried out	Calibration Inactive Probe Cal TDScal TCFcal		Conf
Cal Data Entry	Titration result entry point under calibration conditions. The data is assumed to be in the same units as the function block 'Units' setting. Only available when the 'Calibration' parameter is in one of the 'Enter Data' states.			L3
Apparent K	Current probe factor derived from the 'Probe Cal', 'TDS Cal' and current readings. This is used internally within the function block as a substitute for 'K-Factor' and is outputted for diagnostic purposes.			L3
Max Apparent K	Maximum limit for apparent probe factor. If this is breached then the function block will set 'Clean Probe Rq' to 'Yes'.			Conf
Probe Clean Rq	Flag indicating that Apparent K has exceeded the 'Max Apparent K parameter.	Yes = 'Apparent K' > 'Max Apparent K' No' if not.		L3
RPercent	Parameter that models non-linear behaviour of probes and requiring two different titration values to determine it. It represents the anticipated percentage contribution split between probe surface contamination errors and probe scaling errors at Probe Cal.	0.0 to 100.0 %/cm		Conf

*** Note that 'Temp Coef' and 'K-Factor' may be dependent on each other. See section 28.4.4.2.

28.4.4 Further Parameter Descriptions

28.4.4.1 TDS Status Values

Enumeration	Display	Description
0	No temp	This status indicates that the temperature input is required but is not valid, therefore the temperature compensated outputs are invalid.
1	Confirm Change	This status indicates that there has been a manual change to either 'K' or 'TCOEF' that requires the user to confirm the change and make a decision about what action to take from the options given.
2	Calibrating	This status indicates that the function block is performing one of its calibration cycles. The TDS Output parameters continue to be valid during any of the calibration cycles. The values used within the system will not be updated until the calibration has passed and been accepted.
3	Fail	This status indicates that there is not a valid TDS input wired to the function block and therefore the TDS output is invalid.
4	OK	All output parameters valid.

28.4.4.2 'Temp Coef' , 'K-Factor' and 'Use Table' parameters

To aid the initial set-up of TDS parameters in any situation, the TDS Function Block allows the user to set the known parameters while attempting to calculate the parameters which have been set to AUTO utilising the last TDS calibration. If however, the setting of one parameter causes the other parameter to go beyond its limit threshold then the user is prompted with a message to check the 'Confirm Change' parameter. Under these circumstances the 'Confirm Change' parameter will indicate the 'out of range' condition and only give an option to cancel the last change.

The calculated parameters 'K-Factor val' and/or 'Temp Coef val' are displayed only if 'K-Factor' and/or 'Temp Coef' are set to AUTO respectively. They are displayed for the user to verify that the values are within expected limits.

The table below shows all the possible combinations of these parameter settings together with the option of using the TCF Table. In boiler control applications the second option - AUTO/SET is the most commonly used as typical boiler probes have a poorly defined probe factor and, in addition, this could change during installation – refer to the table.

If, however, the user chooses to set both parameters manually (SET/SET option) then he will again be prompted to check the 'Confirm Change' parameter. This time the 'Confirm Change' parameter will indicate that the current action will invalidate the last TDS calibration. The user will be supplied with options to cancel the last change or 'Override Cal'.

User settable parameters			The actual parameter values used by instrument to calculate TDS		
K-Factor	Temp Coef.	Use Table	K-Factor val	Temp Coef. val	**TDS Cal** is valid
SET	SET	NO	As set by user	As set by user	NO
		YES	As set by user	As set by user, however, it applies only to temperatures outside the Table.	NO
AUTO	SET	NO	Determined by the last TDS calibration	As set by user	YES
		YES	Determined by the last TDS calibration	As set by user, however, it applies only to temperatures outside the Table	YES
AUTO	AUTO	NO	Determined by the last TDS calibration	Default value = 2% /°C or the last value (user set or auto calculated) before setting Temp Coef to AUTO	YES
		YES	Determined by the last TDS calibration	Extrapolated average value from the start and end points of the Table	YES
SET	AUTO	NO	As set by user	Determined by the last TDS calibration, however, it applies only to temperatures outside the Table.	YES
		YES	As set by user	Determined by the last TDS calibration	YES

Note that if 'Use Table' parameter is selected as YES then for liquid temperatures within the tabulated region the temperature compensation is done using the values extrapolated from this table. Also note that only when there is a TCF table available will the 'Use Table' parameter show enumerations for 'Yes' and 'No'.

28.4.4.3 'Set-up' Parameter

The TDS Function block is required to complete its installation set-up and calibration while the system is running (not in Conf. access level). It is therefore necessary to make certain parameters available at access level 3 while the installation and calibration are being completed.

This is accomplished by the 'Setup' parameter. If set to 'Enabled' the parameters available in Level 3 are:-

Setup (itself), K-Factor, Temp Coef, Use Table, PPM Conversion setting.

The 'ProbeCal' becomes unavailable within the calibration state machine and 'TDScal' & 'TCFcal' become available. For more information please see the following calibration section.

Once the installation set-up and calibration have been completed then the 'Setup' parameter may be set back to 'Disabled' while still in Level 3. This will make the 'Setup' parameter and the additional parameters that were made available to disappear from the level 3 parameter list – including 'set-up' parameter. To restore access to the set-up parameters and initial system calibration the unit will have to be placed into Conf. level access and the 'Setup' parameter set back to 'Enabled'.

28.4.4.4 TDS Calibration

The calibration system within the TDS Function block consists of three calibration mechanisms. One calibration mechanism is for regular calibration to adjust for probe scaling etc. The other two are used only during system commissioning (installation) or annual maintenance service.

The 3 calibration systems are outlined below:-

Name	Description	Section
Probe cal	Performed occasionally (every month or so) to compensate for probe scaling, deterioration etc.	Used during normal operation. Only available when NOT in config mode AND 'Setup' = 'Disabled'.
TDScal	Probe calibration used to determine and set up initial probe factor performed just after system installation or the annual maintenance service.	Installation Calibration. Available in all access levels when 'Setup' = 'Enabled' or only in CFG level access when 'Setup' = 'Disabled'.
TCFcal	Used at installation to determine and store the temperature correction factors for the particular type of boiler fluid.	Installation Calibration. Available in all access levels when 'Setup' = 'Enabled' or only in CFG level access when 'Setup' = 'Disabled'.

The function block status will show 'Calibrating' while in any of the calibration modes. Although the status will show 'Calibrating' the 'Invalid O/P' parameter will not be set as the calibration routines do not affect the output validity.

If there is a power failure/cycle during any of the calibration cycles then the calibration cycle will be aborted.

The internal parameter 'Cal State' indicates to the function block status the actions of the calibration system. The 'Calibration' parameter will only be alterable when the function block status is 'OK' (or calibrating). The 'Cal Data Entry' parameter will only be available/alterable when the Cal mode is in one of the 'Enter Data' states (described in more detail later).

The following table shows 'Cal State' enumerations Vs calibration mode:-

Cal State	Name	Status Setting
0	Calibration Inactive	No effect
1	ProbeCal	Calibrating
2	TDScal	Calibrating
3	TCFcal	Calibrating

The actual values the TDS function block uses during the calibration are unchanged (stored internally) and only updated once the calibration (or manual adjustment) is completed and accepted. Only then are the internally used values updated. If the calibration (or manual adjustment) are cancelled at any time then the original values from before the calibration (or manual adjustment) were made are restored.

Each of these calibration mechanisms are detailed below:-

ProbeCal

The 'ProbeCal' is periodic calibration that will involve the user directly measuring the conductance of the boiler water through titration. This value (usually measured using calibrated reference conductance meter) is then entered into the instrument. The value must be entered in the same units as the units set for the TDS PV (PPM or µS/cm@25°C). The value entered and initial 'K-Factor' value are used to calculate 'Apparent K'. This 'Apparent K' will then be substituted as the current probe constant throughout the TDS Function block.

The user may wish to indicate to the instrument the instant the titration sample was taken. This is done by starting the calibration. The instrument will then immediately acquire and store the read value. The calibration, however, will become valid once the user enters the cal value. This is because it may take some time to acquire a titration value, by which time the instrument could have a different reading.

ProbeCal is not available when 'Setup' is set to 'Enabled' or when in CONFIG access level.

TDScal

The 'TDScal' is one of the installation calibration mechanisms. It is done in the same way as the above calibration but by the system installer or the annual maintenance servicemen. TDScal is used primarily to determine the initial probe factor, although, if the initial probe factor is known and entered into the instrument then this mechanism will try to modify the temperature coefficient. Essentially, if the probe factor is fixed then the temperature coefficient is adjusted to make the calibration valid.

TDScal is not available outside Conf. access level when 'Setup' is set to 'Disable'.

This calibration mechanism is available in all access levels when the 'Setup' parameter is set to 'Enabled'. Otherwise it's only available in Conf. Access level.

For more details regarding the mechanisms involved with this calibration system, see section 28.4.4.5 (Cal State Parameter).

TCF Cal

The 'TFC Cal' calibration is also part of the installation set up. This is not available outside Conf. Level if 'Setup' parameter is set to 'Disable'.

To calibrate TCF the boiler must be filled with water and fired. At some water temperature (preferably well below 100°C) all the outlets should be shut off and the temperature of the boiler should be slowly raised to its maximum operating temperature. Just as the outlets are shut the user should start TCF Cal. The instrument will then take readings every time a decimal temperature point is reached. For example, if TCF Cal was started when boiler water was at 53°C then the first calibration reading will take place at 60°C and the next one at 70°C and so on. The instrument will continue taking readings until the user select 'stop' parameter of the TCF Cal. This should be done after the boiler water has reached the maximum operating temperature.

Providing that the TCF Cal is then accepted the TCF Table is created. This table could be used for deriving temperature compensation if 'Use Table' parameter is set to Yes.

Note that at least 2 cal points must be acquired for the calibration mechanism to complete successfully.

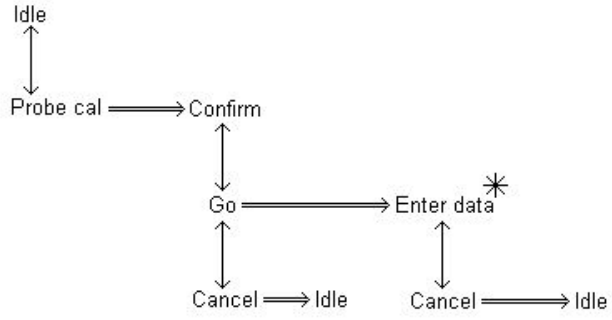
28.4.4.5 TDS Calibration using Cal State Parameter

The Cal state parameter is used to control a calibration state machine that deals with all three calibration mechanisms.

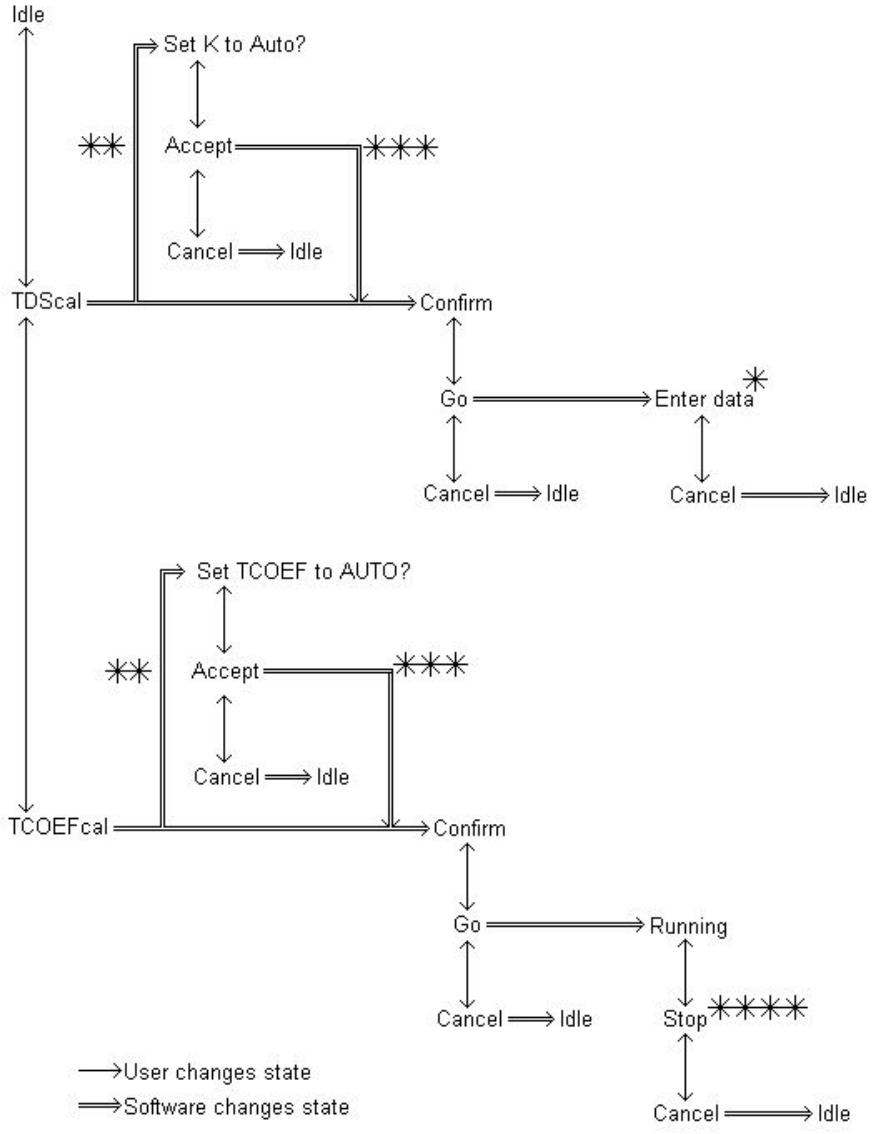
The options that are available to the user in any access level other than Conf. are dependent on the setting of the 'Setup' parameter.

The sequence of options available are shown in the diagram below:-

Setup = Disabled



Setup = Enabled



NOTES:

* = State will change to 'Confirm' once the user has entered the data representing the manually acquired TDS Value (in the correct units) with options for 'Accept' and 'Reject' as long as the calibration was successful. If the calibration was unsuccessful then the state will change to 'Failed' with an option to 'reject'. The data entry parameter will only be available while the state machine is in these states.

** = This path is only taken if neither 'K-Factor' or 'Temp Coef' are set to AUTO – at least one of them needs to be set to AUTO to allow the calibration to function.

*** = Once 'accept' has been selected then the relevant parameter is set to AUTO by the software.

**** = Once stop is selected the calibration state machine will change to 'Passed' with options to 'accept' or 'cancel as long as all is well. If the TCF Cal has failed then it will change to a state indicating the error and giving an option only to 'Cancel'.

If any of the 'Cancel' selections are made then the calibration sequence is aborted and the status returned to 'Idle'. For these reasons, the 'Calibration' parameter is bi-directional (can be set by the user or by the software).

28.4.4.6 Function Block Status Enumerations

The following table describes each of the status enumerations…

Enumeration	Display	Description
0	OK	All is well – Not calibrating, no errors. Invalid O/P = FALSE
1	NO TEMP	The temperature input required but is invalid. Invalid O/P = TRUE
2	Confirm Change	The user is required to check the 'Confirm Change' parameter and make a decision about what action to take from the options given.
3	Calibrating	The calibrations state machine is not idle.
4	FAIL	The TDS Conductance input is invalid. Invalid O/P = TRUE

For a full description of these states and their priorities, please see section 28.4.4.4.

28.5 BOTTOM BLOWDOWN FUNCTION BLOCK

Traditionally to lower the TDS a boilerman would open a valve in the bottom of the boiler to let water out and lower the TDS. Installing a TDS controller removes the need to do this to lower the TDS value but there is still a need to blowdown the sediment that forms at the bottom of the boiler. To minimise the energy loss, blowdown is restricted to between 3 and 30 second burst probably twice a day at a time selected by the boilerman. The blowdown (water) normally passes to a blowdown vessel, usually sized to cope with dissipating the energy from a single boiler. Because of this a Health and Safety Guideline (PM60 in the UK) dictates that adjacent boilers should be inhibited from blowing down at the same time.

28.5.1 Bottom Blowdown of Multiple Boilers

When the blowdown time is reached a sequence of network integrity checking and pre-wait will take place before the bottom blowdown valve is opened. While a boiler is in the pre-wait blowdown or cool down states all other boilers connected to the network will be inhibited from performing blowdown. This is necessary as the blowdown pipe or vessel is only capable of dealing with one blowdown at a time. If a blowdown is inhibited by another blowdown in progress the system will wait until the cool down period has expired before blowdown continues. Figure 28-3 shows an overview of the high integrity bottom blowdown system connected to three boilers.

D* = Any digital I/O terminal

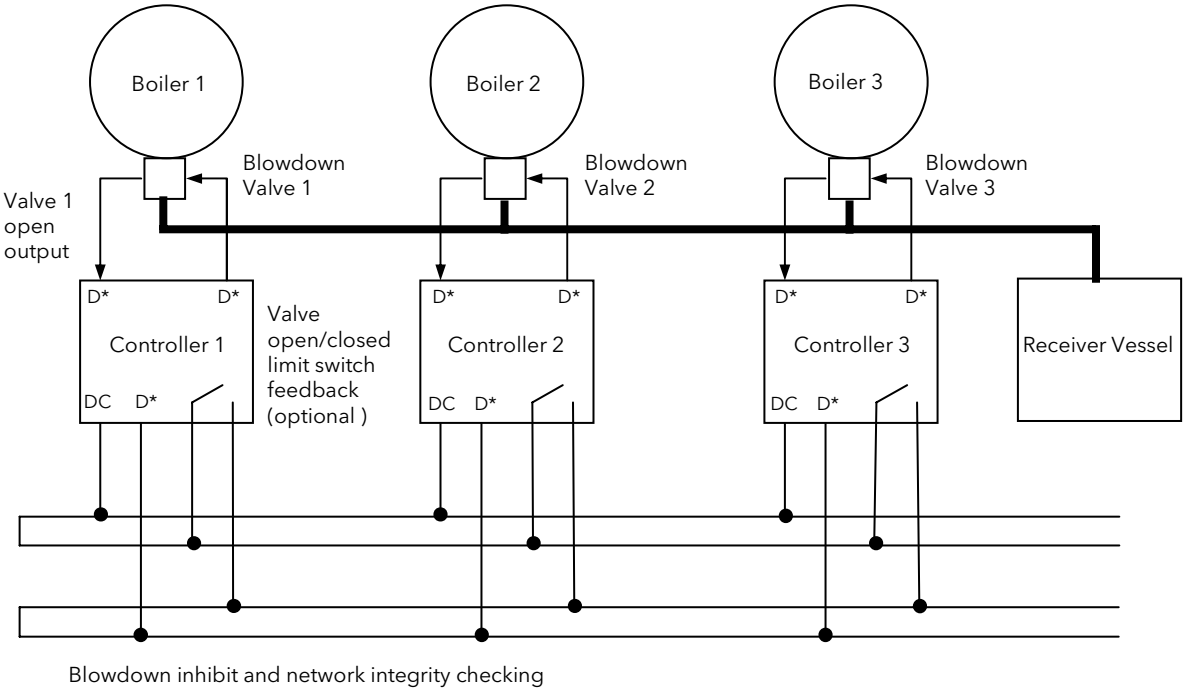


Figure 28-3: Blowdown Network Integrity Checking

28.5.2 Operating Principles of High Integrity Interlock Bus

Interlocking of instruments is shown in Figure 28-4.

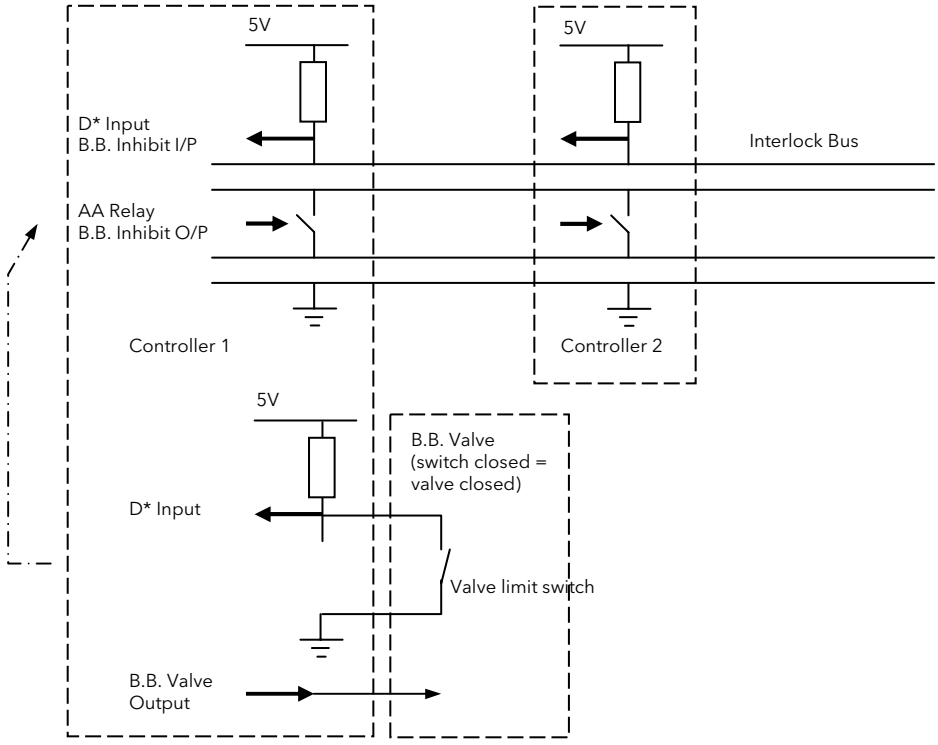


Figure 28-4: Interlock Bus

Each controller contains a floating switch output and a digital input with a pull-up. The switches are normally open so that the potential on the top two lines is +5V 'high' with respect to the bottom two lines. This high signal is seen by all inputs connected to the network and is interpreted as Bottom Blowdown enable. Closing any switch causes the top two lines to be shorted to the bottom two lines resulting in a 'low' signal interpreted as Busy/Bottm Blowdown disable. This is only the case if three conditions are met:-

1. The wires form an unbroken link chain
2. The controller signaling 'Busy' is fully connected to the network
3. The controllers receiving 'Busy' are also connected to the network

Providing that the network is complete, any controller can short the network and verify that it has done so via its own input. Network checking is carried out at the start of each blowdown sequence in this way to ensure that the controller is correctly connected to the network. If the controller detects an error with the network an alarm will be activated and the network state shown.

28.5.3 Blowdown Sequence

When the blowdown time is reached the following sequence takes place:-

'Bldown State' will change from 'BB Wait' to 'Check Network' for only a few seconds. At this point the controller switches the network between high and low states. This is to determine if any other controller is blowing down at the same time

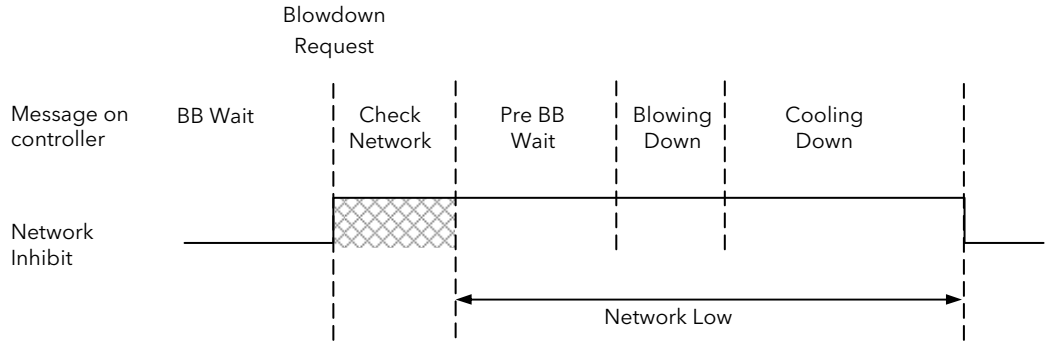
a. Assuming no other controller is blowing down, the network is pulled to a low condition to lock out any other controller at this time. 'Pre BB Wait' is shown for a settable period, such as 15 minutes (half of 'Cool Duration').

b. After 'Pre BB Wait' the blowdown output will come on for a few seconds (set by the 'BB Duration' parameter) and the 'Bldown State' will show 'Blowing Down'.

c. The 'Bldown State' will then show 'Cooling Down' for a settable period, such as 15 minutes (the other half of cool time)

d. After 'Cooling Down' the blowdown sequence is complete and the network will go high allowing other controllers to blowdown if they want

The sequence is shown graphically below:



If another controller is holding the network (as determined by an appropriately configured digital input), the message 'Network Busy' is displayed and the NTWRK beacon lights.

If the network is not connected the message ' Network Open' is displayed

28.5.4 Non high integrity Interlock Bus

Two digital I/O ports can be used, shorted together, on each instrument to implement the non high integrity bus interlock. One of the I/O must be configured as 'B.B. Inhibit Input' and the other as 'B.B. Inhibit Output'. Only two wires are used in this configuration to connect the Dig.Common terminal and the appropriate Dig I/O terminals of all controllers together

As the name suggests this configuration is unable to determine reliably whether the signalling instrument is connected to the network.

28.5.5 Valve Switch Option

An option is provided to fit valve switches. A parameter 'Valve Switches' is available in the BOT BLOWDOWN parameter list which can be set to 'Yes' if the option is used. If a valve switch is fitted the controller will receive a 'Low' signal when the valve is closed (switch also closed) and constantly checks the status of the switch.

If the line becomes broken and/or the valve is opened at the incorrect time, the network will show 'Busy' and indicate that there is a problem with the switch.

Each controller supports one valve and switch only.

Note: The current provided by the digital input is normally 1mA. This may not provide a large enough wetting current for some contacts other than gold. If this is the case an external supply of up to 30Vdc should be used with an appropriate pull up resistor to provide the necessary wetting current for the contacts being used.

28.5.6 Bottom Blowdown Parameters

Up to three start times cam be set to initiate the blowdown sequence in any boiler.

Table Number: 28.5.6.	This list allows you to set up the parameters for Bottom Blowdown		BOILER (Blowdown)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Inst Number	Instrument identification number. Used to generate an instrument ID specific delay timer to ensure that, if two blowdown times are set the same, then the two controllers will not initiate blowdown at the same time. 8 has the highest priority.	1 to 8	1	L3
BB1 Day	Day selected for Bottom Blowdown 1	Never Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday Mon-Fri Mon-Sat Sat-Sun Every Day	Never	L3
BB1 Time	Time selected for Bottom Blowdown 1	0:00:00 to 24:00:00	0:00:00	L3
BB2 Day	Day selected for Bottom Blowdown 2	As BB1	Never	L3
BB2 Time	Time selected for Bottom Blowdown 2	0:00:00 to 24:00:00	0:00:00	L3
BB3 Day	Day selected for Bottom Blowdown 2	As BB1	Never	L3
BB3 Time	Time selected for Bottom Blowdown 3	0:00:00 to 24:00:00	0:00:00	L3
BB Duration	Blowdown duration for BB1, BB2 and BB3.	0:00:01 to 0:00:30	0:00:01	L3
Cool Duration	To set a cool down period to ensure that another controller does not blow down until the first has cooled	0:01:00 to 3:00:00	0:01:00	L3
Suspend Sr	Source wire for the suspend input. If the value returned by this wire is 'Yes' then the blowdown is suspended	Modbus address	---- None	Conf
Suspend	Suspend blowdown. If this parameter is not wired the user can set this manually. If the Suspend Src is used the wire will override this parameter.	No Yes	No	L3
Netwrk Src	Source wire for the digital input that represents the state of the network	Modbus address	---- None	Conf
Network Level	Indicates the state of the network	High Low		L3
Valve Switches	To select the valve switch option if the bottom blowdown valve has a limit switch fitted. If 'Yes' the next 3 parameters are made available	No Yes	No	Conf
VSwitch Src	Source wire for the valve switch limit input	Modbus address	---- None	Conf
VSwitch State	Shows if the switch is open or closed	Open Closed		L3
VSwitch Status	Valve switch status. Sets to 'Bad' if the switch shows open when it should be closed	Good Bad		L3
Netwrk Inhibit	Output wired to the AA relay to inhibit or show 'Busy'	Off Busy		L3
Blowdown O/P	Output wired to the valve I/O point of the TDS module	Off		L3
BB State	Indicates the current state of the blowdown sequence	BB Wait		L3

Table Number: 28.5.6.	This list allows you to set up the parameters for Bottom Blowdown		BOILER (Blowdown)	
Parameter Name	**Parameter Description**	**Value**	**Default**	**Access Level**
Alarm	Indicates if there is a problem with the network or the valve has failed to open	Off On		L3
ACK Alarm Sr	Source wire for the alarm acknowledge. This will usually come from a self resetting user switch	Modbus address	---- None	Conf
ACK Alarm?	Alarm acknowledge. 'Yes' = acknowledge If the alarm acknowledge source is used the wire overrides this parameter.	No Yes		L3

28.5.7 Example: To Perform a Boiler Blowdown

It is first necessary to set up the Real Time Clock if this has not already been done.
Then:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press [page] as many times as necessary to display the page header menu 2. Press [▲] or [▼] to scroll to '**BLOWDOWN Setup'**	LEVEL setup TDS Calibration TDS Setup BLOWDOWN setup STEAM WARM UP REAL TIME CLOCK ACCESS	
3. Press [↻] to select the list of parameters 4. Press [↻] again to edit the parameter 5. Press [▲] or [▼] to set the day	Blowdown 1 Day: Every Day Blowdown 1 Time: 10:0:00 Blowdown 2 Day: Every Day Blowdown 2 Time: 16:06:00 Blowdown 3 Day: Never Blowdown 3 Time: 0:00:00 Duration: 0:00:05.0	If required set up a Day and Time for a second and third blowdown. This allows up to three blowdowns on each boiler to be performed each day
6. Press [↻] to select the **'Duration'** of the blowdown 7. Press [▲] or [▼] to set the duration time	Blowdown 3 Time: 0:00:00 Duration: 0:00:05.0 Suspend Blowdown: No	
8. Press [↻] to select the **'Inst Number'** 9. Press [▲] or [▼] to set an instrument number from 1 to 8	Suspend Blowdown: No Valve Switches: No Inst Number: 1	This is necessary so that the interconnection network knows which instrument has priority Note 1

Note 1:-
If more than one boiler attempts a blowdown at the same time, then the 'Inst Number' parameter determines which has priority. 8 has the highest priority.

i Times may be set by holding the raise or lower buttons until the correct time has been set. Alternatively, hold down the scroll button [↻] and use the raise/lower buttons [▲] / [▼] to move the cursor between hours and minutes then use [▲] / [▼] to change these independently.

28.6 TDS INPUT MODULE

For details of this module and calibration of Cable Offset, see the Module IO Chapter 23.
For Calibration of Conductance, see the Calibration Chapter 27.

29. APPENDIX A ORDER CODE

29.1 HARDWARE CODE

The 2704 has a modular hardware construction, which accepts up to six plug-in modules and two digital communications modules. Eight digital IO and a relay form part of the fixed hardware build.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18

1	Controller Type
2704	Standard
2704	Profibus
f	

2	Supply Voltage
VH	100-240Vac
VL	20-29Vac/dc

3	Loops/Programs
First Digit	
1_ _	One Loop
2_ _	Two Loop
3_ _	Three Loop
Second Digit	
_XX	No Programs
_2_	20 Programs (1)
_5_	50 Programs
_A_	Async Programs
Third Digit	
_ XX	No Programs
_ _1	1 Profile
_ _2	2 Profile
_ _3	3 Profile

4	Application
XX	Standard
ZC	Zirconia
V1	1 Gauge Vacuum
V3	3 Gauge Vacuum
BC	Boiler Function

5 - 9	I/O Slots 1 3 4 5 6
XX	None Fitted
R4	Change Over Relay
R2	2 Pin Relay
RR	Dual Relay
T2	Triac
TT	Dual Triac
D4	DC Control
D6	DC Retransmission
PV	PV Input (slots 3 & 6)
TL	Triple Logic Input
TK	Triple Contact Input
TP	Triple Logic Output
MS	24Vdc Transmitter PSU
VU	Potentiometer Input
G3	5Vdc transducer PSU
G5	10Vdc transducer PSU
AM	Analogue input (not in slot 5)
DP	Dual DC (porbe) input (slots 3 & 6) (4)
LO	Isolated single logic OP
DO	Dual 4-20mA OP/24Vdc PSU (5) (slots 1, 4, 5)
HR	Hi resloution DC retrans & 24Vdc PSU (slots 1, 4, 5) (6)
TD	TDS input (7)
PH	4 wire PT100 (slots 3,6)
PL	4 wire PT25 (slots 3,6)

10	Memory Module
XX	Not Fitted
MM	Fitted

11 -	Comms H
XX	None Fitted
A2	232 Modbus
Y2	2 wire EIA-485
F2	4 wire EIA-485
AE	232 Bisynch
YE	2 Wire 485 Bisync
FE	4 Wire 485 Bisync
PB	Profibus
DN	DeviceNet
ET	Modbus TCP/Ethernet (7)

12	Comms J
XX	None Fitted
A2	232 Modbus
Y2	2 wire EIA-485
F2	4 wire EIA-485
M1	232 Master
M2	2-wire 485 Master
M3	4-wire 485 Master

13	Manual
ENG	English
FRA	French
GER	German
NED	Dutch
SPA	Spain
SWE	Sweden
ITA	Italian

16	Toolkit Blocks
XX	Standard
U1	16 An & 16 Dig
U2	24 An & 32 Dig

17	Tech Support
TS1	1 Hour (default)
TS0	None
TS2	2 Hours
TS4	4 Hours
TS8	8 Hours

18	Config Tools
XX	None

Hardware notes:

1. Basic controller includes 8 digital registers, 10 User Values, 4 timers, 4 totaliser and RT Clock
2. Toolkit 1 includes 16 analogue, 16 digital, pattern generator, digital programmer, analogue switch, wiring block & 30 user values
3. Toolkit 2 includes Toolkit 1 plus extra 16 analogue, 16 digital operations and 20 user values
4. Dual analogue input suitable for carbon probes.(inputs not isolated from each other)
5. Each channel of the DO module can be 4-20mA control or 24V PSU
6. The HR module has one high resolution DC output and one 24Vdc power supply
7. ET module in H slot includes terminal adaptor

Hardware Code Example

2704/VH/323/XX/RR/PV/D4/TP/PV/XX/A2/XX/ENG/U1/IT

Three loop controller with capability to store 20 three profile programs. Supply voltage 100 - 240 Vac.
Modules: 2 x PV input, 1 x Dual relay, 1 x DC control, 1 x Triple logic output, EIA-232 Comms,
16 analogue and 32 digital operations.

General Notes

1. Loop 1 PV defaults to main input on microboard. Loop 2 and 3 PV inputs must be fitted in I/O slots 3 or 6 or be assigned to the analogue input.
2. This alarm configuration refers to loop alarms only. One selection per loop is allowed. Additional alarms are available for the user to configure.
3. Thermocouple and RTD inputs assume sensor min and max values with no decimal point.
4. Linear inputs are ranged 0-100%, no decimal point.
5. Temperature inputs will be C unless ordered by USA where F will be supplied.
6. Remote setpoints assume loop min & max ranges.
7. VP1, VP2, VP3 or VP4 not available with override function.
8. For cascade and override inputs only.
9. HR module should be used in feedback mode.

29.2 QUICK START CODE

An instrument delivered to the quick start code is partly configured. For simple applications the quick start code may be sufficient to allow the instrument to be used without further configuration.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12

1 - 3	Loop function
First Digit	
XXXX	None
S___	Standard PID
C___	Cascade
R___	Ratio
O___	Override [7]
Other Digits	
_PID	PID control
_ONF	On/Off control
_PIF	PID/OnOff control
_VP1	VP w/o feedback
_VP2	VP with feedback
_VP3	Dual VP no feedback
_VP4	Dual VP with feedback

4 - 6	PV Inputs
X	None
J	J Thermocouple
K	K Thermocouple
T	T Thermocouple
L	L Thermocouple
N	N Thermocouple
R	R Thermocouple
S	S Thermocouple
B	B Thermocouple
P	P Thermocouple
C	C Thermocouple
Z	RTD/PT100
A	4-20mA linear
Y	0-20mA linear
V	0-10Vdc linear
W	0-5Vdc linear
G	1-5Vdc linear
Custom (Replace C)	
Q	Custom curve
D	D Thermocouple
E	E Thermocouple
1	Ni/Ni18%Mo
2	Pt20%Rh/Pt40%Rh
3	W/W26%Re(Eng)
4	W/W26%Re(Hos)
5	W5%Re/W26%Re(Eng)
6	W5%Re/W26%Re(Hos)
7	Pt10%Rh/Pt40%Rh
8	Exergen K80 IR Pyro

7	Analogue Input
XXX	None
P2_	PV Loop 2
P3_	PV Loop 3
S1_	SP Loop 1
S2_	SP Loop 2
S3_	SP Loop 3
A1_	Aux PV Loop 1
A2_	Aux PV Loop 2
A3_	Aux PV Loop 3
L1_	Ratio lead PV Loop 1
L2_	Ratio lead PV Loop 2
L3_	Ratio lead PV Loop 3
Input range	
Select third digit from table 1	

	Table 1
A	4-20mA linear
Y	0-20mA linear
V	0-10Vdc linear
W	0-5Vdc linear
G	1-5Vdc linear

	Precision PV input
_PV	PV input Module
_PA	Aux PV Input [8]
_PL	Ratio lead input
Potentiometer input	
_VF	VP Heat Feedback
_RS	Remote SP
Analogue Input *	
_R_	Setpoint
* For input range select third digit from table 1	
Aux & lead PV inputs *	
_L_	Ratio lead input
_B_	Aux PV input
* For input range select third digit from table 1	
High Res DC Output	
-TA	4-20mA PV retran
-TV	0-10V PV retran
-SA	4-20mA SP retran
-SV	0-10V SP retran

8 - 12	Slot function
Loop number	
XXX	Unconfigured
1__	Loop No 1
2__	Loop No 2
3__	Loop No 3
Single relay or triac	
_HX	Heat
_CX	Cool
Dual relay or triac	
_HC	PID Heat & Cool
_VH	VP Heat
_AA	FSH & FSH
_AB	FSH & FSL
_AC	DH & DL
_AD	FSH & DH
_AE	FSL & DL
_AF	FSH & FSL
_AG	FSH & DB
_AH	FSL & DB
_AJ	DB & DB
HHX	Heat O/P lps 1 & 2
CCX	Cool O/P lps 1 & 2
P12	Prog events 1 & 2
P34	Prog events 3 & 4
P56	Prog events 5 & 6
P78	Prog events 7 & 8
Triple logic output	
_HX	Ch1 Heat
_CX	Ch1 Cool
_HC	Ch1 Heat, Ch2 Cool
HHX	Heat O/P lps 1 & 2
HHH	Heat O/P lps 1,2 & 3
Single DC outputs	
_H_	PID Heat
_C_	PID Cool
_T_	PV Retransmission
_S_	SP Retransmission
For output range select third digit from table 1	
Dual 4-20mA/24Vdc Tx OP	
HHX	Heat OP Lps 1 & 2
_HC	Heat Cool
_HT	Ch 1 Heat, Ch 2 Tx
TTX	Both chs Txmtr
Changeover Relay	
_HX	Heat
_CX	Cool

29.3 QUICK START CODE EXAMPLE:

SVP1/SPID/SPID/K/Z/A/S1A/1VH/2PV/2HV/3HC/3PV

This code configures the hardware specified in section 29.1 to be:

Loop1: Valve position control, Type K input, Ch1 VP output in slot 1, 4-20mA remote setpoint input.
Loop 2: PID control, RTD input in slot 3, 0-10Vdc Ch1 output in slot 4.
Loop 3: PID control, 4-20mA input in slot 6, Logic Ch1/Ch2 output in slot 5.

30. APPENDIX B SAFETY AND EMC INFORMATION

This controller is manufactured in the UK by Eurotherm Controls Ltd.

Please read this section carefully before installing the controller

This controller is intended for industrial temperature and process control applications when it will meet the requirements of the European Directives on Safety and EMC. Use in other applications, or failure to observe the installation instructions of this handbook may impair the safety or EMC protection provided by the controller. It is the responsibility of the installer to ensure the safety and EMC of any particular installation.

30.1 SAFETY

This controller complies with the European Low Voltage Directive 2006/95/EC, by the application of the safety standard EN 61010.

30.1.1 Electromagnetic compatibility

This controller conforms with the essential protection requirements of the EMC Directive 2004/108/EC, by the application of a Technical Construction File.

This instrument satisfies the general requirements for heavy/light industrial and residential/commercial environments as described by EN 61326. For more information on product compliance refer to the Technical Construction File.

30.2 GENERAL

The information contained in this manual is subject to change without notice. While every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of the information, your supplier shall not be held liable for errors contained herein.

Unpacking and storage

The packaging should contain an instrument mounted in its sleeve, two mounting brackets for panel installation and an Installation & Operating guide. Certain ranges are supplied with an input adapter.

If on receipt, the packaging or the instrument are damaged, do not install the product but contact your supplier. If the instrument is to be stored before use, protect from humidity and dust in an ambient temperature range of -30°C to +75°C.

30.3 SERVICE AND REPAIR

This controller has no user serviceable parts. Contact your supplier for repair.

Caution: **Charged capacitors**

Before removing an instrument from its sleeve, disconnect the supply and wait at least two minutes to allow capacitors to discharge. It may be convenient to partially withdraw the instrument from the sleeve, then pause before completing the removal. In any case, avoid touching the exposed electronics of an instrument when withdrawing it from the sleeve.

Failure to observe these precautions may cause damage to components of the instrument or some discomfort to the user.

30.3.1 Electrostatic discharge precautions

When the controller is removed from its sleeve, some of the exposed electronic components are vulnerable to damage by electrostatic discharge from someone handling the controller. To avoid this, before handling the unplugged controller discharge yourself to ground.

30.3.2 Cleaning

Do not use water or water based products to clean labels or they will become illegible. Isopropyl alcohol may be used to clean labels. A mild soap solution may be used to clean other exterior surfaces of the product.

30.4 INSTALLATION SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

30.4.1 Safety Symbols

Various symbols are used on the instrument, they have the following meaning:

Caution, (refer to the accompanying documents)

Functional earth (ground) terminal

i This symbol indicates general information.

☺ This symbol indicates a helpful hint.

The functional earth connection is not required for safety purposes but to ground RFI filters.

30.4.2 Personnel

Installation must only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.

30.4.3 Enclosure of live parts

To prevent hands or metal tools touching parts that may be electrically live, the controller must be installed in an enclosure.

30.4.4 Isolation

The fixed digital I/O and analogue input are not isolated. The PV Input and all plug in modules are fully isolated.

The Analogue Input is a self biased differential input suitable for either grounded or floating transducers of low output impedance generating signal in the range of +/-10V or +/-20mA (with a burden resistor of 100 Ohms across + and - terminals).

This input is neither isolated from the instrument ground (which can be earthed via fixed I/O ports) nor isolated from the instrument earth terminal, therefore, under no circumstances should mains potentials be applied to any of its inputs.

In order for the Input to operate safely the common voltage at the inputs measured with respect to instrument ground should not exceed +/-120Vdc or ac_{rms}. For actively enhanced common mode rejection (i.e. operation within the spec.) this voltage should be limited to +/- 40Vdc.

Floating transducers will automatically be biased to +2.5V with respect to instrument ground upon connection.

Note: All the other I/Os are fully isolated from the instrument ground and each other.

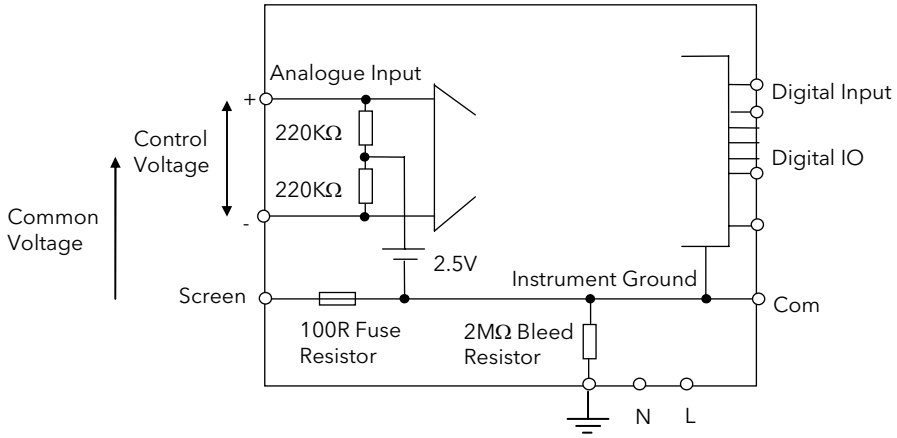


Figure 30-1: Analogue Input and Fixed Digital I/O Equivalent Circuit

30.4.5 Wiring

It is important to connect the controller in accordance with the wiring data given in this handbook. Take particular care not to connect AC supplies to the low voltage sensor input or other low level inputs and outputs. Only use copper conductors for connections (except thermocouple inputs) and ensure that the wiring of installations comply with all local wiring regulations. For example in the in the UK use the latest version of the IEE wiring regulations, (BS7671). In the USA use NEC Class 1 wiring methods.

30.4.6 Power Isolation

The installation must include a power isolating switch or circuit breaker. This device should be in close proximity to the controller, within easy reach of the operator and marked as the disconnecting device for the instrument.

30.4.7 Earth leakage current

Due to RFI Filtering there is an earth leakage current of less than 0.5mA. This may affect the design of an installation of multiple controllers protected by Residual Current Device, (RCD) or Ground Fault Detector, (GFD) type circuit breakers.

30.4.8 Overcurrent protection

To protect the internal PCB tracking within the controller against excess currents, the AC power supply to the controller and power outputs must be wired through the fuse or circuit breaker specified in the technical specification.

30.4.9 Voltage rating

The maximum continuous voltage applied between any of the following terminals must not exceed 264Vac:

- line or neutral to any other connection;
- relay or triac output to logic, dc or sensor connections;
- any connection to ground.

The controller should not be wired to a three phase supply with an unearthed star connection. Under fault conditions such a supply could rise above 264Vac with respect to ground and the product would not be safe.

Voltage transients across the power supply connections, and between the power supply and ground, must not exceed 2.5kV. Where occasional voltage transients over 2.5kV are expected or measured, the power installation to both the instrument supply and load circuits should include a transient limiting device.

These units will typically include gas discharge tubes and metal oxide varistors that limit and control voltage transients on the supply line due to lightning strikes or inductive load switching. Devices are available in a range of energy ratings and should be selected to suit conditions at the installation.

30.4.10 Conductive pollution

Electrically conductive pollution must be excluded from the cabinet in which the controller is mounted. For example, carbon dust is a form of electrically conductive pollution. To secure a suitable atmosphere in conditions of conductive pollution, fit an air filter to the air intake of the cabinet. Where condensation is likely, for example at low temperatures, include a thermostatically controlled heater in the cabinet.

30.4.11 Over-temperature protection

When designing any control system it is essential to consider what will happen if any part of the system should fail. In temperature control applications the primary danger is that the heating will remain constantly on. Apart from spoiling the product, this could damage any process machinery being controlled, or even cause a fire.

Reasons why the heating might remain constantly on include:

- the temperature sensor becoming detached from the process;
- thermocouple wiring becoming short circuit;
- the controller failing with its heating output constantly on;
- an external valve or contactor sticking in the heating condition;
- the controller setpoint set too high.

Where damage or injury is possible, we recommend fitting a separate over-temperature protection unit, with an independent temperature sensor, which will isolate the heating circuit.

Please note that the alarm relays within the controller will not give protection under all failure conditions.

30.4.12 Grounding of the temperature sensor shield

In some installations it is common practice to replace the temperature sensor while the controller is still powered up. Under these conditions, as additional protection against electric shock, we recommend that the shield of the temperature sensor is grounded. Do not rely on grounding through the framework of the machine.

30.5 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR EMC

To ensure compliance with the European EMC directive certain installation precautions are necessary as follows:

- For general guidance refer to EMC Installation Guide, HA025464.
- When using relay or triac outputs it may be necessary to fit a filter suitable for suppressing the emissions. The filter requirements will depend on the type of load. For typical applications we recommend Schaffner FN321 or FN612.

30.5.1 Routing of wires

To minimise the pick-up of electrical noise, the wiring for low voltage dc and particularly the sensor input wiring should be routed away from high-current power cables. Where it is impractical to do this, use shielded cables with the shield grounded at both ends. In general keep cable lengths to a minimum.

31. APPENDIX C TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

All figures quoted at 0 to 50°C unless otherwise stated.

31.1 ALL ANALOGUE, DUAL AND PV INPUTS

Sample rate	9Hz (110msec.)
Input filtering	OFF to 999.9 seconds of filter time constant (f.t.c.). Default setting is 0.4 seconds unless stated otherwise
User calibration	Both the user calibration and a transducer scaling can be applied.
Sensor break	a.c. sensor break on each input (i.e. fast responding and no dc errors with high impedance sources).
Thermocouple types	Most linearisations including K,J,T,R,B,S,N,L,PII,C,D,E with linearisation error < ±0.2°C
General	Resolution (noise free) is quoted as a typical figure with f.t.c. set to the default value = 0.4 second. Resolution generally improves by a factor of two with every quadrupling of f.t.c. Calibration is quoted as offset error + percentage error of absolute reading at ambient temperature of 25°C Drift is quoted as extra offset and absolute reading errors per degree of ambient change from 25°C.

31.2 PRECISION PV INPUT / MODULE

Allocation	One standard and up to two additional PV input modules can be fitted in I/O slots 3 and 6
Isolation	Fully isolated from the rest of the instrument
mV input	Two ranges: ±40mV & ±80mV, used for thermocouple, linear mV source or 0 - 20mA with 2.49Ω Calibration: ±(1.5µV + 0.05% of reading), Resolution: 0.5µV for 40mV range & 1µV for 80mV range Drift: <±(0.05µV + 0.003% of absolute reading) per °C Input impedance: >100MΩ, Leakage: < 1nA
0 - 2V input	-1.4V to +2V, used for zirconia Calibration: ±(0.5mV + 0.05% of reading) Resolution: 60µV Drift: < ±(0.05mV + 0.003% of reading) per °C Input impedance: >100MΩ, Leakage: < 1nA
0 - 10V input	-3V to +10V, used for voltage input Calibration: ±(0.5mV + 0.1% of reading) Resolution: 180µV Drift: <±(0.1mV + 0.01% of reading) per °C Input impedance: 0.66MΩ
Pt100 input	0 to 400ohms (-200°C to +850°C), 3 matched wires - up to 22Ω in each lead without errors. Calibration: ±(0.1°C + 0.04% of reading in °C) Resolution: 0.02°C Drift: < ±(0.006°C + 0.002% of absolute reading in °C) per °C Bulb current: 0.2mA.
Thermocouple	Internal compensation: CJC rejection ratio >40:1 typical. CJ Temperature calibration error at 25°C: <± 0.5°C 0°C, 45°C and 50°C external compensation available.
Zirconia probes	Most probes supported. Continuous monitoring of probe impedance (100Ω to 100KΩ)

31.3 DUAL (PROBE) INPUT MODULE

General	The same specification as for the Precision PV Input module applies with the exception of the following: Module offers two sensor/transmitter inputs, which share the same negative input terminal. One low level (mV, 0-20mA, thermocouple, Pt100) and one high level (0-2Vdc, 0-10Vdc) can be connected
Isolation	The two inputs are isolated from the rest of the instrument but not from each other
Sample rate	4.5Hz (220msec) - of each input
Input filtering	Default setting is 0.8 seconds

31.4 ANALOGUE INPUT

No of inputs	One fixed (Not isolated) Can be used with either floating or ground referenced transducers of low impedance – see Isolation.
Input range	-10V to +10V linear or 0 -20 mA with burden resistor of 100Ω. Calibration: ±(1.5mV + 0.1% of reading) Resolution: 0.9mV Drift: < ±(0.1mV + 0.006% of reading) per °C Input Impedance: 0.46MΩ (floating input), 0.23MΩ (ground referenced input)
Isolation	Not isolated from standard digital I/O . Differential type input with common mode range of ± 42Vdc (the average voltage of the two inputs with respect to 'Screen' or 'Common' terminals should be within ±42Vdc. CMRR : >110dB at 50/60Hz, >80dB at DC
Functions	Process variable, remote setpoint, power limit, feedforward, etc.

31.5 ANALOGUE INPUT MODULE

Allocation	Up to 4 analogue input modules can be fitted in I/O slots 1,3,4 & 6
Isolation	Fully isolated from the rest of the instrument
mV input	100mV range - used for thermocouple, linear mV source, or 0-20mA with 2.49Ω external burden resistor. Calibration: ± 10μV + 0.2% of reading Resolution: 6μV Drift: < ± 0.2μV + 0.004% of reading per ^{O}C Input impedance: >10MΩ, Leakage: <10nA
0 - 2Vdc input	-0.2V to +2.0V range - used for zirconia. Calibration: ± 2mV + 0.2% of reading Resolution: 30μV Drift: < ± 0.1mV + 0.004% of reading per ^{O}C Input impedance: >10MΩ, Leakage: <20nA
0 - 10Vdc input	-3V to +10.0V range - used for voltage input. Calibration: ± 2mV + 0.2% of reading Resolution: 200μV Drift: < ± 0.1mV + 0.02% of reading per ^{O}C Input impedance: >69KΩ
Pt100 input	0 to 400ohms (-200°C to +850°C), 3 matched wires - up to 22Ω in each lead without errors. Calibration: ±(0.4°C + 0.15% of reading in °C) Resolution: 0.08°C Drift: < ±(0.015°C + 0.005% of reading in °C) per °C Bulb current: 0.3mA.
Thermocouple	Internal compensation: CJC rejection ratio >25:1 typical. CJ Temperature calibration error at 25^{O}C: <± 2°C 0°C, 45°C and 50°C external compensation available.

31.6 STANDARD DIGITAL I/O

Allocation **not isolated**	1 digital input standard and 7 I/O which can be configured as inputs or outputs plus 1 changeover relay
Digital inputs	Voltage level : input active < 2Vdc, inactive >4Vdc Contact closure : input active <100ohms, inactive >28kohms
Digital outputs	Open collector, 24Vdc at 40mA drive capability, requires external supply
Changeover relay	Contact rating 2A at 264Vac resistive
Functions	Refer to Chapter 22
Operations	1,000,000 operations with addition of external snubber

31.7 DIGITAL INPUT MODULES

Module type	Triple contact input, Triple logic input - (isolated as a group)
Allocation	Can be fitted into slots 1, 3, 4, 5 or 6
Contact closure	Active <100ohms, inactive >28kohms
Logic inputs	Current sinking : active 10.8Vdc to 30Vdc at 2.5mA inactive -3 to 5Vdc at <-0.4mA
Functions	Refer to Chapter 23

31.8 DIGITAL OUTPUT MODULES

Module types	Single relay, dual relay, single triac, dual triac - (isolated as a group) (individually isolated) triple logic module - (isolated from instrument as a group)
Allocation	Can be fitted into slot 1, 3, 4, 5 or 6 (max. 3 triac modules per instrument)
Relay rating	2A, 264Vac resistive
Logic drive	12Vdc at 9mA
Triac rating	0.75A, 264Vac resistive
Functions	Refer to Chapter 23

31.9 ANALOGUE OUTPUT MODULES

Module types	1 channel DC control, 1 channel DC retransmission (5 max.)
Allocation	Can be fitted into slot 1, 3, 4, 5 or 6
Isolation	Fully isolated from the rest of the instrument
Range	0-20mA, 0-10Vdc
Resolution	1 part in 10,000 (2,000-noise free) 0.5% accurate for retransmission 1 part in 10,000 2.5% accurate for control
Functions	Refer to Chapter 23

31.10 TRANSMITTER PSU

Allocation	Can be fitted into slots 1, 3 ,4 ,5 or 6 - (isolated)
Transmitter	24Vdc at 20mA

31.11 TRANSDUCER PSU

Bridge voltage	Software selectable 5 or 10Vdc - (isolated)
Bridge resistance	300Ω to 15KΩ
Internal shunt resistor	30.1KΩ at 0.25%, used for calibration of 350Ω bridge

31.12 DUAL DC OUTPUT

Two Current Outputs	4-20mA, 20V output span (see section 23.3.13)
Isolation	Fully isolated from the instrument and each other
Accuracy	1%, 11 bit noise free resolution
Speed	50ms response
Can be configured as Transmitter/logic PSU	20V min at full 22mA current load. 30V max at open circuit. Short circuit protected at 22-24mA

31.13 HIGH RESOLUTION DC OUTPUT

Current Output	4-20mA, 20V output span (see section 23.3.15)
Accuracy	1%, 15 bit noise free resolution
Speed	40ms response
Transmitter/logic PSU	20V min at full 22mA current load. 30V max at open circuit. Short circuit protected at 21-28mA
Isolation	Fully isolated from the instrument and the PSU

31.14 POTENTIOMETER INPUT

Pot resistance	100Ω to 15KΩ, excitation of 0.5 volts - (isolated)

31.15 TDS MODULE

Meas. Frequency	1KHz
Conductivity range	40µS to 500 000µS (equivalent resistance 25 KΩ to 2Ω)
Max. cable length	100m
Isolation	Fully isolated from the rest of the instrument

31.16 4-WIRE RTD INPUT

	PT100 Module	PT25 Module
Allocation	Can be fitted to I/O slots 3 and 6	
Isolation	Fully isolated from the rest of the instrument	
Sample rate	9Hz Typical	
Input filtering	OFF to 999.9 seconds of filter t.c. (default f.t.c.= 1.6 sesc.)	
Measured temperature range	-200 to +850°C with Pt100 linearization	-200 to +850°C with Pt25.5 linearization -200 to +50°C with Pt100 linearization when Pt25 module is used for reading Pt100 sensor.
Measured resistance range	0 - 440Ω	0 – 125Ω
Maximum resistance between A and D terminals	500Ω	135Ω
Bulb Current - from A to D	200μA	735μA
Calibration Accuracy @ 23 (±3) °C @ 50 (±15) %RH) /interpolate for other values/	±4mΩ @ 20Ω ±8mΩ @ 100Ω ±10mΩ @ 200Ω ±14mΩ @ 300Ω	±1mΩ @ 5Ω ±2mΩ @ 25.5Ω ±2.5mΩ @ 50Ω ±3.5mΩ @ 76Ω
Ambient temperature drift (within 15°C and 35°C)	± (5ppm of reading +0.25mΩ) /°C	± (5ppm of reading +0.07mΩ) /°C
Long term drift @ 15°C to 35°C @ 50 (±20) %RH	± (70ppm of reading + 25ppm of Span)/year	
Resolution with: f.t.c. = OFF f.c.t. = 1.6 secs. f.t.c. = 10 secs.	/Resolution as peak deviation from mean value/ ± 6mΩ (±16mK) ± 1.5mΩ (±4mK) ± 0.8mΩ (±2mK)	 ±1.5mΩ (±16mK, ±4mK*) ±0.4mΩ (±4mK, ±1mK*) ±0.2mΩ (±2mK, ±0.5mK*)
Linearity /within 0 to 80% of Span/	±2mΩ Typ.	±0.6mΩ Typ.
linearization /Pt100 and Pt25.5/	±5mK - maximum deviation within –200°C to 850°C from the standard characteristic that assumes precise 100.000Ω and 25.500Ω PRT resistances at 0°C.	
Other Features	a.c. sensor break detection. User Calibration.	
Immunity to EM field interference (EN61326 Industrial levels)	Maximum deviation on measured values during the tests is within ±0.005% of Full Span.	

For description and remedies of other possible sources of error see section 27.5.6.

31.17 DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS

Allocation	2 modules fitted in slots H & J (isolated)
Modbus	RS232, 2 wire or 4 wire RS485, max baud 19.2KB in H module & 9.6KB in J module
Profibus-DP	High speed, RS485, 1.5Mbaud. H slot ony
DeviceNet/ EtherNet	H slot only

31.18 ALARMS

No of Alarms	Input alarms (2), loop alarms (2) User alarms (8)
Alarm types	Full scale, deviation, rate of change, sensor break plus application specific
Modes	Latching or non-latching, blocking, time delay
Parameters	Refer to Chapter 10

31.19 USER MESSAGES

No of messages	Maximum 100, triggered by operator or alarm or used for custom parameter names
Format	Up to 16 characters

31.20 CONTROL FUNCTIONS

No of loops	One, two or three
Modes	On/off, PID, motorised valve with or without feedback
Options	Cascade, ratio, override or feed forward
Cooling algorithms	Linear, water, oil or fan
PID sets	3 per loop (Cascade loop includes master and slave parameters)
Manual mode	Bumpless transfer or forced manual output, manual tracking available
Setpoint rate limit	Display units per second, minute or hour

31.21 SETPOINT PROGRAMMER

Programmer modes	Synchronous or asynchronous
Programmer types	Time to Target or Ramp Rate
No of programs	A maximum of 60 programs assignable over 600 segments for a time to target programmer and 480 segments for a ramp rate programmer. A program can consist of up to 3 variables. Programs can be given user defined 16 character names
Event outputs	Up to 16, can be assigned individually to segments or called as part of an event group

31.22 ADVANCED FUNCTIONS

Application blocks	32 digital operations 32 patch wiring operators 32 analogue calculations 3 multiple operators
Timers	4, On Pulse, Off delay, one shot and min-On
Totalisers	4, trigger level & reset input
Real time clock	Day of week and time
Pattern generators	16 x 16, 2 off

31.23 GENERAL SPECIFICATION

Display range	5 digits including up to 3 decimal places
Supply	85-264Vac, 20Watts (max)
Operating ambient	0 - 50°C and 5 to 95% RH non condensing
Storage temp	-10 to +70°C
Panel sealing	IP65, Nema 4X
Dimensions	96H x 96W x 150D (mm)
EMC standards	EN61326 electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use EMS requirements - suitable for, commercial and light industrial as well as heavy industrial environments With Ethernet module fitted product is suitable for heavy industrial environments only (class A emissions).
Safety standards	Meets EN61010 installation category II, pollution degree 2
Atmospheres	Not suitable for use above 2000m or in explosive or corrosive atmospheres
Inrush Current	High Voltage controller – 30A duration 100µs Low Voltage controller – 15A duration 100µs

31.24 GRAPHICAL REPRESENTATION OF ERRORS

This section shows graphically the effects of adding all contributions of different errors for each input type and range. The errors are a combination of:

Calibration accuracy, Drift with ambient temperature, Linearity error, Leakage

31.24.1 mV Input

Two ranges:

working range ±40mV
full linear range ±60mV
noise (resolution) 1uV - OFF, 0.5uV - 0.4sec, 0.25uV - 1.6sec

working range ±80mV
full linear range ±105mV
noise (resolution) 2uV - OFF, 1uV - 0.4sec, 0.5uV - 1.6sec

Calibration accuracy @ 25°C
< ± (1.5uV + 0.05% of |reading|)

Drift with ambient temperature
< ±(0.05uV + 0.003% of |reading|) per °C

Linearity error
< ±0.002% of span (i.e. <1uV, <2uV)

Leakage
< ±1nA (typically ±200pA)

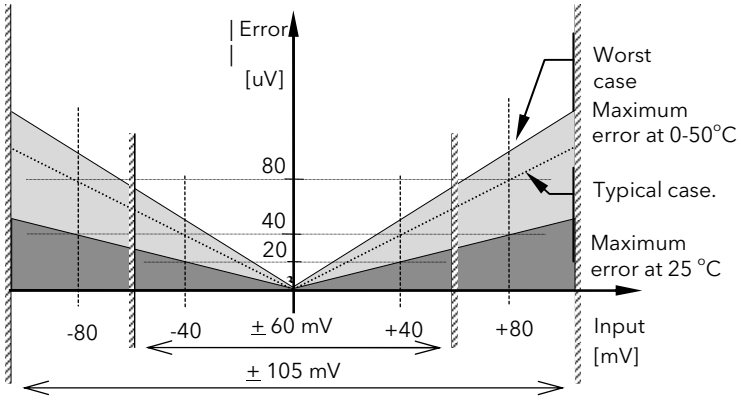


Figure 31-1: Error Graph - mV Input

31.24.2 Mid range high impedance Input

0 - 2V Input type

Range:

working range -1.4V to +2V
full linear range -1.8V to +2.4V
noise (resolution) 100uV - OFF, 50uV - 0.4sec, 35uV - 1.6sec

Calibration accuracy @ 25°C
< ± (0.5mV + 0.05% of |reading|)

Drift with ambient temperature
< ±(0.05mV + 0.003% of |reading|) per °C

Linearity error
< ± 0.01% of span (i.e. ± 200uV)

Input Impedance & Leakage
>100MΩ < 1nA

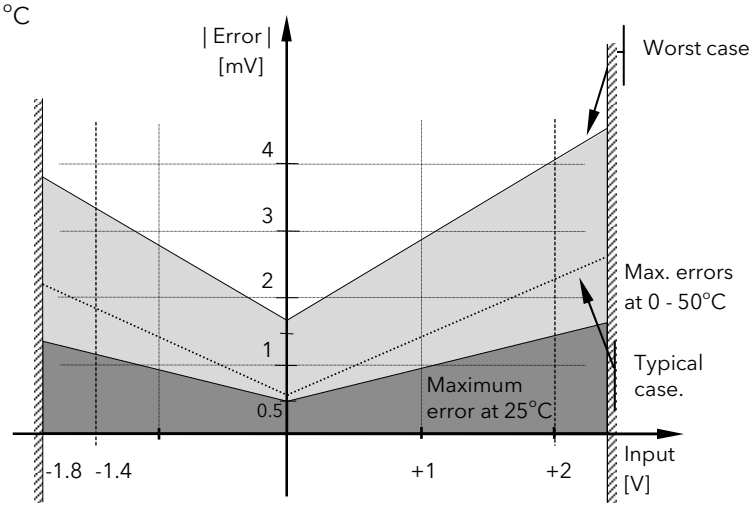


Figure 31-2: Error Graph - 0 - 2V Input

31.24.3 High Level Input

0 - 10V Input type

Range:
working range -3V to +10V
full linear range - 5V to +14V
noise (resolution) 300uV - OFF, 150uV - 0.4sec, 100uV - 1.6sec

Calibration accuracy @ 25°C
< ± (0.5mV + 0.1% of |reading|)

Drift with ambient temperature
< ±(0.01mV + 0.006% of |reading|) per °C

Linearity error
< ±0.02% of span (i.e. ± 2mV)

Input Impedance
0.66 MΩ

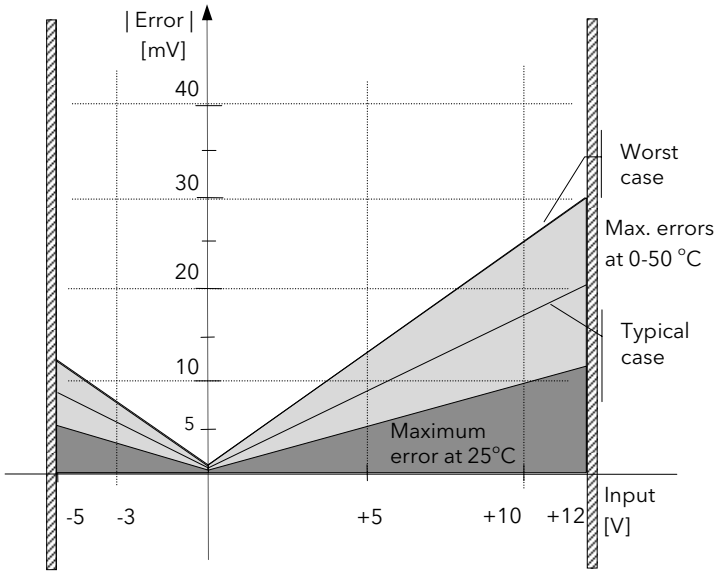


Figure 31-3: Error Graph - 0 - 10V Input

31.24.4 3-Wire RTD (Pt-100) Input type

Resistance measurement specification in Ohms:
Range
0 to 400Ω with up to 22Ωin each connecting lead

Noise (resolution)
8mΩ - 0.4sec, 4mΩ - 1.6sec

Calibration accuracy limits @ 25°C
< ± (35mΩ @110Ω + 0.03% of |reading - 110Ω|)

Drift with ambient temperature
± (0.002% of |reading|) per °C

Linearity error
< ±15 mΩ
Pt-100 measurement specification in °C:
Range
-200 °C to +850 °C

Noise (resolution)
0.02 °C - 0.4sec, 0.01 °C - 1.6sec

Calibration accuracy limit @ 25°C
< ± (0.1 °C + 0.03% of |reading in °C|)

Drift with ambient temperature
< ±(0.0055 °C + 0.002% of |reading in °C|)
per °C of ambient change

Linearity + Linearisation error
< ± 55 °mC (i.e. 50 °mC + 5 °mC)

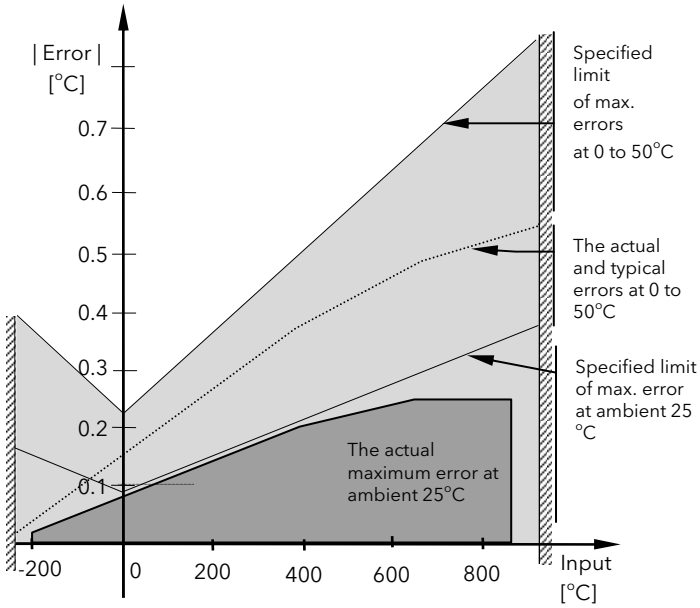


Figure 31-4: Error Graph - RTD Input

31.24.5 Thermocouple Input type

Internal CJT sensing spec
Calibration error @ 25 °C (including temp. difference between top and bottom screws)
< ± 0.5 °C

Total CJT error
< ± (0.5 °C + 0.012 °C per 1 °C of ambient change)
(i.e. CJC Rejection for measured temperatures above 0 °C is > 80 : 1)

Noise (resolution)
0.01 °C

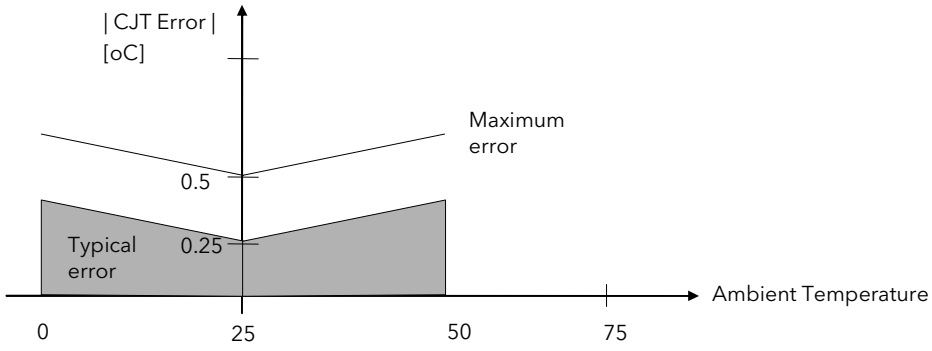


Figure 31-5: Overall CJT Error at Different Ambient Temperatures

32. APPENDIX D PARAMETER UNITS AND ADDRESSES

32.1 COMMONLY USED PARAMETERS

Although any parameter can be chosen for Soft Wiring, Parameter Promotion or Customised Display purposes, the controller contains those which are most commonly used together with their Modbus Addresses. These parameters are shown below:

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Refer To Section:-	Modbus Address
None	None		00000
L1.PV	Loop1 PV	Chapter 11	00001
L1.Wkg OP	Loop1 working output	LP1 SETUP	00004
L1.Wkg SP	Loop1 working setpoint	Diagnostic Page	00005
L1.Ch1 OP	Loop1 channel 1 output	Output Page	00013
L1.Ch2 OP	Loop1 channel 2 output	Output Page	00014
L2.PV	Loop2 PV	Chapter 11	01025
L2.Wkg OP	Loop2 working output	LP2 SETUP	01028
L2.Wkg SP	Loop2 working setpoint	Diagnostic Page	01029
L2.Ch1 OP	Loop2 channel 1 output	Output Page	01037
L2.Ch2 OP	Loop2 channel 2 output	Output Page	01038
L3.PV	Loop3 PV	Chapter 11	02049
L3Wkg OP	Loop3 working output	LP3 SETUP	02052
L3Wkg SP	Loop3 working setpoint	Diagnostic Page	02053
L3Ch1 OP	Loop3 channel 1 output	Output Page	02061
L3Ch2 OP	Loop3 channel 2 output	Output Page	02062
CLin1.OP	Custom linearisation 1	Chapter 14 INPUT OPERS Cust Lin 1	03365
CLin2.OP	Custom linearisation 2	Cust Lin 2	03413
CLin3.OP	Custom linearisation 3	Cust Lin 3	03461
SwOv1.OP	Switchover output value	Switch 1 Page	03477
Mod1A.Val	Module 1A output value	Chapter 23 MODULE IO Module 1A page	04148
Mod1B.Val	Module 1B output value	Module 1B page	04196
Mod1C.Val	Module 1C output value	Module 1C page	04244
Mod3A.Val	Module 3A output value	Module 3A page	04468
Mod3B.Val	Module 3B output value	Module 3B page	04516
Mod3C.Val	Module 3C output value	Module 3C page	04564
Mod4A.Val	Module 4A output value	Module 4A page	04628
Mod4B.Val	Module 4B output value	Module 4B page	04676
Mod4C.Val	Module 4C output value	Module 4C page	04724
Mod5A.Val	Module 5A output value	Module 5A page	04788
Mod5B.Val	Module 5B output value	Module 5B page	04836
Mod5C.Val	Module 5C output value	Module 5C page	04884
Mod6A.Val	Module 6A output value	Module 6A page	04948
Mod6B.Val,	Module 6B output value	Module 6B page	04996
Mod6C.Val	Module 6C output value	Module 6C page	05044
PVIn.Val	PV input value	Chapter 22 STANDARD IO PV Input page	05108
AnIn.Val	Analogue input value	An Input Page	05268
DIO1.Val	Digital input/output value 1	Dig IO1 Page	05402
DIO2.Val	Digital input/output value 2	Dig IO2 Page	05450
DIO3.Val	Digital input/output value 3	Dig IO3 Page	05498
DIO4.Val	Digital input/output value 4	Dig IO4 Page	05546
DIO5.Val	Digital input/output value 5	Dig IO5 Page	05594
DIO6.Val	Digital input/output value 6	Dig IO6 Page	05642
DIO7.Val	Digital input/output value 7	Dig IO7 Page	05690
Prg.PSP1	Programmer working SP1	Chapter 8 RUN PSP1 Page	05800
Prg.PSP2	Programmer working SP2	PSP2 Page	05801
Prg.PSP3	Programmer working SP3	PSP3 Page	05802
Prg.Uval1	Programmer user value 1	PROGRAM EDIT Segment Page	05808
Prg.Uval2	Programmer user value 2		05809

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Refer To Section:-	Modbus Address
Prg.DO1	Programmer digital OP1	Chapter 8 RUN General Page	05869
Prg.DO2	Programmer digital OP2		05870
Prg.DO3	Programmer digital OP3		05871
Prg.DO4	Programmer digital OP4		05872
Prg.DO5	Programmer digital OP5		05873
Prg.DO6	Programmer digital OP6		05874
Prg.DO7	Programmer digital OP7		05875
Prg.DO8	Programmer digital OP8		05876
ProgEnd	End of Program		05892
ProgRun	Program run		05893
ProgHold	Program hold		05894
ProgNewSe	Program new segment		05895
ProgReset	Program reset		05906
AnOp1.OP	Analogue operator OP1	Chapter 18 ANALOGUE OPERS Analogue 1 Page	06158
AnOp2.OP	Analogue operator OP2	Analogue 2 Page	06178
AnOp3.OP	Analogue operator OP3	Analogue 3 Page	06198
AnOp4.OP	Analogue operator OP4	Analogue 4 Page	06218
AnOp5.OP	Analogue operator OP5	Analogue 5 Page	06238
AnOp6.OP	Analogue operator OP6	Analogue 6 Page	06258
AnOp7.OP	Analogue operator OP7	Analogue 7 Page	06278
AnOp8.OP	Analogue operator OP8	Analogue 8 Page	06298
AnOp9.OP	Analogue operator OP9	Analogue 9 Page	06318
AnOp10.OP	Analogue operator OP10	Analogue 10 Page	06338
AnOp11.OP	Analogue operator OP11	Analogue 11 Page	06358
AnOp12.OP	Analogue operator OP12	Analogue 12 Page	06378
AnOp13.OP	Analogue operator OP13	Analogue 13 Page	06398
AnOp14.OP	Analogue operator OP14	Analogue 14 Page	06418
AnOp15.OP	Analogue operator OP15	Analogue 15 Page	06438
AnOp16.OP	Analogue operator OP16	Analogue 16 Page	06458
LgOp1.OP	Logic operator output 1	Chapter 19 LOGIC OPERS Logic 1 Page	07176
LgOp2.OP	Logic operator output 2	Logic 2 Page	07192
LgOp3.OP	Logic operator output 3	Logic 3 Page	07208
LgOp4.OP	Logic operator output 4	Logic 4 Page	07224
LgOp5.OP	Logic operator output 5	Logic 5 Page	07240
LgOp6.OP	Logic operator output 6	Logic 6 Page	07256
LgOp7.OP	Logic operator output 7	Logic 7 Page	07272
LgOp8.OP	Logic operator output 8	Logic 8 Page	07288
LgOp9.OP	Logic operator output 9	Logic 9 Page	07304
LgOp10.OP	Logic operator output 10	Logic 10 Page	07320
LgOp11.OP	Logic operator output 11	Logic 11 Page	07336
LgOp12.OP	Logic operator output 12	Logic 12 Page	07352
LgOp13 OP	Logic operator output 13	Logic 13 Page	07368
LgOp14.OP	Logic operator output 14	Logic 14 Page	07384
LgOp15.OP	Logic operator output 15	Logic 15 Page	07400
LgOp16.OP	Logic operator output 16	Logic 16 Page	07416
Clk.Alm1	Timer alarm 1	Chapter 15 TIMER BLOCKS Alarm 1 Page	08711
Clk.Alm2	Timer alarm 2	Alarm 2 Page	08716
Tot1.Alm	Totaliser 1 alarm output	Chapter 15 TIMER BLOCKS Totaliser 1 Page	08743
Tot2.Alm	Totaliser 2 alarm output	Totaliser 2 Page	08757
Tot3.Alm	Totaliser 3 alarm output	Totaliser 3 Page	08775
Tot4.Alm	Totaliser 4 alarm output	Totaliser 4 Page	08791
Tmr1.OP	Timer 1 output	Chapter 15 TIMER BLOCKS Timer 1 Page	08963
Tmr2.OP	Timer 2 output	Timer 2 Page	08975
Tmr3.OP	Timer 3 output	Timer 3 Page	08987

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Refer To Section:-	Modbus Address
Tmr4.OP	Timer 4 output	Timer 4 Page	08999
UVal1.Val	User 1 value	Chapter 16.3 USER VALUES User Val 1 Page	09220
UVal2.Val	User 2 value	User Val 2 Page	09225
UVal3.Val	User 3 value	User Val 3 Page	09230
UVal4.Val	User 4 value	User Val 4 Page	09235
Pat1.OP1	Pattern 1 output 1	Chapter 16.1 PATTERN GENERATOR Dig Group 1	09973
Pat1.OP2	Pattern 1 output 2		09974
Pat1.OP3	Pattern 1 output 3		09975
Pat1.OP4	Pattern 1 output 4		09976
Pat1.OP5	Pattern 1 output 5		09977
Pat1.OP6	Pattern 1 output 6		09978
Pat1.OP7	Pattern 1 output 7		09979
Pat1.OP8	Pattern 1 output 8		09980
Pat1.OP9	Pattern 1 output 9		09981
Pat1.OP10	Pattern 1 output 10		09982
Pat1.OP11	Pattern 1 output 11		09983
Pat1.OP12	Pattern 1 output 12		09984
Pat1.OP13	Pattern 1 output 13		09985
Pat1.OP14	Pattern 1 output 14		09986
Pat1.OP15	Pattern 1 output 15		09987
Pat1.OP16	Pattern 1 output 16		09988
Pat2.OP1	Pattern 2 output 1	Chapter 16.1 PATTERN GENERATOR Dig Group 2	10037
Pat2.OP2	Pattern 2 output 2		10038
Pat2.OP3	Pattern 2 output 3		10039
Pat2.OP4	Pattern 2 output 4		10040
Pat2.OP5	Pattern 2 output 5		10041
Pat2.OP6	Pattern 2 output 6		10042
Pat2.OP7	Pattern 2 output 7		10043
Pat2.OP8	Pattern 2 output 8		10044
Pat2.OP9	Pattern 2 output 9		10045
Pat2.OP10	Pattern 2 output 10		10046
Pat2.OP11	Pattern 2 output 11		10047
Pat2.OP12	Pattern 2 output 12		10048
Pat2.OP13	Pattern 2 output 13		10049
Pat2.OP14	Pattern 2 output 14		10050
Pat2.OP15	Pattern 2 output 15		10051
Pat2.OP16	Pattern 2 output 16		10052
Sum.LP2&3	Summary of loop 2 and loop3		10246
Sum.PrName	Summary of programmer name	Chapter 8 PROGRAM RUN General Page	10247
Sum.D1-16	Summary of digital outputs 1 to 16		10248
Sum.TiRem	Summary of program time remaining		10249
Const.1	Constant value = 1 May be used in place of a User Value		10464
Zirc.PV	Zirconia Value	Chapter 13.1 ZIRCONIA Options Page PROBE	11059
Zirc.Stat,	Probe Status		11066
Zirc.Clea	Clean State		11067
Zirc.SAlm	Sooting Alarm		11068
Humid.%RH	Relative Humidity	Chapter 13.4 HUMIDITY Options Page	11105
Humid.DwP	Dewpoint		11106
DI8.Val	Status of digital input 8	Chapter 22 STANDARD IO Diagnostic Page	11313
DI-E1.Val	Status of IO expander inputs		11314

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Refer To Section:-	Modbus Address
L1Alm1.OP	Loop1 alarm 1 output	Chapter 10 ALARMS LP1 Page	11592
L1Alm2.OP	Loop1 alarm 2 output	LP1 Page	11602
L2Alm1.OP	Loop2 alarm 1 output	LP2 Page	11640
L2Alm2.OP	Loop2 alarm 2 output	LP2 Page	11650
L3Alm1.OP	Loop3 alarm 1 output	LP3 Page	11688
L3Alm2.OP	Loop3 alarm 2 output	LP3 Page	11698
U1Alm.OP	User 1 alarm output	User 1 Page	11737
U2Alm.OP	User 2 alarm output	User 2 Page	11753
U3Alm.OP	User 3 alarm output	User 3 Page	11769
U4Alm.OP	User 4 alarm output	User 4 Page	11785
U5Alm.OP	User 5 alarm output	User 5 Page	11801
U6Alm.OP	User 6 alarm output	User 6 Page	11817
U7Alm.OP	User 7 alarm output	User 7 Page	11833
U8Alm.OP	User 8 alarm output	User 8 Page	11849
NewAlarm	New alarm	Summary Page	12162
IOEx.IP1	IO expander input 1		12187
IOEx.IP2	IO expander input 2		12188
IOEx.IP3	IO expander input 3		12189
IOEx.IP4	IO expander input 4		12190
IOEx.IP5	IO expander input 5		12191
IOEx.IP6	IO expander input 6		12192
IOEx.IP7	IO expander input 7		12193
IOEx.IP8	IO expander input 8		12194
IOEx.IP9	IO expander input 9		12195
IOEx.IP10	IO expander input 10		12196

32.2 PARAMETER UNITS

PSP Units are:-
None
°C/°F/°K,
V, mV, A, mA,
PH, mmHg, psi, bar, mbar, %RH, %, mmWG, inWG, inWW, Ohms, PSIG, %O2, PPM, %CO2, %CP, %/sec,
°C\°F\°K(rel),
Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3, Custom 4, Custom 5, Custom 6,
sec, min, hrs,

32.3 MODULE STATUS MESSAGES

OK	Module good
Initialising	Module initialising
Ch A SBreak	Channel A sensor input break
Ch C SBreak	Channel C sensor input break
Ch A Out Range	Channel A out of range
Ch C Out Range	Channel C out of range
Ch A IP Sat	Channel A input saturation
Ch C IP Sat	Channel C input saturation
Ch A Not Calib	Channel A not calibrated
Ch C Not Calib	Channel C not calibrated
Ch Short CCT	Channel terminals shorted

Declaration of Conformity

invensys
Eurotherm

Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer:	Eurotherm Limited Faraday Close, Worthing, West Sussex, BN13 3PL, United Kingdom
Product type:	Contoller/Programmer
Models:	2604 Controller 2604f Controller 2704 Controller 2704f Controller 2000IO Digital I/O expander
Safety specification:	EN61010-1: 2001
EMC emissions specification:	EN61326-1: 2006 (Class B) (Ethernet/Devicenet options: Class A)
EMC immunity specification:	EN61326-1: 2006 Industrial Locations

Eurotherm Limited hereby declares that the above products conform to the safety and EMC specifications listed. Eurotherm Limited further declares that the above products comply with the EMC Directive 2004/108/EC, and also with the Low Voltage Directive 2006/95/EC.

Signed: K Shaw Dated: 16th Aug 2011

Signed for and on behalf of Eurotherm Limited.
Kevin Shaw
(R&D Director)

CE

Eurotherm: International sales and service

ASEAN *(Indonesia, Malaysia, Philippines, Singapore, Thailand, Vietnam)*
Invensys Process Systems (S) Pte Ltd
T (+65) 6829 8888
F (+65) 6829 8401
E *info.eurotherm.asean@invensys.com*

AUSTRALIA *Melbourne*
Invensys Process Systems Australia Pty. Ltd.
T (+61 0) 8562 9800
F (+61 0) 8562 9801
E *info.eurotherm.au@invensys.com*

AUSTRIA *Vienna*
Eurotherm GmbH
T (+43 1) 7987601
F (+43 1) 7987605
E *info.eurotherm.at@invensys.com*

BELGIUM & LUXEMBOURG *Moha*
Eurotherm S.A./N.V.
T (+32) 85 274080
F (+32) 85 274081
E *info.eurotherm.be@invensys.com*

BRAZIL *Campinas-SP*
Eurotherm Ltda.
T (+5519) 3112 5333
F (+5519) 3112 5345
E *info.eurotherm.br@invensys.com*
CHINA
Eurotherm China
T (+86 21) 61451188
F (+86 21) 61452602
E *info.eurotherm.cn@invensys.com*

Beijing Office
T (+86 10) 5909 5700
F (+86 10) 5909 5709/10
E *info.eurotherm.cn@invensys.com*

FRANCE *Lyon*
Eurotherm Automation SA
T (+33 478) 664500
F (+33 478) 352490
E *info.eurotherm.fr@invensys.com*

GERMANY *Limburg*
Invensys Systems GmbH
>EUROTHERM<
T (+49 6431) 2980
F (+49 6431) 298119
E *info.eurotherm.de@invensys.com*
INDIA *Mumbai*
Invensys India Pvt. Ltd.
T (+91 22) 67579800
F (+91 22) 67579999
E *info.eurotherm.in@invensys.com*

IRELAND *Dublin*
Eurotherm Ireland Limited
T (+353 1) 4691800
F (+353 1) 4691300
E *info.eurotherm.ie@invensys.com*

ITALY *Como*
Eurotherm S.r.l
T (+39 031) 975111
F (+39 031) 977512
E *info.eurotherm.it@invensys.com*

JAPAN *Tokyo*
Invensys Process Systems Japan, Inc.
T (+81 3) 6450 1092
F (+81 3) 5408-9220
E *info.eurotherm.jp@invensys.com*
KOREA *Seoul*
Invensys Operations Management Korea
T (+82 2) 2090 0900
F (+82 2) 2090 0800
E *info.eurotherm.kr@invensys.com*

NETHERLANDS *Alphen a/d Rijn*
Eurotherm B.V.
T (+31 172) 411752
F (+31 172) 417260
E *info.eurotherm.nl@invensys.com*

MIDDLE EAST AND NORTH AFRICA *UAE Dubai*
Invensys Middle East FZE
T (+971 4) 8074700
F (+971 4) 8074777
E *marketing.mena@invensys.com*

POLAND *Katowice*
Invensys Eurotherm Sp z o.o.
T (+48 32) 7839500
F (+48 32) 7843608/7843609
E *info.eurotherm.pl@invensys.com*

Warsaw
Invensys Systems Sp z o.o.
T *(+48 22) 8556010*
F *(+48 22) 8556011*
E *biuro@invensys-systems.pl*

SPAIN *Madrid*
Eurotherm España SA
T (+34 91) 6616001
F (+34 91) 6619093
E *info.eurotherm.es@invensys.com*

SWEDEN *Malmo*
Eurotherm AB
T (+46 40) 384500
F (+46 40) 384545
E *info.eurotherm.se@invensys.com*

SWITZERLAND *Wollerau*
Eurotherm Produkte (Schweiz) AG
T (+41 44) 7871040
F (+41 44) 7871044
E *info.eurotherm.ch@invensys.com*

TAIWAN *Kaohsiung*
Invensys Taiwan
T (+ 886 7) 811-2269
F (+ 886 7) 811-9249
E *apmarketing.iom@invensys.com*

Taipei City Office
T (+ 886 2) 8797 1001
F (+ 886 2) 2799 7071
E *apmarketing.iom@invensys.com*

UNITED KINGDOM *Worthing*
Eurotherm Limited
T (+44 1903) 268500
F (+44 1903) 265982
E *info.eurotherm.uk@invensys.com*

U.S.A. *Ashburn VA*
Invensys Eurotherm
T (+1 703) 724 7300
F (+1 703) 724 7301
E *info.eurotherm.us@invensys.com*

ED70
Contact details correct at time of print

©Copyright Invensys Eurotherm Limited 2012

Invensys, Eurotherm, the Invensys Eurotherm logo, Chessell, EurothermSuite, Mini8, EPower, nanodac, Eycon, Eyris and Wonderware are trademarks of Invensys plc, its subsidiaries and affiliates. All other brands may be trademarks of their respective owners.

All rights are strictly reserved. No part of this document may be reproduced, modified or transmitted in any form by any means, neither may it be stored in a retrieval system other than for the purpose to act as an aid in operating the equipment to which the document relates, without the prior written permission of Invensys Eurotherm Limited.

Invensys Eurotherm Limited pursues a policy of continuous development and product improvement. The specifications in this document may therefore be changed without notice. The information in this document is given in good faith, but is intended for guidance only. Invensys Eurotherm Limited will accept no responsibility for any losses arising from errors in this document.

Represented by:

invensys
Eurotherm

HA026933/7 (CN29089)